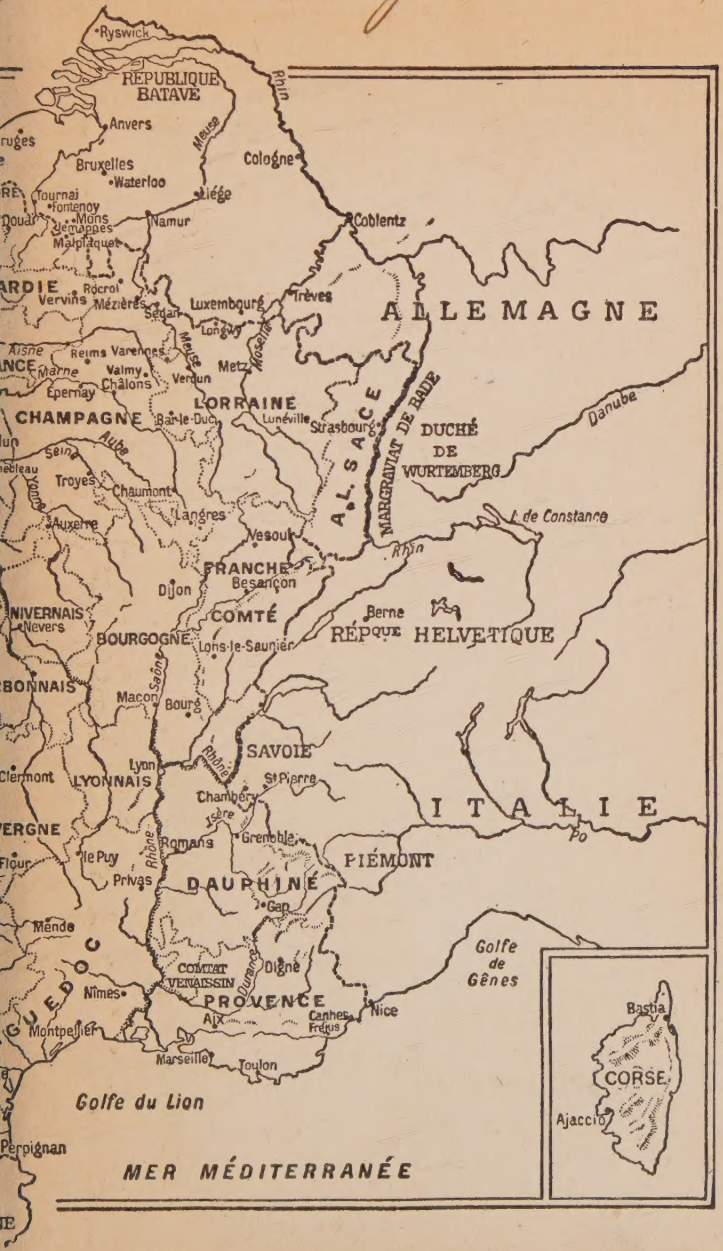
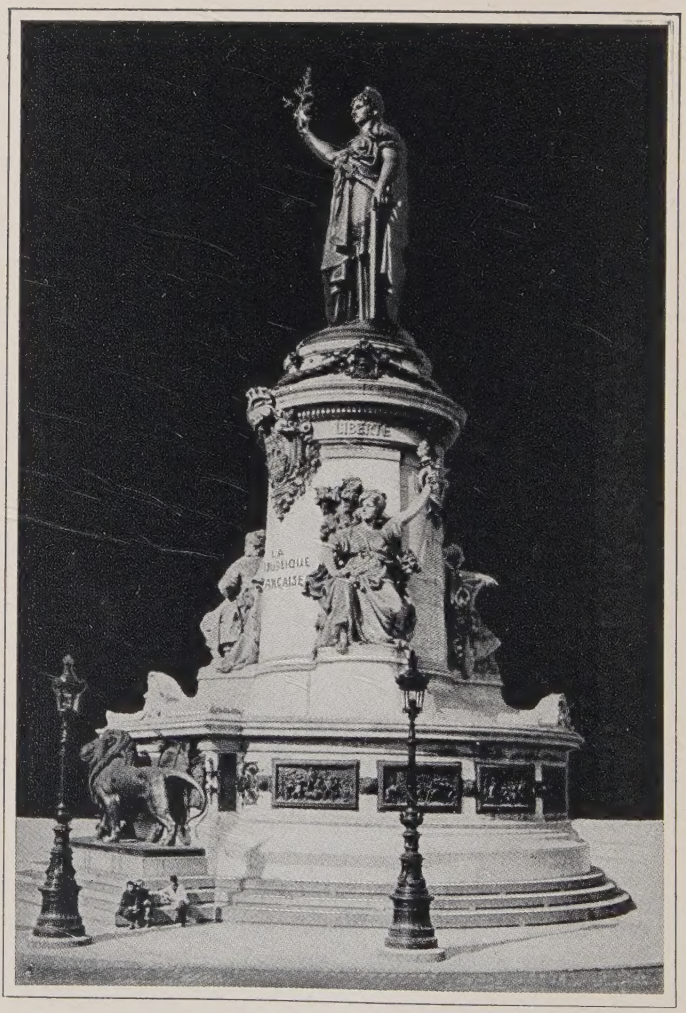
Bristol
Londres
ANGLETERRE
Douvres
Southampton
Pas de Calais
Plymouth
Portsmouth
I. de Wight
Boulogne
Cap Lizard
MANCHE
Cherbourg
Dieppe
Arqués
I. Guernesey (A)
Le Havre
Rouen
I. Jersey (A)
Caen
Coutances
Evreux
NORMANDIE
St Malo
Brest
St Brieuc
Alençon
Quimper
BRETAGNE
Rennes
Laval
MAINE
Le Mans
Vannes
Belle-Île
Angers
Nantes
Loire
ANJOU
Tours
Blois
OCÉAN
I. Noirmoutier
Machecoul
TOURAINE
Mortagne
I. d'Yeu
la Roche-sur-Yon
POITOU
Châteauroux
Fontenay
Poitiers
I. de Ré
la Rochelle
Niort
AUNIS
Guéret
I. d'Oléron
Saintes
ANGOUMOIS
SAINTONGE
Angoulême
Limoges
ATLANTIQUE
LIMOUSIN
Périgueux
Tulle
Bordeaux
Dordogne
Garonne
Golfe de Gascogne
GUYENNE
Lot
Cahors
Agen
Aveyron
Mont-de-Marsan
GASCOGNE
Adour
Auch
Bayonne
Toulouse
Navarreux
PROVINCES BASQUES
BÉARN
Tarbes
ESPAGNE
LA FRANCE
SOUS
L'ANCIEN RÉGIME
Kilomètres
0 50 100 150 200

Mildred Hope



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2026

https://archive.org/details/completefrenchgr0000whfr



La République Française

THE NEW FRASER AND SQUAIR

COMPLETE
FRENCH GRAMMAR

BY

W. H. FRASER AND J. SQUAIR

PROFESSORS OF THE ROMANCE DEPARTMENT, UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

WITH NEW EXERCISES IN PART I

BY

A. COLEMAN

PROFESSOR OF FRENCH, UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS

BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO

COPYRIGHT, 1921,
BY D. C. HEATH & CO

.2C7

PRINTED IN U. S. A.

PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION

THE first American edition of this Grammar was published March 26, 1901. It was received with favor, and since that date numerous reimpressions have been made to meet the demands of the public.

The present revision has been undertaken for the purpose of introducing such changes as time and experience have suggested as likely to be useful, without however disturbing the original character of the book, or changing the paragraph numbers. The use of the phonetic symbols adopted by the Association Phonétique Internationale has been retained throughout the book, wherever needed to aid in the teaching of pronunciation. The pronunciation of all French words in the French-English portion of the Vocabulary is given by phonetic transcription based upon the *Dictionnaire Phonétique* of Michaelis and Passy.

The most considerable changes have been made in the Exercises I–XXXIX of Part I, which have been rewritten by Professor A. Coleman of the Romance Department of the University of Chicago, who, with great unselfishness and in a spirit of admiration for the Grammar, has coöperated with the authors and publishers in their effort to make the book more useful to teachers and students. The grammatical part of each lesson remains substantially as it was in the original edition. In the Exercises an attempt has been made, in accordance with advanced methods of teaching, to provide an abundant and varied apparatus for oral practice and for training in accuracy of pronunciation, in writing from dictation, and in composition; also a section of useful Classroom Expressions has been introduced for the convenience of both teachers and students. In fact, it is everywhere emphasized throughout the book that *learning to speak the language is of prime importance.* The Vocabulary of Part I has been revised; words which are not of

common use have been excluded, and liberal provision has been made for drill on the uses and meanings of the words given.

Attention is called to the following important new features of Part I:

1. In the Lesson vocabularies and in the text of the Exercises great emphasis is laid on *Verb Forms*, particularly on the learning of the forms and the use of a number of common irregular verbs.

2. The difficult topic of *Tense Usage* is especially dealt with, particularly the functions of the present, the imperfect, and the past indefinite forms in past narration.

3. A great variety of drill work and abundant opportunity for *Oral Practice*, based on continuous reading passages, have been provided.

4. Much stress is laid on the acquisition of a *Working Vocabulary:* (*a*) by abundant repetition and review of the vocabulary in the Exercises; (*b*) by pointing out differences in usage between words nearly allied in meaning; (*c*) by the introduction of many common idioms; (*d*) by formal Review Exercises.

Amongst the new features to which special attention is directed are also the photographic reproductions of important buildings, parks, paintings, sculpture, etc., as well as the Map of France, the appearance of which here is due to the courtesy of the *Literary Digest*.

The first thirty-nine lessons of Part I contain enough grammatical material for four semesters with younger pupils beginning in the Secondary School and for two semesters with beginning classes of High School seniors or of College freshmen. As a rule the A sections are composed of passages for reading, which can also be used for dictation and oral practice, and the B sections of various types of grammar drill. These are followed by composition and translation exercises, as well as by special exercises in pronunciation and dictation.

In regard to the Exercises in Pronunciation in which phonetic transcription is employed, teachers must use their discretion. They may be omitted by those who regard them as unnecessary.

There is little doubt that it is sound pedagogy to spend enough time on the essentials of French grammar contained in these Les-

sons of Part I to go through them, or most of them, twice with great care; for it is only by such repetition, with abundant illustrative exercises, that beginners can acquire that *trained sense for the correct form of expression* and the proper grammatical construction which is essential to a real knowledge of a foreign tongue.

In Part I, Exercises XL–LI have been retained. They have been found useful as furnishing easy reading material in French as well as drill in elementary grammar, particularly in the regular and irregular verb forms. They may, like Exercises I–XXXIX, also be used in teaching by the direct method.

Part II contains a comprehensive statement of the grammatical phenomena of the French language adapted for later study and general reference. The Exercises Ia–LXXVa in this Part have been retained with such changes and additions as seemed necessary or likely to be useful. The Exercises are of two kinds. Exercises Ia–La consist of detached English sentences for translation into French, based directly upon definite sections of the Grammar referred to in the headings and providing a thorough drill on all important points of grammar. Exercises LIa–LXXVa are pieces of continuous English prose of an easy character, to be translated into French, and are fully provided with references to the sections of the Grammar where the particular grammatical points are dealt with. The *French Reader* has been dropped from the present edition. A complete Index has been provided at the end of the book.

By virtue of a decree of the French Minister of Public Instruction, dated February 26, 1901, certain deviations from commonly accepted rules of grammar were permitted as optional at all official examinations. In the Appendix, on the last page, will be found a reference list explaining the bearing of these deviations upon the various sections of the grammar affected thereby. As a matter of fact, it does not appear that careful users of the language, outside examination halls in France, have availed themselves to any extent of these permissions, and hence for English-speaking students they may be regarded as practically non-existent.

It will readily be seen that the aim has been to furnish students with a manual on French grammar so comprehensive in its theoretical treatment and so varied and abundant in the exercises

offered, that it will be useful to all, whether in the elementary or advanced stages of the study of modern or classical French.

Special acknowledgements for suggestions regarding various parts of the book are due to Professor J. Home Cameron of the University of Toronto and to Professor G. D. Morris of Indiana University. The manuscript of the new Exercises to Part I was read by Messrs. Antony Constans and James Kessler of the University of Chicago, by Miss Edna C. Dunlap of Parker High School, Chicago, and by Professor E. C. Hills of Indiana University. To Professor Hills are due particularly thanks for excellent suggestions in regard to the order of the material. The authors are indebted also to Professor H. C. Lancaster of Johns Hopkins University and to Professor D. H. Carnahan of the University of Illinois for reading the proofs of Part I; to the Publishers for their liberal policy which made available all this invaluable assistance; and to Dr. Alexander Green of the Editorial Office, whose zealous efforts have contributed toward rendering the volume more accurate in contents and more attractive in appearance.

October, 1920

CONTENTS

		PAGE
Phonetic Introduction		1
Exercise in Phonetic Transcription		12
Useful Classroom Expressions		14

PART I

LESSON		
I.	Definite Article. Gender. Case. Agreements	17
II.	Indefinite Article	20
III.	Possessives. Negation. Interrogation	23
IV.	Pronoun Objects	26
V.	Plural Forms. Possessive Adjective (*continued*)	28
VI.	Present Indicative of **avoir.** Partitive Noun and Pronoun. **En**	32
VII.	**Avoir** (*continued*). Interrogation (*continued*)	36
VIII.	Present Indicative of **être**	39
IX.	Regular Conjugations: Present Indicative of **donner.** Interrogation (*continued*). Demonstrative adjective	43
X.	Plural Forms. Contractions. Use of **il y a**	47
	Review of Vocabulary and Pronunciation No. 1	50
XI.	Indefinite Pronoun **on.** Interrogation (*continued*). Present Indicative of **faire**	52
XII.	Feminine of Adjectives. Position of Adjectives. Interrogative Adjectives. **Y**	56
XIII.	Present Indicative of **donner, finir, vendre.** General Noun. **Tout**	60
XIV.	Partitives (*continued*). **Avoir** + Undeterminate Noun (**besoin,** etc.)	64
XV.	Past Participles. Past Indefinite. Word-order. Idiomatic Present Indicative	68
XVI.	Comparatives. Superlatives. Comparison of Adverbs. Present Indicative of **aller**	72
XVII.	Agreement of Past Participle. Relatives	76

LESSON		PAGE
XVIII.	Tenses with **être**	80
	Vocabulary Review No. 2	84
XIX.	Pronoun Objects. Orthographical Peculiarities: **commencer, manger,** and **mener**	86
XX.	Personal Pronoun Objects. Pronominal Adverbs: **y, en.** Reflexive Verb. Possessive Force of Article	90
XXI.	Imperfect Indicative. Use of the Imperfect. Imperfect of **faire**	94
XXII.	Future Indicative. Use of the Future	100
XXIII.	Disjunctive Personal Pronouns. **Ce** + **être**	104
XXIV.	Impersonal Verbs	107
	Vocabulary Review No. 3	111
XXV.	Infinitive. Present Participle. Present Indicative of **pouvoir. Il faut**	113
XXVI.	Present Subjunctive. Use of the Subjunctive. Tense Sequence. Present Indicative of **vouloir**	119
XXVII.	Imperative (*continued*). Position of Objects (*continued*)	124
XXVIII.	Conditional Mood. Conditional Sentences	128
XXIX.	Use of Article. Present Indicative of **savoir**	133
	Vocabulary Review No. 4	137
XXX.	Possessive Pronouns. Present Indicative of **dire**	139
XXXI.	Demonstrative Pronouns	144
XXXII.	Relative Pronouns. Present Indicative of **connaître.**	148
XXXIII.	Interrogative Pronouns	153
XXXIV.	Indefinite Pronouns	158
	Vocabulary Review No. 5	164
XXXV.	Numerals: Cardinal, Ordinal. Fractions	166
XXXVI.	Dates, Titles. Seasons, Months	171
XXXVII.	Time of Day	176
XXXVIII.	Past Definite. Use of the Past Definite	180
XXXIX.	Imperfect Subjunctive. Tense Sequence. Meanings of **devoir** and **vouloir**	184
	Vocabulary Review No. 6	188

ANECDOTES

XL.	La Théière du Matelot	190
XLI.	L'Arabe et les Perles	191
XLII.	Le Paysan et les Épis de Blé	192
XLIII.	Le Trésor du Laboureur	194

LESSON PAGE
XLIV. Louis XIV et Jean Bart 195
XLV. La Fourmi et le Brin d'Herbe 197
XLVI. Le Bon Samaritain 198
XLVII. M. Laffitte et l'Épingle 200
XLVIII. Le Sifflet de Benjamin Franklin 201
XLIX. Henri IV et le Paysan 203
L. Thomas et les Cerises 205
LI. Frédéric le Grand et son Page 207

PART II

The Verb 209
The Noun 300
The Article 313
The Adjective 327
The Pronoun 342
The Adverb 382
The Numeral 394
The Preposition 401
The Conjunction 411
The Interjection 414
Abbreviations 416
Exercises on Part II (*Detached Sentences*), Ia–La 417
Exercises on Part II (*Continuous Prose*), LIa–LXXVa 467

VOCABULARIES:

French-English 481
English-French 515

INDEX 551

APPENDIX: *Tolérances* 564

A FRENCH GRAMMAR

PHONETIC INTRODUCTION

1. General Distinctions. The pronunciation will be explained, as far as possible, by comparison with English sounds, but it must never be forgotten that the sounds of two languages rarely correspond. Important general distinctions between English and French are the following:

1. English has strong stress (§ 7) and comparatively weak action of the organs in articulation.

2. French has weak stress, while the action of the organs in articulation is very energetic.

3. Hence, French sounds, both vowels and consonants, are almost all 'narrow,' *i.e.*, uttered with tenseness of the organs concerned in their articulation. (To understand 'narrow' and 'wide,' compare the narrow sound of i in 'mach*i*ne' with its wide sound in 's*i*t.')

4. Tongue and lip positions for French vowels are more definite, and more promptly taken, than in English. Lip-rounding (as in 'wh*o*,' 'n*o*,' '*law*') and lip-retraction (as in 'l*e*t,' 'h*a*t') are much more definite and energetic in forming French vowels.

5. The tongue, both for vowels and consonants, is, in general, either further advanced or further retracted than in forming English sounds requiring tongue action.

6. English long vowels (like a in '*la*dy') shade off into other vowels (especially in the South of England), while all French vowels are free from this *off-glide*, and are uniform throughout their utterance.

7. The nasal vowels of French are foreign to standard English. They are formed by allowing the soft palate to hang freely, as in ordinary breathing, thus causing the air to escape through both nose and mouth at once. If, for example, the a of 'f*a*ther' be uttered with the

soft palate hanging freely, the resulting sound will be approximately that of the nasal [ɑ̃] in t*an*te [tɑ̃:t]. The position of the soft palate in forming this sound may be readily observed with a mirror. It must be carefully noted that there is absolutely no sound of **n, m,** or **ng,** in French nasal vowels, and hence that great care must be taken neither to raise the tongue nor close the lips until the sound is complete.

2. Sounds. The French language has thirty-seven sounds, exclusive of minor distinctions. French spelling, like that of English, is irregular and inconsistent. Hence, to avoid confusion in indicating the pronunciation, we shall employ a phonetic alphabet (that of the *Association Phonétique Internationale*), in which each sound is represented by its own symbol, and each symbol has but one sound.

3. Table of Symbols. In the following table, the examples are in ordinary orthography, the heavy type indicates the sounds which correspond to the symbols, and the phonetic transcription is given within brackets:

Symbols	Examples	Symbols	Examples
i	**ni, vive** [ni, vi:v]	**b**	**beau, robe** [bo, rɔb]
y	**pu, muse** [py, my:z]	**d**	**dame, fade** [dam, fad]
e	**été** [ete]	**f**	**fort, neuf** [fɔ:r, nœf]
ø	**creux, creuse** [krø, krø:z]	**g**	**gant, dogue** [gɑ̃, dɔg]
ə	**le** [lə]	**h**	**aha!** [ɑ(h)ɑ]
ɛ	**près, père** [prɛ, pɛ:r]	**k**	**car, roc** [kar, rɔk]
ɛ̃	**fin, prince** [fɛ̃, prɛ̃:s]	**l**	**long, seul** [lɔ̃, sœl]
œ	**neuf, neuve** [nœf, nœ:v]	**m**	**mot, dame** [mo, dam]
œ̃	**un, humble** [œ̃, œ̃:bl]	**n**	**ni, âne** [ni, ɑ:n]
a	**patte, part** [pat, pa:r]	**ɲ**	**agneau, digne** [aɲo, diɲ]
ɑ	**pas, passe** [pɑ, pɑ:s]	**p**	**pas, tape** [pɑ, tap]
ɑ̃	**tant, tante** [tɑ̃, tɑ̃:t]	**r**	**drap, par** [dra, par]
ɔ	**note, tort** [nɔt, tɔ:r]	**s**	**si, pense** [si, pɑ̃:s]
ɔ̃	**rond, ronde** [rɔ̃, rɔ̃:d]	**ʃ**	**chou, lâche** [ʃu, lɑ:ʃ]
o	**sot, chose** [so, ʃo:z]	**t**	**tas, patte** [tɑ, pat]
u	**tout, tour** [tu, tu:r]	**v**	**vin, cave** [vɛ̃, ka:v]
j	**viande** [vjɑ̃:d]	**z**	**zone, rose** [zo:n, ro:z]
ɥ	**lui** [lɥi]	**ʒ**	**je, rouge** [ʒə, ru:ʒ]
w	**oui** [wi]	**:**	**sign of length**

4. The Alphabet. The letters of the alphabet, with their French names, are as follows:

a	a [a]	**j**	ji [ʒi]	**s**	esse [ɛs]
b	bé [be]	**k**	ka [ka]	**t**	té [te]
c	cé [se]	**l**	elle [ɛl]	**u**	u [y]
d	dé [de]	**m**	emme [ɛm]	**v**	vé [ve].
e	é [e]	**n**	enne [ɛn]	**w**	double vé [dubləve]
f	effe [ɛf]	**o**	o [o]	**x**	iks [iks]
g	gé [ʒe]	**p**	pé [pe]	**y**	i grec [i grɛk]
h	ache [aʃ]	**q**	ku [ky]	**z**	zède [zɛd]
i	i [i]	**r**	erre [ɛr]		

Note. — These names are often all treated as masculines (**un** a, **un** h, etc.), but some treat **f, h, l, m, n, r, s,** as feminines (**une** h, **une** r, etc.).

5. Other Orthographic Signs. In addition to the letters of the alphabet, the following signs are used:

1. The acute accent ´ Fr. **accent aigu** [aksɑ̃tegy], *e.g.*, l'été, l'Écosse. Note. — The word 'accent' does not denote stress; see § 7.

2. The grave accent ` Fr. **accent grave** [aksɑ̃gra:v], *e.g.*, voilà, père, où.

3. The circumflex accent ^ Fr. **accent circonflexe** [aksɑ̃sirkɔ̃flɛks], *e.g.*, âne, tête, île, hôte, flûte.

4. The cedilla ¸ Fr. **cédille** [sedi:j], used under **c** to give it the sound of [s], before **a, o, u** (§ 17, 13), *e.g.*, façade, leçon, commençait.

5. The diæresis ¨ Fr. **tréma** [trema], shows that the vowel bearing it is divided in pronunciation from the preceding vowel, *e.g.*, Noël, naïf.

6. The apostrophe ' Fr. **apostrophe** [apɔstrɔf], shows omission of final vowel before initial vowel sound, *e.g.*, l'amie (= la amie), l'ami (= le ami), l'homme (= le homme), s'il (= si il), § 19.

7. The hyphen - Fr. **trait d'union** [trɛdynjɔ̃], used as in English.

6. Syllabication.

1. A single consonant sound between vowel sounds, including the four nasalized vowels, always belongs to the following syllable.

Ex.: Ma-rie, in-di-vi-si-bi-li-té, bon-té, con-scien-cieu-s(e)-ment.

2. When the second of two consonant sounds is **l** or **r**, both usually belong to the following syllable, except **lr, rl** and a few more.

Ex.: ta-**bleau**, é-**cri**-vain, ap-**pli**-quer.

3. Other combinations of consonants representing two or more sounds are divided.

Ex.: par-ler, per-dre, es-ca-lier, sep-tem-bre.

N.B. — Great care should be taken to avoid the consonantal ending of syllables, so frequent in English. Compare French ci-té, ta-bleau, with English 'ci*t*-y,' 'ta*b*-leau.'

Parallel rules hold in script and print where division occurs.

7. Stress.

'Stress' is the force with which a syllable is uttered as compared with other syllables in the same group. In French, the syllables are uttered with almost equal force, a very slight stress falling on the last syllable of a word of two or more syllables, or, on the last but one, if the last vowel of the word is [ə].

Ex.: Che-val, par-ler, par-lai, per-dre, cré-di-bi-li-té (compare the strong stress of English 'cred-i-*bil*-it-y').

Note. — In connected discourse the rule above stated varies considerably, but a full treatment of the subject would exceed the limits of an elementary work. The safest practice for the beginner is to pronounce all syllables with almost equal force. All vowels except [ə], see § 19, whether stressed or unstressed, are carefully sounded and not slurred over as in English.

8. Vowel Quantity. The most important general rules are:

1. Final vowel sounds (including nasals) are usually short, *e.g.*, fini [fini], vie [vi], loue [lu], parlé [parle], rideau [rido], mais [mɛ], donner [done], enfant [ɑ̃fɑ̃], parlerons [parl(ə)rɔ̃].

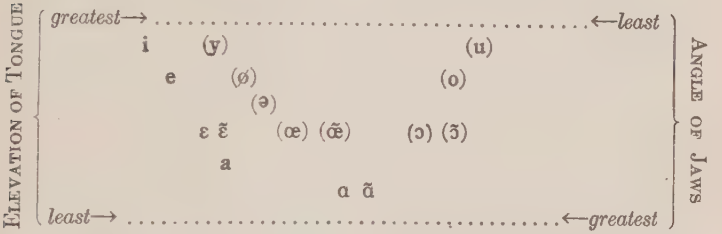
2. Stressed vowels are long before the sounds [v], [z], [ʒ], [j], [r final], *e.g.*, rive [ri:v], ruse [ry:z], rouge [ru:ʒ], feuille [fœ:j], faire [fɛ:r].

3. Of stressed vowels standing before other consonant sounds, nasals are long, *e.g.*, prince [prɛ̃:s]; [o], [ø], long, *e.g.*, faute [fo:t], meule [mø:l]; [ɑ], long (almost always), *e.g.*, passe [pɑ:s]; [ɛ], long or short, *e.g.*, reine [rɛ:n], renne [rɛn]; other vowels regularly short, *e.g.*, cap [kap], poche [pɔʃ], coupe [kup], pipe [pip], seul [sœl], lune [lyn].

Note. — It is possible to distinguish also between 'long' and 'half long' vowels, but it has been thought best to omit, in an elementary work, the rules relating to this distinction, and to indicate only 'long' vowels in the transcriptions.

Vowels

9. Tongue Position. The relative position of the tongue for the various vowels may be seen from the following diagram. Rounded vowels are enclosed in parentheses:



N.B. — In the following descriptions of sounds, the word 'like' means, of course, only 'resembling,' or 'approximately like' (§ 1). The examples given after the word 'also' show the less common orthographical equivalents.

10. i, y

1. **i** — Like **i** in 'machine'; the corners of the mouth are slightly drawn back (§ 1, 4); avoid the sound of **i** in 'sit'; avoid 'off-glide' (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: **ni** [ni], **vive** [vi:v]; also, **île** [i:l], **lyre** [li:r].

2. **y** — Has no counterpart in English. The tongue position is practically the same as for [i] above; very tense lip-rounding (§ 1, 4); narrow (§ 1, 3). The sound may be best acquired either by prolonging [i], and at the same time effecting the rounding, or by holding the lips rounded and taking the tongue position of [i].

Ex.: **pu** [py], **muse** [my:z]; also **fût** [fy], **il eut** [il y], **nous eûmes** [nuzym], **j'ai eu** [ʒe y].

11. e, ø, ə

1. **e** — Like the first part of the sound of **a** in 'day,' but with the lips more retracted (§ 1, 4); avoid 'off-glide' (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: **été** [ete]; also, **parler** [parle], **donnai** [done].

2. ø — Has no counterpart in English. The tongue position is practically the same as for [e], with rounding of the lips for **o** (§ 1, 4); narrow (§ 1, 3); best acquired by combining, as explained for [y] above, the lip-rounding with the [e] position.

Ex.: **creux** [krø], **creuse** [krø:z]; also, **bœufs** [bø], **yeux** [jø].

3. ə — Like English **e** in '*the* man,' or **a** in 'Louis*a*,' but slightly rounded; best acquired by relaxing the tension of the organs required for the production of the [ø] sound.

Ex.: **le** [lə], **premier** [prəmje]; also, **monsieur** [məsjø], **faisant** [fəzɑ̃].

12. ɛ, ɛ̃, œ, œ̃

1. ɛ — Like the sound of **e** in 'l*e*t,' with the mouth more definitely open and the lips more retracted (§ 1, 4); narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: **près** [prɛ], **père** [pɛ:r]; also, **fête** [fɛ:t], **terre** [tɛ:r], **secret** [səkrɛ], **parlais** [parlɛ], **paix** [pɛ], **reine** [rɛ:n].

NOTE. — The **e** of a stressed syllable followed by a syllable containing **e** mute has almost always this sound (orthographically denoted by **è**, **ê**, or **e** + double consonant), *e.g.*, **je mène** [mɛn], **tête** [tɛ:t], **chère** [ʃɛ:r], **j'appelle** [apɛl], **ancienne** [ɑ̃sjɛn]. This principle accounts for the apparent irregularities of certain verbs and adjectives.

2. ɛ̃ — The [ɛ] sound nasalized (§ 1, 7), but slightly more open.

Ex.: **fin** [fɛ̃], **prince** [prɛ̃:s]; also, **faim** [fɛ̃], **sainte** [sɛ̃:t], **Reims** [rɛ̃:s], **plein** [plɛ̃], **simple** [sɛ̃:pl], **symbole** [sɛ̃bɔl], **syntaxe** [sɛ̃taks], **viendrai** [vjɛ̃dre], **soin** [swɛ̃].

3. œ — Has no counterpart in English. It has practically the tongue position of [ɛ], combined with definite rounding of the lips for [ɔ]; narrow (§ 1, 3); best acquired by combining, with the [ɛ] position, the rounding described.

Ex.: **neuf** [nœf], **neuve** [nœ:v]; also, **cœur** [kœ:r], **œil** [œ:j], **orgueil** [ɔrgœ:j].

4. œ̃ — The [œ] sound nasalized (§ 1, 7), but slightly more open.

Ex.: **un** [œ̃], **humble** [œ̃:bl]; also, **à jeun** [aʒœ̃], **parfum** [parfœ̃].

13. a, ɑ, ɑ̃

1. a — This sound is similar to but requires wider mouth opening than **a** of 'p*a*t,' and lowering of the tongue, though with the point still

touching the lower teeth; narrow (§ 1, 3). It is generally short, resembling English 'madam.'

Ex.: patte [pat], part [pa:r]; also, là [la], femme [fam], moi [mwa], boîte [bwa:t]; and, by exception, parlâmes [parlam], parlâtes [parlat], parlât [parla].

2. ɑ — Like a in '*fa*ther'; the mouth well open, the tongue lying flat, and so far retracted that it no longer touches the lower teeth; lips absolutely neutral, *i.e.*, neither rounded nor retracted; avoid especially rounding, as of a in '*fa*ll.'

Ex.: pas [pɑ], passe [pɑ:s]; also, pâte [pɑ:t], roi [rwɑ], poêle [pwɑ:l].

3. ɑ̃ — The [ɑ] sound nasalized (§ 1, 7). (Written an, am, en, em.)

Ex.: tant [tɑ̃], tante [tɑ̃:t]; also, lampe [lɑ̃:p], enfant [ɑ̃:fɑ̃], entre [ɑ̃:tr], membre [mɑ̃:br].

14. ɔ, ɔ̃, o

1. ɔ — Like the vowel in '*law*,' but with definite bell-like rounding (§ 1, 4), avoid 'off-glide' to u (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: note [nɔt], tort [tɔ:r]; also Paul [pɔl], album [albɔm].

2. ɔ̃ — The [ɔ] sound nasalized (§ 1, 7), but slightly more close.

Ex.: rond [rɔ̃], ronde [rɔ̃:d]; also tomber [tɔ̃be], comte [kɔ̃:t].

3. o — Like o in '*o*men,' but with more protrusion and much tenser rounding of the lips (§ 1, 4); avoid 'off-glide' to u (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: sot [so], chose [ʃo:z], fosse [fo:s]; also, côté [kote], côte [ko:t], faute [fo:t], beauté [bo:te].

15. u

1. u — Like oo in '*p*ool' but with more protrusion and much tenser rounding of the lips (§ 1, 4); avoid 'off-glide' to w (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: tout [tu], tour [tu:r]; also, goût [gu], août [u].

Consonants

16. j, ɥ, w

When the sounds [i], [y], [u], § 10 and § 15, come before a vowel of stronger stress, they are pronounced with the tongue slightly closer to the palate, and hence assume a consonantal value, indicated by [j], [ɥ], [w], respectively. They are sometimes called semi-vowels.

1. **j** — Like very brief and narrow **y** in '*ye*s.'

Ex.: viande [vjɑ̃:d]; also, yeux [jø], aïeul [ajœl], fille [fi:j], travailler [travaje], travail [travaj], the last three being examples of *l* **mouillée.**

2. **ɥ** — Has no counterpart in English, but is similar to a **w** pronounced with the tongue pressed close to the lower teeth; may also be acquired by at first substituting [y] for it, and afterward increasing the speed of the utterance and the elevation of the tongue until it can be pronounced in the same syllable with the vowel which always follows.

Ex.: lui [lɥi], huit [ɥit]; also, nuage [nɥa:ʒ], écuelle [ekɥɛl].

3. **w** — Like very brief and narrow **w** in '*w*e,' '*w*est.' It is best, however, to proceed from the sound of [u] in the manner described for [ɥ] above.

Ex.: oui [wi]; also, poids [pwɑ], tramway [tramwe].

17. The remaining consonantal sounds can be sufficiently described by noting the differences between their mode of formation and that of the nearest English sounds (see § 1).

1. **b** — Like **b** in '*b*ar*b*.'

Ex.: beau [bo], robe [rɔb], abbé [abe].

2. **d** — Like **d** in '*d*i*d*,' but with the tongue so far advanced that its point, or upper surface, forms a closure with the inner surface of the upper teeth and gums; or the point of the tongue may be thrust against the lower teeth, the upper surface forming a closure with the upper teeth and gums. It must be remembered that in forming English **d** (also **l, n, r, s, t, z**) the tongue touches at some little distance above the teeth (§ 1, 5).

Ex.: dame [dam], fade [fad], addition [adisjɔ̃].

3. **f** — Like **f** in '*f*at.'

Ex.: fort [fɔ:r], neuf [nœf], difficile [difisil].

4. **g** — Like **g** in '*g*o.'

Ex.: **g**ant [gɑ̃], dogue [dɔg], guerre [gɛːr]; also, second [səgɔ̃].

5. **h** — In orthography the letter **h** is known as '**h** mute' (Fr. ***h*** **muet** or ***h*** **muette**), or '**h** aspirate' (Fr. ***h*** **aspiré** or ***h*** **aspirée**), according as it does, or does not, cause elision (§ 19). The learner may regard it, in either case, as absolutely silent.

Ex.: **h** mute in l'**h**omme [lɔm], l'histoire [listwaːr], l'**h**éroïne [leroin]; **h** aspirate in le **h**éros [lə ero], le **h**être [lə ɛːtr], la **h**aine [la ɛːn], la **h**âte [la ɑːt], je hais [ʒə ɛ].

In hiatus, however, a sound resembling, but much weaker than **h** in '*h*at,' is permissible, and is actually used by many Frenchmen.

Ex.: aha! [ɑhɑ], le héros [lə hero], fléau [fleho].

6. **k** — Like **k** in 'ta*k*e'; avoid the slight aspiration which generally follows the English sound.

Ex.: **c**ar [kar], roc [rɔk], **c**order [akɔrde]; also, **ch**rétien [kretjɛ̃], cinq [sɛ̃ːk], bouquet [bukɛ], a**cq**uérir [akeriːr], kilo [kilo], ma**x**ime [maksim].

7. **l** — Like **l** in '*l*aw,' but with the tongue advanced as for [d] above.

Ex.: **l**ong [lɔ̃], seul [sœl], aller [ale], mille [mil], village [vilaːʒ]. For soft ***l*** see § 16, 1.

8. **m** — Like **m** in '*m*an,' 'du*m*b.'

Ex.: **m**ot [mo], dame [dam], homme [ɔm].

9. **n** — Like **n** in '*n*ot,' 'ma*n*,' but with the tongue advanced as for [d] above.

Ex.: **n**i [ni], âne [ɑːn], donner [dɔne].

10. **ɲ** — Somewhat like **ny** in 'ba*n-y*an,' except that [ɲ] is a single, not a double, sound, and is formed by pressing the middle of the tongue against the hard palate, the tip being usually thrust against the lower teeth.

Ex.: a**gn**eau [aɲo], di**gn**e [diɲ].

11. **p** — Like **p** in '*p*an,' 'to*p*'; avoid the slight aspiration which generally follows the English sound.

Ex.: **p**as [pɑ], tape [tap], appliquer [aplike].

12. **r** — Has no English counterpart. It is formed by trilling the tip of the tongue against the upper gums, or even against the upper teeth. This **r** is called in French *r* **linguale.** The tongue must, of course, be well advanced towards the teeth, and not retracted and turned upward, as in our **r** sound (§ 1, 5). The sound may be advantageously practised at first in combination with **d,** *e.g.*, 'd*r*y,' 'd*r*ip,' 'd*r*op,' 'd*r*um' (as in Scotch or Irish dialect), and afterwards in combinations in which it is less easily pronounced.

Ex.: drap [dra], par [par], torrent [tərɑ̃], rond [rɔ̃].

Note. — Another **r** sound (called in French *r* **uvulaire**), used especially in Paris and in the large cities and towns, is formed by withdrawing and elevating the root of the tongue so as to cause a trilling of the uvula. This **r** is usually more difficult for English-speaking people to acquire.

13. **s** — Like **s** in '*s*ea,' 'ce*a*se,' but with the tongue advanced as for [d] above.

Ex.: si [si], pense [pɑ̃:s], casser [kɑ:se]; also **scène** [sɛ:n], place [plas], façade [fasad], leçon [ləsɔ̃], reçu [rəsy], commençait [kɔmɑ̃sɛ], commençons [kɔmɑ̃sɔ̃], reçûmes [rəsym], portion [pɔrsjɔ̃], soixante [swasɑ̃:t].

14. **ʃ** — Like **sh** in '*sh*oe,' but with the tongue more advanced (§ 1, 5).

Ex.: **chou** [ʃu], **lâche** [lɑ:ʃ], also, **schisme** [ʃism].

15. **t** — Like **t** in '*t*all,' but with the tongue advanced as for [d] above; avoid the slight aspiration which generally follows the English sound.

Ex.: **tas** [tɑ], **patte** [pat].

16. **v** — Like **v** in '*v*ine,' 'ca*v*e.'

Ex.: vin [vɛ̃], cave [kɑ:v]; also, wagon [vagɔ̃], neuf heures [nœv œ:r].

17. **z** — Like **z** in '*z*one,' or **s** in 'ro*s*e,' but with the tongue advanced as for [d] above.

Ex.: zone [zo:n], rose [ro:z]; also, deux heures [døzœ:r], exact [egzakt].

18. **ʒ** — Like **z** in 'a*z*ure' or **s** in 'plea*s*ure,' but with the tongue more advanced (§ 1, 5).

Ex.: je [ʒə], rouge [ru:ʒ]; also mangeant [mɑ̃ʒɑ̃], Jean [ʒɑ̃].

19. A *doubled consonant* has usually the same sound as a single consonant, *e.g.*, **aller** [ale], **ville** [vil], **tranquille** [trɑ̃kil], **donner** [dɔne], **terre** [tɛːr]. Exceptions are, however:

(1) The liquid l, Fr. *l* **mouillée** [muje], *i.e.*, double l after **i** [j] (§ 16, 1), *e.g.*, **fille** [fiːj], **billet** [bijɛ], **bataille** [batɑːj], **veiller** [vɛje], **feuille** [fœːj].

N.B. — Note also that liquid l may be spelled **-ail,** etc., *e.g.*, **travail** [travaːj], **soleil** [sɔlɛːj], etc.

(2) The verb forms **acquerrai** [akɛrre], **courrai** [kurre], **mourrai** [murre].

(3) The doubled consonant in such words as **illégal, intellectuel, intelligence, littérature, connexe, immoral,** etc., is pronounced double, *i.e.*, given double its usual length, by many people. But foreigners beginning French may neglect this manner, regarded by many as an affectation.

18. Liaison. Final consonants are usually silent, but in oral speech, within a group of words closely connected logically, a final consonant (whether usually sounded or not) is regularly sounded, and forms a syllable with the initial vowel sound of the next word. This is called in French **liaison** [ljɛzɔ̃] = *linking, joining.*

Ex.: C'est‿un petit‿homme [sɛ-tœ̃-pə-ti-tɔm].

1. A few of the consonants change their sound in *liaison*, thus, final **s** or **x** = **z**, **d** = **t**, **g** = **k**, **f** = **v**, *e.g.*, nos‿amis [no-za-mi], quand‿on parle [kɑ̃-tɔ̃-parl]; the **t** of **et** is silent; for examples see *Exercise in Phonetic Transcription.*

2. The **n** of a nasal is carried on, and the nasal vowel loses its nasality in part, or even wholly, *e.g.*, un bon‿ami [œ̃-bɔ̃-na-mi, *or* œ̃-bɔ-na-mi].

19. Elision. The letters **a, e, i,** are entirely silent in certain cases:

1. The **a** and **e** are silent and replaced by apostrophe in **le, la, je, me, te, se, de, ne, que** (and some of its compounds) before initial vowel or **h** mute (not, however, **je, ce, le, la** after a verb); so also **i** of **si** before **il(s).**

Ex.: **L'arbre** (= **le arbre**), **l'encre** (= **la encre**), **j'ai** (= **je ai**), **qu'a-t-il** (= **que a-t-il**), **jusqu'à** (= **jusque à**), **s'il** (= **si il**).

2. In prose the letter **e** is silent at the end of all words (except when **e** is itself the only vowel in the word), silent in the verbal endings **-es, -ent**, silent within words after a vowel sound, and in the combination **ge** or **je** [ʒ]. In verbs which have stem **g** [ʒ], **g** becomes **ge** [ʒ] before **a** or **o** of an ending, to preserve the [ʒ] sound.

Ex.: rue [ry], donnée [dɔne], rare [ra:r], place [plas], ai-je [ɛ:ʒ], table [tabl], sabre [sɑ:br], prendre [prɑ̃:dr], tu parles [ty parl], ils parlent [il parl], gaieté [gete], mangeons [mɑ̃ʒɔ̃], Jean [ʒɑ̃].

Note. — In ordinary discourse, this sound is usually slighted or wholly omitted in most cases in which consonantal combinations produced by its weakening or elision can be readily pronounced, but beginners will do well to sound it fully, except in the cases above specified. The treatment of the [ə] in verse is beyond the scope of this work.

20. Punctuation. The same punctuation marks are used in French as in English, but not with identical values.

1. Their French names are:

.	point	-	trait d'union	[ ]	crochets
,	virgule	—	tiret, *or* tiret de séparation	{	accolade
;	point et virgule				
:	deux points	. . .	points suspensifs	*	astérisque
?	point d'interrogation	" "	guillemets	†	croix de renvoi
!	point d'exclamation	( )	parenthèse		

2. They are not used exactly as in English, especially the colon and the dash, the latter being very useful in showing a change of speaker in dialogue.

Ex.: « Qui est là? dis-je. — Personne. — Quoi ! personne ! — Personne, dit-il. »

21. Capitals. Some of the differences between French and English in the use of capital letters (Fr. **lettres majuscules, capitales**) may be seen from the following examples:

Un livre canadien écrit en français par un Canadien. Toronto, le lundi 3 janvier. Je lui ai dit ce que je pensais.

EXERCISE IN PHONETIC TRANSCRIPTION

[The sign (ı) in unstressed syllables indicates 'half long.']

Tu aimeras le Seigneur ton Dieu de tout ton cœur, de toute ty ɛımra l sɛɲœır tɔ̃ djø d tu tɔ̃ kœır, də tut

ton âme, de toute ta force, et de toute ta pensée; et ton
tɔ̃n ɑ:m, də tut ta fɔrs, e d tut ta pɑ̃:se; e tɔ̃

prochain comme toi-même . . .
prɔʃɛ̃ kɔm twa mɛ:m . . .

Un homme descendait de Jérusalem à Jéricho; et il est
œ̃n ɔm desɑ̃:dɛ d ʒeryzalɛm a ʒeriko; e il ɛ

tombé parmi des brigands, qui l'ont dépouillé, ils l'ont chargé
tɔ̃:be parmi de brigɑ̃, ki l ɔ̃ depuje, i l ɔ̃ ʃarʒe

de coups, et ils sont partis, en le laissant à moitié mort. Et
d ku, e i sɔ̃ parti, ɑ̃ l lɛ·sɑ̃ a mwatje mɔ:r. e

par hasard un prêtre descendait par ce chemin-là, et en le
par aza:r œ̃ prɛ:trə desɑ̃:dɛ par sə ʃmɛ̃ la, e ɑ̃ l

voyant, il a passé outre. De même aussi un lévite, arrivé
vwajɑ̃, il a pɑ:se utr. də mɛ:m o:si œ̃ levit, ari:ve

dans cet endroit, il est venu, et en le voyant, il a passé outre.
dɑ̃ st ɑ̃·drwa, il ɛ vny, e ɑ̃ l vwajɑ̃, il a pɑ:se utr.

Mais un Samaritain, qui voyageait, est venu là, et en le voyant,
me œ̃ samaritɛ̃, ki vwajaʒɛ, ɛ vny la, e ɑ̃ l vwajɑ̃,

il a été ému de pitié; et il s'est approché pour bander ses
il a ete emy d pitje; e il s ɛt aprɔʃe pur bɑ̃:de se

blessures, en y versant de l'huile et du vin; puis il l'a mis sur
blɛsy:r, ɑ̃n i vɛrsɑ̃ də l ɥil e dy vɛ̃; pɥi i l a mi syr

sa propre bête pour le conduire à une auberge, et il a pris soin
sa prɔprə bɛ:t pur lə kɔ̃:dɥi:r a yn ɔbɛrʒ, e il a pri swɛ̃

de lui. Et le lendemain il a tiré deux deniers, et il les a
d lɥi. e l lɑ̃:dmɛ̃ il a ti:re dø dənje, e il lez a

donnés à l'aubergiste, en disant, ' prends soin de lui, et ce que
dɔne a l ɔbɛrʒist, ɑ̃ di:zɑ̃, prɑ̃ swɛ̃ de lɥi, e s kə

tu dépenseras de plus, moi je te le rendrai à mon retour.'
ty depɑ̃sra d plys, mwa ʒ tə l rɑ̃:dre a mɔ̃ rtu:r.

— Reprinted by kind permission of M. Paul Passy, from his *Version populaire de l'Évangile de Luc en transcription phonétique*. Note, however, that in pronouncing ils the l may be sounded.

USEFUL CLASSROOM EXPRESSIONS

Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela? [kɛskəsɛkəsla?] What is that?

C'est un (une) . . . [sɛtœ̃(yn)] It is a . . .

Que veut dire (Que signifie) cela? [kəvødiːr (kəsiɲifi) səla?] What does that mean?

Comment dit-on en français (en anglais)? [kɔmɑ̃ditɔ̃ ɑ̃frɑ̃sɛ (ɑ̃nɑ̃glɛ)?] How do you say in French (in English)?

On dit — en français [ɔ̃di — ɑ̃frɑ̃sɛ] You (People) say — in French.

Commencez . . . Prononcez . . . Écrivez . . . [kɔmɑ̃se . . . prɔnɔ̃se . . . ekrive . . .] Begin . . . Pronounce . . . Write . . .

Comment écrivez-vous? Comment écrit-on? [kɔmɑ̃tekrivevu? kɔmɑ̃tekritɔ̃?] How do you (people) write (spell) . . .?

Comment? Plaît-il? Vous dites? [kɔmɑ̃? plɛtil? vudit?] What did you say?

Merci bien. Merci mille fois. [mɛrsibjɛ̃. mɛrsi milfwa.] Thank you very much (a thousand times).

Il n'y a pas de quoi. [ilnjapɑdkwa] **De rien.** [dərjɛ̃] You are welcome. Don't mention it.

Voulez-vous bien . . .? [vulevubjɛ̃ . . .?] Will you . . .?

Quelle leçon avons-nous aujourd'hui? [kɛlləsɔ̃ avɔ̃nu ɔjuːrdqi?] What lesson have we to-day?

À quelle page (leçon) en sommes-nous? [akɛlpaːʒ (ləsɔ̃) ɑ̃ sɔmnu?] What page (lesson) are we on?

Au haut, au milieu, au bas de la page. [o o, omiljø, obɑdlapaːʒ] At the top, middle, bottom of the page.

Commencez. Continuez. Cela suffit. [kɔmɑ̃se. kɔ̃tinqe. səla syfi] Begin. Continue. That will do.

Le suivant. La suivante. [ləsqivɑ̃. la sqivɑ̃ːt] Next (boy, girl).

Lisez la phrase suivante, s'il vous plaît. [lize lafraːzsqivɑ̃ːt,silvuplɛ] Read the next sentence, please.

Prononcez distinctement toutes les syllabes. [prɔnɔ̃se distɛ̃ːktəmɑ̃ tutlesilab] Pronounce all the syllables distinctly.

Comprenez-vous? [kɔ̃prənevu?] Do you understand?

Je comprends. Je ne comprends pas. [ʒəkɔ̃prɑ̃. ʒənkɔ̃prɑ̃pɑ] I understand, I do not understand.

Comprenez-vous ce que j'ai dit? ce que vous avez lu? [kɔ̃prənevu skəʒedi? skəvuzavely?] Do you understand what I said? what you read?

Traduisez le passage que vous avez lu. [tradɥize ləpasaːʒ kəvuzavely] Translate the passage that you have read.

C'est très bien fait, Robert. Félicitations! [sɛtrɛbjɛ̃fɛ, rɔbɛːr. felisitasjɔ̃!] Well done, Robert. Congratulations!

Expliquez. Répondez en français, en anglais. [ɛksplike. repɔ̃de ɑ̃frɑ̃sɛ, ɑ̃nɑ̃glɛ] Explain. Answer in French, in English.

Faites attention. Je vous prie de faire attention. [fɛtzatɑ̃sjɔ̃. ʒəvupridəfɛːratɑ̃sjɔ̃] Pay attention. I beg you to pay attention.

Allez au tableau. Écrivez la phrase au tableau. [alezotablo. ekrivelafraːzotablo] Go to the board. Write the sentence on the board.

Quelle est la faute? Quelles sont les fautes? [kɛl ɛ la foːt? kɛlsɔ̃le foːt?] What is (are) the mistake(s)?

Quel changement faut-il faire? [kɛlʃɑ̃ːʒmɑ̃ fotilfɛːr?] What change must be made?

Maintenant c'est bien (c'est ça). Ce n'est pas bien de dire . . .; il ne faut pas dire; on ne devrait pas dire; on ne dit pas . . . [mɛ̃tnɑ̃ sɛbjɛ̃, sɛ sa. sənɛpabjɛ̃dədiːr; il nə fo pɑ diːr; ɔ̃ndəvrɛ pɑ diːr; ɔ̃ndipɑ] It (that) is right now, (that's it). It (that) is not right to say . . .

Vous avez raison. Vous avez tort. [vuzavereʒɔ̃. vuzavetɔːr] You are right (wrong).

Commencez à la page —. Étudiez jusqu'à la page —. [kɔmɑ̃se alapaːʒ —. etydje ʒyskala paːʒ —] Begin on page —. Study as far as page —.

Est-ce clair? C'est clair, n'est-ce pas? [ɛsklɛːr? sɛklɛːr nɛspɑ?] Is that clear? That is clear, isn't it?

Savez-vous? Je ne sais pas. [savevu? ʒənsepɑ] Do you know? I do not know.

N'oubliez pas. Avez-vous oublié? [nublijepɑ.avevuzublije?]Don't forget. Have you forgotten?

Dites-moi. Répétez. [ditmwa. repete] Tell me. Repeat.

Qu'avez-vous? Je n'ai rien. [kavevu? ʒənerjɛ̃] What is the matter with you? Nothing.

Qu'y a-t-il de nouveau? [kjatildənuvo?] What is the news?

J'en suis bien content (fâché). [ʒɑ̃sɥibjɛ̃kɔ̃tɑ̃ (fɑʃe)] I am very glad (sorry) about it.

Je pense (crois) que oui (non). [ʒə pɑ̃ːs (krwɑ) kəwi(nɔ̃)] I think so (not).

C'est dommage. Tant mieux. Tant pis. [sɛdɔmaːʒ. tɑ̃mjø. tɑ̃pi] It's a pity. So much the better. So much the worse.

Ce n'est pas la peine de . . . [sənɛpɑlapɛndə] It isn't worth while to . . .

Je ne suis pas d'accord avec vous [ʒənsɥipɑdakɔːr avɛkvu] I do not agree with you.

Ni moi (lui, elle) non plus. [nimwa (lɥi, ɛl) nɔ̃ply] I (he, she) either.

Y a-t-il quelque chose à corriger? [jatilkɛlkəʃoɪz akɔriʒe?] Is there anything to correct?

Il faut ajouter. [ilfotaʒute] You must add.

Asseyez-vous. [asejevu] Sit down.

Écoutez bien. Je vais vous indiquer la leçon pour demain. [ekutebjɛ̃. ʒəvevuzɛ̃dike lalsɔ̃ puːrdəmɛ̃] Listen attentively. I am going to assign the lesson for to-morrow.

Préparez pour demain. [prepare puːrdəmɛ̃] Prepare for to-morrow.

Bonjour, mesdames (messieurs). C'est fini. À demain. [bɔ̃ʒuːr medam (mesjø). sɛ fini. admɛ̃] Good-by, Ladies, (Gentlemen). Class is over. I shall see you to-morrow.

Courtesy of U. S. Army Air Service

L'Arc de Triomphe, Paris

à Vol d'Oiseau

PART I

LESSON I

22. Definite Article. 1. The definite article has the following forms in the singular:

The = { **le** [lə], before a masculine noun beginning with a consonant.
la [la], before a feminine noun beginning with a consonant.
l' [l], before any noun beginning with a vowel or **h** mute.

***Le* père, *la* mère.**	The father, the mother.
***L'*enfant** (*m.* or *f.*), ***l'*homme.**	The child, the man.

2. The definite article must be repeated before each noun to which it refers:

***L'*oncle et *la* tante.**	The uncle and (the) aunt.

23. Gender. 1. All French nouns are either masculine or feminine:

Le papier (*m.*), **la plume** (*f.*).	The paper, the pen.

2. Names of male beings are masculine, and names of female beings feminine, as in English.

24. Case. French nouns have no case endings. The direct object (*accusative*) is expressed by verb + noun; the indirect object (*dative*) by the proposition **à** + noun; the possessive (*genitive*) by **de** + noun, and these prepositions must be repeated before each noun to which they refer:

La mère aime *l'enfant*.	The mother loves the child.
J'ai la plume *de* Robert.	I have Robert's pen (the pen of Robert).
Je donne l'argent *à* Marie et *à* Jean.	I give the money to Mary and (to) John.

25. Agreements. French has the following agreements, and they are usually expressed by change of form: (1) Verb and subject, in number and person; (2) adjective and noun, in gender and number; (3) pronoun and antecedent, in gender and number.

EXERCISE I [1]

bonjour! [bɔ̃ʒuːr] good day!
l'**argent** *m.* [larʒɑ̃] money
l'**enfant** *m., f.* [lɑ̃fɑ̃] child; boy, girl
l'**homme** [lɔm] man
le **livre** [liːvr] book
la **mère** [mɛːr] mother
l'**oncle** [lɔ̃ːkl] uncle
le **papier** [papje] paper
le **père** [pɛːr] father
la **plume** [plym] pen
la **porte** [pɔrt] door
la **table** [tabl] table
la **tante** [tɑ̃ːt] aunt
Jean [ʒɑ̃] John
Louise [lwiːz] Louise
Marie [mari] Mary
Robert [rɔbɛːr] Robert

j'**ai** [ʒe] I have
j'**aime** [ʒɛːm] I love, like
Marie **aime** [mariɛm] Mary likes, loves
je **donne** [ʒədɔn] I give
Jean **donne** [ʒɑ̃dɔn] John gives
est [ɛ] is
fermez! [fɛrme] close!
montrez-moi! [mɔ̃tremwa] show me!
ouvrez! [uvre] open!
voici [vwasi] here is (are)
voilà [vwala] there is (are)

où? [u] where?
à [a] to, at, in
de [də] of, from
sur [syr] on

et [e] and

A. 1. Bonjour! Bonjour, Robert! 2. Où est le livre? 3. Le livre est sur la table. 4. Ouvrez le livre, Jean. 5. Fermez le livre, Marie. 6. Ouvrez la porte, Robert. 7. Fermez la porte, Jean. 8. Montrez-moi la porte, Marie. 9. Voilà la porte. 10. Montrez-moi le papier, Marie. 11. Voilà le papier sur la table. 12. Où est la plume de Robert (§ 24, *example* 2)? 13. Voilà la plume de Robert sur la table. 14. Et où est le papier de Marie? 15. Voici le papier de Marie sur la table. 16. L'enfant aime l'oncle Jean. 17. L'homme aime l'enfant. 18. L'oncle Jean aime l'enfant. 19. J'aime l'oncle Jean et tante [2] Marie. 20. Je donne la plume à l'oncle Robert.

[1] Linking will be indicated by ‿ in the reading passages of Lessons I–X.
[2] Note the idiomatic omission of the article before *tante* in 19 and 21.

21. Je donne le papier à tante Marie. 22. L'homme à la porte est le père de Marie. 23. La mère de Jean est la tante de Louise. 24. Le père de Jean donne le papier à Marie. 25. La mère de Marie donne le papier à Robert. 26. Où est l'argent de Louise? 27. J'ai l'argent de Louise. 28. Montrez-moi l'argent de Robert. 29. Voilà l'argent de Robert sur la table. 30. J'ai le livre de Louise. 31. Louise aime le livre. 32. Je donne le livre à Louise. 33. Où est le livre, Marie? 34. Voilà le livre, Louise.

Exercise in Pronunciation

(1) Read aloud the series: [i], [e], [ɛ], [a], [ɑ], [ɔ], [o], [u] (see §§ 9–15). Write in phonetic characters all the words of the vocabulary in which any of these sounds occur.

(2) Read aloud: [ə], [y], [ɔ̃], [ɑ̃] (see § 11, 3; § 10, 2; § 14, 2; § 13, 3). Write in phonetic characters all the words of the vocabulary in which these sounds occur.

(3) List the ways in which the following sounds in the vocabulary are spelled in the standard orthography: [i], [e], [ɛ], [a], [ɔ], [u], [ə], [y], [ɔ̃], [ɑ̃].

(4) What kind of vowels are [ɔ̃] and [ɑ̃]? Does the tongue go to the position for the letter **n** in the pronunciation of the spellings **an, en, on** (see § 1, 7)? Is this true in the word **donne**?

(5) In **Robert, papier, Marie,** are the syllables divided as in English? What is the difference (see § 6, 1, 3)? Is this difference important?

(6) What happens to the article when we write **l'homme, l'enfant** (see § 19)? Is the article pronounced as a separate word or as a part of the following word? Write in phonetic characters: **l'oncle, l'argent.**

(7) In **le papier, l'enfant, ouvrez, fermez,** on what syllable does the stress seem to fall (see § 7 and note)? How does this differ from the English *paper, infant, open?* In which language is the syllable stress the stronger? Pronounce **difficile** [difisil], **président** [prezidɑ̃], **important** [ɛ̃portɑ̃], **appartement** [apartəmɑ̃], **Clemenceau** [klemɑ̃so], and compare the syllable stress with the corresponding English words.

(8) What two pronunciations does the spelling **ai** have in this vocabulary? Mention the words.

(9) What ways are there of spelling the sound [ɑ̃]?

(10) What is the pronunciation of the spelling **oi**? of the spelling **ou**?

LESSON II

26. Indefinite Article. It has the following forms, which must be repeated before each noun to which they refer:

A or *an* = { **un** [œ̃(n)], before any masculine noun. **une** [yn], before any feminine noun.

***Un* livre et *une* plume.**	A book and (a) pen.
***Un* homme [ɔ̃nɔm], *une* école.**	A man, a school.

EXERCISE II

le **crayon** [krɛjɔ̃] pencil
la **fenêtre** [ʃafnɛːtr] window
madame [madam] Madam
mademoiselle [madmwazɛl] Miss
monsieur [məsjø] sir, Mr.
le **morceau** [mɔrso] piece
le **mot** [mo] word
le **professeur** [prɔfɛsœːr] teacher, professor (*used for both men and women*)
le **tableau noir** [tablonwaːr] blackboard

un [œ̃(n)] a, an; one
deux [dø] two
trois [trwɑ] three
quatre [katr] four

il **a** [ila] he (it) has
elle **a** [ɛla] she (it) has
vous **avez** [vuzave] you have
avez-vous? [avevu] have you?
il **écrit** [ilekri] he writes
elle **écrit** [ɛlekri] she writes
vous **écrivez** [vuzekrive] you write
écrivez-vous [ekrivevu] are you writing? do you write?
écrivez! [ekrive] write!

non [nɔ̃] no
oui [wi] yes;

avec [avɛk] with
derrière [dɛrjɛːr] behind
devant [dəvɑ̃] in front of, before

A. 1. Bonjour, mes enfants [mezɑ̃fɑ̃] (*lit., my children*)! 2. Bonjour, monsieur (madame, mademoiselle)! 3. Où est la porte? 4. Voilà la porte. 5. Voici une fenêtre [ynfənɛːtr]. 6. Voici une table. 7. Voilà un tableau noir. 8. La table est devant le professeur; elle est devant le professeur. 9. Le tableau

noir est derrière le professeur; il est derrière le professeur. 10. Le professeur écrit sur le tableau noir. 11. Il écrit un mot, deux mots, trois mots, quatre mots [katrəmo].[1] 12. Marie écrit sur un morceau de papier avec un crayon. 13. Robert écrit avec une plume. 14. Il écrit sur un morceau de papier. 15. Il écrit le mot « derrière ». 16. Marie écrit le mot « devant ». 17. Marie, écrivez le mot « bonjour ». — Oui, monsieur (madame, mademoiselle). 18. Écrivez-vous, Louise? — Non, monsieur. 19. Écrivez-vous sur le tableau noir, Jean? — Non, monsieur. 20. Écrivez-vous avec un crayon? — Oui, monsieur. 21. Sur un morceau de papier? — Oui, monsieur. 22. Avez-vous un crayon, Jean? 23. Oui, monsieur, j'ai un crayon et une plume. 24. Voilà un livre. Il est sur la table, devant le professeur. 25. Marie a un, deux, trois, quatre crayons [krɛjõ]. 26. Voilà une enfant. 27. Elle a deux, trois, quatre plumes [plym]. 28. Avec la plume elle écrit un, deux, trois, quatre mots.

B. (1) *Write the proper forms of:* le, la, un, une, *before* tableau noir, professeur, mot, morceau, papier, fenêtre, crayon.

(2) *Make all reasonable combinations of:* avec, devant, derrière, sur, *with* la plume, le crayon, le tableau noir, l'enfant, l'oncle, la fenêtre, Louise, le professeur.

(3) *Supply proper forms of 'have':* 1. J—— un crayon. 2. Vous —— un morceau de papier. 3. Elle —— deux plumes. 4. Robert —— trois tantes.

Supply suitable forms of 'write': 5. —— le mot, Marie. 6. ——-vous, Jean? 7. Robert, —— le mot avec une plume. 8. Il —— trois mots avec le crayon. 9. Elle —— quatre mots avec la plume.

C. *Translate into French:* 1. I have the book. 2. Have you a book, John? 3. Yes, sir, here is the book on the table. 4. Open the book, John, and show me the word "pen." 5. There is Robert's pencil. 6. Louise writes on the blackboard. 7. The blackboard is behind the teacher. 8. He writes on a piece of paper. 9. Marie, are you writing a word? 10. Yes, sir, she writes one, two, three, four words.

[1] See § 19, note.

Exercise in Pronunciation

(1) Pronounce: **un livre, une table, une porte, une fenêtre, un crayon, une plume, un père, une mère, un oncle, une tante, un enfant, un homme.**

(2) Substitute for **un, une,** before each noun above, the proper form of **le, la.** How many cases of elision (see § 19) are there?

(3) Why do we write phonetically and pronounce: œpɛːr, but œnɔ̃ːkl, œnɔm; œliːvr, but œnãfã; ləliːvrɛsyːrlatabl, but ʒã ɛtœnãfã? What do we call this carrying over of a sound to the next word (see § 18)?

(4) Note in A the spelling **mots, crayons, plumes,** pronounced [mo], [krɛjɔ̃], [plym]. Does the addition of the **-s** in spelling change the pronunciation?

(5) Pronounce the last syllable of: **fermez, ouvrez, écrivez, avez.** What is the ending of the second person of French verbs in spelling? Make the phonetic symbol for this spelling.

(6) Pronounce [dø]. How must the lips and the tip of the tongue be placed to make [ø] (see § 11, 2)? It is very important to hold the tongue and lips in the right position for this sound. Pronounce **bleu** [blø], **feu** [fø], **peu** [pø]. How does position for this sound differ from that for words like **le** [lə], **de** [də] (see § 11, 3), **professeur** [prɔfesœːr] (see § 12, 3)? If we add these vowels to those found in Lesson I (Exercise in Pronunciation), how many does it give us thus far?

(7) What new way of spelling the sound [o] in this vocabulary?

(8) Write and indicate by a hyphen the syllable division. **tableau** (see § 6, 2), **devant, professeur, morceau, madame, Marie, avec, fenêtre.**

(9) Write in phonetic characters and read aloud: **un livre, une table, un père, une mère, un homme, un enfant, une enfant, un oncle, une tante, une fenêtre.** How many cases of linking are there in these examples?

(10) Observe by the phonetic transcription of **monsieur** that the spelling indicates the pronunciation only in part. From the pronunciation how would you expect the word to be spelled?

LESSON III

27. Some Possessives. Observe the following, and remember that possessive adjectives must be repeated before each noun to which they refer (for pronunciation, see § 32).

Mon (*m.*) **livre** et *ma* (*f.*) **plume.**	My book and (my) pen.
Ton (*m.*) **livre** et *ta* (*f.*) **plume.**	Thy (your) book and (thy, your) pen.
Son (*m.*) **livre** et *sa* (*f.*) **plume.**	His *or* her book and pen.
Votre (*m.*) **livre** et *votre* (*f.*) **plume.**	Your book and (your) pen.

28. Negation. With verbs, *not* or *no* = **ne . . . pas,** with the verb placed between them, **ne** becoming **n'** before a vowel (§ 19, 1):

Je *n'*ai *pas*, vous *n'*avez *pas*.	I have not, you have not.

29. Interrogation. In questions, the personal pronoun subject comes after the verb, as in English, and is joined to it by a hyphen, or by **-t-** if the verb ends in a vowel:

Avez-vous? a-t-il? est-elle ici?	Have you? has he? is she here?

EXERCISE III

le **cahier** [kaje] notebook, exercise book
la **classe** [klɑːs] classroom, class
la **craie** [krɛ] chalk
le **frère** [frɛːr] brother
la **leçon** [ləsɔ̃] lesson
la **maison** [mezɔ̃] house; **à la maison** at home, at the house
merci [mɛrsi] thanks, thank you
la **place** [plas] seat, place
la **sœur** [sœːr] sister

que? [kə] what?

allez! [ale] go!
j'**écris** [ʒekri] I write, am writing, do write
vous **écrivez** [vuzekrive] you write, are writing, do write
il (elle) **écrit** [il(ɛl)ekri] he (she) writes, is writing, does write
je **suis** [ʒəsɥi] I am
vous **êtes** [vuzɛt] you are
êtes-vous? [ɛtvu] are you?
vous **faites** [vufɛt] you do, are doing
faites-vous? [fɛtvu] are you doing?

aussi [osi] also, too
bien [bjɛ̃] well, comfortable
comment [kɔmɑ̃] how
ici [isi] here
maintenant [mɛ̃tnɑ̃] now
très [trɛ] very

dans [dɑ̃] in, into
ou [u] or

A. (1) 1. Bonjour, mes‿enfants! 2. Bonjour, monsieur (madame, mademoiselle)! 3. Comment‿allez-vous (*are you*)? 4. Bien, merci. Et vous? 5. Très bien, merci. 6. Allez‿à la porte, Jean. 7. Ouvrez la porte! 8. Fermez la porte! 9. Merci. Allez‿à votre place. 10. Allez‿à la fenêtre, Louise. 11. Merci. Allez‿à votre place.

(2) 1. Je ne suis pas‿à la maison. 2. Je suis dans la classe. 3. Mon professeur est dans la classe aussi. 4. J'écris la leçon dans mon cahier. 5. Mon frère écrit sa leçon dans son cahier. 6. Que faites-vous, Robert? 7. Écrivez-vous dans votre cahier? 8. Oui, monsieur (madame, mademoiselle), je suis‿à ma place et j'écris dans mon cahier. 9. Jean n'est pas‿à sa place maintenant. 10. Il n'écrit pas dans son cahier. Où est-‿il? 11. Il a un morceau de craie. 12. Il écrit sur le tableau noir. 13. Que faites-vous, Louise? 14. Je suis‿à ma place. 15. J'ai une plume, mais je n'écris pas. 16. Avez-vous votre cahier? 17. Non, monsieur, je n'ai pas mon cahier dans la classe. 18. Il n'est pas‿ici. Il est‿à la maison.

B. (1) *Use four possessive adjectives with each of the following nouns:* crayon, plume, enfant, frère, sœur, oncle.

(2) *In what two ways may each of the following possessives be translated:* sa mère, son enfant, sa tante, son frère?

(3) *What is, therefore, the difference between the agreement of the possessive adjective in French and in English as indicated by combinations like:* 1. Marie a son crayon. 2. Robert a sa plume. 3. Louise a son papier. 4. Jean est-il devant sa table?

(4) *Change to negative (taking as model for the negative questions:* **n'a-t-elle pas son crayon?** *'hasn't she her pencil?'*): 1. Henri [ãri] écrit. 2. Louise a trois frères. 3. Vous avez quatre crayons. 4. Avez-vous deux frères? 5. Louise est la sœur de Robert. 6. Est-elle la tante de l'enfant? 7. Est-il votre professeur? 8. A-t-il le morceau de papier? 9. Écrit-il à sa mère? 10. Allez à la fenêtre. 11. Écrivez-vous sur un morceau de papier? 12. Aime-t-elle son frère? 13. Il aime sa sœur.

(5) *Prepare complete sentences, some affirmative and some negative, in answer to the following questions:* 1. Où êtes-vous? 2. Que faites-vous? 3. Jean est-il dans la classe maintenant? 4. A-t-il sa plume? 5. Où est-il maintenant? 6. A-t-il deux plumes? 7. Écrit-il dans son cahier ou sur le tableau noir? 8. Écrit-il avec son crayon ou avec un morceau de craie?

C. *Translate into French:* 1. How are you, (my) boys? 2. Are you in your seat, Robert? 3. What are you doing? 4. Mary, are you writing your lesson? 5. Is John writing with a piece of chalk? 6. Am I at home or in the classroom? 7. Where is my brother now? 8. Is his sister here?

Exercise in Pronunciation

(1) Pronounce **suis** [sɥi], being careful to project the lips tensely and hold the tongue tip well forward as for [y] and [i] (see § 16, 2). It is well to pronounce in succession [y i], [y i], and then try to combine them in one sound. This sound is not like that of **oui** [wi] (see § 16, 3), in which the lips and tongue are less tensely advanced. Practise with **nuit** [nɥi], **huit** [ɥit], **lui** [lɥi]. Contrast the sound of **Louis** [lwi] with that of **lui** [lɥi].

(2) Pronounce: **sœur** [sœːr] (see § 12, 3), **classe** [klɑːs] (see § 13, 2), **maintenant** [mɛ̃tnɑ̃] (see § 12, 2). Note the difference in the sound value of the letter **a** in **la, voilà, papier, mademoiselle, argent, allez, place,** and in **classe, pas.**

(3) What new way of spelling the sound [o] is there in this vocabulary? What sound has the spelling **-ain** in **maintenant? -ien** in **bien? -ier** final in **papier, cahier?** What new way of spelling the sound [ɛ] have we in this vocabulary? We have had now three ways of spelling this sound: find an example of each.

(4) All cases of linking are indicated in the sentences in part A of the Exercise given above. Which consonant sounds seem to be oftenest linked thus far?

(5) Divide and pronounce by syllables: **écris** (see § 6, 2), **écrivez, maison, maintenant, aussi, ouvrez, fermez, cahier, papier, morceau, mademoiselle.**

LESSON IV

30. Some Pronoun Objects. *Him* or *it* = **le** (*m.*), and *her* or *it* = **la** (*f.*) both becoming **l'** before a vowel or **h** mute (§ 19, 1). They come next before the verb, or before **voici** and **voilà**:

Où est la plume? Je *l'*ai.	Where is the pen? I have it.
Où est le livre? *Le* voici.	Where is the book? Here it is.
Où est Marie? *La* voilà.	Where is Mary? There she is.

NOTE. — **Voici** and **Voilà** are derived from **vois** = *see* + **ici** = *here* and **vois** = *see* + **là** = *there* (literally, *see here, see there*), and, owing to their verbal force, govern words directly like transitive verbs.

EXERCISE IV

un (une) **après-midi** [œ̃napʀɛmidi] afternoon
une **école** [ynekɔl] school
une **leçon** [ləsɔ̃] **de français,** a French lesson
la **lettre** [lɛtʀ] letter
un **livre de français,** a French book, a book for learning French
la **main** [mɛ̃] hand
le **matin** [matɛ̃] morning
le **monsieur** [məsjø] gentleman
le **soir** [swaːr] evening

anglais [ɑ̃glɛ] English
français [fʀɑ̃sɛ] French

j'étudie [etydi] I am studying, do study
il **étudie** [etydi] he is studying, studies
je **ferme** [fɛʀm] I am closing
il **fait** [fɛ] he does, is doing
j'ouvre [uːvʀ] I am opening, do open
je **reste** [ʀɛst] I stay, am staying
il **reste** [ʀɛst] he stays, is staying
reste-t-il? [ʀestətil] does he stay? is he staying?
je **retourne** [ʒəʀturn] I go back, return
il **retourne** [ʀəturn] he goes back, returns
je **vais** [vɛ] I go, am going

à la **main,** in my (his, her, your, our, their) hand
le **matin** (le **soir,** l'**après-midi**), in the morning (evening, afternoon)
pardon! [pardɔ̃] I beg your pardon! Excuse me!

A. 1. Le matin je vais à l'école. 2. L'après-midi je retourne à la maison. 3. Le soir je reste à la maison et j'étudie ma leçon de français. 4. — Que faites-vous le matin, Louise? 5 — Je vais à l'école. 6. — Et Henri, que fait-il l'après-

midi? 7. — Il retourne à la maison. 8. — Reste-t-il à la maison le soir? 9. — Oui, il reste à la maison le soir et il étudie sa leçon d'anglais. 10. — Montrez-moi votre leçon de français, Jeanne [ʒan]. 11. — La voici; j'ai la leçon quatre. 12. — Et vous, Robert, vous n'avez pas votre livre de français. 13. — Pardon, mademoiselle, je l'ai à la main; le voici. 14. Mais je n'ai pas mon livre d'anglais; il est‿à la maison. 15. — Vous êtes‿à votre place, Louise. 16. — Pardon, mademoiselle, je ne suis pas‿à ma place; Marie est‿à ma place. 17. Je suis‿à la place de Jeanne et j'écris dans son cahier. 18. — Et Henri? 19. — Le voilà à sa place derrière Louise. 20. Il écrit sa leçon dans mon cahier avec sa plume.

B. *Substitute for each direct object the proper pronoun:* 1. Je ne ferme pas la porte. 2. J'ouvre la porte. 3. Je ferme la porte. 4. J'écris la lettre maintenant. 5. Je ne donne pas le morceau de craie à Louise. 6. J'ai la plume à la main. 7. Voilà la maison. 8. Voici le cahier. 9. Voici ma place. 10. Voilà mademoiselle Louise. 11. Voici madame Dupont [dypɔ̃]. 12. Voilà monsieur Dupont. 13. Voilà un monsieur à la porte. 14. Vous‿écrivez la leçon de français.

C. *Translate into French:* 1. I have your pen; I have it, I haven't it. 2. You have my notebook; you have it, you haven't it. 3. The teacher has a piece of chalk; he has it, he hasn't it. 4. I am studying my French lesson; I study it, I don't study it. 5. He is giving John the book; he gives it to John. 6. I beg your pardon, sir; he doesn't give it to John. 7. I open his door; I open it. 8. He is in his house. 9. He has his pen in his (**la**) hand. 10. He is not studying his French lesson. 11. He is studying it.

D. *Translate into French:* 1. Do you go (**Allez-vous**) to (the) school in the afternoon? 2. No, I go to school in the morning. I return home in the afternoon. 3. What do you do in the evening? 4. I stay at home and study my French lesson. I am studying (the) Lesson IV now. 5. You haven't your notebook. 6. I beg your pardon, sir; there it is behind my French book.

Exercise in Pronunciation

(1) Pronounce slowly by syllables, with attention to syllable stress: **matin, après-midi, étudie, français, anglais, montrez, pardon, monsieur, retourne.**

(2) What is the difference in pronunciation between **et** and **est?** Is there any difference between them in regard to linking (see § 18, 1)?

(3) In what words so far has the spelling combination **ai** been pronounced [e]? What sound value does this combination seem to stand for oftenest?

LESSON V

31. Plural Forms. 1. The plural of a noun or an adjective is regularly formed by adding **-s** to the singular:

Le grand roi, la grande reine.	The great king, the great queen.
Les grand*s* rois, les grande*s* reines.	The great kings, the great queens.

2. The plural of the definite article **le, la, l'** is **les:**

Les [le] **livres,** ***les*** [lez] **enfants.** The books, the children.

3. The plural of the personal pronoun **le, la, l'** is also **les:**

Je *les* ai. I have them (books, pens, etc.).

32. The Possessive Adjective. 1. The following are its forms in full (for agreement and repetition, see § 27):

Masculine	Feminine	Plural
mon [mɔ̃]	**ma** [ma]	**mes** [me], my
ton [tɔ̃]	**ta** [ta]	**tes** [te], thy, your
son [sɔ̃]	**sa** [sa]	**ses** [se], his, her, its
notre [nɔtr]	**notre** [nɔtr]	**nos** [no], our
votre [vɔtr]	**votre** [vɔtr]	**vos** [vo], your
leur [lœːr]	**leur** [lœːr]	**leurs** [lœːr], their

2. The forms **mon, ton, son,** are used instead of **ma, ta, sa** before feminines beginning with a vowel **or h** mute:

Mon [mɔ̃n] **amie** (*f.*).	My friend.
Son [sɔ̃n] **histoire** (*f.*).	His story.
Son [sɔ̃n] **autre plume** (*f.*).	His other pen.

3. Since **son (sa, ses)** means *his, her,* or *its,* it can be known only from the context which is meant.

EXERCISE V

un ami [œnami] friend
une amie [ynami] friend
le doigt [dwa] finger

cinq [sɛ̃k] five
six [sis] six
sept [sɛt] seven
huit [ɥit] eight
neuf [nœf] nine
dix [dis] ten

j'écris [ʒekri] I am writing
il écrit [ekri] he is writing
nous écrivons [nuzekrivɔ̃] we are writing
vous écrivez [vuzekrive] you are writing
écrivez! [ekrive] write! (*imperative*)

j'étudie [etydi] I am studying
il étudie [etydi] he is studying
nous étudions [nuzetydjɔ̃] we are studying
vous étudiez [vuzetydje] you are studying
étudiez! [etydje] study! (*imperative*)

je ferme [fɛrm] I am closing, do close
elle ferme [fɛrm] she is closing
nous fermons [fɛrmɔ̃] we close
vous fermez [fɛrme] you close
fermez! [fɛrme] close! shut! (*imperative*)

j'ouvre [uːvr] I am opening
elle ouvre [uːvr] she opens
nous ouvrons [nuzuvrɔ̃] we open
vous ouvrez [vuzuvre] you open
ouvrez! [uvre] open! (*imperative*)

je reste [rɛst] I stay, am staying
il reste [rɛst] he stays
nous restons [rɛstɔ̃] we are staying
vous restez [rɛste] you stay
restez! [rɛste] stay! (*imperative*)

je retourne [ʒərturn] I go back
elle retourne [rəturn] she goes back
nous retournons [nurturnɔ̃] we return
vous retournez [vurturne] you return
retournez! [rəturne] go back! return! (*imperative*)

je suis [sɥi] I am
il est [ilɛ] he (it) is
elle est [ɛlɛ], she (it) is
nous sommes [sɔm] we are
vous êtes [vuzɛt] you are

je vais [ve] I am going
il va [va] he is going

aujourd'hui [oʒurdɥi] to-day

combien de? [kɔ̃bjɛ̃də] how many? how much? (followed by a noun naming the object of inquiry)

A. (1) 1. Ouvrez vos livres, mes‿amis. 2. Que faites-vous? 3. — Nous‿ouvrons nos livres. 4. — Fermez vos livres. 5. — Nous les fermons. 6. — Nous‿avons‿aujourd'hui la leçon cinq [sɛ̃k]. 7. Ouvrez vos livres à la leçon cinq. 8. — Nous les‿ouvrons. 9. — Écrivez dans vos cahiers: je ferme, il ferme, nous fermons, vous fermez. 10. J'ouvre, il ouvre, nous‿ouvrons, vous‿ouvrez. 11. Je reste, il reste, nous restons, vous restez. 12. Je retourne, il retourne, nous retournons, vous retournez. 13. J'étudie, il étudie, nous‿étudions, vous‿étudiez. 14. J'ai, il a, nous‿avons, vous‿avez. 15. Je suis, il est, le mot est sur le tableau, il est sur le tableau; où est votre plume? Elle est‿à la maison, nous sommes, vous‿êtes. 16. J'écris, il écrit, nous‿écrivons, vous‿écrivez. 17. Je vais, il va, nous‿allons, vous‿allez.

(2) 1. — Maintenant fermez vos cahiers. 2. — Nous les fermons. 3. — Merci, mes‿amis. 4. Allez‿à la porte, Louise et Marie. 5. Que faites-vous? 6. — Nous‿allons‿à la porte. 7. — Retournez‿à votre place. 8. — Je vais‿à ma place. 9. — Où êtes-vous maintenant, mes‿amies? 10. — Nous sommes‿à nos places. 11. — Combien de mains avez-vous, mes‿enfants? 12. — Nous‿avons deux mains. 13. — Montrez-moi vos mains. 14. — Les voici. 15. Et nous‿avons dix [di] doigts.

B. (1) *What seems to be the ending of the verb that corresponds to* **nous**? *Find one exception in* A. *What ending seems to correspond to* **vous**? *Find two exceptions in* A.

(2) *Substitute the possessive adjective for the article-and-*de *phrase:* 1. La plume de Jean; les plumes de Jean. 2. Le père de Jeanne; les frères de Jeanne. 3. La mère de Marie et de Pierre; les frères de Marie et de Pierre. 4. La maison de Robert; les maisons de Robert. 5. L'école de Louise; l'école de Louise et de Marie. 6. La leçon de l'enfant; les leçons de l'enfant. 7. La leçon de deux enfants; les leçons de trois enfants. 8. Devant la maison de Marie. Derrière la maison de Pierre.

(3) *Make the nouns plural:* notre ami, votre doigt, sa main, leur cahier, votre enfant, son professeur, sa place, notre sœur.

Chez les Bouquinistes, Paris

L'Université de Paris

C. *Translate into French:* 1. Our friend, our friends; your finger, your fingers; his (her) hand, his (her) hands; their hands; her (his) letters, their letters. 2. What are you doing, Robert? 3. I am writing a letter to my mother. John is writing a letter to his sister. 4. Louise is writing to her father. She is writing her letter; he is writing his letter. 5. Write your letters, (my) children! 6. Do you open their letters? No, sir, we do not open their letters. 7. Henry's father does not open his letters; he does not open them. 8. Do you open your children's letters? No, sir, we do not open them. 9. I am at my place in the classroom. I have my books, my notebook, and my pen. 10. My friend John is at his seat, too. He has his pen in his hand. He is writing his French lesson in his notebook. 11. There he is in front of the window. He goes to school in the morning, but he does not stay at school. He returns home in the afternoon. 12. Show me your French book, John. Here it is on my table. — Excuse me, sir; I haven't it at (the) school. It is not here; it is at home.

Exercise in Pronunciation

(1) Pronounce after the teacher: œ̃pœːr, œ̃frœːr, œ̃nɔm, œ̃nɔ̃ːkl, sɔ̃pœːr, sɔ̃frœːr, sɔnɔ̃ːkl; samezɔ̃, sɔ̃nekɔl; ləpœːr, lamœːr, lezɑ̃fɑ̃; latɑ̃ːt, ləfrœːr, lezɔ̃ːkl; lɔmatɛ̃, ləswaːr, lezapremidi; ʒetydi melsɔ̃, ʒəlezetydi; ʒekri, ʒəlezekri; ʒədɔnvoliːvr arɔbeːr, ʒəledɔn arɔbeːr.

Observe the elision of the [ə] in the pronunciation of **mes leçons** [melsɔ̃]. The sound [ɔ], which is called often "mute e," disappears when the preceding syllable ends in a vowel sound followed by a single consonant sound, as in: **les leçons** [lelsɔ̃], **ses leçons** [selsɔ̃].

(2) In how many different ways are **un, son, les** pronounced? What decides this? What name do we give to the joining of words as in mezɑ̃fɑ̃, ʒəlezekri, sɔnɔ̃ːkl? Do we say **œ̃nekɔl or ynekɔl?**

(3) Write phonetically and pronounce: **le doigt, les doigts; l'ami, les amis; mon amie, mes amies.** Do these nouns change in sound in the plural, or only in spelling?

(4) Pronounce: œ̃dwa, œ̃nɔm; dømɛ̃, døzãfã; trwɑplas, trwɑzekɔl; katrɔkrɛjɔ̃, katrami; sɛ̃lsɔ̃, sɛ̃kami; sifrɛːr, siːzãfã; sɛmezɔ̃, sɛtɔm; qikaje, qitapremidi; nœmɔrso, nœvami; diswaːr, diːzãfã.

In how many ways is each numeral pronounced? On what does the change depend?

(5) Write phonetically and read aloud: **un doigt, deux doigts,** etc., up to 10; **un enfant, deux enfants,** etc., to 10.

(6) Write phonetically the answers to: 1. **Combien de doigts avez-vous?** 2. **Combien de tantes avez-vous?** 3. **Combien de professeurs de français avez-vous?** 4. **Combien de crayons avez-vous à l'école?** 5. **Combien de crayons avez-vous à la maison?** 6. **Combien d'oncles avez-vous** (*ou* **Combien avez-vous d'oncles)?**

(7) What have you to say about linking between: (*a*) Pronoun subject and verb? (*b*) Article and noun? (*c*) Possessive adjective and noun? (*d*) Forms of verb 'to be' and their complements?

Look for cases of each in A above.

LESSON VI

33. Present Indicative of *avoir, to have*

1. Affirmative		2. Negative	
I have, etc.		*I have not, etc.*	
j' ai	[ʒe]	**je n'ai pas**	[ʒənepɑ]
tu as	[tya]	**tu n'as pas**	[tynapɑ]
il a	[ila]	**il n'a pas**	[ilnapɑ]
nous avons	[nuzavɔ̃]	**nous n'avons pas**	[nunavɔ̃pɑ]
vous avez	[vuzave]	**vous n'avez pas**	[vunavepɑ]
ils ont	[ilzɔ̃]	**ils n'ont pas**	[ilnɔ̃pɑ]

34. Pronouns in Address. *You* is regularly **vous**; the form **tu** = *thou* or *you* is used in familiar address:

Avez-*vous* ma plume, monsieur?	Have you my pen, sir?
As-*tu* ta plume, mon enfant?	Have you your pen, my child?

N.B. — Translate *you* by **vous** in the exercises, unless the use of **tu** is required by the context.

35. Contractions. **De** + **le** and **de** + **les** are always contracted into **du** and **des**; the remaining forms are not contracted, thus, **de la, de l'** in full:

La plume *du* [dy] frère.	The brother's pen.
Les plumes *des* [de] sœurs.	The sisters' pens.
But: **La plume *de l'*élève.**	The pupil's pen.

36. The Partitive Noun and Pronoun. 1. *Some* or *any*, whether expressed or implied before a noun in English, is regularly expressed in French by **de** + the definite article:

Avez-vous *de la* craie?	Have you (some) chalk (lit., 'of the chalk')?
A-t-elle *du* pain?	Has she (any) bread?
J'ai *de l'*encre.	I have (some) ink.
A-t-il *des* frères?	Has he (any) brothers?

2. In a general negation the partitive is expressed by **de** alone:

Il n'a pas *de* pain.	He has no bread.
Il n'a pas *d'*amis.	He has no friends.

3. *Some* or *any* as a pronoun = **en**, which must be expressed in French, even when omitted in English (cf. § 80):

A-t-il de l'encre? — Il *en* a.	Has he (any) ink? — He has (some).
A-t-il une plume? — Il *en* a une.	Has he a pen? — He has one.

N.B. — **En**, like the other partitive expressions, is often equal to English *of it, of them*, especially when the object of the verb is a numeral not followed by its noun.

A-t-il une plume? — Il *en* a une.	Has he a pen? — He has one.
Combien de lettres écrivez-vous?— J'*en* écris quatre aujourd'hui.	How many letters do you write? — I am writing four (of them) to-day.

4. The position of the pronoun **en** in the sentence is different from the usage of English: **en** always comes directly *before* the verb, except in one instance (cf. § 113):

Avez-vous des crayons?	Have you (any) pencils?
Oui, monsieur, j'*en ai*.	Yes, sir, I *have some*.

EXERCISE VI

un **élève** [œnelɛːv] pupil
une **élève** [ynelɛːv] pupil
le **mur** [myːr] wall
le **plafond** [plafɔ̃] ceiling
le **plancher** [plɑ̃ʃe] floor
le **pupitre** [pypitr] desk (*pupil's*)

aller [ale] to go
je **vais** [ve] I am going, go, do go
il **va** [va] he is going, goes
nous **allons** [nuzalɔ̃] we go, are going
vous **allez** [vuzale] you are going, go
il **commence** [kɔmɑ̃ːs] he is beginning
écoutez! [ekute] listen! (*imperative*)
nous **entrons** (**dans**) [nuzɑ̃trɔ̃ dɑ̃] we enter, go in

il **marche** [marʃ] he walks, is walking, does walk
parler [parle] speak (*infinitive*)

je **sors** [sɔːr] I go out, am going out
il **sort** [sɔːr] he goes out
nous **sortons** [sɔrtɔ̃] we go out
vous **sortez** [sɔrte] you go out
nous **voulons** [vulɔ̃] we wish, want, are willing
vous **voulez** [vule] you wish, want, are willing

en [ɑ̃] of it, of them (*pronoun*)
en [ɑ̃] in (*preposition; to be used by pupils only in expressions found in text*)

après [aprɛ] after
par [par] by

j'en suis [ʒɑ̃sqi] I belong to it, am of it, of them.
n'est-ce pas? [nɛspɑ] don't you? don't we? isn't it true?

A. 1. Écoutez, mes‿amis. Nous sommes‿en classe de français. En êtes-vous, Robert? 2. — Oui, monsieur (mademoiselle), j'en suis, et mon‿amie Marie en‿est‿aussi. 3. Nous sommes dix‿élèves et le professeur. 4. Nous‿avons des livres, des crayons et du papier. 5. Le professeur en‿a aussi. Il a aussi de la craie. 6. Nous‿étudions le français. 7. — Vous voulez parler français, n'est-ce pas? 8. — Oui, monsieur, nous voulons parler français. 9. — Eh bien (*Well then*), écoutez: La classe a quatre murs. 10. Voilà les murs de la classe. 11. Voilà le plafond, et vous marchez sur le plancher. 12. Combien de portes la classe a-t-elle (*has the classroom*)? — Elle en‿a une. 13. — Combien de fenêtres? — Elle en‿a trois. 14. — Les‿élèves ont des pupitres et le professeur a une table. 15. Elle est devant le professeur, et le professeur

est devant les élèves. 16. Nous entrons dans la classe par la porte, nous allons à nos places, nous ouvrons les livres et la leçon commence. 17. Après la classe, nous fermons les livres et nous sortons par la porte. 18. Nous sortons par la fenêtre. Pierre [pjɛːr]. 19. — Pardon, mademoiselle, nous ne sortons pas par la fenêtre.

B. (1) *Using in turn as subjects* je, il, elle, vous *in place of* nous, *rewrite affirmatively and negatively, the sentences* 16–19 *of* A: Nous entrons dans la classe, etc., *to the end.*

(2) *Substitute the partitive expression for the article and read aloud:* les doigts, les mains, le papier, les amis, les amies, les après-midi, la craie, les mots.

(3) *Supply the partitive expression and read aloud:* 1. Ils ont —— frères et —— sœurs. 2. Nous ouvrons —— portes et —— fenêtres. 3. Ils ont —— doigts et —— mains. 4. Donnez-moi —— papier et —— plumes. 5. Mademoiselle a —— craie. 6. Elle écrit —— mots dans son cahier. 7. Nous écrivons —— mots dans nos cahiers. 8. Vous donnez —— papier à Robert. 9. Il a —— craie à la main.

(4) *a. Write affirmative and negative answers, using the partitive pronoun:* 1. Avez-vous des frères? 2. A-t-il du papier? 3. Avons-nous des doigts? 4. Êtes-vous de notre classe? 5. Étudions-nous des leçons? 6. Ont-ils des sœurs? 7. Avez-vous de la craie à la main?

b. Write negative answers to the questions under **a**, *first keeping the noun objects, and then substituting the partitive pronoun for the noun objects.*

(5) *Conjugate:* 1. Je n'ai pas d'amis. 2. Je n'en ai pas.

C. *Translate into French:* 1. You are in the classroom, (my) children. 2. You have paper, pens, pencils, and notebooks. 3. The classroom has doors, windows, and walls. 4. Listen, Louise, you are not writing your lesson. 5. I have no paper, sir. 6. You haven't any? Excuse me, you have some. There it is in front of Robert. 7. I have no chalk. Pierre has some chalk in his hand, and Jeanne has some too. 8. How many fingers have you? I have ten. 9. There are ten of us (we are ten) pupils in the classroom with our teacher. 10. Do you

belong to (Are you of) the French class, Marie? 11. Yes, sir, I belong to it, and Henri belongs to it too. 12. What do you want? We want to speak French.

D. (1) After several readings aloud, first by the teacher, then by the class in concert, the pupils should be asked to retell orally and in writing the facts about the classroom in A.

(2) Dictation: Lesson V, A.

Exercise in Pronunciation

Write phonetically and pronounce: **un oncle, des oncles; un élève, des élèves; un mot, des mots; une tante, des tantes; un pupitre, des pupitres; un plancher, des planchers; un mur, des murs.** What is the plural of **un, une?**

LESSON VII

37. Present Indicative of *avoir* (*continued*)

1. Interrogative		2. Negative Interrogative	
Have I? etc.		*Have I not? etc.*	
ai-je?	[ɛːʒ]	**n'ai-je pas?**	[nɛːʒpɑ]
as-tu?	[aty]	**n'as-tu pas?**	[natypɑ]
a-t-il?	[atil]	**n'a-t-il pas?**	[natilpɑ]
avons-nous?	[avɔ̃nu]	**n'avons-nous pas?**	[navɔ̃nupɑ]
avez-vous?	[avevu]	**n'avez-vous pas?**	[navevupɑ]
ont-ils?	[ɔ̃til]	**n'ont-ils pas?**	[nɔ̃tilpɑ]

38. Interrogation. 1. When the subject of an interrogative sentence is a noun, the word order is noun-verb-pronoun:

L'homme est-il là?	Is the man there?

2. This form of question may be combined with an interrogative word:

Mais Jean où est-il?	But where is John?
Combien de plumes Jean a-t-il?	How many pens has John?

3. What? (as direct object or predicate of a verb) = **que?** See also § 19, 1:

Qu'avez-vous là?	What have you there?

EXERCISE VII

le **beurre** [bœːr] butter
la **bouche** [buːʃ] mouth
la **dent** [dɑ̃] tooth
la **langue** [lɑ̃ːg] tongue, language
une **oreille** [ɔrɛːj] ear
le **pain** [pɛ̃] bread, loaf of bread
la **tête** [tɛːt] head
les **yeux** *m.* [lezjø] eyes

onze [ɔ̃ːz] eleven
douze [duːz] twelve
treize [trɛːz] thirteen
quatorze [katɔrz] fourteen
quinze [kɛ̃ːz] fifteen

il **donne** [dɔn] he is giving, gives
nous **donnons** [dɔnɔ̃] we are giving, we give
vous **donnez** [dɔne] you are giving
nous **écoutons** [nuzekutɔ̃] we listen
vous **écoutez** [vuzekute] you are listening

j'**entends** [ɑ̃tɑ̃] I hear, do hear
il **entend** [ɑ̃tɑ̃] he hears
nous **entendons** [nuzɑ̃tɑ̃dɔ̃] we do hear
vous **entendez** [vuzɑ̃tɑ̃de] you are hearing

je **mange** [mɑ̃ːʒ] I am eating
elle **mange** [mɑ̃ːʒ] she is eating
nous **mangeons** [mɑ̃ːʒɔ̃] we do eat
vous **mangez** [mɑ̃ːʒe] you eat

je **parle** [parl] I am speaking
elle **parle** [parl] she talks, speaks
nous **parlons** [parlɔ̃] we talk
vous **parlez** [parle] you speak

je **vois** [vwa] I see, do see
elle **voit** [vwa] she sees, is seeing
nous **voyons** [vwajɔ̃] we do see
vous **voyez** [vwaje] you are seeing

mais [mɛ] but, why (*not in a question*); **mais non!** Why no!

A. (1) 1. Écoutez, Jean! Écoutez, mes amis! Que faites-vous? 2. — Nous écoutons. 3. — Écrivez dans votre cahier, Marie! 4. Marie où écrit-elle? 5. — Elle écrit dans son cahier. 6. — Donnez votre plume à Robert. 7. — Que donnez-vous à Robert, Henri? 8. Je donne ma plume à Robert. 9. — Qu'avez-vous à la main, Louise? 10. — J'ai à la main mon livre de français. 11. — N'avez-vous pas aussi votre crayon à la main? 12. — Oui, mademoiselle; et j'ai aussi des livres et du papier, mais Pierre n'en a pas.

(2) 1. — Combien de têtes avez-vous, Maurice [mɔris]? 2. — J'en ai une, et Henri en a une et le professeur en a une aussi. 3. — N'avez-vous pas deux mains, Pierre? 4. — Oui, mademoiselle, j'en ai deux. 5. — Et combien de doigts Louise

a-t-elle? 6. — Elle en‿a dix [dis] et Marie a dix doigts [didwa] aussi. 7. — Combien de mains Robert a-t-il? Il en‿a deux. 8. Nous‿avons des‿oreilles, des‿yeux et une bouche. 9. Dans la bouche nous‿avons une langue et des dents. 10. — Le professeur a-t-il des‿oreilles aussi? — Oui, il en‿a deux. 11. — Que faites-vous avec vos‿oreilles, mes‿amis (mon‿ami)? 12. — Nous‿entendons (j'entends) avec les‿oreilles, nous voyons (je vois) avec les‿yeux, nous parlons (je parle) avec la langue et la bouche, et nous mangeons (je mange) avec les dents. 13. — Que mangez-vous? — Nous mangeons du pain avec du beurre. 14. — Qu'avez-vous dans la bouche? — J'ai un morceau de pain dans la bouche.

B. (1) *Say in French:* I (we, you) open; I (we, you) close; I (we, you) go in; I (we, you) go out; I (we, you) stay; I (we, you) study; I (we, you) write; I (we, you) listen; I (we, you) hear; I (we, you) see; I (we, you) talk; I (we, you) eat; listen, eat, speak, stay, go out, come in, write; I (we, you) go; I am, we (you) are.

(2) *Complete:* 1. Vous voyez avec ——. 2. J'entends avec ——. 3. Nous mangeons avec ——. 4. Vous parlez avec ——. 5. —— mangez-vous? 6. Je —— pain avec —— beurre. 7. Combien —— doigts avez-vous? 8. J'—— ai dix (*See* A, (2), 6). 9. Et combien —— yeux [jø] (*preceding* [ə] *elided*) le professeur a-t-il? 10. Il —— a deux.

(3) *Study the examples of the use of* **en** *in* A, (2) *and try to make a rule for the use of* **en** *with numerals.*

C. *Translate into French:* 1. Do you want some butter with your bread? 2. I have no bread. 3. But you have some butter. 4. I beg your pardon, I have none (haven't any). 5. Has the man ears and eyes and teeth? 6. He has ears and eyes, but he has no teeth. 7. How many ears has he? 8. He has two. 9. I hear with my (the) ears and see with my (the) eyes. 10. Have you no teeth? 11. I have teeth and I am eating some bread, but I have no butter. 12. Do you want some? Why (**Mais**) yes, sir (miss). 13. I have ten fingers; he has ten. 14. There are fifteen of us pupils (We are fifteen pupils) in the classroom. 15. I see fifteen in the classroom.

Exercise in Pronunciation

(1) Read: siliːvr, siːzami, elɑ̃nasis; nœdɑ̃, nœvami, vuzɑ̃navenœf; didwa, navɔ̃nupɑdiːzami? ləprɔfesœːrɑ̃nadis.

In how many ways are the words for 6, 9 and 10 pronounced? Explain.

In how many ways are 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8 pronounced (see Lesson V, *Exercise in Pronunciation, 4*)? Explain.

Count: ɔ̃ːz, duːz, treːz, katɔrz, kɛ̃ːz.

Count 1–15, putting after each numeral a noun beginning with a consonant, and then one beginning with a vowel. For example: **5 crayons, 5 élèves.** Write out the combinations in phonetic characters.

(2) What two ways do you know of spelling the sound [ɛ̃]? What three ways of spelling the sound [o]? What sound does the letter **o** (not in combination or nasal) usually represent? One exception so far: what is it? What sound does the letter **a** (not in combination or nasal) usually represent? Name the two exceptions up to this point. What sound does the combination **ai** (not nasal) usually represent? Name the two exceptions. What is the position of your lips in pronouncing [ɔ] as in **porte, oreille,** so as to get the French quality (see § 14, 1)? Note how the **-eille** of **oreille** gives [ɛːj]. Pronounce **le soleil** [sɔlɛːj], *sun.* What is the name of this sound? (See § 16, 1).

LESSON VIII

39. Present Indicative of *être, to be*

1. Affirmative		2. Negative	
I am, etc.		*I am not, etc.*	
je suis	[ʒəsqi]	**je ne suis pas**	[ʒənsqipɑ]
tu es	[tyɛ]	**tu n'es pas**	[tynɛpɑ]
il est	[ilɛ]	**il n'est pas**	[ilnɛpɑ]
nous sommes	[nusɔm]	**nous ne sommes pas**	[nunsɔmpɑ]
vous êtes	[vuzɛt]	**vous n'êtes pas**	[vunɛtpɑ]
ils sont	[ilsɔ̃]	**ils ne sont pas**	[ilnəsɔ̃pɑ]

3. Interrogative

Am I? etc.

suis-je?	[sɥiːʒ]
es-tu?	[ɛty]
est-il?	[ɛtil]
sommes-nous?	[sɔmnu]
êtes-vous	[ɛtvu]
sont-ils?	[sɔ̃til]

4. Negative Interrogative

Am I not? etc.

ne suis-je pas?	[nəsɥiːʒpɑ]
n'es-tu pas?	[nɛtypɑ]
n'est-il pas?	[nɛtilpɑ]
ne sommes-nous pas?	[nəsɔmnupɑ]
n'êtes-vous pas?	[nɛtvupɑ]
ne sont-ils pas?	[nəsɔ̃tilpɑ]

40. Observe that **il** and **elle** mean not only *he* and *she*, but also *it*, since there are but two genders of nouns in French:

Où est la plume? *Elle* est ici.	Where is the pen? It is here.
Où sont les plumes? *Elles* sont ici.	Where are the pens? They are here.

EXERCISE VIII

la carte [kart] map, card
le contraire [kɔ̃trɛːr] opposite
la France [frɑ̃ːs] France
le jour [ʒuːr] day
la nuit [nɥi] night

autre [otr] other
bon [bɔ̃] good
fermé [fɛrme] closed
ouvert [uvɛːr] open
petit [pəti] small, little
tout [tu] all; (*as a pronoun*) everything

quinze [kɛ̃ːz] fifteen
seize [sɛːz] sixteen
dix-sept [dissɛt] seventeen
dix-huit [dizɥit] eighteen
dix-neuf [diznœf] nineteen
vingt [vɛ̃] twenty

comprendre [kɔ̃prɑ̃ːdr] understand (*infin.*)
je comprends [kɔ̃prɑ̃] I understand, do understand
il **comprend** [kɔ̃prɑ̃] he does understand
nous **comprenons** [kɔ̃prənɔ̃] we understand
vous **comprenez** [kɔ̃prəne] you understand

compter [kɔ̃te] count (*infin.*)
comptez! [kɔ̃te] count! (*imperative*)
dormir [dɔrmiːr] sleep (*infin.*), be asleep
entendre [ɑ̃tɑ̃ːdr] hear (*infin.*)
manger [mɑ̃ːʒe] eat (*infin.*)
ils **restent**, elles **restent** [rɛst] they stay, remain
nous **tâchons (de)** [tɑːʃɔ̃] we are trying (to), etc.
vous **tâchez (de)** [tɑːʃe] you are trying (to), etc.

bien [bjɛ̃] well, very well
pour [pur] for, in order to
c'est [sɛ] it is, that is

voulez-vous bien? [vulevubjɛ̃] will you (please)? are you willing to?

A. (1) 1. — Où êtes-vous, mes‿amis? 2. — Nous sommes‿à l'école, dans la classe. 3. — Que voyez-vous, Louise? 4. — Je vois une porte, des fenêtres, des murs, un plafond, un plancher, un tableau noir, et notre professeur. 5. — C'est tout, Pierre? 6. — Non, monsieur (mademoiselle); je vois aussi des livres, des plumes, des cahiers, vingt‿élèves, des crayons, des pupitres. 7. Sur le mur je vois une carte de France. 8. — C'est bon, Pierre. Vous voyez tout. 9. Voulez-vous bien compter les élèves? 10. Jeanne: — un‿élève, deux‿élèves ..... vingt‿élèves. 11. — Bien! combien d'élèves êtes-vous? 12. — Nous sommes vingt‿élèves. 13. — Et la porte, est-‿elle ouverte [uvɛrt]? 14. Non, mademoiselle, elle est fermée [fɛrme]. 15. — Et les fenêtres, sont-‿elles ouvertes? 16. — Une des fenêtres est‿ouverte et les deux‿autres sont fermées.

(2) 1. — Que faites-vous en classe? 2. — Nous‿étudions le français. 3. Le professeur parle français, nous‿écoutons et nous tâchons de comprendre. 4. — Comprenez-vous les mots « ouverte » et « fermée »? 5. — Oui, mademoiselle. Nous‿ouvrons la porte, elle est‿*ouverte*. 6. Nous‿entrons dans la classe et nous fermons la porte. Elle est *fermée* maintenant. 7. — Bon! Votre bouche est-‿elle ouverte? 8. — Oui, mademoiselle. Je l'ouvre pour parler et pour manger. 9. — Et vos‿oreilles? — Elles sont‿ouvertes. Elles restent [rɛst] ouvertes pour entendre. 10. — Et vos‿yeux, restent-ils [rɛstətil] ouverts [uvɛːr]? 11. — Non, mademoiselle, je les‿ouvre le matin; le jour ils restent ouverts. La nuit je les ferme pour dormir. 12. — Bien! « Porte ouverte » est le contraire de « porte fermée. » 13. Écoutez bien: mes‿yeux sont‿ouverts [uvɛːr], les deux portes sont‿ouvertes [uvɛrt]. 14. Henri est-‿il petit [pəti]? Louise est-‿elle petite [pətit]?

B. (1) *Where reasonably possible, make every verb in* A *negative.*

(2) *Substitute the proper personal pronoun for the noun object in:* 1. Je vois une porte. 2. Nous écoutons le professeur. 3. Il compte les élèves. 4. Ouvrez-vous la fenêtre? 5. Com-

prenez-vous le mot? 6. Vous ne voyez pas mes dents. 7. Ne voyez-vous pas mes dents? 8. Ne fermez-vous pas les yeux pour dormir? 9. Je vois une carte de France. 10. Je ne comprends pas le mot. 11. Avez-vous des amis? 12. Nous avons des dents. 13. Nous entendons des mots. 14. Nous voyons nos amies. 15. J'entends le mot.

(3) *Make sentences of the groups of words, supplying lacking words and using as many partitives as possible:* 1. J'ai, ne —— pas, en. 2. Il, dents, a. 3. Sœurs, avez-vous? 4. J'ai, quatre. 5. Vous tâchez, la nuit, de dormir. 6. Il voit, portes, et fenêtres. 7. Nous, en, voyons, ne —— pas. 8. Entendez-vous? ne —— pas. 9. Porte ouverte, porte fermée, le contraire. 10. Portes, ouvertes, mais, fenêtres, fermées. 11. Pierre, petit et Louise, petite.

C. *Translate into French:* 1. Are your books open? Are the windows open? 2. Has the classroom windows and doors? 3. It has windows, doors, walls, desks, a ceiling, and a floor. 4. Have the pupils books? Yes. There are the pupils' books. 5. They have notebooks too, and pens, and paper, and pencils, but they have no chalk. 6. The teacher has some in his hand. 7. What are you doing? We are listening to the teacher. 8. She is speaking French and we are trying to understand her. 9. Do you understand her, Marie? Yes, I understand her. 10. That's good.

D. *The differences of spelling and pronunciation of* **ouvert, ouverte; petit, petite** *are due to a difference in what? To judge by* **fermé, fermée,** *do these same differences appear in every case? Would the addition of an* **s** *for the plural make any difference in the pronunciation of any of these words?*

Exercise in Pronunciation

Écrivez en caractères phonétiques et prononcez: 1. Je vois vingt élèves. 2. Où êtes-vous, mes amis? 3. Vous voyez les livres. 4. Nous entrons dans la classe. 5. Vos yeux restent ouverts. 6. Nous étudions le français. 7. Vous ouvrez la porte. 8. Il compte les élèves.

LESSON IX

41. The Regular Conjugations. French verbs are conveniently divided, according to the infinitive endings **-er, -ir, -re,** into three conjugations:

I	II	III
Donner [dɔne] *to give*	**Finir** [fini:r] *to finish*	**Vendre** [vɑ̃:dr] *to sell*

Like these are conjugated all regular verbs with corresponding infinitive endings.

42. Present Indicative of *donner,* to *give*

1. Affirmative		2. Negative	
I give, am giving, etc.		*I do not give, am not giving, etc.*	
je donn *e*	[ʒədɔn]	je ne donn *e* pas	[ʒəndɔnpɑ]
tu donn *es*	[tydɔn]	tu ne donn *es* pas	[tyndɔnpɑ]
il donn *e*	[ildɔn]	il ne donn *e* pas	[ilnədɔnpɑ]
nous donn *ons*	[nudɔnɔ̃]	nous ne donn *ons* pas	[nundɔnɔ̃pɑ]
vous donn *ez*	[vudɔne]	vous ne donn *ez* pas	[vundɔnepɑ]
ils donn *ent*	[ildɔn]	ils ne donn *ent* pas	[ilnədɔnpɑ]

3. Interrogative		4. Negative Interrogative	
Am I giving? do I give? etc.		*Am I not giving? do I not give? etc.*	
donné-je?	[dɔnɛ:ʒ]	ne donné-je pas?	[nədɔnɛ:ʒpɑ]
donnes-tu?	[dɔnty]	ne donnes-tu pas?	[nədɔntypɑ]
donne-t-il?	[dɔntil]	ne donne-t-il pas?	[nədɔntilpɑ]
donnons-nous?	[dɔnɔ̃nu]	ne donnons-nous pas?	[nədɔnɔ̃nupɑ]
donnez-vous?	[dɔnevu]	ne donnez-vous pas?	[nədɔnevupɑ]
donnent-ils?	[dɔntil]	ne donnent-ils pas?	[nədɔntilpɑ]

43. Interrogation. By prefixing the words **est-ce que?** literally, *is it that?* any statement may be turned into a question:

Vous avez mon canif.	You have my penknife.
Est-ce que **vous avez mon canif?**	Have you my penknife?
Est-ce que **vous n'aimez pas la marche?**	Don't you like walking?

NOTE. — The first singular interrogative form (*e.g.,* **donné-je? suis-je?** etc.) is avoided in most verbs, and *must* be avoided in some, by using **est-ce que?** In the exercises, use **est-ce que?** everywhere with the 1st singular

44. The Demonstrative Adjective. 1. The following are its forms, and they must be repeated before each noun to which they refer:

This, that = { **ce** [sə], before a masculine beginning with a consonant. **cet** [sɛt], before a m. beginning with a vowel or **h** mute. **cette** [sɛt], before any feminine.

These, those = **ces** [se], before any plural.

2. To distinguish *this* from *that*, or for emphasis, add **-ci** (= **ici**) and **-là** respectively to the noun:

***Ce* livre, *cet* homme, *cette* amie.**	This (or that) book, man, friend.
***Ce* crayon-*ci* et *ces* plumes-*là*.**	This pencil and those pens.

a. In the combinations **c'est** and **ce sont** the demonstrative pronoun **ce** is often equal to English *it* (standing for and pointing to the real subject that follows), *he, she, they*.

C'est mon ami Pierre.	It (he) is my friend Pierre.
***Ce* sont les enfants de ma tante.**	They are my aunt's children.
Est-*ce* [ɛs] vous? C'est vous.	Is it (that) you? It is you.

EXERCISE IX

un **âge** [œnɑːʒ] age
un **an** [œnɑ̃] year
le **cousin** [kuzɛ̃] cousin
la **cousine** [kuzin] cousin
la **fille** [fiːj] daughter, girl
le **fils** [fis] son
le **garçon** [garsɔ̃] boy
la **marche** [marʃ] walking
le **sport** [spɔːr] sport

fort [fɔːr] strong
grand [grɑ̃] large, tall
quel? *m.* [kɛl] what?

aimer [ɛme] like, love
j'aime [ɛm] I (do) like, love

je m'appelle [mapɛl] I am named, my name is
il s'appelle [sapɛl] he is named
nous nous appelons [nunuzaplɔ̃] we are named, etc.
vous vous appelez [vuvuzaple] you are named

* **regarder** [rəgarde] look (at)
je regarde [ʒərgard] I look at
il regarde [rəgard] he is looking
nous regardons [nurgardɔ̃]
vous regardez [vurgarde]

dites [dit] say, tell (*imperative of* **dire**)

attentivement [atɑ̃tivmɑ̃] attentively
comment? [kɔmɑ̃] how?
lentement [lɑ̃t(ə)mɑ̃] slowly
plus [ply] more
vite [vit] rapidly, quickly
parce que [parskə] because

EXERCISE IX (Continued)

quel âge avez-vous [kɛlɑːʒavevu] how old are you?
j'ai trois ans [ʒetrwɑzɑ̃] I am three; **il a quinze ans,** he is fifteen.
s'il vous plaît [silvuplɛ] please.

* Endings like **donner,** but observe the pronunciation of the pres. indicative. See Lesson V, *Exercise in Pronunciation,* (1).

A. (1) 1. Comment vous‿appelez-vous [vuzaplevu[1]], mon ami? 2. — Je m'appelle Maurice, monsieur (mademoiselle). 3. — Quel âge avez-vous? 4. — J'ai quinze ans. 5. — Vous‿êtes grand [grɑ̃]! Est-ce que votre père est grand aussi? 6. — Oui, monsieur (mademoiselle), il est grand, mais ma mère est petite; elle n'est pas grande [grɑ̃ːd]. 7. — Est-ce que vous‿avez des frères et des sœurs? 8. — Oui, monsieur (mademoiselle), j'ai un frère et trois sœurs. 9. Mon frère s'appelle Édouard [edwaːr], et mes sœurs s'appellent Germaine [ʒɛrmɛn], Jeanne et Adèle [adɛl]. 10. Édouard a treize ans; il est petit; mais très fort (fɔːr). 11. Germaine a **huit**‿ans, Jeanne a dix-sept‿ans, et Adèle en‿a dix-neuf. 12. Elles sont grandes [grɑ̃ːd] et fortes [fɔrt]. 13. Moi, je suis très fort aussi et j'aime les sports. 14. J'aime le tennis [tɛnis], le baseball [besbal] et la marche. 15. Mes sœurs aiment le tennis; mais‿elles n'aiment pas la marche.

(2) 1. — Est-ce que cette petite fille-ci est‿une de vos sœurs? 2. — Non, mademoiselle, c'est (*she is*) la sœur de ce petit garçon-là. 3. — Et ces trois petites filles-là? 4. — Non, mes sœurs ne sont pas‿à l'école; elles sont‿à la maison. 5. Ces grandes filles-là sont les‿enfants de mon‿oncle. 6. Ce sont (*They are*) mes cousines, et cet‿élève-ci est son fils. 7. C'est (*He is*) mon cousin. 8. — Est-ce que cet‿élève-là écoute le professeur? 9. — Oui, il l'écoute attentivement, mais‿il ne comprend pas très bien, parce que le professeur parle très vite. 10. Parlez plus lentement, monsieur, s'il vous plaît. 11. Nous‿écoutons très‿attentivement mais nous ne vous comprenons pas.

[1] Observe the disappearance of the [ə] in the pronunciation of **appelez** [aple]. See Lesson V, *Exercise in Pronunciation,* (1).

B. *Write, supplying the proper form:* ce, cet, cette, *or* ces; —— enfant (*f.*), —— élève (*m. and f.*), —— fille, —— garçon, —— après-midi, —— carte, —— cartes, —— yeux, —— jour, —— nuit.

C. (1) *Translate into French:* 1. I count the pupils. 2. He studies his lesson. 3. She enters (in) the classroom. 4. We eat bread and butter. 5. You look at the map. 6. They begin the lesson. 7. Don't I speak French? (*see* § 43, *note*) 8. Doesn't he listen to the teacher? (*two ways*) 9. Don't we look at the map? (*two ways*) 10. Don't they study? 11. I do not close the door. 12. She does not eat butter. 13. We do not eat any. 14. You do not return home in the morning; you return home in the afternoon. 15. They do not come in.

(2) 1. I count the pupils; he counts them; they count the windows; we count them. 2. We do not stay at home in the morning; they stay at home in the evening. 3. He opens the door; they open it; it is open. 4. Look at the map! What do you see? 5. They look at it; they study it. 6. Come in! They enter (in) the classroom by the door. 7. They eat bread; they eat some. 8. Do you want (**Voulez-vous**) some bread? 9. Do you want some? Don't you want any? We eat none.

(3) *Dites en français:* 1. My name is Robert. 2. Her name is Adèle. 3. His name is Joffre [ʒɔfr]. 4. What is your name? 5. Their (*f.*) name is Hugo [ygo].

D. Dictation: Lesson VII, A, (2).

Exercise in Pronunciation

(1) Écrivez en caractères phonétiques et prononcez: 1. Ce garçon est petit. 2. Cette fille est petite. 3. Cette maison est grande. 4. Cet homme est grand. 5. Cet enfant est fort. 6. Mademoiselle est forte. 7. Le cahier est ouvert. 8. La porte est ouverte.

(2) Pronounce the feminine of **grand, ouvert, petit.**

LESSON X

45. Plural Forms. Note the following exceptions to the rule (§ 31) that the plural of nouns and adjectives is formed by adding **-s** to the singular:

1. Nouns in **-s, -x, -z,** and adjectives in **-s, -x,** remain unchanged in the plural, *e.g.,* **bra*s*, bra*s*,** *arm(s);* **voi*x*, voi*x*,** *voice(s);* **ne*z*, ne*z*,** *nose(s);* **ba*s*, ba*s*,** *low;* **vieu*x*, vieu*x*,** *old.*

2. Nouns and adjectives in **-au,** nouns in **-eu,** and a few nouns in **-ou,** add **-x** instead of **-s,** *e.g.,* **coute*au*, coute*aux*,** *knife, knives;* **be*au*, be*aux*,** *fine;* **je*u*, je*ux*,** *game(s);* **bij*ou*, bij*oux*,** *jewel(s);* **caill*ou*, caill*oux*,** *pebble(s),* and a few rarer nouns in **-ou.**

3. Nouns, and the commoner adjectives, in **-al** change **-al** to **-au** and add **-x** (as above), *e.g.,* **gén*éral*, gén*éraux*,** *general(s);* **riv*al*, riv*aux*,** *rival(s),* except **bal, bal*s*,** *ball(s),* and a few rarer nouns.

4. **Œil, yeux,** *eye(s);* **ciel, cieux,** *sky, skies, heaven(s).*

46. Contractions. The forms **à + le** and **à + les** are always contracted into **au** and **aux** respectively; the remaining forms are not contracted, thus, **à la, à l'** in full:

Je parle *au* [o] **frère.**	I speak to the brother.
Aux [o] **sœurs, *aux*** [oz] **hommes.**	To the sisters, to the men
But: **Je parle *à la* sœur, *à l'*homme.**	

47. Use of *il y a* [ilja]. 1. *There is* and *there are* are not only translated by **voilà,** but also by **il y a:**

***Voilà* des plumes sur la table.**	There are some pens on the table.
***Il y a* des plumes sur la table.**	There are some pens on the table.

2. Observe, however, that **voilà** answers the question 'where is?' 'where are?' and makes a specific statement about an object to which attention is directed by pointing or the like, while **il y a** does not answer the question 'where is?' 'where are?' but makes a general statement. **Voilà** is stressed, **il y a** is unstressed, just as in English *there is (are)* is usually stressed or unstressed according as it points out or merely makes a general statement.

3. **Il y a** governs nouns just as other transitive verbs do:

Je donne *des plumes* à Marie.	I give (some) pens to Mary.
Il y a *des plumes* sur la table.	There are (some) pens on the table.

EXERCISE X

le bas [bɑ] stocking
le bijou [biʒu] jewel
le bout [bu] tip, end
le bras [bra] arm
le cheval [ləʃval] horse
le corps [kɔːr] body
le couteau [kuto] (table-)knife
la différence [diferɑ̃ːs] difference
le général [ʒeneral] general
la jambe [ʒɑ̃ːb] leg
le nez [ne] nose
un œil [œnœːj] eye
le pied [pje] foot
le pluriel [plyrjɛl] plural
la voix [vwa] voice

beau [bo] fine, handsome, beautiful

vieux [vjø] old
vingt et un [vɛ̃teœ̃] 21
vingt-deux [vɛ̃tdø] 22
vingt-trois [vɛ̃ttrwɑ] 23
vingt-quatre [vɛ̃tkatr] 24
vingt-cinq [vɛ̃tsɛ̃k] 25
vingt-six [vɛ̃tsis] 26
vingt-sept [vɛ̃tsɛt] 27
vingt-huit [vɛ̃tqit] 28
vingt-neuf [vɛ̃tnœf] 29
trente [trɑ̃ːt] 30

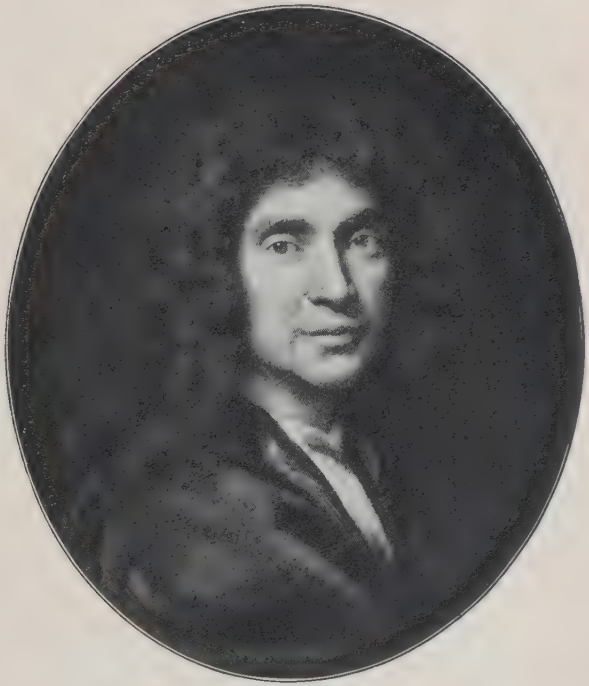
quelle? *f.* [kɛl] what?
qui? [ki] who? whom?

désirer [deziːre] wish, want
lire [liːr] read
porter [pɔrte] wear, carry
prononcer [prɔnɔ̃ːse] pronounce

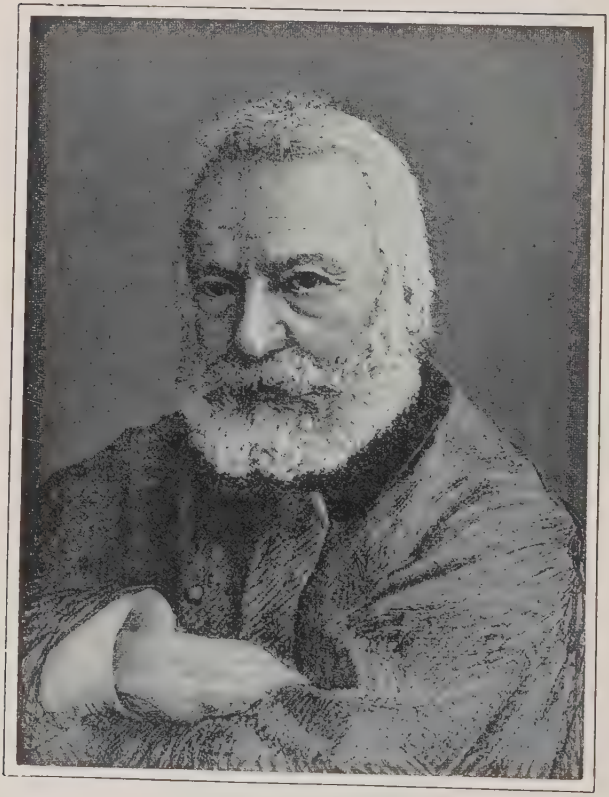
distinctement [distɛ̃kt(ə)mɑ̃] distinctly
en français [frɑ̃sɛ] in French

entre [ɑ̃ːtr] between
pourquoi? [purkwa] why?
quand? [kɑ̃] when?

A. (1) 1. Il y a vingt et un ou vingt-deux élèves dans cette classe de français. 2. Ils étudient le français parce qu'ils désirent le lire, le comprendre et le parler. 3. Pourquoi étudiez-vous le français? 4. Désirez (voulez)-vous lire des livres français, mes amis? 5. — Oui, monsieur, nous voulons (désirons) lire les livres de Victor Hugo, de Maupassant [mopɑsɑ̃], de Balzac [balzak], d'Anatole France [anatɔlfrɑ̃ːs], de Dumas [dyma], de Voltaire [vɔltɛːr], de Beaumarchais [bomarʃɛ], de Lesage [ləsaːʒ], de Molière [mɔljɛːr]; et nous désirons (voulons) comprendre le français et le parler aussi. 6. — Eh bien, mes amis, écoutez-moi très attentivement parce que je vais vous parler en français.



MOLIÈRE
(JEAN-BAPTISTE POQUELIN)



VICTOR HUGO

(2) 1. Entendez-vous ma voix? — Oui, monsieur. 2. — Comprenez-vous les mots quand je parle lentement? 3. — Oui, monsieur, mais nous ne comprenons pas quand vous parlez vite. 4. — Eh, bien, écoutez. Je vais parler lentement et prononcer distinctement. 5. J'ai un corps. Voici mon corps. 6. Voici mes deux bras. Au bout de mes deux bras, j'ai deux mains. 7. Il y a cinq doigts à cette main et cinq doigts à cette main; combien de doigts est-ce que j'ai? 8. Voici mon nez. Est-ce que j'ai un nez ou deux nez? 9. Et Louise, combien de nez a-t-elle? 10. A-t-elle trois‿yeux? Et un cheval combien d'yeux [djø] a-t-il? 11. Et combien d'yeux [djø] ont douze chevaux? 12. Et vous‿avez deux jambes [ʒɑ̃:b] et deux pieds [døpje], Henri, n'est-ce pas? 13. Et les chevaux combien de jambes ont-ils? — Ils‿en‿ont quatre. 14. — Combien de jambes ont sept chevaux? 15. — Qu'avez-vous aux pieds? — J'ai des bas aux pieds. 16. — Où portez-vous les bas, aux mains? 17. — Non, monsieur, je les porte aux pieds et aux jambes. 18. — Qu'avez-vous au bout des jambes? 19. — J'ai mes deux pieds au bout de mes jambes.

B. 1. Allez‿au tableau (noir), Jean. 2. Écrivez‿au pluriel: le bras, la voix, un général, un couteau. 3. Maintenant écrivez‿au singulier: les yeux, les chevaux. 4. Dit-on (*Do we, people, say*): « Il y a vingt-trois‿élèves dans cette classe, » ou « Voilà vingt-trois‿élèves dans cette classe? » 5. Dit-on: « Il y a mes deux bras », ou « Voilà mes deux bras »? 6. Dit-on: « Il y a notre professeur de français », ou « Voilà notre professeur de français »? 7. Quelle est la différence entre: « Voilà deux‿élèves qui n'écoutent pas! » et « Il y a deux‿élèves qui n'écoutent pas »?

C. *Translate into French:* 1. There are twenty-nine pupils in this French class. 2. The teacher speaks to the pupils in French. 3. He speaks slowly and the pupils try (**tâchent de**) to understand him. 4. He says (**dit**): " What is your name? How old are you? Why do you study French? " 5. " My name is Edward. I am sixteen. 6. I am studying because I wish to read, understand, speak, and write (the) French. 7. Will you (**Voulez-vous bien**) speak slowly?"

Exercise in Pronunciation

(1) Write phonetically and pronounce: **mon bras, mes bras; sa voix, leurs voix; un bas, vos bas; son père est vieux; ses amis sont vieux; voici leurs couteaux; ces enfants sont beaux; les bijoux de cette dame sont très beaux.**

(2) Compare the pronunciation of the singular and plural of the new words. Do they differ as to pronunciation from words that make their plural according to § 31? What will usually indicate to the ear the plural of such words?

(3) Write phonetically and read aloud: **un général, des généraux; un cheval, des chevaux; à l'œil, aux yeux; au ciel, aux cieux.**

(4) Is this a mere spelling change as in **livres, bijoux?**

(5) Count aloud 1–30, putting after each numeral, first a noun beginning with a consonant and then one beginning with a vowel: *e.g.*, **vingt-cinq couteaux, vingt-cinq amis.** Note that the final letter of **vingt** is heard as **t** in 21–29.

(6) Note the pronunciation of **bras, tu as** (§ 33), as compared with **bas, pas.** What is the usual pronunciation of the letter **a** (alone and not nasal)? Is this true of **âge?** of **nous tâchons?**

(7) Contrast the pronunciation of **le soir, pourquoi, je vois, la voix, voici, voilà** with that of **trois.** What seems to be the usual sound value of the spelling **oi?**

REVIEW OF VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION
No. 1

(1) *Nommez* (Name) *les parties* (parts) *du corps* (12) *dont* (of which) *vous savez* (know) *le nom* (name).

(2) *Quels sont les membres* (members) *d'une famille* (family)?

(3) *Nommez tous* (*pluriel de* **tout**) *les objets* (objects) *dans la classe dont vous savez le nom.*

(4) *Donnez les contraires de:* nous ouvrons; le jour; petit; vite; nous sortons; ils ouvrent.

(5) *What words or expressions do you think of in connection with the following?* le garçon; le corps; l'oncle; le crayon; le plafond; l'après-midi; en anglais; devant; voilà; le cahier;

désirez-vous? pourquoi; j'écoute; la nuit; la fille; la famille; le matin; de.

(6) *Fill in blanks with appropriate words:* 1. Où sont vos mains? Les voilà au —— de mes ——. 2. J'—— votre voix, mais je ne vous —— pas. Pourquoi? Parce que vous parlez très ——. 3. J'étudie le français —— je désire —— les livres de Balzac. 4. Les hommes ont deux ——; les —— en ont quatre. 5. Il —— vingt-trois —— dans cette classe. 6. Nous —— avec les dents; nous —— avec les oreilles; nous —— avec les yeux. 7. Nous —— de la salle de classe par la porte. 8. Donnez-moi un —— de pain avec du ——. 9. Sur le mur il y a une —— de France. 10. Nous tâchons de vous ——, mais vous —— très vite; —— vous parler plus ——? 11. Je ferme les yeux pour ——. 12. Quel âge a-t-il? Il —— vingt ——. 13. J'—— avec ma plume dans mon ——. 14. Comment vous —— vous? Je m'—— Henri; ma sœur s'—— Louise. 15. Montrez —— votre professeur de français, s'il ——. Le ——, monsieur.

(7) *What verbs do you know (seven or eight) that indicate the activities (a) of the brain, the eyes, or the ears, or (b) of the limbs? Use each in a sentence.*

Pronunciation

(1) To judge from words like **papier, pied,** what sound value does the spelling **ie** usually have? Indicate in phonetic characters.

(2) What is the sound value of the combination **ien,** as in **bien, combien?** Of the combinations **in, ain?** Of the combination **un** as in **un, Verdun?**

(3) What two sounds has the letter **c?** Compare **morceau, ciel, c'est, garçon, français** with **carte, crayon, compter,** and make a rule (*see* § 5, 4).

(4) What two sounds has the letter **s?** Compare **soir, sœur, professeur** with **maison, vous avez,** and make a rule (*see, in part,* § 18, 1).

(5) Pronounce: **avec, voir, par, sœur, anglais, est, doigt, nuit, huit, fermez, les yeux, cousin, aimer** (Lesson I), **cheval**

[ʃəval], **général, grand, fils.** Are final consonants usually sounded in French? How does **fils** compare in sound with other words ending in **s** as far as we have gone?

(6) What are the usual sound values for the spellings **-on, -en, -an, -in, -ain, -un, -ien?** For the spelling **-eu?** Contrast **beurre** with **vieux, yeux.** For the spelling **-ai?** Contrast **j'ai, maison,** with **français, s'il vous plaît, vous faites.**

(7) Compare the French sound **l** with English **l** (§ 17, 7). Where is the tip of the tongue for French **l?**

(8) Compare French **r** with English **r** (§ 17, 12). Is the tongue brought farther forward in French? In French avoid using the English **r.** The French lingual **r** is sharper.

(9) Pronounce slowly and distinctly with attention to syllable division: **général, désirer, regarder, attentivement, vous comprenez, après-midi, nous écrivons, porter, vous vous appelez, bonjour, merci, monsieur, mademoiselle.**

LESSON XI

48. An Indefinite Pronoun. 1. *One, some one, we, you, they, people,* used indefinitely, are represented in French by **on,** with the verb always in the singular:

On [ɔ̃] **parle de Jean.**	We (you, they, etc.) speak of John.

2. When following a verb with a final vowel, **on** is joined to it by **-t-** (cf. § 29):

Par où commence-t-on?	Where do we (etc.) begin?

3. An **on** construction often corresponds to an English passive, especially when the agent is not mentioned:

Ensuite on apporte le potage.	Next the soup is brought.

49. Interrogation. Observe the frequently used interrogative phrase **qu'est-ce que?** = *what?* which is made up of **que?** (§ 38, 3) + **est-ce que?** (§ 43):

Qu'a-t-il? *or* ***Qu'est-ce qu'***il a?	What has he?

50. Present Indicative of *faire*, *to do, make* (*irreg.*).

I do, am doing, etc.	*We do, are doing, etc.*
je fais [ʒəfɛ]	**nous faisons** [nufəzɔ̃]
tu fais [tyfɛ]	**vous faites** [vufɛt]
il fait [ilfɛ]	**ils font** [ilfɔ̃]

EXERCISE XI

l'algèbre *f.* [lalʒɛːbr] algebra
l'arithmétique *f.* [laritmetik] arithmetic
une **assiette** [asjɛt] plate
la **bonne** [bɔn] maid, nurse
la **cuiller** [kɥijɛːr] spoon
le **dessert** [desɛːr] dessert
le **dîner** [dine] dinner
la **fourchette** [furʃɛt] fork
le **fruit** [frɥi] fruit
une **histoire** [istwaːr] history, story
le **journal** [ʒurnal] newspaper
le **latin** [latɛ̃] Latin
le **légume** [legym] vegetable
les **mathématiques** *f.* [matematik] mathematics
le **potage** [pɔtaːʒ] soup
la **question** [kɛstjɔ̃] question
la **salle** [sal] large room, hall
la **salle à manger** [salamãʒe] dining room
les **sciences naturelles** *f.* [sjãːsnatyrɛl] natural science
la **tasse** [taːs] cup
la **viande** [vjãːd] meat

âgé [aːʒe] old, aged

s'amuser [samyze] enjoy oneself, have a good time

apporter [apɔrte] carry (to), bring
commencer (à) [kɔmãse] begin
dîner [dine] dine
jouer [ʒwe] play
nous **lisons** [lizɔ̃] we are reading
il **prend** [prã] he takes, is taking
préparer [prepare] prepare
répondez! [repɔ̃de] reply! (*imperative*)
je **me sers de** [ʒəmsɛːrdə] I use, make use of
il **se sert de** [sɛːr] he makes use of
nous **nous servons de** [sɛrvɔ̃] we use
sonner [sɔne] ring
traduisez [tradɥize] translate (*imperative*)
travailler [travaje] work

comme [kɔm] as, like
que [kə] than

d'abord [dabɔːr] in the first place, first
puis [pɥi] then, in the next place

A. (1) 1. Que fait-on (Qu'est-ce qu'on fait) à l'école? 2. On étudie ses leçons à l'école; on fait du français, de

l'anglais, du latin. 3. On étudie aussi l'histoire, les mathématiques et les sciences naturelles. 4. Je fais de l'arithmétique et du français; mon frère, qui est plus âgé, étudie aussi l'algèbre et le latin. 5. On travaille mais on joue aussi; on s'amuse bien. 6. On joue au tennis et au football [futbal].

(2) *Répondez aux questions:* 1. Qu'est-ce qu'on fait à l'école? 2. Est-ce qu'on va à l'école pour s'amuser? 3. Pourquoi va-t-on à l'école? 4–6. Faites-vous du latin à l'école? de l'histoire? de l'anglais? 7. Aimez-vous les sports? 8–9. Fait-on du tennis à votre école? du baseball? 10. Jouez-vous au football? 11. Avez-vous un frère? 12. Est-il plus âgé que vous? 13. Est-il plus grand? 14. Aimez-vous les langues ou les sciences naturelles? 15. Faites-vous de l'arithmétique ou de l'algèbre? 16. Aimez-vous l'histoire?

(3) 1. L'après-midi nous retournons de l'école et nous allons à la maison. 2. La porte est fermée. Nous sonnons et on ouvre. 3. Nous entrons dans la maison, et nous commençons à lire le journal avant le dîner. 4. On sonne et nous entrons dans la salle à manger. 5. On commence à dîner. D'abord nous avons du potage. 6. Nous le mangeons avec une cuiller. 7. Puis la bonne apporte la viande et les légumes. 8. Pour les manger nous nous servons d'un couteau et d'une fourchette. 9. Mon petit frère se sert d'une cuiller pour manger tout son dîner. 10. Moi, je suis grand; je me sers d'une fourchette et d'un couteau comme mon père et ma mère. 11. On mange dans une assiette. 12. Puis au dessert, on mange du fruit et on prend du café dans une tasse. 13. Mon petit frère ne prend pas de café parce qu'il est petit. 14. Après le dîner nous lisons les journaux du soir. 15. Puis nous tâchons de préparer nos leçons.

B. (1) *Rewrite* A (3) *above, substituting for the first plural, when possible* (*a*) *the first person singular,* (*b*) *the third person singular.*

(2) *a. What do you notice in* A (3) *about the verb* **entrer** *when followed by a noun? About* **commencer** *when followed by an infinitive?*

b What have you already noted about **tâcher, désirer, vous voulez,** *when followed by an infinitive? Translate:* 1. We try to understand and to speak French. 2. I learn French because I want (**désirer**) to read the works of Balzac. 3. Will you, please, speak slowly?

(3) *Insert the proper subject pronoun:* 1. —— me sers. 2. —— (*m. and f.*) se sert. 3. —— nous servons. 4. —— vous servez. 5. —— se servent. *Insert the object pronouns:* 6. Je —— appelle. 7. Il —— appelle. 8. Nous —— appelons. 9. Vous —— appelez. 10. Ils —— appellent. (*Note the shifts in pronunciation and spelling in the present tense of* **s'appeler** [saple]. *These will be discussed in* Lesson XIX.)

(4) *Supply the missing preposition:* 1. Je me sers —— ma plume pour écrire. 2. Ils se servent —— leur cuiller pour manger le potage. 3. On prend le café —— une tasse. 4. Il a une assiette —— la main. 5. À l'école on joue —— tennis. 6. Nous étudions —— le dîner. 7. Nous entrons —— la salle à manger. 8. On prend le café —— le dîner. 9. Mon petit frère se sert —— une cuiller —— manger son dîner.

C. *Traduisez en français:* 1. What have you (*two ways*) in your plate? 2. I have meat, vegetables, and bread and butter. I have no fork to (**pour**) eat my dinner [with]. 3. What is the maid doing? She is bringing spoons, knives, and forks. 4. We have no fruit for (the) dessert. Look! The maid is bringing some into the dining-room now. 5. You are fond of (**aimer**) (the) fruit (*plural*), aren't you? Yes, I am fond of (the) soup to (**pour**) begin [with] and I like (the) fruit for dessert. 6. What do you do before (the) dinner? We read the evening paper. In the morning we read the morning paper. 7. What do people (**on**) do after (the) dinner? They (**On**) work or they (**on**) have a good time. 8. First I prepare my lessons, then I enjoy myself. 9. Does your small sister work (*arrange the question in two ways*)? 10. No, she has a good time. She looks at her books, but she doesn't work.

D. Dictation. Lesson IX, Exercise A, 15 sentences.

Exercise in Pronunciation

(1) Pronounce slowly and distinctly with especial attention to syllable division and stress: **mathématiques, naturelles, arithmétique, cuiller, couteau, nous étudions, nous nous appelons, vous vous servez.** Try to stress all syllables alike.

(2) *a.* What do you notice about the spelling of **nous commençons** in A, (3), 3? See § 5, 4. Would this spelling occur in any other form of the present tense of **commencer?** *Compare* § 78, 1.

b. Is there anything of the same sort in the spelling of **nous mangeons** [nu mãʒɔ̃]? *See* § 17, 18 *and compare* § 78, 2.

(3) Note the pronunciation of the first plural of **faire.** What sound value does the spelling **ai** oftenest have? What next? Compare **faire, je fais, j'aime, anglais, la craie, la maison, j'ai.**

(4) Write in phonetic characters and read aloud in singular and plural, putting in the definite article: **cuiller, couteau, fourchette, viande, fruit, légume, tasse, dessert.**

LESSON XII

51. Feminine of Adjectives. It is regularly formed by adding **-e** to the masculine singular, but adjectives ending in **-e** remain unchanged.

Grand, *m.*, **grande,** *f.*, tall; **facile,** *m.* or *f.*, easy.

52. Irregularities. Change of stem takes place in certain adjectives on adding **-e.** The following list shows the commoner types:

M.	F.	M.	F.
actif,	**active,** active	**cruel,**	**cruelle,** cruel
heureux,	**heureuse,** happy	**gentil,**	**gentille,** nice
flatteur,	**flatteuse,** flattering	**ancien,**	**ancienne,** ancient
		gros,	**grosse,** big
blanc,	**blanche,** white	**muet,**	**muette,** dumb
long,	**longue,** long	**cher,**	**chère,** dear
faux,	**fausse,** false	**sec,**	**sèche,** dry

Observe also: *m.* **beau** *or* **bel**, *f.* **belle**, *fine; m.* **nouveau** *or* **nouvel**, *f.* **nouvelle**, *new; m.* **vieux** *or* **vieil**, *f.* **vieille**, *old*, with two forms for the masculine, one of which gives the feminine. The masculine forms in **-l** are used before a vowel or **h** mute:

Le *bel* arbre, le *bel* homme. The fine tree, the handsome man.
But: **L'arbre est *beau;* le *beau* livre; les *beaux* arbres; les arbres sont *beaux*.**

53. Position. 1. An attributive adjective more usually follows its noun:

Un homme *riche*, une pomme *mûre*. A rich man, a ripe apple.

2. Adjectives from proper nouns, adjectives of physical quality, participles as adjectives, almost always follow:

La langue *anglaise*. The English language.
Du café *chaud*, une lampe *cassée*. Hot coffee, a broken lamp.

3. The following of very common occurrence nearly always precede:

Bon, *good,* **mauvais,** *bad;* **beau,** *fine, handsome,* **joli,** *pretty,* **vilain,** *ugly;* **jeune,** *young,* **vieux,** *old;* **grand,** *tall, great,* **gros,** *big,* **petit,** *small;* **long,** *long,* **court,** *short.*

4. A number of common adjectives have different meanings according as they precede or follow the noun. Two examples are:

Mon ancien élève. My old (former) pupil.
Mon cher ami. My dear friend.
L'histoire ancienne. Ancient history.
Un dîner cher. An expensive dinner.

54. Interrogative Adjective. *Which? what? what (a)!* = *m.* **quel?** *f.* **quelle?** *m. pl.* **quels?** *f. pl.* **quelles?**

Quel [kɛl] **livre?** Which (what) book?
Quelle [kɛl] **plume?** Which (what) pen?
À *quelle* heure? At what time?
Quelle **belle vue! *Quels* héros!** What a fine view! What heroes!
[kɛlero] (*see* § 17, 5)

55. *There, in that place* = **y**. It stands for a place already referred to, is put before the verb like a pronoun object, and is less emphatic than **là** = *there:*

Est-il à l'école? Il *y* [i] est. Is he at school? He is (there).

EXERCISE XII

la dictée [dikte] dictation exercise
l'eau *f.* [lo] water
ancien [ɑ̃sjɛ̃] former, old, ancient
beau, bel [bo] [bɛl] fine, handsome
blanc [blɑ̃] white
chaud [ʃo] warm, hot
cher [ʃɛːr] dear, expensive
court [kuːr] short
cruel [kryɛl] cruel
facile [fasil] easy
faux [fo] false, deceitful
gentil [ʒɑ̃ti] nice, pretty, well-behaved
grand [grɑ̃] large, tall
gros [gro] big
heureux [œrø] glad, happy
jeune [ʒœn] young
joli [ʒɔli] pretty
long [lɔ̃] long
mauvais [mɔvɛ] bad, poor (in quality)
muet [mɥɛ] dumb, silent
mûr [myːr] ripe
nouveau [nuvo] new
riche [riʃ] rich
vilain [vilɛ̃] ugly, naughty

asseyez-vous! [asɛjevu] sit down! (*imperative*)
je m'en vais [ʒəmɑ̃ve] I go away
il s'en va [ilsɑ̃va] he goes away

beaucoup [boku] much, many, a great deal, a great many
peu [pø] little (*quantity*), few
y [i] there, to it, to them; at, in it, them

A. (1) *Write with each of the following nouns two or more of the adjectives in* §§ 51, 52, 53, *that may be reasonably used with them, being careful about the position and form:* un homme, une sœur, ces journaux, une salle à manger, des bijoux, quelle voix! une jambe, cette bouche, les yeux, une tête, cet oncle, mon ami, quel jour! notre professeur, le monsieur, un mur, une maison, un garçon, un cheval, des fruits, ces livres.

(2) *Supply the proper form of a suitable adjective in each case:* 1. Le potage est très ——. 2. Mon café n'est pas ——. 3. Asseyez-vous, mon —— ami. 4. Le professeur nous donne de* —— leçons. 5. La dame a de* —— bijoux. 6. Elle a de* —— yeux. 7. J'aime les enfants quand ils sont ——.

* This use of **de** will be treated in § 59, 2.

8. Louise parle beaucoup; elle n'est pas ——. 9. Le fruit est bon quand il est ——. 10. Voilà des enfants ——.

(3) *Donnez le contraire de:* longue, vieille, jolie, bonne, petite, âgée, noire.

B. *Traduisez en français:* 1. This hot soup. That dumb woman. A nice woman. Their pretty little boy. Her white stockings. 2. Some false stories. Two big (**gros**) spoons. Her long knife. Happy men (*note two cases of linking in this phrase*). 3. What a nice boy! What a short lesson! What a big foot! 4. An English newspaper. An old Frenchman (*see* § 21). A tall (**grand**) Englishman. 5. Their new teacher. A poor (bad) teacher. Our old (= former) teacher. Ancient history. 6. Do you want any hot water? There is no hot water. 7. Are we in the classroom? We are (there). 8. What do you do in the dining-room? We eat (in it). What do you eat (there)? We eat bread, meat, vegetables and fruit (there). 9. Do you have a good time at school? Yes, we have a very good time (**nous nous amusons beaucoup** [boku]) there. 10. Do you work or (do you) play at school? We work a great deal (there) and play a little (there). 11. I am going [away] this evening. What is your sister doing? She is going away this evening.

C. Dictée, Lesson X, B.

Exercise in Pronunciation

(1) Prononcez et écrivez en caractères phonétiques: **mon ancienne** (*old = former*) **place, notre chère amie, un bel homme, une grosse cuiller, une histoire fausse, ma nouvelle maison, une vieille maison, les beaux enfants, un vilain enfant, une courte leçon, une gentille petite fille, des enfants heureux.**

(2) As regards pronunciation, is the effect of adding the **-e** for the feminine the same with all adjectives? Compare, for example, **jolie** and **grande.** On this basis group the adjectives in §§ 51, 52, 53.

(3) Pronounce slowly, with special attention to syllable division and stress: **salle à manger, je m'en vais, nous commençons, les sciences naturelles.**

LESSON XIII

56. Present Indicative of *donner, finir, vendre*

I give, am giving, etc.		*I finish, am finishing, etc.*		*I sell, am selling, etc.*	
donn *e*	[dɔn]	fini *s*	[fini]	vend *s*	[vã]
donn *es*	[dɔn]	fini *s*	[fini]	vend *s*	[vã]
donn *e*	[dɔn]	fini *t*	[fini]	vend *	[vã]
donn *ons*	[dɔnɔ̃]	finiss *ons*	[finisɔ̃]	vend *ons*	[vãdɔ̃]
donn *ez*	[dɔne]	finiss *ez*	[finise]	vend *ez*	[vãde]
donn *ent*	[dɔn]	finiss *ent*	[finis]	vend *ent*	[vã:d]

* **Vendre** is irregular in this one form. The regular verb **rompre** has **romp*t***, but **vendre** is here given as being more useful for practice.

NOTE. — The pronouns **je, tu, il,** etc., have been omitted in this paradigm and in some others to economize space in printing. They should be supplied in learning or reciting the paradigms.

57. The General Noun. A noun used in a general sense takes the definite article in French, though not commonly in English:

***L'*homme est mortel.**	Man is mortal.
***Les* hommes sont mortels.**	Men are mortal.
***Le* miel est très doux.**	Honey is very sweet.
***Le* cheval est un animal utile.**	*The* horse is a useful animal.

58. Tout. *All, the whole, every* = **tout,** with the following forms, which precede the article, when it is present:

M.	F.		M.	F.	
S. tout	[tu] toute	[tut]	Pl. tous	[tu] toutes	[tut]

***Toute* ma vie.**	All my life.
***Tout* le monde.**	Everybody (= the whole world).
***Tous* les mois.**	Every month.
***Toute* la semaine.**	The whole week.
***Tout* homme, *toute* femme.**	Every man, every woman.
***Tous* les hommes.**	All the men.
***Toute* la journée.**	The whole day.

EXERCISE XIII

la balle [bal] ball
le bois [bwɑ] wood, woods
la campagne [kɑ̃paɲ] country (*in contrast with town*); **à la campagne** to *or* in the country
le champ [ʃɑ̃] field
un été [ete] summer; **en été, l'été** in summer
la famille [famij] family
la femme [fam] woman, wife
la fleur [flœːr] flower
la gare [gaːr] station
le grand-père [grɑ̃pɛːr] grandfather
la grand'mère [grɑ̃mɛːr] grandmother
une heure [œːr] hour; **deux heures** [døzœːr] two o'clock
un hiver [œ̃nivɛːr] winter; **en hiver** [ɑ̃nivɛːr], **l'hiver** [livɛːr] in winter
le lit [li] bed
le parent [parɑ̃] kinsman, parent
la poupée [pupe] doll
le train [trɛ̃] train
les vacances *f.* [vakɑ̃ːs] vacation
la ville [vil] city, town; **en ville** in town
la voiture [vwatyːr] carriage, vehicle; **en voiture** in a carriage (*as distinguished from other ways of traveling*)

content (de) [kɔ̃tɑ̃] glad (to)
fatigué [fatiɡe] tired
tranquille [trɑ̃kil] quiet, alone (*in the expression:* leave alone)
utile [ytil] useful

arriver [arive] arrive, come
attendre [atɑ̃ːdr] wait for, expect
chercher [ʃɛrʃe] hunt for; **aller chercher,** go and get
se coucher [səkuʃe] go to bed, lie down; **nous nous couchons** we go to bed, lie down
il fait chaud [ilfɛʃo] it is warm, hot
habiter [abite] live in, inhabit
inviter (à) [ɛ̃vite] invite
marcher [marʃe] walk, go (*of train, watch, etc.*)
monter [mɔ̃te] get (in), climb; **monter à cheval** ride horseback
passer [pɑse] spend (*of time*), pass
prendre [prɑ̃ːdr] take, get
se préparer [səprepare] get ready
voir [vwaːr] see

comme! [kɔm] how!
comme [kɔm] as, like
à pied [apje] on foot
si [si] so

A. (1) 1. Nous habitons la ville de X—— (*iks*), mais **nous aimons la campagne.** 2. J'y vais avec ma famille tous les étés. 3. Nous y passons les vacances. 4. J'ai des parents à la campagne, mon grand-père, ma grand'mère, deux oncles et une tante. 5. Ils nous invitent à passer l'été **dans** leur maison

6. Quand l'hiver est fini, il fait très chaud en ville et nous nous préparons à aller à la campagne. 7. Je prends ma poupée, mon petit frère prend sa balle. 8. À une heure de l'après-midi nous allons à la gare. 9. Le train arrive à deux heures et nous montons dans une voiture. 10. Le train marche vite et au bout de trois heures nous arrivons à la petite gare. 11. Notre grand'mère et tous nos cousins nous attendent à la gare avec leur voiture. 12. Nous montons dans la voiture. 13. Les deux chevaux marchent lentement et nous avons le temps de voir les jolis champs et les beaux bois. 14. Tout est en fleurs. 15. Il y a des hommes et des chevaux qui travaillent dans les champs. 16. Notre grand-père nous attend à la maison. 17. Il est content de nous voir et nous sommes très contents de le voir aussi. 18. Nous nous couchons (Je me couche) à neuf heures du soir parce que nous sommes fatigués, et nous dormons bien. 19. Les lits sont si bons et tout est tranquille. 20. Comme j'aime la campagne! Les enfants s'amusent beaucoup à la campagne en été. 21. Les garçons montent à cheval, les petites filles jouent avec leurs poupées et cherchent des fleurs dans les champs et dans les bois.

(2) *Imagine that the passage above* [A (1)] *refers to you. Answer the questions in complete sentences:* 1. Habitez-vous la ville ou la campagne? 2. Aimez-vous la ville en hiver ou en été? 3. Où passez-vous les vacances? 4. Quels parents avez-vous à la campagne? 5. Est-ce que vous prenez [prənɛ] (*pres. of* prendre) le train pour aller à la campagne? 6. À quelle heure montez-vous dans le train? 7. Combien d'heures restez-vous dans la voiture? 8 Le train marche-t-il vite ou lentement? 9. Qui vous attend à la petite gare de campagne? 10. Est-ce que votre grand-père y est aussi? 11. Allez-vous à la maison de vos parents à pied ou en voiture? 12. Est-ce que votre grand'mère est contente de vous voir? 13. Êtes-vous fatigué? 14. À quelle heure vous couchez-vous? 15. Dormez-vous bien? 16. Mangez-vous bien? 17. Est-ce que les enfants aiment la campagne? 18. Que font les garçons? 19. Que font les petites filles? 20. Est-ce que les grandes filles montent à cheval aussi? 21. Est-ce que la

campagne est tranquille? 22. Plus tranquille que la ville? 23. Fait-il chaud en ville en été (*or* l'été)? 24. Fait-il plus chaud qu'à la campagne? 25. Fait-il chaud à Saint-Louis [sɛ̃lwi] en été? 26. Fait-il plus chaud en été à Chicago ou à Paris [pari]?

B. (1) *Add the proper present endings and read aloud:* J'attend-, nous attend-, ils attend-; nous entend-; ils entend-; je travaill-; je comprend-; vous fini-; ils s'amus-; vous jou ; nous commenç-; nous nous appel[apl]-; il fini-; ils fini-; nous compren[kɔ̃prən]- (*observe the absence of the* **d**); compren[kɔ̃prən]- vous? Je pren[prɑ̃]-, il pren[prɑ̃]-, nous pren[prən]-, vous pren[prən]-, ils prenn[prɛn]-. (*Note the absence of the* **d** *in the plural. Note also that the letter* **e** *stands for three different sounds in these five forms.*)

(2) *a. Write in parallel columns the present of:* finir, ouvrir, dormir (*sing.* je dors, tu dors, il dort; nous dormons, vous dormez, ils dorment), sortir, se servir (*sing.* je me sers, tu te sers, il se sert).

b. Some verbs in **-ir** *are not conjugated in the present like* **finir.** *Make a list of those you know that are not, and point out the differences.*

C. *Dites en français:* 1. We open; he is opening; I am sleeping (asleep); are you asleep? Go out! Go to sleep! He is asleep. 2. We go out; we finish; we (make) use (of) these pens; he is finishing his lesson: they are finishing their lesson. 3. They are leaving (going out of) the classroom; they are sleeping; men (**on**) use (make use of) horses; we sell fruit (*plural*). 4. The whole house; all night (the whole night); all women, all horses. 5. Animals are useful to men; I am very fond of (**aimer beaucoup**) animals. 6. Do you like flowers? Very-much-indeed (**beaucoup**). 7. Little girls like dolls and little boys like horses, but my uncle's son, my little cousin Pierre, likes horses and dolls too.

D. Dictée: Lesson XI, A (3).

Exercise in Pronunciation

(1) Note the pronunciation of **ville, tranquille.** Compare **fille, travaille, gentille, oreille.** Write all six in phonetic characters.

(2) Write B (1), in phonetic characters, after adding the proper endings, and read aloud.

LESSON XIV

59. Partitives. In partitive constructions (§ 36), **de** alone is used:

1. In a general negation (§ 36, 2):

Il n'a pas *de* plumes.	He has no pens.

2. When an adjective precedes the noun:

Marie a *de jolies* fleurs.	Mary has (some) pretty flowers.
J'ai *de votre* argent.	I have some of your money.
But: **J'ai *des* pommes *mûres*.**	I have (some) ripe apples.

3. Similarly when a noun after an adjective is understood:

***De* bons rois et *de* mauvais.**	Good kings and bad (kings).

4. After words of quantity in such expressions as these:

Beaucoup *de* thé.	A great deal of tea (much tea).
Une livre *de* viande.	A pound of meat.
Assez *de* viande.	Enough (of) meat.
Trop *de* pain.	Too much bread.
Il n'a plus *d'*argent.	He has no more money.

60. The preposition **de** + a noun forms adjectival phrases:

Une robe *de* soie.	A silk dress.
La feuille *d'*érable	The maple leaf.

61. Observe the following expressions of frequent use, formed from **avoir** + an undetermined noun:

avoir *besoin* [bəzwɛ̃] *de*, be in need of, need.	**avoir *soif* [swaf], be thirsty.**
avoir *chaud* [ʃo], be warm.	**avoir *sommeil* [sɔmɛːj], be sleepy.**
avoir *froid* [frwa], be cold.	**avoir *raison* [rɛzɔ̃], be (in the) right.**
avoir *faim* [fɛ̃], be hungry.	**avoir *tort* [tɔːr], be (in the) wrong.**

« Les Glaneuses »
d'après J.-F. Millet

« La Foire aux Chevaux »
d'après Rosa Bonheur

EXERCISE XIV

le **chemin** [ləʃmɛ̃] road (*in general*); le **chemin de fer** [ləʃmɛ̃dfɛːr] railroad
la **journée** [ʒurne] day (*when duration is emphasized*)
la **narration** [narɑsjõ] composition, theme
la **pomme** [pɔm] apple
la **robe** [rɔb] dress
la **soie** [swɑ] silk
le **sommeil** [sɔmɛːj] sleep
le **verre** [vɛːr] glass (*tumbler*)
le **voyage** [vwajaːʒ] voyage, trip

malheureux [malœrø] unfortunate, unhappy
suivant [sɥivɑ̃] following

aimer mieux [ɛmemjø] like better, prefer
avoir envie de [avwaːrɑ̃vi] wish, want
boire [bwaːr] drink
je **bois** [bwa] I drink
vous **buvez** [byve] you drink
porter [pɔrte] wear, have on, carry
répondre [repõːdr] answer, reply to
trouver [truve] find, consider, think

assez [ase] enough, rather
bien [bjɛ̃] well, very
juste [ʒyst] exactly, just
trop [trɔ] too much, too many

quelque chose [kɛlkəʃoːz] something
de bonne heure [dəbɔnœːr] early
tout de suite [tutsɥit] at once

A. 1. Il fait chaud dans les champs en été. 2. Quand on a chaud, on a soif et on a envie de boire de l'eau froide. 3. Voici un verre d'eau que je vais boire. 4. Quand on travaille dans les champs, on a aussi très faim avant l'heure du dîner. 5. On a besoin de manger quelque chose. 6. Le soir on a bien sommeil. 7. On a envie de se coucher de bonne heure. 8. On est content de voir arriver la nuit. 9. On a besoin de six heures de sommeil. 10. — Pardon, monsieur, vous avez tort. Moi, j'ai besoin de huit heures de sommeil toutes les nuits. 11. — Vous dormez beaucoup. Avez-vous sommeil, maintenant? 12. — Oui, madame, j'ai sommeil. J'ai grand besoin de dormir. J'ai froid aussi, et faim. 13. — Vous avez sommeil et froid et faim! Vous êtes très malheureux. Allez vous coucher tout de suite. 14. — Vous avez raison. Je vais me coucher, mais d'abord j'ai grand besoin de manger quelque chose parce que j'ai très faim. 15. Donnez-moi, s'il vous plaît, une tasse

de thé, beaucoup de viande, et des légumes. 16. Nous avons assez de pain, mais il n'y a pas trop de beurre dans cette assiette. 17. J'ai besoin aussi de plus de café; je n'en ai pas assez. 18. — Buvez-vous du café? — Oui, j'en bois beaucoup. 19. — Eh bien, mon ami, vous avez tort. Ne buvez pas trop de café. 20. — Merci. Je n'en bois pas trop; j'en bois juste assez.

B. *Supply the proper form of expression for* **some, any, no,** *as demanded by the sentences:* 1. J'attends aujourd'hui —— parents de la campagne. 2. Édouard **n'a** pas —— parents à la campagne. 3. Il n'y a pas —— fruit cet été. 4. Mon grand-père me donne —— bonnes pommes. 5. Nous cherchons —— pommes pour le dessert. 6. Ma sœur a —— jolies poupées; elle a beaucoup —— poupées. 7. Les petits garçons n'ont pas —— poupées; ils ont —— bonnes balles. 8. Je vois —— fleurs; il ne voit pas —— fleurs; nous voyons —— jolies fleurs et —— vilaines; voyez-vous assez —— fleurs à la campagne? Ils voient [vwa] (*third plural*) —— fleurs blanches dans les champs.

C. (1) *Traduisez:* 1. When a man (*use* **on**) works in the fields in summer, he (**on**) gets (**avoir**) hungry and thirsty and he (**on**) wants some cold water. But do not drink too much cold water. 2. What do you want for your dinner? Some hot soup, some vegetables, meat and fruit. I am very hungry and I need a good dinner. 3. There is no water in her glass. There is no tea in his cup. They need cold water and hot tea. 4. Are there any pupils in the classroom? Yes, there are some small boys and some pretty little girls. They are playing and are having a very good time. 5. These little girls have-on (**porter**) pretty silk dresses. Boys do not wear silk dresses. 6. These children play all day [long] (the whole day: "day" = **journée**). They are hungry and sleepy at dinner time (**à l'heure du dîner**). They need a great deal of sleep. 7. I need more sleep. You sleep too much. I invite you to go to bed (**vous coucher**) at once.

(2) *Fermez le livre et écrivez comme narration un voyage à la campagne.*

D. *Répondez en français aux questions suivantes:* 1. Habitez-vous la campagne? 2. Restez-vous en ville en hiver? 3. Où passez-vous l'été? 4. Y avez-vous des parents? 5. Quels parents avez-vous à la campagne? 6. Est-ce qu'ils vous invitent à aller les voir? 7. Quels parents avez-vous dans la ville? 8. Comment allez-vous à la campagne, à pied, à cheval ou en chemin de fer? 9. Où va-t-on (*do you go, does one go*) pour prendre le train? 10. Est-ce qu'on prend le train à la maison? 11. Est-ce que le train marche vite? 12. Est-ce qu'on vous attend à la petite gare de campagne? 13. Qui est-ce qui vous attend à la gare? 14. Allez-vous à pied de la gare à la maison de vos parents? 15. Qui trouvez-vous à la maison? 16. Sont-ils contents de vous voir? 17. Et vous, êtes-vous content de les voir? 18. À quelle heure vous couchez-vous? 19. Les enfants aiment-ils la campagne? 20. Que font les garçons? 21. Et les petites filles, montent-elles à cheval aussi? 22. Que voyez-vous à la campagne? 23. Aimez-vous mieux la campagne en hiver ou en été?

Exercise in Pronunciation

(1) Pronounce: **quand on, grand homme, neuf heures, dix heures, les eaux.** *See* § 18, 1.

(2) Pronounce **sommeil.** With what does it rhyme?

(3) Pronounce: **faim, pain, bien, ancien, besoin, latin, main.**

(4) Pronounce: **eau, chaud, trop, quelque chose.** Be careful about lip position.

(5) *a.* Pronounce; **sœur, leur, heure, beurre, œil, fleur, jeune.** Write each in phonetic characters. Pronounce: **deux, bleu, yeux, veut, monsieur, vieux, peu.** Write each in phonetic characters.

b. In the first group, is the vowel (spelled **eu, œu, œ**) followed by a consonant sound? What is true of the vowel of the second group? Try to make a rule as to when these spellings give [œ], and when they give [ø].

c. For which of these sounds is the mouth more open? For which are the lips more tense? In trying to make these sounds many English-speaking people fail to project the lips enough.

Too often also they allow the tongue to move, giving a disagreeable **r** sound. Avoid this fault by all means.

In view of the above (*b*), how do you explain the pronunciation of the second and third vowels of **malheureux** [malœrø]?

LESSON XV

62. Past Participles

donner	*finir*	*vendre*	*avoir*	*être*
given	*finished*	*sold*	*had*	*been*
donné [dɔne]	**fini** [fini]	**vendu** [vãdy]	**eu** [y]	**été** [ete]

63. Compound Tenses. They are formed from the past participle along with an auxiliary (usually **avoir,** sometimes **être,** see § 155), as in the following section.

64. The Past Indefinite

I have given, or *I gave, etc.*	*I have finished,* or *I finished, etc.*	*I have sold,* or *I sold, etc.*
j'ai donné [ʒedɔne]	**j'ai fini** [ʒefini]	**j'ai vendu** [ʒevãdy]
tu as donné [tyadɔne]	**tu as fini** [tyafini]	**tu as vendu** [tyavãdy]
etc.	etc.	etc.

I have had, or *I had, etc.*	*I have been,* or *I was, etc.*
j'ai eu [ʒey]	**j'ai été** [ʒeete]
tu as eu [tyazy]	**tu as été** [tyazete]
il a eu [ilay]	**il a été** [ilaete]
etc.	etc.

65. Word Order. The auxiliary is the verb in a compound tense, and all rules of word order apply to it:

Nous ne l'avons pas fini.	We have not finished it.
N'a-t-elle pas été ici?	Has she not been here?

66. Use of Past Indefinite. It denotes not only what has happened or has been happening, as in English, but also what happened (= English past tense):

J'ai fini mon ouvrage.	I have finished my work.
Elle a chanté toute la matinée.	She has been singing all morning.
Il a été longtemps ici.	He was here for a long time.
J'ai quitté Paris l'hiver passé.	I left Paris last winter.

N.B. — The past indefinite is the ordinary past tense of French. For the past tense of narrative in the literary style, see § 148.

67. Idiomatic Present Indicative. Besides its use in general, as in English, the present indicative is used idiomatically, in certain phrases, to denote what has been and still continues to be:

Depuis quand êtes-vous ici?	How long have you been here?
Je suis ici depuis trois jours.	I have been here for three days (*or* for three days past, *or* for the last three days).

EXERCISE XV

une **année** [ane] year (*when duration is emphasized*)
un **arbre** [œnarbr] tree
le **blé** [ble] wheat
le **déjeuner** [deʒœne] lunch
la **feuille** [fœːj] leaf, sheet (*of paper*)
la **forêt** [fɔrɛ] forest
la **matinée** [matine] morning
le **mois** [mwɑ] month
un **oiseau** [wazo] bird
le **pays** [pei] country, land
le **pommier** [pɔmje] apple tree
le **raisin** [rɛzɛ̃] grapes
la **vigne** [viɲ] grape vine
le **vin** [vɛ̃] wine

agricole [agrikɔl] agricultural
célèbre [selɛbr] famous
excellent [ekselɑ̃] excellent
industriel [ɛ̃dystriɛl] manufacturing
passé [pɑse] past, last
sec [sɛk] dry (§ 52)
vert [vɛːr] green

chanter [ʃɑ̃te] sing
couper [kupe] cut
mûrir [myriːr] get ripe, ripen
vu [vy] seen (*past participle*)
visiter [vizite] go to see (in detail), inspect

aujourd'hui [oʒurdɥi] to-day
hier [jɛːr] yesterday
huit jours [ɥiʒuːr] a week
longtemps [lõtɑ̃] long (time)
quinze jours [kɛ̃ːzʒuːr] two weeks

depuis [dəpɥi] since
pendant [pɑ̃dɑ̃] during

depuis quand [dəpɥikɑ̃] since when, how long (*conj.*)
si [si] if

A. 1. Depuis quand êtes-vous ici à la campagne? 2. — Nous sommes ici depuis deux mois. 3. — Que faites-vous? — Oh, nous nous amusons bien. 4. Hier j'ai passé toute la matinée à cheval et j'ai eu très faim avant l'heure du déjeuner. 5. J'ai été content de voir arriver le déjeuner. 6. Après le déjeuner j'ai visité les bois et les champs avec mon oncle. 7. Nous avons regardé le blé, qui est beau cette année. 8. Il a mûri pendant l'été; on va le couper. 9. Nous avons besoin de blé pour faire le pain. 10. Le pain français est excellent. J'ai mangé du pain aujourd'hui à mon déjeuner. 11. Puis nous avons visité les pommiers et les vignes. 12. Les pommes ne sont pas belles cette année, mais le raisin est excellent. 13. On va en faire de bon vin. On n'a pas fait de très bon vin l'année passée. 14. Il a fait trop froid en été et le raisin n'a pas bien mûri. 15. Les vins français sont célèbres. On en voit très peu en Amérique maintenant. 16. La France est un pays agricole. La Belgique [bɛlʒik] est un pays industriel. 17. Dans les bois nous avons regardé les beaux arbres. 18. Leurs feuilles sont vertes et dans les arbres on entend chanter des oiseaux. 19. Il y a de jolis bois en France. 20. Si vous allez en France, allez voir les forêts de Chantilly [ʃɑ̃tiji] et de Fontainebleau [fɔ̃tɛnblo]. 21. On ne coupe pas beaucoup d'arbres dans ces forêts-là et il y en a qui sont très vieux.

B. (1) *With what French words is the Idiomatic Present generally found? What verb form in English conveys the same meaning as the Idiomatic Present?*

(2) *Traduisez:* 1. We have been here for a week. 2. The piece of bread is too dry; it has been on the table for a fortnight (**quinze jours**). 3. How long have you been studying French? 4. We have been studying French for three months. 5. How long have you been hungry? 6. I have been hungry since five o'clock. 7. Aren't you mistaken (wrong)? No, I am right. 8. Wheat ripens in summer. I saw a great deal in the fields in France. 9. We need wheat to make bread. 10. They (**On**) make a great deal of wine in France. 11. Very little is made (*use* **on**) in America. 12. You (**On**) hear many birds sing in (the) French forests (**de la France**).

(3) *What word do we find after* **content** *before an infinitive? After* **inviter**? *Does the pure infinitive follow* **entendre** *or is it preceded by a preposition? Notice in* A, 18 *the word order in French after* **entendre**. *In what two ways may the infinitive after* **entendre** *be translated into English? Translate:* **Pourquoi n'entend-on pas chanter les oiseaux en hiver?**

C. *Traduisez:* 1. We invited him (*see* § 65 *for word order*). They did not wait for him. She hunted for Pierre and Louise. 2. The pupils finished their lessons. 3. We did not sell the bread. 4. We were (*use past indef.*) in the country last summer. Our cousins were not at the station yesterday. 5. I was hungry for a long time (*see* § 66, *example* 3). They were cold all the morning (**la matinée**). 6. It was (**Il a fait**) cold last winter. Were you not thirsty yesterday? 7. We worked all summer. Did you wait for the train? Did you need the carriage yesterday?

D. *Répondez aux questions:* 1. Où passez-vous les vacances? 2. Depuis quand êtes-vous à la campagne? 3. Aimez-vous à monter à cheval? 4. Avez-vous visité les champs? 5. Qu'avez-vous vu dans les champs? 6. Le blé est-il beau cette année? 7. A-t-il mûri pendant l'hiver ou pendant l'été? 8. Est-ce qu'on va couper le blé? 9. Que fait-on avec le blé? 10. Avez-vous vu des arbres? 11. Quel fruit les pommiers donnent-ils (*bear*)? 12. Et les vignes quel fruit donnent-elles? 13. Est-ce que les pommes sont bonnes cette année? 14. Ont-elles mûri? 15. Que fait-on avec le raisin? 16. Fait-on beaucoup de vin en France? 17. Fait-on beaucoup de vin en Amérique? 18. Est-ce que la France est un pays industriel? 19. Où est-ce qu'on trouve de grands arbres? 20. Avez-vous visité une forêt? 21. Est-elle grande ou petite? 22. Donnez les noms de deux forêts célèbres en France. 23. Qu'est-ce qu'on voit dans une forêt en été? 24. Qu'est-ce qu'on y entend? 25. Voit-on des feuilles vertes en hiver? 26. Est-ce qu'on entend chanter les oiseaux en hiver?

E. Dictée: Lesson XIII, A (1).

Exercise in Pronunciation

(1) Write phonetically and read aloud: **nous avons eu, il a eu, vous avez été, depuis, depuis quand, ils ont vendu.**

(2) Is the word **eu** pronounced as you would expect? Note that this spelling combination is pronounced thus only in forms of **avoir.** What two other sounds does it stand for? Is there any way of knowing which sound value it should have in a given word? Compare Lesson XIV, *Exercise in Pronunciation*, (5), *b*.

LESSON XVI

68. Comparatives. Place **plus** = *more*, **moins** = *less*, or **aussi** = *as*, before the adjective, and **que** = *than* or *as* after it, to form the comparative:

Il est *plus* grand *que* Jean.	He is taller *than* John.
Il est *moins* grand *que* Jean.	He is *less* tall *than* (not so tall as) John.
Il est *aussi* grand *que* Jean.	He is *as* tall *as* John.

69. Superlatives. 1. Place the definite article or a possessive adjective before **plus** or **moins** to form the superlative:

Marie est *la plus* jeune de toutes.	Mary is the youngest of all.
Obs.: ***La plus*** **jeune des deux.**	The younger of the two.

Note. — *In*, after a superlative, is translated by **de**: **le meilleur élève de la classe,** *the best student in the class.*

2. Do not omit the definite article when the superlative follows the noun:

La leçon *la* plus difficile.	The most difficult lesson.
Mes livres *les* plus utiles.	My most useful books.

70. Irregular Comparison. Observe the irregular forms:

bon [bɔ̃], good	**meilleur** [mɛjœːr], better	**le meilleur** [lə mɛjœːr] the best

71. Comparison of Adverbs. 1. They are compared by **plus** and **moins** like adjectives, but **le** in the superlative is invariable.

2. Observe the irregular forms:

bien [bjɛ̃], well	**mieux** [mjø], better	**le mieux** [lə mjø], (the) best
peu [pø], little	**moins** [mwɛ̃], less	**le moins** [lə mwɛ̃], (the) least

72. Present Indicative of *aller*, *to go* (irreg.)

I go, am going, etc.	*We go, are going, etc.*
je *vais* [ʒəve]	**nous all*ons*** [nuzalõ]
tu *vas* [tyva]	**vous all*ez*** [vuzale]
il *va* [ilva]	**ils *vont*** [ilvõ]

73. Imperative of *aller*, *to go*

va [va], go	**all*ons*** [alõ], let us go	**all*ez*** [ale], go

EXERCISE XVI

l' air *m.* [ɛːr] air
la cerise [lasriːz] cherry
le cerisier [ləsrizje] cherry tree
le chou [ʃu] cabbage
les haricots verts [le ariko vɛːr] string beans (*see* § 17, 5)
l' herbe *f.* [ɛrb] grass
le jardin [ʒardɛ̃] yard, lawn, park, garden
le lapin [lapɛ̃] rabbit
la partie [parti] part, game, party
la pêche [pɛːʃ] peach
les petits pois [leptipwɑ] green peas
la poire [pwaːr] pear
le poirier [pwarje] pear tree
le pommier [pɔmje] apple tree
la pomme de terre [pɔmdətɛːr] (Irish) potato
la rose [roːz] rose
la route [rut] highway, main road, route
la rue [ry] street
la tulipe [tylip] tulip

difficile [difisil] hard, difficult
fruitier [frɥitje] fruit bearing
meilleur [mɛjœːr] better
quelque [kɛlkə] some; *in pl.* (*usually*) few
utile [ytil] useful

mieux [mjø] better
moins [mwɛ̃] less, fewer
toujours [tuʒuːr] always, still

aussi . . . que [osi kə] as . . . as, (*see* § 68)

A. (1) 1. Nous sommes toujours à la campagne. 2. Il fait moins chaud à la campagne et l'air y est meilleur que dans la ville. 3. Les grandes routes et les chemins sont plus jolis que les rues, et j'aime mieux les fleurs des champs et les feuilles vertes des grands arbres que les petits jardins des maisons de ville. 4. Dans la ville les jardins sont très petits et beaucoup de maisons n'en ont pas. 5. Dans ces petits jardins on voit un peu d'herbe et quelques arbres. 6. À la campagne les jardins sont plus grands. 7. On y trouve des fleurs, des arbres fruitiers, des légumes, de l'herbe. 8. Nous aimons mieux les jardins de campagne que les jardins de ville.

(2) 1. Allons voir le jardin de mon grand-père. Voilà les légumes. 2. Dans cette partie du jardin il y a des pommes de terre, des choux, des petits pois et des haricots verts. 3. Aimez-vous les choux? J'aime mieux les pommes de terre, les petits pois et les haricots verts que les choux. 4. Le chou est le légume le plus utile pour les lapins. Ils aiment beaucoup les choux. 5. Dans cette autre partie du jardin il y a des fleurs et des arbres fruitiers. 6. Voici des roses et des tulipes. Voilà des cerisiers, des pommiers et des poiriers. 7. La cerise et la poire sont excellentes, mais la pomme et la pêche sont meilleures. 8. La pêche est le meilleur de tous les fruits, mais elle est moins utile que la pomme. 9. Nous avons besoin de légumes et de fruits pour la table. 10. Il y a peu d'arbres fruitiers dans la ville, mais il y en a beaucoup dans le jardin de mon grand-père à la campagne.

B. (1) *Supply the missing words:* 1. —— quand êtes-vous dans la classe? 2. Nous y —— depuis neuf heures. 3. Depuis —— étudiez-vous le français? 4. Je l'—— depuis deux mois. 5. Le pain est sur la table —— hier. 6. C'est l'hiver, il —— froid depuis un mois. 7. J'—— froid depuis huit jours.

(2) *Supply the proper form of the verb given in the infinitive:* 1. (attendre) Il —— son père depuis une heure. 2. (mûrir) Ce blé —— depuis huit jours. 3. (chanter) Les oiseaux —— depuis cinq heures. 4. (avoir) Pierre —— faim depuis onze heures. 5. (être) Nous —— à la campagne depuis quinze

jours. 6. (voir) Nous avons —— hier une belle forêt. 7. (finir) Nous —— nos leçons. 8. (mûrir) Les pommes —— vite. 9. (aller) Ces enfants —— à l'école tous les jours. 10. (aller) Nos amis —— à la campagne tous les étés. 11. (être) Il a —— longtemps en France. 12. (être) Il —— depuis longtemps en France.

(3) *a. What is the difference between* **meilleur** *and* **mieux?** *Is this clear from the English equivalent?*

b. Note carefully the difference between: Il y a un peu de beurre sur la table, *and* il y a peu de (*not much; negative force*) beurre sur la table. *We cannot say* Il y a **un peu de pommes** sur mes arbres; *we must say* il y a **quelques pommes** sur mes arbres. **Un peu** *can be used only before nouns in what number? What is the case in regard to* **quelques?** *What is the force of* Il y a eu peu de pommes de terre l'année passée? *Of* Nous allons avoir quelques choux cette année pour nos lapins? *Of* Nous allons avoir peu de choux cette année pour nos lapins? *What is the difference between the last two sentences?*

(4) *a. Écrivez au tableau noir au comparatif et au superlatif:* bon, bien; petit, peu; difficile, excellente, ancienne, sèche, vilain, gentille.

b. Which of these adjectives usually precede or follow the noun?

c. On the basis of A (1), 3, *make a rule for the gender of an adjective qualifying two nouns of different genders.*

C. (1) *Écrivez en français:* 1. The most useful vegetable. The hardest lesson. The hardest part of the lesson. 2. My largest rabbit. My best peach. His best pear. His most beautiful rose. 3. Our most difficult lesson. Little money. A little money. 4. Fewer green peas. A few (some) green peas. 5. We work better. We dine better. Our dinner is better. 6. Fruit (*pl.*) is better than cabbage (*pl.*). She hears better. They see better. 7. We write better. A better book. Fewer string beans. 8. A little tired. Not very tired. A little boy. 9. A few little boys. Fewer little girls. Not many (= few) little girls.

(2) *Traduisez:* 1. I prefer the country to the city (like better . . . than . . .) in summer. 2. It is less warm and

the air is better. 3. We went (*use* **être**) to the country last summer. 4. Our relatives have a large yard (**jardin**), but they have little fruit this year. 5. It (**Ce**) is not a good year for fruit (*plural*). Last year was better. 6. The leaves and grass were greener last summer. 7. I like the flowers too. Roses are the most beautiful of all flowers.

D. *Compose questions to which the following sentences may be considered replies:* 1. Je suis à la campagne. 2. Je passe l'hiver en ville. 3. J'aime mieux la campagne en été. 4. Les chemins sont plus jolis que les rues. 5. Oui, madame, les routes sont plus grandes que les chemins. 6. Il y a plus d'herbe à la campagne. 7. J'aime mieux les pommes de terre que les choux. 8. Les lapins mangent les choux. 9. Voici la partie la plus difficile de cette leçon. 10. Voilà le plus grand des arbres. 11. J'ai un petit jardin devant ma maison de ville. 12. Le jardin de ma maison de campagne est plus joli. 13. Je travaille depuis huit heures. 14. Nous n'avons pas besoin de ces livres. 15. Non, la Belgique est un pays industriel. 16. Nous allons passer huit jours à New-York.

E. Dictée: Lesson XV, A.

LESSON XVII

74. Agreement of Past Participle. 1. In a compound tense with **avoir** the past participle agrees in gender and number with a direct object which precedes it:

J'ai fini mes leçons.	I have finished my lessons.
Je *les* ai finies.	I have finished them.
Quels *livres* a-t-il achetés?	What books has he bought?

N.B. — Remember that the participle does not agree with **en**, *e.g.*, **Avez-vous des plumes? Oui, j'*en* ai acheté hier.** *Have you any pens? Yes, I bought some yesterday.*

2. When used as an adjective, the past participle agrees like an adjective:

La plume achetée hier.	The pen bought yesterday.

75. Some Relatives. 1. The relative pronouns of most common use are **qui** as subject, and **que** as direct object of a verb:

La dame *qui* chante.	The lady who sings.
Les livres *qui* sont ici.	The books which are here.
Les pommes *que* j'ai achetées.	The apples that I have bought.

2. The relative pronoun, often omitted in English, is never omitted in French:

Le pain *que* j'ai acheté hier.	The bread I bought yesterday

EXERCISE XVII

le cigare [sigaːr] cigar
la cigarette [sigarɛt] cigarette
la cuisine [kɥizin] kitchen, cooking
la cuisinière [kɥizinjɛːr] cook
le facteur [faktœːr] postman, porter
le franc [frɑ̃] franc
le kilo(gramme) [kilo(gram)] kilogram (*about* 2 *lbs.*, 3 *oz.*)
la laitue [lɛty] lettuce
le marché [marʃe] market
les messieurs [mesjø] gentlemen
le poulet [pulɛ] chicken
les provisions *f.* [prɔvizjɔ̃] food, provisions
la salade [salad] salad

cher [ʃɛːr] dear, costly
quelqu'un [kɛlkœ̃] some one

acheter [aʃte] buy
écrit [ekri] written (*past part.*)
être à [ɛːtr a] belong to
faire visite à go to see, pay a visit
fumer [fyme] smoke
ouvrir [uvriːr] open
ouvert [uvɛːr] open (*past participle* of **ouvrir**)
payer [pɛje] pay for, pay
prendre [prɑ̃ːdr] take, get
pris [pri] got, taken (*past participle of* **prendre**)

alors [alɔːr] then, therefore
comme [kɔm] as
encore [ɑ̃kɔːr] again, still, yet
ensuite [ɑ̃sɥit] then, in the next place
peut-être [pøtɛːtr] perhaps

A. 1. Nous avons été (*went*) au marché ce matin. 2. Nous avons pris nos provisions pour ce soir, parce que nous allons avoir des amis à dîner. 3. Nous avons pris des légumes, des fruits, des fleurs et deux poulets. 4. Tout est cher maintenant. Nous avons payé les deux poulets douze francs. 5. Comme fruit nous avons pris du raisin blanc que nous

avons payé quatre francs le kilo(-gramme). 6. Les roses et les tulipes que nous avons prises pour la table sont chères aussi. Nous les avons payées dix francs. 7. Voici les légumes que nous avons achetés: des pommes de terre, de la laitue et des petits pois. 8. D'abord nous allons manger le potage. 9. Puis on va apporter des pommes de terre avec des petits pois. 10. Ensuite on va apporter (servir) le poulet et la salade de laitue et puis, après, nous allons avoir du raisin blanc. 11. Ensuite nous allons prendre du café et les messieurs vont fumer des cigares ou des cigarettes. 12. La cuisinière qui est dans la cuisine prépare maintenant un excellent dîner. 13. J'ai très faim depuis longtemps. 14. Je vais être content de manger quelque chose.

B. (1) *The past participle of* **ouvrir** *is* **ouvert**; *of* **écrire, écrit**; *of* **prendre, pris**; *of* **comprendre,** —— (?). *Pronounce the feminine form of these participles. Is the change one of spelling simply, or of spelling and sound both? What is true of the change in participles like* **fini, eu, vu, acheté, fumé?** *Compare with these the following adjectives, giving in each case the feminine form:* un, grand, petit, mauvais, heureux, facile, faux, gentil, ancien, gros, vieux, joli, court, vilain, quel, bleu. *See* Lesson XII, *Exercise in Pronunciation,* (2).

(2) *Substitute pronouns for the object nouns, making the necessary changes:* 1. Il a mangé les pommes de terre. 2. Nous avons écrit deux lettres à nos parents. 3. La bonne a apporté les cuillers. 4. Nous avons passé nos vacances chez nos parents. 5. Il a ouvert la porte. 6. J'ai écrit cette lettre. 7. Quelqu'un a pris nos cerises. 8. Qui a mangé leurs poires?

(3) *Supply the correct form of the participle:* 1. (écrire) Voici les lettres que mon frère a ——. 2. (prendre) La plume que vous avez —— sur la table est au professeur. 3. (acheter) Je n'aime pas la viande que la bonne a ——. 4. (ouvrir) À qui est la lettre qu'il a ——? 5. (ouvrir) La lettre qu'il a —— hier est à Jean. 6. (visiter) J'aime la belle forêt que nous avons —— aujourd'hui. 7. (écrire) Comment trouvez-vous (*What do you think of*) la lettre que j'ai —— à notre tante? 8. (ouvrir) Allez fermer la porte que cet enfant a ——, s'il

vous plaît. 9. (ouvrir) Cette porte n'est pas ——. 10. (écrire) Ma lettre n'est pas encore ——. 11. (prendre) Je n'aime pas la voiture que vous avez —— pour moi.

(4) *Reply to the questions, using in each case a pronoun object:* 1. Qui a écrit cette lettre? 2. Est-ce que votre oncle l'a ouverte? 3. L'avez-vous prise sur ma table de travail? 4. Avez-vous vu les lettres que nous avons écrites? 5. Est-ce que quelqu'un a pris nos pêches? 6. Pierre a-t-il écrit ces deux lettres? 7. A-t-il donné les lettres au facteur? 8. Le facteur a-t-il pris les lettres que vous avez écrites ce matin?

(5) *Use correctly in sentences:* mieux, aussi . . . que, depuis, depuis quand, peu de, un peu de, quelques, meilleur, on, de bonne heure, tous les soirs.

(6) *How does the French use of the tense compounded with the present of the auxiliary (perfect, or past indefinite) differ from its use in English? Did you ever hear a Frenchman speaking English use sentences like these:* "I have seen him yesterday?" "I have arrived in America two months ago?" *How do you explain his mistake?*

(7) *Thus far what three uses of the present form of verbs have we had? Compare:* je travaille, il arrive demain, je travaille depuis l'heure du déjeuner. *What two uses of the perfect form (past indefinite) have we had?*

C. (1) *Vary* A *(orally or in writing) using subject pronouns of other persons and numbers.*

(2) *a. Note that the French idiom often differs from the English. The French say:* écoutez le professeur; regardez le poulet; ils ont payé leur dîner; nous attendons le train. *What is the general difference here between French and English?*

b. Nous entrons dans la salle, la cuisinière entre dans la cuisine. *How does this verb contrast with the four given above?*

c. In A, (2) *and* (3), *what special meaning does the verb* **prendre** *have?*

(3) *Write French sentences in which you use correctly in the present and in the past indefinite:* écouter, payer, regarder, aimer mieux, avoir besoin de, avoir raison, faire chaud, avoir chaud, prendre.

D. *Traduisez:* 1. Have you been to market? Yes, I was there early this morning, to get our provisions for this evening. I got some meat and vegetables. 2. The fruit (*plural*) that I see is dear and is not very good, but the flowers that we bought are very pretty. There they are. 3. We expect some friends this evening who are very fond of (**aimer beaucoup**) flowers. The gentlemen like to (**à**) smoke. Here are some cigars and cigarettes I bought. 4. We are going to have an excellent dinner: soup, potatoes, peas, chicken, a lettuce salad, and then, as dessert, grapes, and, afterwards, coffee. 5. How long have your friends been here? They have been here for a week. 6. They are visiting (**être en visite chez**) their relatives. They are going to stay a few days longer (still a few days), perhaps a fortnight (fifteen days).

LESSON XVIII

76. Tenses with *être*. 1. The verb **être** + the past participle form the compound tenses of all reflexive verbs (§ 82) and of some intransitive verbs, of which the following are the most important:

aller [ale] go, be (*of health*)
arriver [arive] arrive, get (to)
descendre [desɑ̃:dr] go down, stop (*at a hotel*)
devenir [dəvni:r] become
entrer (dans) [ɑ̃tre] enter, go in
monter [mɔ̃te] go up, get (in), climb
naître [nɛ:tr] be born
rentrer [rɑ̃tre] come back again
partir [parti:r] go away, leave
rester [rɛste] stay, remain
sortir (de) [sɔrti:r] go out
tomber [tɔ̃be] fall
venir [vəni:r] come

NOTE. — It will be observed that all of these intransitive verbs, except **rester**, denote a change of place or state.

2. The past participle of a verb (not reflexive) conjugated with **être** agrees with the subject, thus:

I have arrived, etc.

je suis arrivé(*e*) [arive]	**nous sommes arrivé(*e*)*s*** [arive]
tu es arrivé(*e*) [arive]	**vous êtes arrivé(*e*)*s*** [arive]
il (elle) est arrivé(*e*) [arive]	**ils (elles) sont arrivé(*e*)*s*** [arive]

Copyright, Underwood & Underwood

LE MARCHÉ AUX FLEURS, PARIS

À la Gare du Nord, Paris

EXERCISE XVIII

la **comédie** [kɔmedi] comedy
le **concert** [kõsɛːr] concert
la **fois** [fwa] time
une **fois** one time, once
le **lundi** [lœ̃di] Monday
le **magasin** [magazɛ̃] shop, store
le **musée** [myze] museum
la **musique** [myzik] music
le **palais** [palɛ] palace
le **parc** [park] park
la **pièce** [pjɛs] play, room
le **restaurant** [rɛstɔrɑ̃] restaurant
le **salon** [salõ] drawing room, parlor
le **taxi** [taksi] taxi
le **temps** [tɑ̃] time (*period*), weather
le **théâtre** [teɑːtr] theater, stage
le **tramway** [tramwe] street car, tramway

aller [ale] go, be (*of health*)
s'en aller [sɑ̃nale] go away
arriver [arive] arrive, get (to)
descendre [desɑ̃ːdr] go down, stop
partir (de) [partiːr] go away, leave
tomber [tõbe] fall
venir [vəniːr] come; **venu** [vəny] come (*past part.*)
causer [koze] talk, chat
mener [məne] take, lead
quitter [kite] leave, quit
rire [riːr] laugh: **ri** [ri] laughed (*past part.*)

directement [dirɛkt(ə)mɑ̃] directly, straight
midi [midi] noon
minuit [minɥi] midnight
partout [partu] everywhere
chez [ʃe] at the house (office) of, with

A. (1) 1. Nos parents de la campagne sont chez nous depuis huit jours. 2. Nous sommes très contents de les voir. 3. Ils sont arrivés lundi par le train de midi. 4. Nous ne sommes pas allés les chercher à la gare. 5. Ils ont pris un taxi à la gare et ils sont venus directement à la maison. 6. Ils ne sont pas descendus à un hôtel. 7. Nous les menons partout pour les amuser. 8. Nous avons pris le tramway et nous avons visité les différentes parties de la ville. 9. Nous les avons menés aux grands magasins de la ville, aux musées, et au concert pour entendre de la musique. 10. Nous les avons menés deux fois au théâtre pour voir jouer * des pièces. 11. Nous avons été hier soir au théâtre. 12. Nous sommes entrés dans la salle à huit heures et nous avons trouvé nos places. 13. On

* Observe the word order here. Compare for position and translation with the infinitive after **voir** (*see* XIV, A, 8) and **entendre** (XV, B, 3).

a joué *le Bourgeois gentilhomme* [burʒwɑʒãtijɔm] de Molière qui nous a beaucoup amusés. 14. C'est une excellente comédie et nous en avons beaucoup ri. 15. Nous sommes sortis du théâtre après minuit. 16. La nuit était (*was*) très noire et un de nos cousins est tombé.

(2) 1. Nous sommes restés quelque [kɛlkə] temps au salon pour causer avant d'aller nous coucher. 2. Aujourd'hui nous sommes tous [tus] très fatigués, mais notre tante et deux de nos cousines sont parties de bonne heure. 3. Elles vont visiter le palais et le parc de Versailles [vɛrsɑːj]. 4. Demain toute la famille va voir le grand marché de Paris, les Halles [le al] (*see* § 17, 5), et ce soir nous allons les mener dîner dans un des grands restaurants. 5. Ils vont rester encore quelques jours chez nous. 6. Ils vont partir dans huit jours.

B. (1) *Supply the auxiliary of the past indefinite tense and use the proper form of the participle:* 1. (entrer) Nous —— ——; (partir) elle —— ——; (aller) elles —— —— au marché; (monter) nous —— —— dans la voiture. 2. (descendre) Madame Durand [dyrɑ̃] —— —— à l'hôtel Crillon [krijõ]. 3. (arriver) La petite fille —— —— hier chez son grand-père. 4. (sortir) Monsieur n'est pas à la maison; il —— —— tout de suite après le déjeuner. 5. (aller) Les enfants —— —— se coucher de bonne heure. 6. (entrer) Les élèves —— —— dans la classe. 7. (venir) Elles ne —— pas —— à l'école aujourd'hui. 8. (partir) Nos amis —— —— hier pour la France; (quitter) ils —— —— Chicago lundi. 9. (quitter) Nous —— —— notre amie dans la rue et elle* —— —— tout de suite. 10. (quitter) Nous la —— —— après le déjeuner.

(2) *a. Observe the difference in meaning and use between* **aller, s'en aller, partir, sortir, quitter.** *We say in French:* je vais chez moi après la classe, *but we do not say:* la classe est finie, je vais; *instead, we say,* je pars, je m'en vais. *That is, with* **aller** *alone some expression of place is usually added. Examples:* nous allons dans le jardin; nous y allons; il va en France; il y va. **Aller** *alone does not mean "leave, go away."*

* Use the proper form of **s'en aller.**

For that we use **partir** *or* **s'en aller.** *Study the different meanings:* je vais à New-York demain; à quelle heure partez-vous? Je pars de Chicago (je quitte Chicago) demain à 9 heures; il est allé à la campagne hier; il est parti (s'en est allé) hier matin; il a quitté le train à la petite gare. *Is* **quitter** *transitive? What auxiliary does it take? Observe too that the English "come" is often expressed in French by* **arriver:** je suis arrivé par le train de huit heures.

b. Write a group of sentences about a trip to the country in which you use correctly **aller, partir, quitter.**

C. (1) **Sortir** *means "to go out":* je sors de la salle à manger après le dîner; il sort de sa chambre; nous sommes sortis de la cuisine. Où est la cuisinière? Elle est sortie. Est-ce que Monsieur Hugo est chez lui (*at home*)? Non, mademoiselle, monsieur est sorti.

(2) *Observe that the present tense of* **servir, partir, sortir, dormir** *is not inflected like that of* **finir, mûrir.** Compare Lesson XIII, B, (2). *Write and read aloud the present tense of these six verbs. Note that* **servir** *alone means "to serve," and that used with the personal object pronoun (reflexive) and the preposition* **de** (se servir de) *it means "to use" "make use of." Observe also that the past participle of* **venir** *is different from that of other verbs in* **-ir.** Mon frère est **venu** nous voir hier; elles sont **venues** de bonne heure.

D. (1) *Rewrite* A, *substituting* une de mes cousines *for* nos parents *and* je *for* nous, *where the sense allows it. Pay especial attention to the use of auxiliaries and to participle agreement.*

(2) *What seems to be the difference of meaning between* **temps** *and* **fois** *in* A (1) 10 and (2), 1?

Exercise in Pronunciation

(1) What ways do you know of spelling the sound [ɛ]? Pronounce: **vous êtes, mon frère, muette, la craie.**

(2) Note the pronunciation of **tous** in **nous sommes tous** [tus] **très fatigués.** In this case **tous** is a pronoun. Contrast the pronunciation of **Tous mes amis sont partis,** and **Ils sont**

tous partis; of **Tous les restaurants sont fermés,** and **Tous sont fermés.** How may you tell when **tous** is an adjective and when it is a pronoun?

VOCABULARY REVIEW, No. 2

(1) *What words — opposites or synonyms — are suggested by the following (in case of nouns, always supply the proper definite or indefinite article)*: plus, peu, facile, blanc, long, vieux, joli, heureux, monter, s'en aller, été, froid, raison, mûr, agricole, campagne, chemin, entrer, arriver, midi.

(2) *Supply words that make sense:* 1. Le petit garçon joue à la ——; la petite fille j—— avec sa ——. 2. Pour manger de la viande nous avons besoin d'un —— et d'une ——. 3. On mange les légumes dans une —— et on boit le café dans une ——. 4. Nous travaillons beaucoup à l'école; nous faisons du —— et de l'—— et des —— et de l'——. 5. Je lis le —— *le Temps* (journal célèbre de Paris) tous les ——. 6. Nous allons nous —— parce que nous sommes fatigués. 7. Il —— chaud en ville en ——. 8. Nous allons —— les vacances à la ——. 9. Je —— un taxi pour aller à la ——. 10. À la gare j'attends le ——. 11. Le train —— et je —— dans une ——. 12. Mes parents sont contents de me ——. 13. Nous allons voir les —— et les ——. 14. Dans les champs nous voyons des —— et du —— mûr. 15. Dans les bois nous voyons des —— avec leurs —— vertes et nous —— chanter les ——. 16. J'écris une —— à ma mère. 17. La bonne a acheté un —— (*adverb of quantity*) de beurre.

(3) *In your answer, enumerate all the objects that may properly be included:* Qu'est-ce qu'on voit à la campagne (les animaux, les légumes, les fruits, etc.)?

(4) Qu'est-ce qu'on achète (*3d sing. present*) au marché?

(5) 1. Quand on achète quelque chose, que faut-il (*must one*) faire? 2. Que fait-on avec une poupée? 3. Que fait-on pendant le dîner? 4. Que fait-on au concert? 5–7. Que fait-on avec un couteau? avec une plume? avec la laitue?

8. Pourquoi est-ce qu'on mange? 9. Pourquoi est-ce qu'on boit? 10. Que fait-on quand on a sommeil?

(6) Pourquoi va-t-on au théâtre? au concert? au marché? au magasin? au restaurant? à la campagne? dans les champs? dans les bois?

(7) Quels légumes aimez-vous? Quels fruits? Que boit-on (*3d sing. pres. of* **boire**) chez vous?

(8) Quels parents avez-vous?

(9) *Distinguish (by examples of correct usage or by explanation) between the use of* fois *and* temps (*see* Lesson XVIII, A); *of* aller *and* partir (s'en aller); *of* partir *and* quitter; *of* partir *and* sortir; *of* depuis *and* depuis quand; *of* avant *and* devant; *of* meilleur *and* mieux; *of* peu *and* un peu; *of* un peu *and* quelque(s); *of* joli *and* beau; *of* vieux *and* ancien; *of* gentil *and* joli; *of* je prends *and* je mène (*1st sing. pres.*); *of* écouter *and* entendre; *of* comédie *and* pièce; *of* servir *and* se servir de; *of* cher *in* chère cousine *and* le poulet est cher; *of* voir *and* regarder; *of* il fait chaud *and* il a chaud.

(10) *Écrivez au pluriel:* monsieur, animal, œil, ciel. *Au féminin:* blanc, vert, tout, sec, court, muet, long, gros, vieux, nouveau, gentil.

(11) *Conjuguez au présent:* regarder, chercher, faire, aller, voir, mûrir, ouvrir, partir, dormir, servir, entendre, comprendre, prendre, écrire.

(12) *Écrivez à la première personne* (first person) *du pluriel du passé indéfini:* chercher, quitter, faire, être, aller, voir, sortir, attendre, prendre, ouvrir, écrire, descendre, monter, s'en aller, se coucher, s'appeler.

(13) *Écrivez en français:* 1. Belgium is an industrial country. 2. France is an agricultural country. 3. There are many fields in France. 4. There are also many forests and there are some that are very old. 5. Their trees are tall and beautiful. 6. One hears many birds sing in the green leaves. 7. The French fields are beautiful this year. 8. The wheat has ripened during the summer and they are going to cut it.

LESSON XIX

77. Pronoun Objects. 1. The personal pronoun has, for the indirect object of the third person, the following forms:

lui [lɥi], (to, for) him, (to, for) her. **leur** [lœːr], (to, for) them.

2. **Lui** and **leur** precede the verb (§ 30), but follow **le, la, les:**

Nous *lui* parlons.	We speak to him (to her).
Je *la lui* donne.	I give her it (it to her).
Je *les leur* donne.	I give them (to) them.

78. Observe the following peculiarities of pronunciation and spelling:

1. **commencer,** *to begin,* — **nous commençons.** The **c** [s] of the stem is written **ç** [s] before **o** of the ending (cf. § 5, 4).

2. **manger,** *to eat,* — **nous mangeons.** The **g** [ʒ] of the stem is written **ge** [ʒ] before **o** of the ending (§ 19, 2).

3. **mener** [məne], *to lead, take* (someone somewhere), **je mène** [mɛn], **tu mènes** [mɛn], **il mène** [mɛn], **nous menons** [numnɔ̃], **vous menez** [vumne], **ils mènent** [mɛn].

In this case the change affects both the spelling and the pronunciation. The vowel [ə], called mute **e** or feminine **e,** becomes [ɛ] when the syllable stress falls on it, as in four forms of the present of **mener**. This sound [ɛ] is here spelled **è**. The shift of stress occurs in those forms in which the [ə] of the stem would be followed by a single consonant + **e** mute (cf. § 12, 1, n.).

EXERCISE XIX

le **bonbon** [bɔ̃bɔ̃] (piece of) candy
la **bottine** [bɔtin] shoe, high shoe
le **chapeau** [ʃapo] hat
la **chaussure** [ʃosyːr] footwear
la **chemise** [laʃmiːz] shirt
la **cravate** [kravat] cravat, necktie
le **(faux-)col** [(fo)kɔl] collar
le **marchand** [marʃɑ̃] shopkeeper, merchant
le **mouchoir** [muʃwaːr] handkerchief
la **paire** [pɛːr] pair
le **prix** [pri] price
le **soulier** [sulje] shoe, low shoe

bleu [blø] blue
même [mɛːm] same
pauvre [poːvr] poor, unfortunate
plusieurs [plyzjœːr] several

EXERCISE XIX (Continued)

accompagner [akɔ̃paɲe] go with, accompany
appeler [aple] call
courir [kuri:r] run, run about; **couru** [kury] (*past participle of* **courir**)
demander [dəmɑ̃de] ask, ask for
rentrer [rɑ̃tre] return (home), come in again
bon marché [bɔ̃marʃe] cheap (*invariable*)
enfin [ɑ̃fɛ̃] finally, at length
souvent [suvɑ̃] often

A. 1. Que nous sommes fatigués! 2. Nous avons beaucoup couru aujourd'hui. 3. Mes cousins sont allés à plusieurs magasins et je les ai accompagnés. 4. Nous sommes entrés d'abord chez un marchand de chapeaux. 5. Un de mes cousins a demandé un chapeau. 6. Le marchand lui montre un joli chapeau. 7. Mon cousin lui dit: Combien, monsieur? 8. Trois dollars [dɔlar], répond le marchand, et mon cousin l'achète. 9. J'en ai pris un aussi au même prix. 10. Ensuite nous sommes allés chez un marchand de chaussures où l'on * nous a montré des bottines et des souliers. 11. Nous avons acheté une paire de bottines pour notre cousine et deux paires de souliers. 12. Les chaussures ne sont pas très bon marché maintenant. 13. Nous les avons payées bien cher. 14. Puis nous sommes entrés dans un grand magasin. 15. Un de mes cousins a demandé des chemises, des mouchoirs, des faux-cols et des cravates. 16. Le marchand lui en a montré de très jolis. 17. Il en a acheté. Il a acheté aussi des mouchoirs pour son père. 18. J'ai acheté une très jolie cravate en soie. 19. Je l'ai payée treize francs. 20. Enfin nous avons acheté des bonbons pour ma tante et mes cousines et nous sommes rentrés chez nous.

B. (1) *Run rapidly through* A, *changing the number or the person (or both) of each subject.*

(2) *Beginning with* Nous sommes entrés (A, 4) *change all the verbs to the present form. Such a passage would be quite normal in French. Would it be so in English?*

* The l' of **l'on** has no significance. It merely makes the sound more agreeable when coming between **où** and **on**.

(3) *Give two translations for* **courir.** *What is the past participle? What auxiliary does it take? Contrast with* **aller, partir, sortir, s'en aller,** *etc. Say:* he ran, he did not run, you have run about a lot to-day, haven't you?

(4) *Substitute a personal pronoun for the indirect object:* 1. Nous parlons au marchand. 2. Nous avons payé cette cravate au marchand. 3. Je l'ai payée au marchand douze francs. 4. Il a parlé de la pièce à sa tante. 5. Les petites filles ont donné leurs poupées à ces pauvres enfants. 6. La bonne a apporté du café à nos amis. 7. Elle a écrit une courte lettre à sa sœur. 8. Louise ne répond pas à son père. 9. Je vais porter des fleurs à mon amie. 10. Robert demande un faux-col et une cravate au marchand.

(5) *Substitute personal pronouns for the direct and indirect objects:* 1. Le général a donné le cheval à son fils. 2. Les généraux ont donné les chevaux à leurs fils. 3. Elle a écrit cette longue lettre à son oncle. 4. Vous écrivez la lettre au professeur en français, n'est-ce pas? 5. Voulez-vous donner une balle au petit garçon? 6. Le marchand a montré les chapeaux à mon oncle. 7. Il a vendu les bottes à mon cousin. 8. Le petit garçon a demandé la balle à son père.

(6) *Make these revised sentences negative.*

(7) *Supply a suitable personal pronoun of the third person, direct or indirect object, according to the verb:* 1. Nous —— (le? lui? les? leur?) écoutons. 2. Nous —— parlons. 3. Les hommes —— regardent. 4. Je —— attends. 5. Il —— paie trois francs. 6. Pierre —— demande une chemise et un mouchoir.

(8) *What is to be noted about the objects of* **écouter, regarder, attendre, payer, demander,** *as compared with the English equivalents? Note that* **payer** *may have three objects: the thing paid for (direct object), the amount paid (adverbial object), and the person paid (indirect object).*

C. (1) *Écrivez en français:* 1. I waited for him; we waited for her. 2. John is listening to them; we are talking to them. 3. I paid ten francs for them. 4. We begin dinner (to dine); first we take soup. 5. He takes his friends to the

theater. Let's take (*like first plural present indicative but no subject pronoun*) our cousins to the park. 6. I took my place. We take our friends to the station where they are going to take the train. 7. Our relatives often take us to the concert. 8. I ask my father for money. I ask my father for some. 9. Let's ask the merchant for a blue cravat and six collars. 10. We paid for the dinner. We paid five francs for it. 11. We paid the merchant ten francs for the shirt. We paid him ten francs for it.

(2) *Re-read the reading passages* (A) *in* Lessons XII, XIV, XV, XVI, *and write in French an account of a visit to the country.*

D. Dictée: Lesson XVII, A.

Exercise in Pronunciation

Note the pronunciation and spelling of the various forms of the present of **acheter,** *to buy* and **appeler,** *to call:*

acheter [aʃte]	**appeler** [aple]
1. achète [aʃɛt]	1. appelle [apɛl]
2. achètes [aʃɛt]	2. appelles [apɛl]
3. achète [aʃɛt]	3. appelle [apɛl]
4. achetons [aʃtɔ̃]	4. appelons [aplɔ̃]
5. achetez [aʃte]	5. appelez [aple]
6. achètent [aʃɛt]	6. appellent [apɛl]

Where does the syllable stress fall in forms 1, 2, 3, 6? Where in 4 and 5? What difference does this make in the sound of the [ə] of the stem of the infinitive? Note that this [ə] disappears entirely in the pronunciation of the infinitive of **acheter, appeler, devenir,** and in the forms **nous menons, vous menez, appelons, appelez, achetons, achetez,** but that it is sounded in the infinitive of a word of only two syllables like **mener** [məne], **venir** [vəniːr]. Compare Lesson V, *Exercise in Pronunciation,* (1). Observe that we say similarly [ʃəval], but [ləʃval, œʃval]. Are these changes of spelling in **mener, appeler,** etc., due to any phonetic principle? Contrast them with the changes in words like **manger, commencer.**

LESSON XX

79. Personal Pronoun Objects. The remaining forms serve both as direct and indirect object of verbs (for elision, see § 19):

me [mə], me, to (for) me.
te [tə], thee, to (for) thee, you
se [sə], himself, herself, itself, oneself, to (for) himself, etc.
nous [nu], us, to (for) us.
vous [vu], you, to (for) you.
se [sə], themselves, to (for) themselves.

80. Pronominal Adverbs. They are used with verbs, and are equivalent to a preposition + a pronoun, standing usually for things:

y = **à** (dans, sur, etc.) + a pronoun, means *to* (*at, on, in, into, etc.*) *it* or *them; there.*

en = **de** + a pronoun, means *of* (*from, etc.*) *it* or *them, some of it, some of them, some, any, thence; from there.*

Je vais *à* la campagne.	I am going to the country.
J'*y* vais demain.	I shall go there to-morrow.
Venez-vous *de* Paris?	Do you come from Paris?
Oui, j'*en* arrive.	Yes, I am coming from there.

81. Position. Personal pronoun objects and pronominal adverbs, coming before the verb, are arranged thus:

me, te, se, nous, vous } before { **le, la, les** } before { **lui, leur** } before **y** } before **en.**

Il *me* donne les plumes.	He gives me the pens.
Il *me les* donne.	He gives them to me.
Il *les leur* donne.	He gives them to them.
Il *nous en* donne.	He gives us some of it.
Il *y en* a.	There is (are) some.

82. Reflexive Verb. The compound tenses of reflexive verbs, *e.g.*, **se flatter,** *to flatter oneself*, are formed with **être:**

Present Indicative	Past Indefinite
I flatter myself, etc.	*I (**have**) flattered myself, etc.*
je *me* flatte [ʒəmflat]	je me *suis* *flatté*(*e*)
tu *te* flattes [tytflat]	tu t' *es* *flatté*(*e*)
il (elle) *se* flatte [ilsəflat]	il (elle) s' *est* *flatté*(*e*) [flate]
nous *nous* flattons [nunuflatõ]	nous nous *sommes* *flattés*
vous *vous* flattez [vuvuflate]	vous vous *êtes* *flattés*
ils (elles) *se* flattent [ilsəflat]	ils (elles) se *sont* *flattés* [flate]

83. Agreement. The past participle agrees with the preceding direct object, as in the case of verbs compounded with **avoir**:

Elles se sont flatté*es*.	They have flattered themselves.
But: **Ils se sont lavé les mains.**	They have washed their hands.

84. Observe the possessive force of the article, or of the article with an indirect object, when there is no ambiguity as to the possessor, especially when referring to parts of the body, clothing, etc.

Je vous donne *la* main.	I give you my hand.
La bonne *leur* lave *les* mains.	The maid is washing their hands.

EXERCISE XX

la **brosse** [brɔs] brush
la **chambre** [ʃɑ̃:br] bedroom (*usually*)
les **cheveux** *m.* [leʃvø] hair
la **figure** [figy:r] face, figure (*statue, etc.*)
les **nouvelles** *f.* [nuvɛl] news
le **peigne** [pɛɲ] comb
le **savon** [savõ] soap
la **serviette** [sɛrvjɛt] towel, napkin
la **tête** [tɛ:t] head

intéressant [ẽteresɑ̃] interesting

brosser [brɔse] brush

se **coucher** [səkuʃe] go to bed, lie down
se **laver** [səlave] wash oneself, wash
se **lever** [səlve] get up
penser (**à**) [pɑ̃se] think (of, have in mind)
perdre [pɛrdr] lose, waste
se **promener** [prɔmne] take a walk, ride
se **servir de** [səsɛrvi:rdə] make use of, use

avant de [avɑ̃də] before (*with infinitive*)

déjà [deʒa] already

A. (1) *Supply the object pronoun of the person indicated, both singular and plural:* 1. Le marchand —— (*1st pers.*) répond. 2. Je ne —— (*3d*) ai pas répondu. 3. Vous —— (*3d*) demandez des cigares? 4. Ils —— (*1st*) écoutent. 5. Nous —— (*3d*) écoutons. 6. Ils —— (*1st*) (*3d*) donnent. 7. Je —— (*3d*) ai payé un dîner.

(2) *Rewrite, using where possible direct and indirect object pronouns instead of the object nouns:* 1. Mon cousin a demandé des chapeaux (*see* § 36, 3) au marchand. 2. Le marchand a montré des souliers à mon oncle. 3. La bonne a apporté les lettres à mon père. 4. Elle m'a apporté les lettres. 5. Elle m'a apporté des lettres. 6. Elle nous a servi du potage. 7. Elle nous a servi le potage. 8. Il vend des pommes à ma sœur.

(3) *Substitute* **en** *or* **y** *for the prepositional phrases with* **de** *and* **à** *according to the sense:* 1. Nous parlons du lapin. 2. Il a parlé de ses vacances. 3. Elle est sortie de la salle à manger. 4. Nous sommes sorties du salon. 5. Lui avez-vous parlé de ses leçons de latin? 6. Il se sert d'une fourchette. 7. Nous avons besoin de serviettes. 8. Mes cousins se sont servis de mes cravates. 9. Je vais avoir besoin d'un mouchoir. 10. Nous pensons à notre voyage. 11. Elle pense à son nouveau chapeau. 12. Avez-vous pensé à chercher des bonbons? 13. Ce lapin pense à manger vos choux, n'est-ce pas? 14. Nous allons à la campagne. 15. Voyez-vous les élèves dans le parc? 16. Avez-vous quelque chose à la main? 17. Il a couru à l'école. 18. Il sort de sa chambre de bonne heure. 19. Nous sommes descendus du train à midi. 20. Nous sommes descendus à cet hôtel et nous y sommes restés pendant l'hiver. 21. Ils sont restés quinze jours à Paris. 22. Nos amis les ont accompagnés à la gare. 23. Ces messieurs sont arrivés à Chicago hier. 24. Ils sont de vos amis, n'est-ce pas?

B. (1) *Answer, using, instead of the nouns, personal pronouns and* **en** *or* **y** *when suitable:* 1. Sortez-vous du théâtre? 2. Avez-vous été au théâtre? 3. Allez-vous encore au théâtre? 4. Avez-vous ri de la comédie? 5. Dînez-vous avant d'aller au théâtre? 6. Vos cousins sont-ils allés au concert hier?

7. Avez-vous pensé à votre voyage? 8. Avez-vous pensé à m'accompagner chez Wanamaker? 9. Vous a-t-on servi du vin, monsieur? 10. La bonne a-t-elle apporté du café au salon? 11. En a-t-elle donné à Madame Perrin [pɛrɛ̃]? 12. Qui a accompagné vos cousins au théâtre? 13. Avez-vous demandé le journal à cette vieille femme? 14. Avez-vous donné à la vieille femme le prix du journal? 15. Lisez-vous les journaux tous les jours avant de quitter la maison? 16. Avez-vous trouvé des nouvelles intéressantes dans le journal? 17. L'élève a-t-il répondu aux questions? 18. Avez-vous répondu à sa lettre? 19. A-t-il répondu à ces dames? *

(2) *Write out the present and past indefinite indicative of:* se promener (*see* § 78, 3); se coucher; se servir d'une fourchette; s'en aller.

C. *Traduisez en français:* 1. He gets up early; he takes a drive (*use* **se promener en voiture, en automobile** [otɔmɔbil]); he goes to bed. 2. The cook uses lettuce to make salad. 3. She washes her (§ 84) hands before preparing dinner. 4. I wash my hands and face every evening (§ 58) before going to bed. 5. I have already washed my hands once. 6. These children washed their hands with (**avec**) (some) soap. Now they need a towel. 7. They ride horseback (*use* **se promener à cheval**) every day. 8. When they are tired, they go to bed early. 9. It is time to (**Il est temps de**) get up now; we get up; we got up early this morning; the girls (**bonnes**) got up; they are getting up now. 10 I have eyes in my (§ 84) head. He has pencils in (**à**) his hands, a hat on (**sur**) his head, shoes on (**à**) his feet. 11. We used soap and a towel to (**pour**) wash our hands. 12. They need a brush and a comb to brush their hair. 13. He lost his hair. If you do not wash your hair, you are going to lose it (*number?*). 14. We are washing our hair. She washed her hair yesterday. 15. Do you wash your hair often? 16. How many times (**Combien de fois**) a day (**par jour**) do you wash your hands? Your face? 17. How

* Note that y may not be substituted in the reply to the last question. Can you suggest a reason?

many times a day do you get up? 18. How often (= How many times) do you eat daily? 19. The whole family has gone away (*two ways*) and it is time to study my history lesson now.

D. *a. Count from 1–30, putting in each case a different noun after each numeral, as:* un franc, deux serviettes, trois brosses, etc.

b. Pronounce and learn the following numerals: trente et un élèves [trɑ̃:teœ̃nelɛ:v], trente-deux enfants [trɑ̃:tdøzɑ̃fɑ̃], trente-trois marchands. *Continue through 39, putting a noun after each numeral.*

c. 40 = quarante [karɑ̃:t], 41 = quarante et un [karɑ̃:teœ̃], 42 = quarante-deux [karɑ̃:tdø]. *Count through 49, putting a different noun after each numeral.*

d. 50 = cinquante [sɛ̃kɑ̃:t], 51 = cinquante et un [sɛ̃kɑ̃:teœ̃], 52 = cinquante-deux [sɛ̃kɑ̃:tdø]. *Count through 59, using in each case a noun beginning with a vowel.*

LESSON XXI

85. Imperfect Indicative of *donner, finir, vendre*

I was giving, etc.		*I was finishing, etc.*		*I was selling, etc.*	
donn *ais*	[dɔnɛ]	finiss *ais*	[finisɛ]	vend *ais*	[vɑ̃dɛ]
donn *ais*	[dɔnɛ]	finiss *ais*	[finisɛ]	vend *ais*	[vɑ̃dɛ]
donn *ait*	[dɔnɛ]	finiss *ait*	[finisɛ]	vend *ait*	[vɑ̃dɛ]
donn *ions*	[dɔnjɔ̃]	finiss *ions*	[finisjɔ̃]	vend *ions*	[vɑ̃djɔ̃]
donn *iez*	[dɔnje]	finiss *iez*	[finisje]	vend *iez*	[vɑ̃dje]
donn *aient*	[dɔnɛ]	finiss *aient*	[finisɛ]	vend *aient*	[vɑ̃dɛ]

86. Imperfect Indicative of *avoir, être*

I had, used to have, etc.				*I was, used to be, etc.*			
av *ais*	[avɛ]	av *ions*	[avjɔ̃]	ét *ais*	[etɛ]	ét *ions*	[etjɔ̃]
av *ais*	[avɛ]	av *iez*	[avje]	ét *ais*	[etɛ]	ét *iez*	[etje]
av *ait*	[avɛ]	av *aient*	[avɛ]	ét *ait*	[etɛ]	ét *aient*	[etɛ]

To form the Pluperfect tense, add a past participle; see § 63.

87. Use of the Imperfect. The name 'Past Descriptive' is often given to this tense-form. In general, it serves to indicate the situation, the setting, the state of affairs at a time in the past, without regard to the beginning or the end of the action, or to the length of its duration. In past narrative, the past indefinite is used to record the successive events one after the other; the imperfect form is used to give the background and the descriptive elements of the situation.

Since the English language has no such special tense form, except the progressive past (*was walking*, etc.), it is highly important to understand clearly the meaning of the sentence before deciding whether to translate a given English past into the French imperfect or into the past indefinite. Often both translations are possible, but with different meanings.

Study the following passage:

Vous *étiez* (*avez été*) absent hier, Pierre.	You *were* absent yesterday, Pierre.
Oui, monsieur, j'*étais* (*ai été*) malade.	Yes, sir, I *was* ill.
Je *suis resté* au lit toute la journée.	I *stayed* in bed all day.
J'avais (*ai eu*) la fièvre.	I *had* fever.
Ma gorge m'*a fait* (*me faisait*) très mal.	My throat *hurt* me very badly.
Le médecin *est venu* deux fois à la maison, et m'*a* si bien *soigné* que mon rhume *a disparu*.	The doctor *came* to the house twice and *took* such good care of me that my cold *disappeared*.
J'*ai été* (*étais*) malade comme cela l'hiver passé aussi.	I *was* ill like that last winter too.
Notre médecin *était* en France avec nos soldats, et j'*ai été* toute une semaine au lit.	Our physician *was* in France with our soldiers, and I *was* in bed for a whole week.

In only one case above (**Notre médecin *était* en France . . .**) would the past indefinite be quite out of place, but wherever it is used it stresses the narrative element of the story, the

fact that the incident was completed at a time in the past, whereas the imperfect form directs attention to the incident as it occurred, or to the state of affairs as it existed.

In certain cases, where the descriptive element is all important, the imperfect form is regularly used and corresponds to an English progressive past, or to a past modified by 'used to.'

1. It denotes what used to or continued to take place in the past.

Nous *parlions* souvent de vous.	We often spoke (used to speak) of you.
Tous les ans j'*allais* à la campagne en été.	I used to go to the country in summer every year.

2. It is used for an action that was happening when something else happened or was happening.

Quand le médecin *est arrivé*, j'*étais* au lit.	When the doctor came I was in bed.
Pendant que je *parlais*, mon ami *fumait* un gros cigare.	While I was talking, my friend was smoking (smoked) a large cigar.

NOTE. — In the first example under 1 above we could just as correctly say: **Nous *avons* souvent *parlé* de vous.** The meaning, however, would be somewhat different. The notion of an habitual action would have disappeared.

88. Imperfect of *faire* (irreg.)

I was doing, etc.

je fais *ais* [ʒəfəzɛ]	**nous fais *ions*** [nufəzjɔ̃]
tu fais *ais* [tyfəzɛ]	**vous fais *iez*** [vufəzje]
il fais *ait* [ilfəzɛ]	**ils fais *aient*** [ilfəzɛ]

89. For imperfect of **commencer, manger,** cf. §§ 78, 156:

je commençais [ʒəkɔmɑ̃:sɛ]	**je mang*e*ais** [mɑ̃:ʒɛ]
tu commençais [tykɔmɑ̃:sɛ]	**tu mang*e*ais** [mɑ̃:ʒɛ]
il commençait [ilkɔmɑ̃:sɛ], etc.	**il mang*e*ait** [mɑ̃:ʒɛ], etc.

EXERCISE XXI

un **appétit** [apeti] appetite
le **bain** [bɛ̃] bath
la **branche** [brɑ̃:ʃ] branch (*of tree*)
une **époque** [epɔk] time, period
le **mal** [mal] evil, harm
la **minute** [minyt] minute
le **petit déjeuner** [ləptidezœne] breakfast
la **peur** [pœ:r] fear
le **rêve** [rɛ:v] dream
la **terre** [tɛ:r] earth, ground
la **toilette** [twalɛt] toilet (*dressing*)

malade [malad] ill
souffrant [sufrɑ̃] not well

avoir peur [avwa:r pœ:r] be afraid, get frightened
cesser (de) [sɛse] stop
crier [krie] shout, cry out
dit [di] said (*past part.*)
faire jour [fɛ:rʒu:r] get light, be light; **faire noir** [fɛ:r nwa:r] be dark
se **faire mal** [mal] hurt oneself
frapper [frape] strike, impress
s'**habiller** [sabije] dress
réveiller [revɛje] wake; **se réveiller** wake up
rêver [rɛve] dream

fort [fɔ:r] loudly
heureusement [œrø:zmɑ̃] luckily
tard [ta:r] late
par **terre** [partɛ:r] on the ground
si [si] so
à **travers** [atravɛ:r] across, through

A. (1) 1. Je me suis couché hier soir de bonne heure, mais je n'ai pas bien dormi parce que j'étais un peu souffrant. 2. Mon bras me faisait mal. J'ai eu aussi de mauvais rêves. 3. J'ai rêvé que mon cheval courait à travers les champs et dans les bois. 4. Les branches des arbres me frappaient partout et j'avais peur de tomber et de me faire très mal. 5. J'ai eu si peur dans mon sommeil que j'ai crié très fort et je me suis réveillé. 6. Mais il faisait toujours très noir quand je me suis réveillé et je ne me suis pas levé tout de suite. 7. J'ai dormi encore un peu avant de me lever. 8. À six heures il a fait jour et je me suis levé. 9. J'ai fait ma toilette. 10. J'ai pris mon bain dans de l'eau froide et je me suis habillé. 11. La bonne commençait à préparer le petit déjeuner. 12. J'avais si faim que j'étais content quand elle a dit « C'est servi! » 13. Je suis descendu. Ma sœur était déjà à table. 14. Elle m'a dit « Bonjour! bon appétit! » 15. Ma mère n'était pas encore descendue. 16. J'ai mangé de (*with*) bon appétit, et puis nous sommes partis pour l'école.

(2) *Try to explain in each case the use of the tenses:* (*a*) 1. Nous avons fait visite hier à un de nos amis. 2. Il commençait à dîner quand nous sommes arrivés. 3. Il mangeait le potage. Nous sommes restés deux heures. 4. Il nous a invités à dîner et après nous avons fumé plusieurs bons cigares. 5. Mon ami n'a pas fumé. 6. Il fumait quand il était jeune, mais il a cessé de fumer l'année passée parce qu'il était malade. 7. J'ai été souvent malade mais je n'ai pas cessé de fumer. 8. Je ne fumais pas quand j'étais petit. 9. J'ai commencé quand j'avais vingt ans.

(*b*) 1. Nous avons été souvent à la campagne. 2. Nous y allions tous les étés. 3. Il faisait moins chaud qu'en ville. 4. Nos parents nous accompagnaient. 5. À cette époque-là mon grand-père habitait la vieille maison de famille. 6. Il était très âgé mais il était encore assez fort. 7. Il se promenait à cheval tous les jours. 8. Souvent je l'accompagnais sur un petit cheval qu'il m'avait donné. 9. Après ces promenades j'étais fatigué et j'avais un excellent appétit. 10. Une fois le cheval a eu peur. 11. Il a couru à travers les champs et je suis tombé par terre. 12. J'avais très peur, et je me suis fait mal au bras. 13. Heureusement il y avait de l'herbe et je suis tombé sur l'herbe, mais le bras m'a fait mal pendant deux ou trois jours.

B. (1) *In* **nous sommes restés deux heures** *and* **nous avons été souvent à la campagne** (A, 2), *is the emphasis on the continuousness, the repetition of the action, the situation, or on the event itself? Contrast the verb forms used in* **le cheval a eu peur** (*got frightened*) *and in* **j'avais très peur** (*was very much frightened*). *What seems to be the difference in the effect of the two?*

Note that verbs like **rester,** *adverbs like* **souvent, longtemps,** *and expressions of time like* **deux heures, deux ans,** *do not necessarily call for an imperfect tense, which, although it denotes* 'what continued to happen,' *is used only when the writer wishes to stress that element. Compare* § 66, *examples* 2 *and* 3.

(2) *Use the proper form of the verbs in parenthesis. Choose the past indefinite or the imperfect according to the sense of the*

sentence: 1. (être) Quand je —— petit je ——[1] de bonne heure. 2. (dormir) Je —— bien. 3. (se lever) Je —— de bonne heure aussi et je ——[2] avec mes parents. 4. (avoir) Je —— toujours bon appétit. 5. (rêver) Une nuit je —— que mon cheval ——[3] avec moi à travers la forêt. 6. (frapper) Une branche me —— dans la figure et je ——[4] très peur. 7. (crier) Je —— si fort que je ——.[5] 8. (dormir) Mais je —— encore deux heures avant de ——.[6] 9. (rêver) Je —— beaucoup. 10. (rêver) Je —— plusieurs fois que je ——[7] de mon cheval.

(3) *Vary the person and number of the subject in* A.

(4) *The imperfect of* **dormir** *is* **je dormais,** *etc. Conjugate it throughout. Contrast it with* **je finissais.** *Conjugate in the imperfect on this model:* **sortir, partir, servir.**

C. *Traduisez:* 1. I used to go to bed early and I slept well. 2. But once when I was ill I slept very badly and I dreamed a great deal. 3. I got very much frightened and shouted so loudly that my father came into my room and wakened me. 4. He said that I was shouting so loudly that I was waking the whole family. 5. When he saw that I was very much frightened, he stayed in my room [for] some minutes. 6. I slept some hours still before waking. 7. When I got up, the maid was preparing breakfast. 8. I was hungry and was glad to eat something. 9. When the maid said "Breakfast is ready," I went down stairs. 10. The family was at table already. We ate with a good appetite. 11. My sister left for school, but I looked at (**j'ai parcouru**) the morning paper before leaving. 12. It was Monday and I got (**arriver**) to school late that morning.

NOTE. — In 6 put **encore** (*still*) before 'some hours.' Be careful about the position of **déjà** in 10 (see A, (1), 13). Note the absence of any article in **à table** and **de bon appétit.** Note the different French forms in 1 and 2 for 'I slept'; why? In 12 put **tard** before **à l'école.**

D. Dictée: Lesson XIX, A.

[1] **(se coucher).** [2] **(déjeuner).** [3] **(courir).**
[4] **(avoir).** [5] **(se réveiller).** [6] **(se lever).** [7] **(tomber).**

LESSON XXII

90. Future Indicative of *donner, finir, vendre*

I shall give, etc.		*I shall finish, etc.*		*I shall sell, etc.*	
donner ***ai***	[dɔn(ə)re]	**finir** ***ai***	[finire]	**vendr** ***ai***	[vādre]
donner ***as***	[dɔn(ə)ra]	**finir** ***as***	[finira]	**vendr** ***as***	[vādra]
donner ***a***	[dɔn(ə)ra]	**finir** ***a***	[finira]	**vendr** ***a***	[vādra]
donner ***ons***	[dɔn(ə)rɔ̃]	**finir** ***ons***	[finirɔ̃]	**vendr** ***ons***	[vādrɔ̃]
donner ***ez***	[dɔn(ə)re]	**finir** ***ez***	[finire]	**vendr** ***ez***	[vādre]
donner ***ont***	[dɔn(ə)rɔ̃]	**finir** ***ont***	[finirɔ̃]	**vendr** ***ont***	[vādrɔ̃]

NOTE. — In the future of verbs of the **donner** type, we print the symbol **ə** in parenthesis to indicate that it is pronounced very lightly. In fact it usually disappears in rapid speech.

This symbol is printed in the same way in the future of **être** and **faire** in §§ 91, 92 to indicate that it is pronounced very lightly, and that it disappears if the preceding syllable ends in a vowel sound. Compare with this **la fenêtre** [lafnɛːtr], **ses leçons** [selsɔ̃], **deux chevaux** [døʃvo], **je me lève** [ʒəmlɛːv], **je serai** [ʒəsre], **nous ferons** [nufrɔ̃]. See Lesson V, *Exercise in Pronunciation*, (1); XIX, *Exercise in Pronunciation*.

91. Future Indicative of *avoir, être*

I shall have, etc.				*I shall be, etc.*			
aur ***ai***	[ɔre]	**aur** ***ons***	[ɔrɔ̃]	**ser** ***ai***	[s(ə)re]	**ser** ***ons***	[s(ə)rɔ̃]
aur ***as***	[ɔra]	**aur** ***ez***	[ɔre]	**ser** ***as***	[s(ə)ra]	**ser** ***ez***	[s(ə)re]
aur ***a***	[ɔra]	**aur** ***ont***	[ɔrɔ̃]	**ser** ***a***	[s(ə)ra]	**ser** ***ont***	[s(ə)rɔ̃]

92. Future Indicative of *aller* (irreg.), and *faire* (irreg.)

I shall go, etc.				*I shall do, etc.*			
ir ***ai***	[ire]	**ir** ***ons***	[irɔ̃]	**fer** ***ai***	[f(ə)re]	**fer** ***ons***	[f(ə)rɔ̃]
ir ***as***	[ira]	**ir** ***ez***	[ire]	**fer** ***as***	[f(ə)ra]	**fer** ***ez***	[f(ə)re]
ir ***a***	[ira]	**ir** ***ont***	[irɔ̃]	**fer** ***a***	[f(ə)ra]	**fer** ***ont***	[f(ə)rɔ̃]

93. For the future of **lever** and **acheter**, cf. § 78, 3:

je lèverai [lɛvre], etc. **j'achèterai** [aʃɛtre], etc.

94. Use of Future. It is used in general as in English, but observe its use in a subordinate sentence, when futurity is implied (but for 'if' clause see § 116, 3):

Je lui parlerai quand il ***arrivera.*** I shall speak to him when he *comes*.

EXERCISE XXII

un **autobus** [otəbys] motor bus
la **couturière** [kutyrjɛːr] dress-maker
le **devoir** [lədvwaːr] exercise
le **gant** [gɑ̃] glove
la **modiste** [mɔdist] milliner
le **projet** [prɔʒɛ] plan
la **promenade** [prɔmnad] walk, ride, excursion
la **semaine** [lasmɛn] week
le **travail** [travaːj] work

dernier [dɛrnje] last
fatigant [fatigɑ̃] tiring
prêt [prɛ] ready
prochain [prɔʃɛ̃] next
sale [sal] dirty

blanchir [blɑ̃ʃiːr] launder
essayer [esɛje] try on
faire beau [bo] be good weather; **faire mauvais** [mɔvɛ] be bad weather; **faire nuit** [nqi] get dark, be dark
mettre [mɛtr] put, put on

demain [dəmɛ̃] to-morrow
en **retard** [ɑ̃rtaːr] behind time, late
rapidement [rapidmɑ̃] rapidly, fast

A. 1. Il est déjà tard. Nous allons nous coucher tout de suite. 2. Demain nous nous lèverons de bonne heure parce que nous avons des projets de promenade. 3. Le petit déjeuner sera prêt quand nous descendrons. 4. Nous sortirons tout de suite parce que nous ne voulons pas être en retard. 5. S'il fait beau (temps) nous irons à pied; s'il fait mauvais (si le temps est mauvais), nous prendrons un autobus ou le tramway. 6. Nous passerons chez la modiste. Si nos chapeaux ne sont pas prêts, nous attendrons un peu. 7. Avant onze heures nous serons chez la couturière pour essayer nos robes. 8. Nous les payerons [pɛjrɔ̃] quand elles seront prêtes. 9. Quand nous serons fatiguées, nous irons déjeuner au restaurant du Café Voltaire. 10. Notre père nous y attendra à midi. 11. Après le déjeuner nous entrerons dans un magasin pour acheter des mouchoirs et des gants et puis nous rentrerons chez nous. 12. Nous attendons à dîner des amis qui nous mèneront au théâtre ce soir. 13. Si nos nouvelles robes sont prêtes, nous les mettrons. 14. On sort très tard du théâtre à Paris. 15. Il est fatigant de courir nuit et jour et nous serons bien contentes quand nous serons au lit.

B. (1) *Make a list from A of the instances of the special use of the future* (§ 94).

(2) *Complete the future forms, and reply to the questions:* 1. Je me fer– mal. 2. Ils se fer– mal. 3. Nous ir– chez nous. 4. Ils ir– au musée. 5. Il répondr– à vos questions. 6. On vous entendr–. 7. Vous vous réveil–. 8. Il fer– jour à six heures. 9. Si j'ai peur, je cri–. 10. Aur–-vous peur si je crie? 11. Crie–-vous si vous avez peur? 12. À quelle heure descendr–-vous? 13. Vous servir–-vous de cette brosse? 14. Vous amus–-vous au théâtre ce soir? 15. Cette pièce de Molière vous amus– beaucoup.

(3) *Use in the future the verbs in parenthesis:* 1. (se lever) À quelle heure vous ——? 2. (se lever) Je —— à sept heures. 3. (se lever) Vous —— tard, mon ami. 4. (répondre) Mon frère —— aux questions du professeur. 5. (entrer) Nous —— dans le théâtre avant huit heures. 6. (sortir) Nous —— du théâtre après minuit. 7. (être) —— vous à l'école la semaine prochaine? 8. (mener) Je vous —— au marché demain matin. 9. (acheter) Nous —— des haricots verts, des petits pois, et un chou pour mon lapin. 10. (être) Nous —— chez nous avant midi. 11. (avoir) La cuisinière —— besoin des légumes avant onze heures. 12. (perdre) Si vous arrivez si tard vous —— votre temps.

(4) *Supply the correct form of the verb in parenthesis and translate:* 1. (avoir) Je vous apporterai la chemise quand vous en —— besoin. 2. (avoir) Vous la mettrez quand vous la ——. 3. (être) Vous la ferez blanchir quand elle —— sale. 4. (être) Vous vous laverez les mains quand elles —— sales. 5. (être) Nous dînerons quand le dîner —— prêt. 6. (être) Nous descendrons quand vous —— habillé. 7. (avoir) Nous déjeunerons quand nous —— faim. 8. (faire) Nous sortirons tous les jours cet hiver quand il —— beau temps. 9. (faire) Nous nous lèverons quand il —— jour. 10. (faire) Nous resterons dans la maison quand il —— mauvais temps. 11. (entendre) J'ouvrirai la porte quand je vous —— venir. 12. (entendre) Je fermerai la fenêtre quand je —— chanter

votre amie. 13. (aller) Je prendrai un taxi quand je —— à la gare. 14. (finir) J'irai me coucher quand je —— mon devoir. 15. (se réveiller) Serez-vous prêt quand je ——?

(5) *What do you observe to be the written stem of the future of* **donner, finir, vendre?** *What familiar part of the verb does it seem to be? What do the future endings remind you of? Observe that for* **être, avoir, faire, aller** *these same endings are added to a new stem:* **ser-, aur-, fer-, ir-.** *Note the pronunciation of the future of* **donner.**

C. (1) *Beginning with* A, 2, *substitute* **hier** *for* **demain** *and shift the rest of the passage to the past. Look out for the imperfect and past indefinite forms. The* **si** *clauses must be converted into affirmative statements, as* (A, 5): Il a fait (*or* il faisait) beau temps et nous sommes allés à pied; il a fait mauvais et nous avons pris . . . *The slight confusion of sense here may be ignored. The two present forms in* A, 14 *and* 15, *contain general statements, and therefore remain unchanged.*

(2) *Traduisez en français:* 1. We used to finish our work early. 2. Did you finish it? 3. The grapes (*use singular*) were ripening when I was in the country last (*translate two ways*) week. 4. Did they get ripe rapidly? 5. Were you (*past indef.*) at the concert yesterday? 6. Were they (**on**) singing when you got (**arriver**) there? 7. Had they (**on**) begun? 8. Did you like the music? 9. How long did you stay? 10. Did the merchant sell (*two ways, with different senses*) shoes? 11. Did you dream when you were little? 12. Did you dream last (**cette**) night? 13. Did you get scared? 14. Did you hurt yourself when your horse fell? 15. Did you get frightened when your horse ran through the woods? 16. You didn't come yesterday; were you ill? 17. Did you see her often in France? 18. Did you stay long in France? 19. I worked two hours yesterday evening. 20. I worked a great deal (**beaucoup**) when I was younger. 21. It got light very late yesterday morning. 22. I was late for (the) school. 23. It was dark when I left.

D. Dictée: Lesson XXI, A.

LESSON XXIII

95. Disjunctive Personal Pronouns. The personal pronouns already given are used as subject or object with the verb, and are hence called 'conjunctive.' The following forms, not being immediately connected with a verb, are called 'disjunctive':

moi [mwa], I, me	**nous** [nu], we, **us**
toi [twa], thou, thee, you	**vous** [vu], you
lui [lųi], he, him	**eux** [ø], they (*m.*), them (*m.*)
elle [ɛl], she, her	**elles** [ɛl], they (*f.*), them (*f.*)

96. The following are some of their uses:

1. Absolutely, a verb being implied, but not expressed:

Qui est là? — *Moi* (*eux, elles*).	Who is there? — I (they).

2. After a preposition:

Pour *elles;* avec *moi;* sans *eux*.	For them; with me; without them.

3. As logical subject after **ce** + **être:**

C'est *moi*, c'est *toi*.	It is I, it is thou (you).
C'est *lui*, c'est *elle*.	It is he, it is she.
C'est *nous*, c'est *vous*.	It is we, it is you.
Ce sont *eux*, ce sont *elles*.	It is they (*m.*), it is they (*f.*).

97. When the real subject follows the verb **être, ce** is used to represent or point to this logical subject, whereas the English would seem to demand a personal pronoun (see § 44, 2, *a*):

C'est Marie et sa mère.	It is Mary and her mother.
C'est nous, *ce* sont eux.	It is we, it is they.
C'est un homme célèbre.	He is a celebrated man.
***Ce* sont mes meilleures amies.**	They are my best friends.
C'est aujourd'hui lundi.	It is Monday to-day (To-day is).
C'est à nous qu'il parle.	It is to us that he is speaking.

NOTE. — When the logical subject is a noun, **ce** is used in case the noun is modified by an article or a possessive adjective; **il (elle)** is used when the noun has no modifier, as when it denotes nationality or profession:

***C'est un* soldat**	But	***Il* est soldat**
***C'est un* Américain**		***Il* est Américain**

EXERCISE XXIII

un **autobus** [otɔbys] motor bus
le **coin** [kwɛ̃] corner
le **conducteur** [kɔ̃dyktœːr] conductor
le **côté** [kote] side, direction
la **dame** [dam] lady
la **destination** [dɛstinɑsjɔ̃] destination
le **militaire** [militɛːr] soldier (*of any rank*)
le **numéro** [nymero] number
un **ordre** [ɔrdr] order
le **voisin** [vwazɛ̃] neighbor
le **voyageur** [vwajaʒœːr] traveler, passenger

autre [otr] other
sage [saːʒ] good, well-behaved

s'**arrêter** [sarɛte] halt, come to a stop
demeurer [dəmœre] live, dwell, reside
saluer [salɥe] speak to, greet

bientôt [bjɛ̃to] soon, in a little while
là-bas [laba] over there, down there
à côté de beside, next to
sans [sɑ̃] without, but for

ne . . . rien [nə . . . rjɛ̃] nothing
cela ne fait rien [səlanfɛrjɛ̃] that doesn't matter
de **ce côté** [dəskote] on this side, in this direction

A. 1. Nous sortirons ce matin, n'est-ce pas? 2. — Oui, voulez-vous aller à pied ou prendrons-nous l'autobus au coin de la rue? 3. — Allons à pied. Il fait très beau. 4. J'aime à marcher quand il fait froid. 5. Qui est ce monsieur là-bas de l'autre côté de la rue? 6. — C'est un de nos anciens voisins, qui demeure maintenant dans une autre rue. 7. — Est-ce votre professeur de français? 8. — Non, ce n'est pas lui. Le voilà de ce côté de la rue qui monte dans (*getting into*) le tramway. 9. Avez-vous vu ces trois messieurs qui nous ont salués? 10. — Oui, je les ai vus. — Ce sont des amis de mon père. 11. Voyez-vous cette dame qui monte en voiture? C'est une amie de votre mère, n'est-ce pas? 12. — Non, elle est trop petite. Ma mère n'a pas d'amie aussi petite qu'elle. 13. — Mais elle nous a salués. 14. — Cela ne fait rien. Ce n'est pas une amie de ma mère. 15. Elle a salué peut-être ces messieurs qui sont derrière nous. Les voyez-vous? 16. — Oui, vous avez raison. Ce sont eux qu'elle a salués. 17. Ce sont deux jeunes militaires, n'est-ce pas? 18. — C'est à ce coin-là que nous attendrons l'autobus. 19. Il s'arrête

de l'autre côté de la rue. Prenons des numéros. 20. Quand l'autobus arrivera, le conducteur criera les numéros et les voyageurs monteront dans l'ordre de leurs numéros. 21. — Oh, je comprends! On ne fait pas comme cela chez nous. 22. — Non, mais cela ne fait rien; on fait comme cela en France. 23. — Eh bien, nous voilà montés! Nous avons de bonnes places, n'est-ce pas? 24. L'autobus marche vite et nous serons bientôt à notre destination.

B. (1) *a. Identify each case of* **ce** *and* **il** (**elle,** *etc.*) *in* A.

b. Fill in the blank with **ce** *or* **il** (**elle, ils, elles**): 1. —— fait chaud. 2. —— est quatre heures. 3. —— est aujourd'hui qu'il part. 4. —— est le conducteur qui a crié les numéros. 5. —— fera jour bientôt. 6. —— est facteur; — est cuisinière. 7. —— sera bientôt midi. 8. —— est ici que l'autobus s'arrête. 9. —— s'arrête ici. 10. —— sont mes frères que vous avez vus. 11. —— sont arrivés hier. 12. —— sont ici depuis huit jours. 13. —— demeurent à Saint-Louis. 14. —— est à Saint-Louis qu'ils demeurent. 15. À qui est-——? 16. —— est à eux.

(2) *Translate:* with me, at my house, at his house, with her, before them (*masc.*), behind them (*fem.*), for him, of them (*masc.*), without her, without them (*masc.*), by (beside) him, by me, after you, after her.

(3) *Give eight possible answers to each question, using disjunctive pronouns:* 1. Qui est là? 2. Qui a crié pendant la nuit? 3. Qui a perdu ce mouchoir?

C. (1) *Re-read exercise* A *of* Lesson XXII. *Close the book and reproduce it in the future with the following as key words:* se coucher ce soir —— des projets pour demain —— se lever —— déjeuner —— sortir —— prendre tramway, autobus —— passer chez modiste —— aller chez couturière —— essayer robes —— déjeuner avec papa au restaurant —— au magasin —— des gants —— rentrer —— théâtre ce soir —— content d'être au lit.

(2) *Translate and explain the cases of* **ce** *or* **il** (**elle,** *etc.*): 1. She is here; she is my teacher. 2. They went (**partir,** *see* Lesson XVIII, B, 2) this morning; they are the ones (= it is

they) who went this morning. 3. I am the one (= It is I) who spoke (*1st person*) to you. 4. He is famous; he is a famous man. 5. She is very pretty; she is a very pretty lady. 6. He is good (**sage**); he is a good boy. 7. It (*street car*) stops here; it is here that it stops. 8. They are gone (**partir**); they are my friends. 9. She stops; she is a good child. 10. He is [a] postman; he is the postman who brought the letters.

(3) *Fill in each blank with the present, imperfect, past indefinite and future (four forms) of the verb in parenthesis:* 1. (sortir) Notre voisin —— de sa maison. 2. (monter) Les voyageurs —— dans la voiture. 3. (faire) Cela ne —— rien (**rien** *as object has the same position as* **pas**). 4. (crier) Le conducteur —— les numéros. 5. (s'arrêter) Les tramways —— de l'autre côté de la rue. 6. (se promener) Mon oncle —— à cheval. 7. (courir: *1st future*, courrai) Ces jeunes filles —— nuit et jour. 8. (avoir besoin) Ces enfants —— d'un bon dîner. 9. (avoir) Il y —— une fois une belle dame. 10. (être) Il —— temps de partir. 11. (cesser) Mon père —— de fumer. 12. (s'appeler) Le petit garçon —— Charles [ʃarl]. 13. (commencer) Le professeur —— la leçon.

LESSON XXIV

98. Impersonal Verbs. They are conjugated in the third person singular only, with the subject **il** = *it*, used indefinitely and absolutely. Among such are

(*a*) verbs describing natural phenomena, as in English:

Quel temps fait-il?	What kind of weather is it?
Il fait beau temps.	It is fine (weather).
Il pleut, il pleuvait.	It is raining, it was raining.
Il a plu, il pleuvra.	It has rained, it will rain.
Il neige, il a neigé.	It is snowing, it has snowed.
Il fait chaud, il fait du vent	It is hot, it is windy.

(*b*) **Il faut:**

Il faut saluer ses amis.	It is necessary to (we must, you must, one must) speak to our (your, one's) friends.

(*c*) The idiomatic expression **il y a** + an object noun.

Il y a des plumes sur la table. There are pens on the table.
Il y a dix milles d'ici à la ville. It is ten miles from here to the city.

(*d*) **Il est** with expressions of time:

Il est trois heures, midi. It is three o'clock, twelve o'clock (noon).
Il est une heure (du matin). It is one o'clock (1 A.M.).

EXERCISE XXIV

une auto(mobile) [otɔ(mɔbil)] automobile (*often masc.*)
le bateau [bato] boat
le bout [bu] end
le camarade [kamarad] schoolmate, chum
le ciel [sjɛl] sky
le congé [kõʒe] leave; **jour de congé** holiday
le coucher du soleil [kuʃedysɔlɛːj] sunset
un endroit [ɑ̃ndrwa] spot, place
une excursion [ɛkskyrsjõ] trip
le lac [lak] lake
le lever du soleil [ləlvedysɔlɛːj] sunrise
le monde [mõːd] world
le nuage [nɥaːʒ] cloud
les provisions *f.* [prɔvizjõ] food, things to eat
le repas [lərpa] meal
le vent [vã] wind

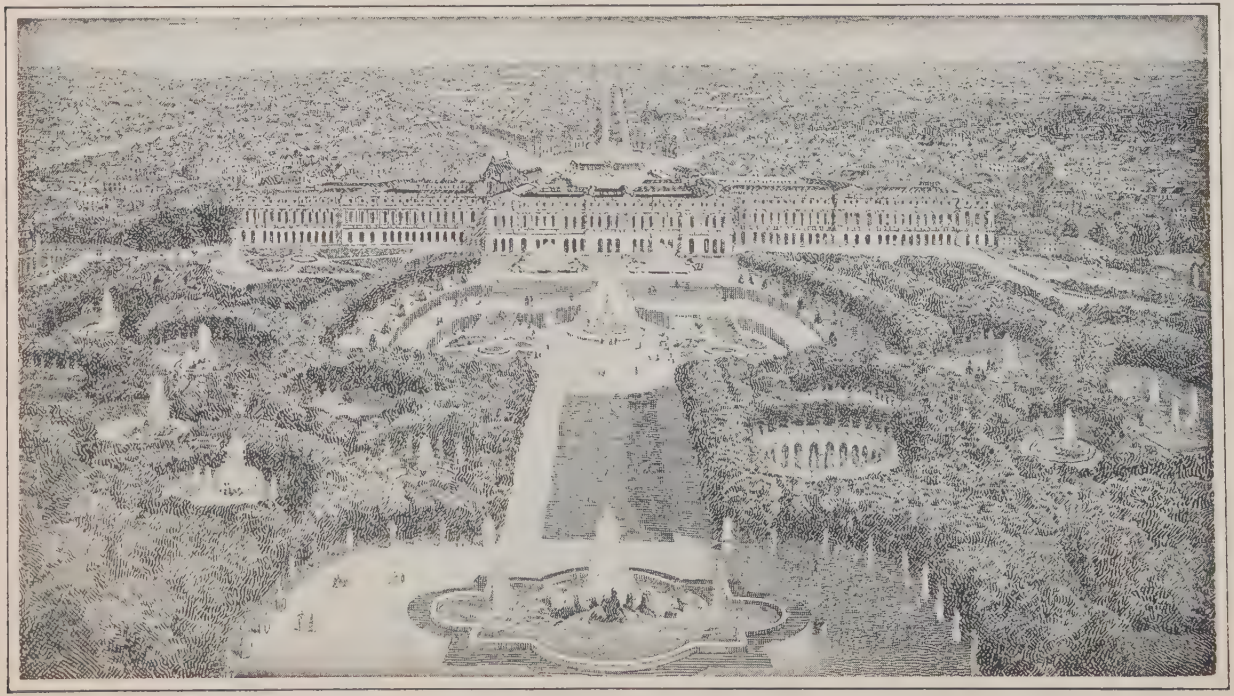
couvert [kuvɛːr] overcast, covered
propre [prɔpr] clean

le lundi [lœ̃di] Monday
le mardi [mardi] Tuesday
le mercredi [mɛrkrədi] Wednesday
le jeudi [ʒødi] Thursday
le vendredi [vɑ̃ːdrədi] Friday
le samedi [samdi] Saturday
le dimanche [dimɑ̃ːʃ] Sunday

appeler [aple] call
s'apprêter [saprɛte] get ready
chasser [ʃase] drive away
neiger [nɛʒe] snow
il neige [nɛːʒ] it is snowing
pleuvoir [plœvwaːr] rain
il pleut [plø] it is raining
se reposer [sərpoze] rest

après-demain [aprɛdmɛ̃] day after to-morrow
avant-hier [avɑ̃(t)jɛːr] day before yesterday

dehors [dəɔːr] outdoors
près de [prɛdə] near
sous [su] under, beneath
pendant que [pɑ̃dɑ̃kə] while



VERSAILLES

Une Promenade en Bateau

A. (1) 1. C'est aujourd'hui vendredi. 2. Mardi dernier nous avons fait une jolie excursion. 3. Nous nous sommes levés avant le lever du soleil et nous avons regardé dehors pour voir quel temps il faisait. 4. Le ciel était couvert de nuages et il commençait à pleuvoir. 5. Il a plu pendant une heure, mais après le petit déjeuner il a cessé de pleuvoir. 6. Le vent a chassé les nuages et bientôt il a fait très beau. 7. À dix heures nous sommes partis en automobile pour passer la journée dans le parc de Versailles, un des plus beaux parcs du monde. 8. Nous avons pris des choses à manger parce que nous voulions (*wished*) dîner sous les arbres. 9. Nous étions huit dans notre automobile mais nous étions bien malgré cela. 10. Il y avait plusieurs autres automobiles pour nos camarades. 11. En route nous avons chanté et crié, et nous avons beaucoup ri. 12. J'aime les excursions en auto, si on ne marche pas trop vite. 13. La grande route était très belle, avec de beaux arbres des deux côtés. 14. Les petits chemins dans la forêt étaient moins bons mais cela ne faisait rien. 15. Nous ne voulions pas aller trop vite.

(2) 16. Au bout d'une heure nous nous sommes arrêtés dans un joli endroit près d'un petit lac. 17. Il y avait de l'herbe et de beaux arbres. 18. Nos parents sont restés sous les arbres pour préparer le repas, pendant que les enfants s'amusaient. 19. Quelques-uns des garçons ont joué à la balle. 20. D'autres ont fait une promenade en bateau sur le petit lac. 21. Il y avait plusieurs bateaux et quelques-unes des jeunes filles les ont accompagnés. 22. Avant le repas ma mère m'a dit: « Tes mains ne sont pas propres; va les laver tout de suite. » 23. Après le dîner on s'est reposé sur l'herbe parce qu'on était fatigué. 24. À cinq heures nous sommes partis et nous sommes arrivés chez nous avant le coucher du soleil. 25. Quelle belle journée! En hiver on ne fait pas de si jolies excursions. 26. Il fait froid, il neige et très souvent il pleut toute la journée et on s'amuse mieux à la maison. 27. Les jours sont aussi très courts. Le soleil se lève tard et se couche de bonne heure. J'aime mieux l'été.

B. *Memorize*:* Eh, bonjour Lundi!
Comment va Mardi?
Très bien, Mercredi;
Je viens de la part de Jeudi,
Dire à Vendredi,
Qu'il s'apprête Samedi,
Pour aller à l'église Dimanche.

C. (1) *Transfer the story in* A *to the future, substituting* **demain** *for* **aujourd'hui, prochain** *for* **dernier,** *futures for past indefinites, etc., and tell it first in the first person as above, and then of* **mes cousins,** *making the proper changes of verbs, pronouns, etc. The first person, future, of* **voulions** *is* **voudrons** (*or use* **allons vouloir**).

(2) *Traduisez:* 1. It was raining when we got up this morning, but it did not rain long. 2. When it stopped raining we went out. Our friends were waiting for us. 3. They invited us to go with them to Versailles, where they were going to spend the day in the beautiful park. 4. There were eight of us in their motor car, but in spite of that we were very comfortable. 5. On the way we laughed and sang. When we got to our destination we all got out (**descendre**). 6. While our parents prepared dinner on the grass, the boys played ball. 7. Some of the girls went for a boat ride on the small lake. 8. We asked them (*indirect object*) to (**de**) wait for us, but they would (*imperf. of* **vouloir**; *1st person,* **voulais**) not. 9. Two of the girls fell into the water, but they did not hurt themselves. 10. At six o'clock my mother called us and we set out (= departed). 11. The car went rapidly and we got home before sunset.

D. *Répondez aux questions:* 1. Quel jour de la semaine est-ce aujourd'hui? 2. Quel jour est-ce que ce sera demain? 3. Et

* Translation: (Good morning, good day), How do you do Monday! How is Tuesday? — Very well, Wednesday; — I come from (= in behalf of) Thursday — To tell Friday — That he is to get ready Saturday, — To go to church Sunday.

Observe the use of capital letters here, contrary, apparently, to § 21. In this jingle the days are personified.

quel jour était-ce hier? 4. Et après-demain? 5. Et avant-hier? 6. Quels jours de la semaine avez-vous vos classes? 7. Allez-vous à l'école tous les jours? 8. Jeudi est jour de congé pour les petits Français; avez-vous congé le jeudi? 9. Est-ce que vous vous amusez le samedi? 10. Aimez-vous mieux les samedis ou les lundis? 11. Quand est-ce que «Vendredi» s'apprête? 12. Pourquoi s'apprête-t-il? 13. Vous apprêtez-vous le samedi pour aller à l'église le dimanche? 14. Comment allez-vous aujourd'hui? 15. Comment va votre père? 16. Quels sont les jours de la semaine?

E. Dictée: Lesson XXII, A.

VOCABULARY REVIEW No. 3

(1) *Give opposite or synonym:* bon marché, une bottine, une semaine, deux semaines, tard, faire beau, faire chaud, avoir raison, essayer, se lever, de bonne heure, le lever du soleil, jour, matin, pauvre, ensuite, quelque chose, sale, premier.

(2) *Supply the proper words:* 1. La terre est —— de neige. 2. Le vent —— les nuages. 3. Il —— à vos questions. 4. La couturière fait des ——; la modiste fait des ——. 5. J'étais fatigué et j'ai dormi —— ce matin. 6. Je suis arrivé en —— à l'école. 7. Je me coucherai de bonne heure parce que j'ai ——. 8. Je vais au concert parce que j'aime la ——. 9. Je vais voir une —— de Molière au —— ce soir. 10. Allez vite laver vos mains, elles sont ——; elles ne sont pas ——. 11. Je me suis —— les cheveux; je me suis —— la figure. 12. J'ai mes —— aux pieds. 13. Pour me laver les mains j'ai besoin de —— et d'une ——. 14. Je n'aime pas cet enfant, il n'est pas ——. 15. Prenons l'autobus qui —— à ce coin de la rue. 16. Les —— montent dans le tramway; le conducteur crie les —— et nous montons dans —— de nos numéros. 17. Je n'aime pas les autos, j'aime mieux me promener à ——. 18. Quand il —— froid, je mettrai mes gants. 19. Nous avons acheté deux —— de souliers. 20. Je marche avec les —— et les ——, je pense avec la ——.

(3) *Supply past indefinite and future of* **cesser** *or* **s'arrêter** *according to the sense:* 1. Il —— de pleuvoir. 2. Le train ——. 3. Il ne neige pas maintenant, la neige a —— de tomber. 4. Cet enfant a —— d'écouter. 5. Il —— à la porte. 6. Ne vous —— pas dans la rue; vous serez en retard pour la classe. *Supply the infinitive of one of these verbs:* 7. Voulez-vous ——? 8. Voulez-vous —— de causer avec eux?

(4) *Supply* **fois** *or* **temps** *or* **heure:** 1. Il fait beau ——; deux à la ——; il est —— de partir; quelle —— est-il? c'est —— du dîner. 2. Combien de —— resterez-vous chez la couturière? 3. Combien de —— les avez-vous vus? 4. Le —— c'est de l'argent. 5. Je n'ai pas le —— d'y aller. 6. Il a neigé plusieurs —— vendredi dernier. 7. Depuis combien de —— demeurez-vous à New-York? 8. Notre auto [oto] s'est arrêtée trois ——. 9. Il y avait une —— une petite fille très sage.

(5) *a. Supply* **de bonne heure** *or* **bientôt:** 1. Ils se lèveront —— demain. 2. Il est un peu en retard mais il arrivera ——. 3. J'ai fait une promenade —— ce matin. 4. Je rentrerai —— pour le déjeuner. 5. Attendez un peu, l'autobus arrivera ——. 6. Si le tramway n'arrive pas ——, j'irai à ma destination à pied. 7. Aujourd'hui ils se sont réveillés ——.

b. Supply **tard** *or* **en retard:** 1. J'aime à me lever —— en hiver. 2. Le soleil se couche —— en été. 3. Je suis parti très —— de chez moi. 4. Cet élève est toujours ——. 5. Vous êtes —— pour prendre le train. 6. Le train est arrivé —— à la gare.

(6) *Use in two sentences each the verbs conjugated with* **être** (*see* Lesson XVIII).

(7) *Supply suitable words:* 1. Nous avons été au « Bon Marché » (magasin célèbre de Paris). 2. Nous avons acheté une paire de ——, trois paires de ——, et deux —— pour ma grande sœur. 3. Et nous avons acheté une jolie —— verte pour mon oncle, des ——, des ——, et des —— pour mon père et des —— pour ma petite sœur. 4. Tous les enfants aiment les ——.

(8) *Énumérez* (enumerate) *les objets dont vous vous servez pour votre toilette* (*voyez aux* Leçons XX, XXI).

(9) *Complétez:* 1. Vous —— trop de cigares. 2. Quand les enfants —— peur, ils ——. 3. Les enfants —— ne crient pas beaucoup. 4. Quand le ciel est couvert de —— en hiver, on dit qu'il va ——. 5. Si c'est en été, on dit qu'il va ——. 6. On se promène sur l'eau dans un ——. 7. On se promène à travers la forêt à ——. 8. On se promène sur les grandes routes en —— ou à —— ou à ——.

(10) *Quels sont les jours de la semaine?*

(11) *Dites en français:* already, again, late, early, at length, through, beside, near, yell loudly, the same day, out-doors.

LESSON XXV

99. The Infinitive. Some of the commoner uses of the infinitive are:

1. Without any preposition, (*a*) after such verbs as **devoir,** *must, ought to,* **falloir,** *must, be necessary to,* **pouvoir,** *can, be able to,* **savoir,** *can, know how to,* **vouloir,** *will, wish;* (*b*) after verbs of motion such as **aller,** *go,* **venir,** *come;* (*c*) after verbs of perceiving such as **écouter,** *listen* (*to*), **entendre,** *hear,* **voir,** *see,* **regarder,** *look at;* and after **faire,** *make, cause to,* **laisser,** *let.*

Désire-t-il aller en ville?	Does he wish to go downtown?
Il faut travailler.	He (we, you, they, *etc.*) must work.
Je vais chercher des plumes.	I am going to get some pens.
Je vois venir des soldats.	I see some soldiers coming.
Je fais sonner la cloche.	I make the bell ring.

2. Preceded by **de,** (*a*) after impersonal **être** followed by an adjective; (*b*) after many verbs, such as **cesser,** *stop,* **demander,** *ask,* **dire,** *tell,* **essayer,** *try,* **prier,** *beg,* **regretter,** *regret, be sorry,* **tâcher,** *try;* (*c*) after nouns to form adjective phrases; and after most adjectives.

Il est facile *de* parler.	It is easy to talk.
Il a cessé *de* chanter.	He has ceased singing.
Le crime *de* voler.	The crime of stealing.
Vous êtes libre *de* partir.	You are free to go.
Je vous prie *de* rester quelques minutes.	I beg of you to stay a few minutes.

3. Preceded by **à**, (*a*) after such verbs as **aimer**, *like*, **s'amuser**, *have a good time*, **apprendre**, *learn*, **avoir**, *have to*, **chercher**, *seek*, **commencer**, *begin*, **continuer**, *continue*, **enseigner**, *teach*, **inviter**, *invite*, **se mettre**, *begin*, **réussir**, *succeed;* and (*b*) after some adjectives denoting fitness, tendency, purpose, etc.

J'aime *à* patiner.	I like to skate (like skating).
Je m'amuse *à* patiner.	I amuse myself (by) skating.
Commencez *à* lire.	Begin to read.
Nous avons *à* copier nos phrases.	We have to copy our sentences.
Il se met *à* travailler.	He begins to work.
Ceci est bon *à* manger.	This is good to eat.
Cela est facile *à* faire.	That is easy to do.

N.B. — **Aimer** may also (colloquially) be followed by the pure infinitive; *e.g.*, **j'aime (à) marcher lentement,** *I like to walk slowly.*

4. Observe that the same adjective may take **à** or **de**, according to the construction in which it is used. When the infinitive depends upon the adjective and is not the logical subject of the sentence, the adjective and the infinitive are connected by means of **à**; when the infinitive is the real subject of the sentence, it is preceded by **de.**

Il est facile *à* contenter.	He is easy to satisfy.
Il est facile *de* le contenter.	It is easy to satisfy him.
La chose est facile *à* faire.	The thing is easy to do.
Il est difficile *de* patiner.	Skating is difficult.

5. A verb governed by a preposition must be in the infinitive, except after **en** (cf. § 101); the infinitive is usually translated into English by means of a present participle:

Je l'ai fait sans penser.	I did it without thinking.
Il est parti sans rien dire.	He left without saying anything

100. Present Participle of *donner, finir, vendre,* etc.

Giving	*Finishing*	*Selling*
donn *ant* [dɔnɑ̃]	**finiss *ant*** [finisɑ̃]	**vend *ant*** [vɑ̃dɑ̃]

Having	*Being*
ay *ant* [ɛjɑ̃]	**ét *ant*** [etɑ̃]

101. Agreement. Used as an adjective, the present participle agrees like an adjective; otherwise it is invariable:

Une scène charmante.	A charming scene.
Les enfants sont obéissants.	The children are obedient.
Elle tombait souvent en *marchant*.	She often fell while walking.
Ce professeur aime à s'amuser en lisant les pièces de Molière.	This teacher likes to entertain himself by reading Molière's plays.
En lisant on apprend à lire.	By reading one learns to read.
Tout en pleurant, elle continua.	Still weeping, she went on.

N.B. — The present participle, when preceded by **en**, strengthened sometimes by **tout,** is often called the *gerund.* The preposition **en** is expressed in English by *on, in, while, by* or is left untranslated.

102. Present Indicative of *pouvoir,* *be able, can, may* (irreg.)

I can, am able, etc.

je peux *or* **puis**	[ʒəpø,pɥi]	**nous pouvons**	[nupuvɔ̃]
tu peux	[typø]	**vous pouvez**	[vupuve]
il peut	[ilpø]	**ils peuvent**	[ilpœ:v]

103. The impersonal **il faut** (imperfect **il fallait,** past indef. **il a fallu,** future **il faudra**) is often used with the pure infinitive to indicate a general obligation on the part of the speaker or the person spoken to or about:

Il faut faire son devoir.	One must do one's duty.
Il faut partir.	I (we, you, he, they) must leave.
Il ne fallait pas s'arrêter.	You (we, he, they, she) ought not to have stopped.
Il a fallu beaucoup travailler	We (they, you, etc.) had to work hard.
Il ne faudra pas voler.	We (one, people, etc.) must not steal.

Observe the position of the negative words in the French examples.

EXERCISE XXV

la **carte** [kart] card, map
la **cloche** [kloʃ] bell
la **connaissance** [kɔnɛsɑ̃:s] acquaintance
un **effort** [efɔ:r] effort
la **glace** [glas] ice, mirror
le **roman** [rɔmɑ̃] novel
la **soirée** [sware] evening (*when duration is stressed*)

charmant [ʃarmɑ̃] delightful
enchanté [ɑ̃ʃɑ̃te] delighted
libre [libr] free

falloir [falwa:r] be necessary; **il faut** [fo] it is necessary, one must; **il faudra** [fodra] it will be necessary, one will have to *or* must
pouvoir [puvwa:r] be able, can
venir [vəni:r] come; **il vient** [vjɛ̃] he comes, is coming
vouloir [vulwa:r] wish

apprendre (à) [aprɑ̃:dr] learn, teach
enseigner (à) [ɑ̃sɛɲe] teach
réussir (à) [reysi:r] succeed

essayer (de) [esɛje] try, attempt
prier (de) [prije] ask, beg, request
regretter (de) [rəgrɛte] regret, be sorry

patiner [patine] skate
se **porter** be (*of health*)
remercier [rəmɛrsje] thank
sonner [sɔne] ring

facilement [fasilmɑ̃] easily

A. 1. Bonjour, monsieur; je suis enchanté de faire votre connaissance. 2. Comment allez-vous aujourd'hui? 3. — Très bien, merci. Et vous? 4. — Qui? Moi? Toujours bien, je vous remercie. 5. Aimez-vous ce temps? — Oh, beaucoup. 6. Il a fait froid cette nuit (*last night*) mais maintenant on voit le soleil et il fait presque chaud. 7. J'ai fait une promenade charmante dans le parc ce matin. 8. Il n'y a pas de fleurs, mais il y a des * petits oiseaux qui ne sont pas partis, et qui n'ont pas encore cessé de chanter. 9. En passant j'ai regardé le petit lac et j'ai vu qu'il y avait de la glace. 10. Nous pouvons bientôt patiner. 11. On peut s'amuser facilement en hiver, n'est-ce pas? 12. — Oui, il est très facile de s'amuser dehors quand on se porte bien. 13. Et si on ne désire pas sortir, on peut rester à la maison à lire et à faire de la musique. 14. J'ai

* Observe **des petits oiseaux,** like **des petits pois.** The adjective and noun are felt as a compound noun. Similarly we say regularly **des jeunes filles, des petits pains** (*rolls*) and, often, **des petits garçons**

commencé hier un roman de Dumas [dyma]. 15. Et souvent nous invitons nos amis à passer la soirée chez nous. 16. On chante, on danse, on joue aux cartes. 17. Oui. Il est facile de bien s'amuser quand on a des amis.

B. (1) *Use the indicated infinitive, directly or preceded by a preposition, according to* § 99: 1. Vous ne pouvez pas (parler). 2. Il faut (se coucher) tout de suite. 3. Nous allons (nous lever) maintenant. 4. Il a déjà cessé (pleuvoir). 5. Je regrette (quitter) mes amis. 6. Je vous prie (répondre) à ma question. 7. J'ai beaucoup à faire; nous avons trop (faire). 8. Ma sœur a entendu (chanter) Caruso. 9. Vous entendrez (chanter) les oiseaux dans le parc. 10. Nous voulons (voir) le petit lac. 11. Je vois (tomber) la neige. 12. À quelle heure voulez-vous (dîner)? 13. Le vent a réussi (chasser) les nuages. 14. Vous pouvez (réussir) (parler) français, si vous tâchez (bien prononcer). 15. Nous essayons (parler) français. 16. Je vais (me promener) près de la forêt. 17. Il m'a enseigné (monter) à cheval. 18. Vous êtes libre (jouer) dans mon jardin. 19. Regrettez-vous (cesser) (fumer)? 20. Je vous prie (vous servir) de mon savon. 21. Il fait jour; il faut (se lever) tout de suite; il faudra (rentrer) avant minuit. 22. J'aimais (passer) les vacances à la campagne. 23. Elle avait réussi (trouver) son livre. 24. Il n'est pas facile (bien prononcer) le français. 25. Désirez-vous (vous arrêter) ici? 26. Ils voient (venir) leurs amis. 27. Il écoutait (sonner) les cloches. 28. Il m'a prié (le mener) au concert. 29. Il s'amuse (lire). 30. Il m'apprendra (patiner). 31. Les élèves demanderont au professeur (leur enseigner) (lire) le français.

(2) *What do you observe about the position of the infinitive after* **entendre, voir, écouter?** *Contrast it with the order in English.*

(3) *a. Observe carefully:* 1. La classe a appris **à** bien prononcer. 2. **Après** avoir fait ma toilette, je suis descendu. 3. Je regrette **de** vous voir partir. 4. Mon père a fini **par** me chasser de la maison. 5. On se couche **pour** dormir. 6. On ne peut rien apprendre **sans** faire un effort.

b. These six prepositions take the infinitive. What form of the infinitive is found after **après**? **Par** *with the infinitive is usually found only after* **commencer** *and* **finir.** *Observe that* **en** *does not take the infinitive. For* by + *verb form in other cases, compare* § 101, *example* 5. *May we use* **avant** *alone before an infinitive?*

c. Translate: 1. After finishing my work; after eating too much. 2. We shall begin by reading aloud (**à haute voix**). 3. One learns to skate by skating. 4. Before leaving, I wish to thank you again (**encore une fois**).

d. Note the usual position of **bien** *with infinitives* (before), *and in compound tenses* (before the past participle). *Write:* 1. We had a very good time. 2. She sang well yesterday.

C. (1) *Translate the participial phrases* (*be careful about the auxiliaries*): 1. Having finished his lesson. 2. Having arrived before noon. 3. Having stopped eating. 4. Having gone to see her. 5. Having succeeded in teaching you to skate. 6. Having been to the theater yesterday evening (not **soirée**). 7. Having gone out early. 8. Having come in (**rentrer**) late. 9. Having waked (*1st person:* **m'étant réveillé.** *Third person?*) before daylight (**le jour**). 10. Having got up (*1st plural fem.:* **nous étant levées.** *Third plural fem.?*) at six o'clock. 11. Having begged (**prier**) my father to give me more money. 12. Having asked (**demander**) my chum to come to see me.

(2) *Traduisez:* 1. He enters without knocking. 2. She left without looking at me; you cannot pronounce French without making an effort. 3. In winter we amuse ourselves by (**à**) skating. 4. He will not succeed in finding the right (**bon**) road. 5. Do you want to spend your time in (**à**) running-about (**courir**) the streets? 6. He speaks of going to France (the) next summer. 7. He cannot speak of going away without regretting to leave his friends. 8. While skating (*see* § 101, *example* 3) yesterday, I fell and hurt myself. 9. When I was small I used to fall and hurt myself while skating. 10. Appetite comes (**vient**) while one eats (= eating). 11. We (**On**) learn to speak French by speaking (*see* § 101, *example* 5). 12. We (**On**) succeed in stopping smoking by stopping smoking.

LESSON XXVI

104. Present Subjunctive of *donner, finir, vendre*

I (may) give, etc.		*I (may) finish, etc.*		*I (may) sell, etc.*	
donn **e**	[dɔn]	**finiss e**	[finis]	**vend e**	[vɑ̃:d]
donn **es**	[dɔn]	**finiss es**	[finis]	**vend es**	[vɑ̃:d]
donn **e**	[dɔn]	**finiss e**	[finis]	**vend e**	[vɑ̃:d]
donn ***ions***	[dɔnjɔ̃]	**finiss *ions***	[finisjɔ̃]	**vend *ions***	[vɑ̃djɔ̃]
donn ***iez***	[dɔnje]	**finiss *iez***	[finisje]	**vend *iez***	[vɑ̃dje]
donn ***ent***	[dɔn]	**finiss *ent***	[finis]	**vend *ent***	[vɑ̃:d]

N.B. — The paradigm meanings *I may give*, etc., are only approximate, as will be seen from the examples below.

105. Present Subjunctive of *avoir, être*

I (may) have, etc.				*I (may) be, etc.*			
aie	[ɛ]	**ayons**	[ɛjɔ̃]	**sois**	[swa]	**soyons**	[swajɔ̃]
aies	[ɛ]	**ayez**	[ɛje]	**sois**	[swa]	**soyez**	[swaje]
ait	[ɛ]	**aient**	[ɛ]	**soit**	[swa]	**soient**	[swa]

106. Use of the Subjunctive. Some of the commoner uses of the subjunctive are:

1. In a subordinate noun clause introduced by **que**, *that*, after expressions of *willing* or *desiring:*

Je désire que vous restiez.	I desire you to remain (= that you may *or* should remain).

2. Similarly, after expressions of *joy* or *sorrow:*

Je suis content qu'il soit ici.	I am glad he is here.

3. So also after expressions of *necessity*, like **il faut:**

Il faut que vous restiez.	You must remain.
Il est nécessaire que vous restiez.	It is necessary for you to remain.

N.B. — We learned in §§ 99, 103 that **falloir** is often followed by the pure infinitive. In B and C of the Exercise below the pupil will find examples that should help him to decide between the cases when the infinitive or subjunctive may be used indifferently, or when the subjunctive is required. It should be observed that the subjunctive construction is preferable in such cases as example 1, when we have a definite person in mind.

4. It is used in adverbial clauses after certain conjunctions, *e.g.*, **afin que,** *in order that,* **pour que,** *in order that,* **avant que,** *before,* **bien que,** *although,* **quoique,** *although,* etc.

Bien qu'il soit pauvre il est heureux. Although he is poor, he is happy.

5. **Que** is never omitted, as *that* often is in English:

Je suis content *qu'*il soit ici. I am glad (that) he is here.

107. Tense Sequence. Present or Future in the principal clause is regularly followed by Present Subjunctive:

PRES. **Il faut** } **que vous parliez.** { You must speak.
FUT. **Il faudra** } { You will have to speak.

108. Present Indicative of *vouloir,* *will, wish,* etc. (irreg.)

I will, wish, etc.

je veux [ʒəvø]	**nous voulons** [nuvulõ]
tu veux [tyvø]	**vous voulez** [vuvule]
il veut [ilvø]	**ils veulent** [ilvœl]

109. Present Subjunctive of *faire* (irreg.)

I (may) do, etc.

fasse [fas]	**fassions** [fasjõ]
fasses [fas]	**fassiez** [fasje]
fasse [fas]	**fassent** [fas]

EXERCISE XXVI

le billet [bijɛ] ticket
le doute [dut] doubt
un esprit [ɛspri] wit, intelligence, spirit
la fin [fɛ̃] end
la guerre [gɛːr] war
une intention [ɛ̃tɑ̃sjõ] intention
le moyen [mwajɛ̃] means, way
la vie [vi] life

aimable [ɛmabl] kind
charmé [ʃarme] delighted
mille [mil] a thousand
possible [pɔsibl] possible

avoir l'intention de intend
dire [diːr] say, tell
envoyer [ɑ̃vwaje] send
féliciter [felisite] congratulate
laisser [lɛse] leave, allow
permettre (de) [pɛrmɛtr] allow, permit
voyager [vwajaʒe] travel

ne . . . que only
sans doute [sɑ̃dut] doubtless, certainly
seulement [sœlmɑ̃] only

EXERCISE XXVI (Continued)

afin que [afɛ̃kə] in order that, so that
avant que [avɑ̃kə] before
bien que [bjɛ̃kə] although
quoique [kwakə] although
au **revoir!** [orvwa:r] good-bye, see you again!
c'est cela [sɛsla] that's right, that's it
peut-être [pøtɛ:tr] perhaps

A. *Use the infinitive in parenthesis with or without a preposition according to usage:* 1. On ne peut pas (bien marcher) sur la glace; il faut (apprendre) (patiner). 2. Je regrette (ne pas pouvoir) (patiner). 3. Il a cessé (neiger) maintenant; nous pouvons (sortir). 4. Désirez-vous (faire) la connaissance de Monsieur Daudet [dodɛ]? 5. — Beaucoup. Je vous prie (me présenter) à Monsieur Daudet. 6. — Alors, permettez-moi (vous présenter) mon ami, Monsieur Dupin. 7. — Je suis charmé (faire) votre connaissance, monsieur. 8. Êtes-vous depuis longtemps en Amérique? 9. — Non, monsieur. Je ne suis en Amérique que depuis trois mois. Je l'aime beaucoup, et je regretterai (partir) la semaine prochaine. 10. — Vous avez réussi (très bien apprendre) l'anglais. Permettez-moi (vous féliciter). 11. — Je vous remercie, monsieur. Vous êtes mille fois aimable, mais je commence seulement (l'apprendre). 12. Mais où avez-vous appris (parler) français? 13. Comment avez-vous réussi (parler) et (comprendre) si bien? Vous avez été sans doute en France! 14. — Non, monsieur, je regrette (n'avoir) pas encore vu la France. 15. J'avais l'intention (y aller) l'année dernière, mais la guerre ne permettait pas (voyager). 16. — Eh bien, il faut (venir) bientôt; et venez (me voir) à Paris, n'est-ce pas? 17. — Merci, monsieur. Je veux (le faire) et je le ferai l'été prochain, si je peux. — Au revoir, monsieur! — Au revoir! À (*till*) l'année prochaine! — C'est cela. À l'année prochaine, à Paris!

B. *Contrast the following sentences:*

1. Il désire réussir.	Il désire que nous réussissions.
2. Je veux le faire.	Il veut que je le fasse.
3. Nous sommes contents de vous voir si bien réussir.	Nous sommes contents que vous ayez si bien réussi.

4. Vous regrettez de l'avoir fait, n'est-ce pas?	Je ne regrette pas que vous l'ayez fait.
5. Il faut vous féliciter de votre prononciation.	Il faut que le professeur vous félicite de votre prononciation.
6. Il est nécessaire de permettre cela aux enfants.	Il est nécessaire que vous me permettiez de vous le dire.

What is the essential difference in regard to the subject of the dependent verb that makes the subjunctive necessary in the sentences of the second column?

Hence, what general statement can you formulate in the case of verbs that come under both § 99 *and* § 106; *that is, when is the infinitive used and when the subjunctive?*

C. (1) *Make two groups of sentences with* **désirer, vouloir, regretter, être content, il faudra,** *in which you illustrate both constructions possible after these verbs. Observe that in cases like* § 99, 1, *example* 2, § 103, *and* § 106, 3, *example* 1, *the infinitive and subjunctive constructions after* **il faut** (**faudra**) *are exactly equivalent. This is often the case when the subject in English is a personal pronoun; but* **il faut que *cet élève fasse* son travail.**

(2) *Supply the proper form of the verb in parenthesis, inserting any missing preposition:* 1. (être) Bien qu'il —— riche, il est heureux. 2. (avoir) Quoiqu'elle —— beaucoup d'argent, elle a de l'esprit. 3. (faire) Bien qu'il —— beau aujourd'hui, ces enfants ne peuvent pas sortir. 4. (partir) Quoique nous —— de très bonne heure, nous n'arriverons qu'à minuit. 5. (faire) Mon père désire que je —— un voyage en France pour mieux (apprendre) (parler) français. 6. (entendre) Nous mènerons mon cousin au concert ce soir afin qu'il —— de la[1] bonne musique. 7. (finir) Je le laisserai tranquille tout(e) l'après-midi pour qu'il —— son travail avant le dîner. 8. (finir) Nous ne partirons pas avant qu'il —— ses leçons pour demain. 9. (faire) Il fermera la porte afin qu'il —— assez chaud dans sa chambre. 10. (arriver) Nous n'avons pas nos places et il ne faut pas que nous —— trop tard. 11. (être) Quoique nos places ne ——

[1] *Compare* XXV, A, footnote.

pas trop bonnes, j'entendrai bien. 12. (avoir) Mon cousin entendra bien aussi quoiqu'il ne —— pas de trop bonnes oreilles. 13. (quitter) Il faudra que nous —— la salle avant la fin du concert. 14. (avoir) Il est nécessaire que nous —— nos billets avant d'entrer dans la salle. 15. (être) Il faut que nous —— à nos places avant qu'on ——[1] (chanter).

(3) *Traduisez:* 1. We are delighted that you are having a good time in America. 2. Although you have been here only a few months, you speak English very well. 3. I must congratulate you on your pronunciation. 4. I wish to send my son to France, in order that he may learn (§ 202) to speak French. 5. He likes it very much, but he is just beginning (is beginning only) to learn to speak it. 6. When your son is in Paris, he must make the acquaintance of my old friend Mr. Dumas, who has several sons and three daughters. 7. One learns a language very quickly by talking with other young people (**gens**). 8. They are the best teachers. Your son must often spend the evening at his house. 9. He will have to (must) learn the language, in order to play cards and chat with the young ladies. 10. I shall be glad to have him do that (that he do . . .). 11. We wish him to become acquainted with (**faire connaissance avec**) the life of a French family. 12. It is the best way of becoming acquainted with France.

D. *Form questions to which the sentences in* C, (2) *could be considered as answers.*

E. (1) *a. Observe the similarities between the stem of the present participles of verbs like* **donner, finir, vendre** (§ 100) *and that of the present and imperfect indicative and the present subjunctive:*

PRES. PART.	regardant	mûrissant	attendant
PRES. INDIC.	regarde	mûris	attends
IMP. INDIC.	regardais	mûrissais	attendais
PRES. SUBJ.	regarde	mûrisse	attende

b. Complete orally or at the board the conjugation of these forms.

[1] (**commencer**).

(2) *This similarity exists in all the so-called regular verbs, and is important for all others. For example:*

PRES. PART.	ayant	étant	faisant	[fəzɑ̃]	dormant
PRES. INDIC.	ai	suis	fais	[fɛ]	dors
IMPERF. INDIC.	avais	étais	faisais	[fəzɛ]	dormais
PRES. SUBJ.	aie	sois	fasse	[fas]	dorme

Complete orally or at the board the conjugation of these forms. Observe that the forms of the verb **être** *are derived from more than one stem. Compare* am, was, been.

LESSON XXVII

110. Imperative of *donner, finir, vendre*

Give, etc.		*Finish, etc.*		*Sell, etc.*	
donn ***e***	[dɔn]	fin***is***	[fini]	vend ***s***	[vɑ̃]
qu'il donn ***e***	[dɔn]	qu'il fin***iss e***	[finis]	qu'il vend ***e***	[vɑ̃:d]
donn ***ons***	[dɔnɔ̃]	fin***iss ons***	[finisɔ̃]	vend ***ons***	[vɑ̃dɔ̃]
donn ***ez***	[dɔne]	fin***iss ez***	[finise]	vend ***ez***	[vɑ̃de]
qu'ils donn ***ent***	[dɔn]	qu'ils fin***iss ent***	[finis]	qu'ils vend ***ent***	[vɑ̃:d]

Obs.: The 3rd sing. and 3rd pl. are subjunctive forms used as imperatives.

111. Imperative of *avoir, être*

Have, etc.		*Be, etc.*	
aie	[ɛ]	***sois***	[swa]
qu'il ait	[kilɛ]	***qu'il soit***	[swa]
ay ons	[ɛjɔ̃]	***soy ons***	[swajɔ̃]
ay ez	[ɛje]	***soy ez***	[swaje]
qu'ils aient	[kilzɛ]	***qu'ils soient***	[kilswa]

112. Imperative Negative

ne donne ***pas*** qu'il ***ne*** donne ***pas*** ***ne*** donnons ***pas,*** etc.

113. Position of Objects. 1. Personal pronoun objects follow the positive imperative (but not the subjunctive as imperative), and are joined to it and to one another by hyphens:

Donnez-*lui* la plume.	Give him the pen.
Donnez-*la*-*lui*.	Give it to him.
Donnons-*leur*-*en*.	Let us give them some.
But: **Qu'il *me la* donne.**	Let him give it to me.

2. If the imperative is negative, the general rule of position (§ 81) holds good:

Ne *la lui* donnez pas.	Do not give it to him.

3. **Moi** and **toi** are used after an imperative instead of **me** and **te** (unless before **y** and **en**, in which case apostrophe replaces hyphen):

Donnez-*moi* des pommes.	Give me some apples.
Donnez-*m'*en.	Give me some (of them).

4. When a verb has two objects, they are usually arranged thus after it:

le **(la, les)**	before ***moi*** **(toi, lui, nous, vous, leur)**.
me **(te, lui, nous, vous, leur)**	before ***y*** **(en)**.
y	before ***en***.

EXERCISE XXVII

un **accord** [ɑ̃nakɔːr] agreement
une **encre** [ɑ̃ːkr] ink
un **exercice** [ɛgzɛrsis] exercise
la **feuille** [fœːj] leaf, sheet (*of paper*)
un **instant** [ɛ̃stɑ̃] instant, moment
le **participe** [partisip] participle
la **règle** [rɛːgl] rule
le **stylo(graphe)** [stilo] fountain pen

droit [drwɑ] right
malade [malad] ill
allons! [alɔ̃] come! (*interjection*)
se dépêcher (de) [sədepɛʃe] hurry
déranger [derɑ̃ʒe] disturb
faire son possible [fɛːrsɔ̃ posibl] do one's (his, *etc.*) best
prendre [prɑ̃ːdr] take; **prenez!** [prəne] take!
remplir [rɑ̃pliːr] fill

d'accord in agreement
ferme [fɛrm] hard
ne . . . plus [nə ply] no more, no longer
ne . . . que only

ça [sa] *contraction* (*familiar*) *of* **cela**
moi-même [mwamɛːm] myself

mon cher [mɔ̃ʃɛːr] old man, my dear fellow
sapristi! [sapristi] good gracious!

A. 1. On nous a dit de préparer nos leçons et nous faisons notre possible pour les bien préparer. 2. Le professeur nous a laissés ici afin qu'on ne nous dérange pas. 3. Nous avons prié nos camarades de nous laisser tranquilles. Nous avons peu de temps et il faut travailler ferme. 4. Quel est le livre que vous avez à la main droite? Est-ce votre livre de français? 5. — Oui, c'est ma grammaire française. — Donnez-la-moi un instant, s'il vous plaît. 6. Il faut que je tâche de trouver la règle de l'accord des participes. La voici. 7. — Moi aussi. Laissez-moi la regarder un instant, je vous prie. Elle n'est pas facile. 8. — Maintenant c'est de l'encre que je cherche. Il n'y en a plus dans mon stylo [stilo]. En avez-vous? 9. — Oui, j'en ai. — Alors donnez-m'en, s'il vous plaît: assez pour remplir mon stylo. 10. — Voilà. — Je vous remercie beaucoup. 11. Allons, dépêchons-nous. Travaillons un peu plus vite. Ne causons plus. 12. Vous me faites perdre trop de temps. — Soyez tranquille, nous finirons avant que le professeur soit prêt. 13. — Sapristi! J'ai perdu mon cahier. — Ça (Cela) ne fait rien! Prenez de ce papier-ci. 14. Prenez-en assez, je vous prie, mais n'en prenez pas trop, parce que j'ai besoin de quelques feuilles moi-même. 15. — Merci bien. Voulez-vous que j'en donne aussi à mon camarade Henri? 16. — Oui, donnez-lui-en, mais ne lui en donnez pas trop. 17. — N'ayez pas peur, mon cher. Je prendrai seulement ces quelques feuilles (*ou* je ne prendrai que ces quelques feuilles).

B. (1) *Substitute personal pronouns for the direct and indirect object nouns:* 1. Prenez du papier, je vous prie. 2. Ne prenez pas trop d'encre. 3. Chassez ces enfants du jardin. 4. Priez votre oncle de venir nous voir. 5. Écrivez-lui la lettre tout de suite. 6. N'écrivez pas la lettre à votre camarade cette semaine. 7. Ne mettez pas la cuiller dans votre tasse. 8. Mettez les cuillers à nos places, s'il vous plaît. 9. Présentez-moi votre ami. 10. Présentez mon ami à votre père, je vous prie. 11. Donnez le roman à votre tante. 12. Ne donnez pas les romans aux enfants. 13. Finissons le devoir vendredi soir. 14. Ne finissons pas ces devoirs samedi matin. 15. Ne dérangeons pas nos camarades pendant qu'ils travaillent. 16. Ne

dérangez pas le professeur. 17–18. Demandez la règle des participes à votre voisin; — à votre voisine.

(2) *Give orally or write on the board the 1st and 2d plural imperative, affirmative and negative, of* **commencer, se lever, se coucher, voir, aller, se dépêcher, prendre, remplir, partir** (*observe that* **partir** *differs from* **finir** *in the imperative exactly as in the present indicative*), **sortir, attendre.**

(3) *Complete the following by adding a noun object, and then repeating the phrase with the proper pronoun:* 1. Cherchez —— (*Model:* Cherchez le livre; cherchez-le). 2. Ne cherchez pas ——. 3. Finissez ——. 4. Ne finissez pas ——. 5. Vendez ——. 6. Ne vendez pas ——. 7. Qu'il écoute ——. 8. Chante ——. 9. Ne chante pas ——. 10. Choisissez ——. 11. Ne choisissez pas ——. 12. Donnons ——.

C. *Écrivez en français:* 1. I regret to tell (**à**) his mother that he is ill. 2. I regret that he is ill. 3. He will be delighted (**enchanté**) to see you. 4. He will be delighted that you brought him some money. 5. We want to learn to skate and to ride horseback. 6. My father wants me to learn (*pres. subj. 1st pers.*, **apprenne**) music. 7. Allow me to tell you my name (*use* **s'appeler**: *see* Lesson IX, A). 8. Must (**Faut-il que**) we begin to speak French immediately? 9. They will have to (**Il faudra qu'ils**) let her alone (= leave her quiet). 10. She wants them to let her alone, but they don't want to let her alone. 11. Introduce me, please (**s'il vous plaît** *or* **je vous prie**) to your friend. 12. I beg you to introduce me to him (**à lui**). 13. Introduce him to me, please. 14. Although he has a lot of money, he does not travel. 15. Although I thanked him, he did not answer me. 16. Leave me alone so that (**pour que**) I may finish my work before dinner. 17. We must (**Il faut que**) go to bed early and I must get up to-morrow before sunrise. 18. Although he does his best, he hasn't succeeded in learning to pronounce French * very well (*after verb*).

D. Dictée: Leçon XXIV, A, (1).

* We say **parler français**, but **prononcer le français, comprendre le français, apprendre le français.**

LESSON XXVIII

114. Conditional of *donner, finir, vendre*

I should give, etc.		*I should finish, etc.*		*I should sell, etc.*	
donn**er** *ais*	[dɔn(ə)rɛ]	**finir** *ais*	[finirɛ]	**vendr** *ais*	[vãdrɛ]
donn**er** *ais*	[dɔn(ə)rɛ]	**finir** *ais*	[finirɛ]	**vendr** *ais*	[vãdrɛ]
donn**er** *ait*	[dɔn(ə)rɛ]	**finir** *ait*	[finirɛ]	**vendr** *ait*	[vãdrɛ]
donn**er** *ions*	[dɔnərjõ]	**finir** *ions*	[finirjõ]	**vendr** *ions*	[vãdriõ]
donn**er** *iez*	[dɔnərje]	**finir** *iez*	[finirje]	**vendr** *iez*	[vãdrie]
donn**er** *aient*	[dɔn(ə)rɛ]	**finir** *aient*	[finirɛ]	**vendr** *aient*	[vãdrɛ]

NOTE. — For the pronunciation of the conditional of **donner** and of the future and conditional of **être** (§ 115) and of **faire** (§ 117), see the note to § 90; but observe that the **ə** is generally sounded in the first and second plural of the conditional tense.

115. Conditional of *avoir, être*

I should have, etc.				*I should be, etc.*			
aur *ais*	[ɔrɛ]	**aur** *ions*	[ɔrjõ]	**ser** *ais*	[s(ə)rɛ]	**ser** *ions*	[sərjõ]
aur *ais*	[ɔrɛ]	**aur** *iez*	[ɔrje]	**ser** *ais*	[s(ə)rɛ]	**ser** *iez*	[sərje]
aur *ait*	[ɔrɛ]	**aur** *aient*	[ɔrɛ]	**ser** *ait*	[s(ə)rɛ]	**ser** *aient*	[s(ə)rɛ]

116. Conditional Sentences. 1. The conditional is used to express what would happen (*result*) in case something else were to happen (*condition*):

S'il **avait le temps** (*condition*), **il finirait sa leçon** (*result*).	If he had time (Had he time, etc.), he would finish his lesson.

2. A 'result' clause in the conditional (English *should* or *would*) regularly has the 'if' clause in the imperfect indicative, whatever be the corresponding English form:

Si **j'étudiais bien** (*condition*), **le maître serait content** (*result*).	If I studied (*or* if I were to s., *or* were I to s., *or* should I s.) well, the teacher would be glad.

3. A 'result' clause in the future requires the 'if' clause in the present indicative, whatever be the corresponding English form:

S'il est ici demain (*condition*), **je lui donnerai l'argent** (*result*).

If he is (*or* be, *or* will be, *or* should be) here to-morrow, I shall give him the money.

N.B. — Neither the future nor the conditional may be used after **si** in the clause that expresses the supposition.

117. Future and Conditional of *faire* (irreg.) and *aller* (irreg.)

***fer* ai** [f(ə)re] ***fer* ais** [f(ə)rɛ] ***ir* ai** [ire] ***ir* ais** [irɛ]
***fer* as** [f(ə)ra], etc. ***fer* ais** [f(ə)rɛ], etc. ***ir* as** [ira], etc. ***ir* ais** [irɛ], etc.

EXERCISE XXVIII

l' Angleterre *f.* [lɑ̃glətɛːr] England
la bicyclette [bisiklɛt] bicycle
la cathédrale [katedral] cathedral
le château [ʃato] chateau, country mansion
l' Espagne *f.* [lɛspaɲ] Spain
le fleuve [flœːv] river (*that flows into the sea*)
le garçon [garsɔ̃] waiter
la langue [lɑ̃ːg] language, tongue
le monument [mɔnymɑ̃] building, *etc.*, of interest
le paysage [peizaːʒ] landscape
la rivière [rivjɛːr] river (*that flows into another stream*)
la vallée [vale] valley
le vignoble [viɲɔbl] vineyard

ignorant [iɲɔrɑ̃] ignorant
sûr [syːr] certain

coûter [kute] cost
expliquer [ɛksplike] explain
se mettre [sə mɛtr] place oneself
je pense bien! I should think so!
revoir [rəvwaːr] see again
traverser [travɛrse] cross
se trouver [sə truve] be, be situated

un jour some day
à temps [a tɑ̃] in time

tout le monde [tulmɔ̃ːd] everybody

sans [sɑ̃] but for, without

A. 1. Si vous alliez faire un grand voyage, où iriez-vous? 2. — J'irais en France d'abord. Puis, si j'avais le temps et l'argent, j'irais voir l'Italie, l'Espagne et l'Angleterre. 3. Ce sont les pays les plus intéressants de l'Europe. 4. Sans la guerre, je serais déjà allé en Europe, mais à présent, même (*even*) si j'avais le temps, je n'aurais pas assez d'argent. 5. Les voyages coûtent beaucoup plus cher qu'avant la guerre. 6. Si

les billets coûtaient moins cher, j'irais passer les prochaines vacances en France. 7. — Si vous étiez en France, que feriez-vous? 8. — J'irais voir les plus jolies villes, comme Rouen, Chartres, Blois, Tours. 9. À Rouen et à Chartres, je visiterais les belles cathédrales. 10. À Blois et à Tours j'irais voir les beaux châteaux et je me promènerais à bicyclette dans la jolie campagne. 11. Toute cette vallée de la Loire est charmante. 12. Si vous aviez vu une fois les jolis paysages et les belles routes, vous regretteriez beaucoup de ne pas y passer vos vacances tous les ans. 13. — Y a-t-il d'autres villes intéressantes à voir? 14. — Je pense bien. Si nous avions le temps je vous parlerais aussi de Marseille, la ville de Monte-Cristo, de Bordeaux, la ville du vin de Bordeaux, de Lyon, la grande ville industrielle, de Nîmes et d'Arles et d'Avignon [aviɲõ], qui sont si riches en beaux monuments du passé. 15. Et nous regarderions aussi les beaux champs de blé, les vignobles, les arbres fruitiers, et les jolies rivières qu'on traverse souvent en voyageant par le train ou en auto. 16. Enfin, j'aimerais beaucoup revoir les jolis paysages de la France. 17. Si je suis assez riche, j'irai en France l'été prochain. Soyez-en sûr. 18. — Bon, je vous accompagnerai.

B. (1) *a. Point out in* A *each illustration of* § 116, 2.

b. Change these conditions to the present when possible, and the other tenses correspondingly; for example: Si vous faites un grand voyage, où irez-vous . . ., *etc.*

(2) *Supply the proper form* (*two when possible, see* § 116, 2, 3) *of each verb in parenthesis:* 1. (dormir) Si vous —— pendant la classe le professeur ne ——[1] pas trop content. 2. (aller) Si je —— en France, je ——[2] la cathédrale de Notre-Dame à Paris. 3. (pleuvoir) S'il —— aujourd'hui nous ne ——[3] pas notre excursion. 4. (marcher) Si notre automobile —— bien, nous ——[4] à Blois avant midi. 5. (être) Si le château ne —— pas fermé, on nous ——[5] d'y entrer. 6. (être) Si ce château —— en Amérique, tout le monde ——[6] le voir. 7. (faire) Que ——-vous s'il ——[7] trop froid pour sortir?

[1] (être). [2] (visiter). [3] (faire). [4] (arriver)
[5] (permettre). [6] (aller). [7] (faire).

Le Château de Chenonceaux

Château des Papes, Avignon

La Maison carrée, Nîmes

(3) *Complete the following by an infinitive (with or without a preposition) or the subjunctive of the verb in parenthesis, as the case demands:* 1. (vous voir) Je suis charmé ——. 2. (faire) Je suis content qu'il —— enfin son travail. 3. (se dépêcher) Dites-lui qu'il faut ——. 4. (se dépêcher) Il faut que nous —— si nous voulons ——[1] le train de deux heures. 5. (remplir) Voulez-vous —— mon verre d'eau? 6. (remplir) Vous ne voulez pas que le garçon —— votre verre? 7. (tâcher) (le faire) Ils peuvent —— —— avant midi. 8. (tâcher) (le faire) Faudra-t-il que nous —— —— tout de suite? 9. (se dépêcher) Bien que nous ——, nous n'arriverons pas à temps. 10. (remplir) J'appellerai le garçon pour qu'il —— votre verre. 11. (remplir) Donnez votre encre à Pierre afin qu'il —— son stylo. 12. (commencer) (écrire) Il faudra que le professeur nous explique la leçon avant que nous —— —— le devoir. 13. (perdre) Écoutez bien, mes amis; il ne faut pas que vous —— votre temps à causer. 14. (entendre) Dites-lui de venir se mettre ici pour qu'il —— mieux. 15. (déranger) Nos camarades ont fermé la porte afin que nous ne les —— pas. 16. (se lever) Il faudra que nous —— avant qu'il ——[2] jour. 17. (être) Je vais me coucher tout de suite bien que mon devoir ne —— pas fini.

C. *Écrivez en français:* 1. If I went to (**en**) Europe, I should go to England, France, Spain and Italy. 2. I should spend more time in France than in England, because I wish to learn to understand and speak French. 3. If I had (the) time I should learn French before leaving America (**l'Amérique**). 4. You (**On**) enjoy yourself much more if you speak the language of the country. 5. When I get (**arriver**) to France, I shall have lessons every day if it is possible. 6. If I had a French lesson every day, (and if I heard French spoken (*use present infinitive*) all the time), I should quickly learn to speak (**it, le**) and understand it, shouldn't I? 7. If you are going to travel, you must (**il faut**) also read the history of the countries you will visit. 8. The ignorant traveler doesn't have a very good time. 9. He sees only (**ne . . . que**) towns and hotels and restaurants and taxicabs.

[1] (**prendre**). [2] (**faire**).

D. (1) *Conjugate in the present indicative:* **faire, aller, pouvoir, vouloir, partir.**

(2) *Conjugate in the past indefinite indicative:* **avoir, être, voir, sortir, s'amuser, ouvrir.**

(3) *Conjugate in the imperfect:* **mûrir, dormir** (*see* Lessons XIII, B, 2 *and* XXVI, E, 2) **faire, réussir.**

(4) *Conjugate in the future and conditional:* **être, avoir, faire, aller, entendre.**

(5) *Conjugate in the present subjunctive:* **être, avoir, remplir, faire, entendre, partir.**

NOTE. — **Sortir, partir, servir, dormir,** differ from **finir** in the present subjunctive as in the present and imperfect indicative and imperative, *i.e.*, by leaving out the **-iss** of the (participle) stem. See Lesson XXVI, E.

E. *Répondez aux questions suivantes:* 1. Est-ce que vous avez voyagé en Europe? 2. En Amérique? 3. Comment? (Par le train? en auto? à bicyclette? etc.) 4. Quelles villes américaines avez-vous vues? 5. Quelle ville aimez-vous le mieux? 6. A-t-elle des musées? 7. Y avez-vous entendu de la bonne musique? 8. Y êtes-vous allé au théâtre? 9. Est-ce que cette ville a de jolis parcs? 10. Quels pays de l'Europe voulez-vous visiter? 11. Est-ce que tout le monde peut voyager maintenant? 12. Pourquoi pas? 13. Avez-vous l'intention de voyager un jour? 14. Où irez-vous? 15. Que ferez-vous en France? 16. Comment sont les routes en France? 17. Ferez-vous des excursions à bicyclette? 18. Dites-moi quels sont les noms des grandes villes de France. 19. Cherchez sur la carte comment s'appellent les grands fleuves. 20. Quelles villes se trouvent dans la vallée de la Loire? 21. Est-elle agréable, cette vallée? 22. Sur quel fleuve la ville de Paris se trouve-t-elle? 23. Est-ce que la France est un pays agricole? 24. Que voit-on dans les champs? 25. A-t-on raison d'appeler ce pays « la belle France »? 26. Où trouve-t-on les belles cathédrales? 27. Où iriez-vous voir les beaux châteaux? 28. Où voit-on les beaux monuments du passé?

LESSON XXIX

118. Use of Article. 1. Names of continents, countries, provinces, and large European islands, regularly take the definite article:

La France est un beau pays.	France is a beautiful country.
Nous partons pour *le* Canada.	We are leaving for Canada.
Il demeure *aux* États-Unis.	He lives in the United States.
La Sardaigne est une île italienne.	Sardinia is an Italian island.

But non-European islands do not regularly take the article:

Terre-Neuve est une grande île.	Newfoundland is a large island.
Cuba est la plus grande des Antilles.	Cuba is the largest of the Antilles.

2. The article is omitted after the preposition **en** = *in, to;* it is also omitted after **de** in certain constructions, notably when **de** means *from* (after verbs of motion) or denotes *of* in an adjectival phrase:

Mon père est en Angleterre.	My father is in England.
Nous allons en France.	We are going to France.
Il vient d'Italie.	He comes from Italy.
Les vins d'Espagne.	Spanish wines.

119. 1. Place 'where,' 'where to,' is usually denoted by **en** before names of continents, European countries singular and feminine countries singular outside of Europe; other countries usually take the preposition **à** + the definite article:

Il est *en* (va en) Europe.	He is in (goes to) Europe.
Il est *au* (va au) Canada.	He is in (goes to) Canada.

2. Cities, towns, etc., usually take **à**, without any article.

Il est *à* (va à) Paris.	He is in *or* at (goes to) Paris.
But: À *la* Nouvelle-Orléans.	At New Orleans.

120. Present Indicative of *savoir*, *to know* (irreg.)

I know, etc.

je sais [se]	**nous savons** [savõ]
tu sais [se]	**vous savez** [save]
il sait [se]	**ils savent** [sa:v]

EXERCISE XXIX

l'Allemagne *f.* [lalmaɲ] Germany
une **auberge** [obɛrʒ] inn, country hotel
l'Autriche *f.* [lotriʃ] Austria
la **chèvre** [ʃɛ:vr] goat
la **chose** [ʃo:z] thing
la **Corse** [kɔrs] Corsica
la **cuisine** [kɥizin] cooking
l'est *m.* [lɛst] east
la **montagne** [mõtaɲ] mountain
le **mouton** [mutõ] sheep
le **nord** [nɔ:r] north
l'ouest [lwɛst] west
la **prairie** [prɛ:i] meadow
la **ruine** [rɥin] ruin
la **Suisse** [sɥis] Switzerland
le **sol** [sɔl] soil
le **sud** [syd] south
la **vache** [vaʃ] cow

chaque [ʃak] each
doux [du], **douce** [dus] sweet, gentle, soft

étranger [etrãʒe] **étrangère** [etrãʒɛ:r] foreign
haut [o] high, tall
japonais [ʒapɔnɛ] Japanese
large [larʒ] broad, wide
vrai [vrɛ] true

savoir [savwa:r] know, know how, be able

autrefois [otrəfwa] formerly
quelquefois [kɛlkəfwa] sometimes
mal [mal] badly
malheureusement [malœrø:zmã] unfortunately, unluckily
moins de [mwẽdə] less than
partout [partu] everywhere
pas du tout [padytu] not at all
surtout [syrtu] especially
tôt [to] early, soon

tandis que [tãdi(s)kə] while, whereas

A. (1) *Supply the article or leave it out as the case may be, and put in the proper preposition when one is needed:* 1. Savez-vous qu'en parlant de —— France, on l'appelle souvent « —— belle France »? 2. On l'appelle aussi —— « douce France ». 3. On dit aussi: « Chaque homme a deux pays, le sien (*his own*) et —— France ». 4. Au sud de —— France, se trouve —— Espagne; à l'est, —— Allemagne et —— Suisse; au nord —— Belgique (*f.*). et au nord-ouest —— Angleterre. 5. Pour

aller —— Italie il faut traverser les Alpes, qui sont de hautes montagnes. 6. En partant —— Paris le matin en chemin de fer, en moins de deux jours on est —— Rome. 7. Nous partons demain pour —— Italie; aux Alpes nous quitterons le sol de —— France et nous passerons —— Italie. 8. De —— Italie nous irons —— Sicile et de là nous passerons —— Corse pour visiter la maison de Napoléon. 9. Voici un de nos amis qui vient de —— Corse et d(e) —— Espagne. 10. Malheureusement nous ne pouvons pas aller —— Europe tous les ans. 11. Quelquefois nous passons les vacances —— États-Unis ou à faire des voyages —— Canada. 12. Un jour nous irons peut-être —— Mexique (*m.*), et je veux voir aussi —— Asie, —— Japon et —— Chine. 13. Je voudrais (*conditional of* **vouloir**) passer le printemps —— Japon. 14. — Savez-vous le japonais? — Non, je ne le sais pas du tout. 15. Je sais un peu de français, d'allemand, et d'italien parce que j'ai été plusieurs fois dans ces pays-là. 16. Mes parents savent assez bien l'espagnol. 17. Ils ont passé quelques années —— Mexique, mais —— Amérique nous savons assez mal les langues étrangères. 18. On apprend mieux —— français —— France, —— allemand —— Allemagne et —— italien —— Italie. 19. On peut les apprendre aussi à l'école —— Amérique si l'on * a de bons professeurs. 20. En France tout le monde sait parler français, même les petits enfants.

(2) *Review of partitives* (§§ 36, 59). *Supply what is lacking:* 1. Faites-vous quelquefois —— excursions à bicyclette? 2. — Oh, oui. Et je vois —— jolies choses, surtout —— France. 3. On trouve partout —— bonnes routes et —— bons chemins et on s'arrête pour déjeuner ou pour dîner à —— petites auberges où l'on trouve une bonne cuisine. 4. De la route on voit —— beaux bois, —— champs verts et —— jolies prairies. 5. Dans les prairies il y a souvent —— vaches, —— chevaux, —— moutons et —— chèvres. 6. Souvent on passe devant —— jolies maisons de campagne et —— châteaux, et de (*from*) temps en (*to*) temps on voit —— ruines intéressantes. 7. Nous n'avons pas —— ruines intéressantes en Amérique, n'est-ce

* Note. — The *l* of **l'on** has the effect of making the sound more agreeable after **si**. It has no other significance here.

pas! 8. — Non, c'est vrai, mais nous avons —— hautes et belles montagnes, —— beaux fleuves et —— larges plaines. 9. Dans le Far-West il y a aussi —— ruines très intéressantes. 10. — Oui, mais on ne peut pas aller voir tout cela à bicyclette. 11. Notre pays est trop grand. Il faut plus de quatre jours de chemin de fer pour le traverser. 12. Et on voit peu de bicyclettes —— États-Unis, tandis qu'on —— voit beaucoup, beaucoup —— France. 13. —— avez-vous une? — Non, je ne —— ai pas maintenant. 14. Autrefois je faisais souvent —— excursions à bicyclette et je —— avais toujours une. 15. Mais maintenant j'ai plus —— travail et moins —— temps.

B. (1) *Supply the preposition meaning* 'to,' 'into': Europe [œrɔp], France, Amérique [amerik], Angleterre [ãgləteɪr], Italie [itali], Allemagne [almaɲ], Autriche [otriʃ], (le) Japon [ʒapõ], (la) Chine [ʃin], Russie [rysi], (le) Danemark [danmark], les États-Unis [etazyni], (le) Canada, (la) Pologne [pɔlɔɲ], Espagne [espaɲ] (*fem.*), Afrique [afrik] (*fem.*), (la) Syrie [siri], (les) Indes [ɛ̃ːd], (la) Normandie [nɔrmãdi], (la) Provence [prɔvãːs], (la) Touraine [turɛn], (la) Corse [kɔrs].

(2) *Learn:* À Paris, à Paris
Sur un p'tit cheval gris,
À Rouen, à Rouen,
Sur un p'tit cheval blanc
Au trot, au trot, au trot,
Au galop, au galop, au galop! *

C. *Traduisez rapidement:* 1. If I had any. 2. If he were here. 3. If the postman should not take his letter. 4. If she were to put on her prettiest blue dress. 5. If the postman were to bring it to me. 6. If you should get up too late, what would you do? 7. Would you regret it (**le**) if you were to sleep too late? 8. If she were to put on her prettiest dress, she would be the prettiest girl (**jeune fille**) in (**de**) the world. 9. If you should run too fast you would arrive too soon (**tôt**).

* To Paris, to Paris — On a little gray horse; — To Rouen, to Rouen — On a little white horse — Trot (at the trot), trot, trot, — Gallop, gallop, gallop!

10. You would like to (**aimer**) look at the interesting ruins if you took (**faire**) a bicycle trip in France. 11. If you will (= are willing to, **vouloir bien**) go with me to Spain next summer, I shall pay for your ticket. 12. If you will pay for my ticket, I shall be delighted to go with you.

a. What two simple tense forms are possible in the 'if' clause of a French sentence? Are we as rigidly limited in English?

b. Does the English word 'will' *always call for a future form in French? (see last two sentences of* C). *Explain and give three examples in French.*

D. (1) The texts of A, (1) and (2) should be read aloud and understood and then worked over thoroughly by questions and answers.

(2) Dictée: Lesson XXVII, A.

E. (1) *Conjugate in the future and conditional forms:* **avoir, être, faire** (*note the pronunciation of the conditional singular:* [ʒəsrɛ], [ʒəfrɛ]), **prendre** (*regular*), **dire** (*regular*), **mettre** (*regular*), **remplir, courir** [*see* Lesson XXIII, C, (3), 7], **remercier, appeler, se dépêcher, se lever.**

(2) *How does the sound value of the spelling* **ai** *differ in the endings of the future and conditional? Of what does the ending of the conditional form remind you? On the basis of* XXII, B, (5), *how would you say this form is made?*

VOCABULARY REVIEW No. 4

(1) *Donnez les contraires de:* facile, prochain, commencer, trouver, mal, malheureusement, sud, est, la montagne, tôt, le commencement.

(2) *Donnez les synonymes de:* charmé, tâcher de, soirée, vouloir, causer, demander.

(3) *Supply articles so as to show gender, and use in a sentence or a phrase:* glace, roman, soirée, règle, feuille, vallée, château, bicyclette, vache, mouton, chèvre, montagne, prairie, terre, sol, guerre, fin, billet, fleuve, nord, carte, exercice, camarade, chemin de fer.

(4) *Supply the missing words:* 1. Pour bien parler il faut savoir les —— de la grammaire. 2. Nous avons l'intention —— faire une —— à bicyclette dans la —— de la Loire. 3. Nous voyons des bêtes (*farm animals*) dans les champs; des —— et des —— et des —— et des ——. 4. Mon stylo n'écrit pas; il faut que je le ——. 5. Je fais mon —— pour apprendre à bien prononcer. 6. Vous prononcez très bien; je vous en ——. 7. Permettez-moi de —— mon ami, M. Dupont. 8. —— de faire votre ——, monsieur. 9. Il y a de la glace sur le ——; nous pouvons ——. 10. Avez-vous besoin d'encre? 11. Merci (= *No, thank you*), j'ai un ——. 12. Avant de monter dans le train il faut prendre un ——. 13. Avant de prendre le train il faut payer son —— avec de l'——. 14. Le dessert vient à la —— d'un dîner.

(5) *Fit the definitions to words:* 1. Faire quelque chose très vite. 2. La personne qui fait la cuisine. 3. La personne qui vient d'un autre pays. 4. Un petit hôtel de campagne. 5. Aller à travers de. 6. La grande église. 7. Les champs pour les vignes. 8. Faire tout ce qu'on peut. 9. Il ne se porte pas bien (se porter = *to be* [*of health*]). 10. Prier quelqu'un de venir chez vous. 11. Dire merci à quelqu'un.

(6) *Supply the proper preposition:*

essayer —— faire quelque chose
réussir —— faire quelque chose
regretter —— avoir fait quelque chose
tâcher —— faire quelque chose
se dépêcher —— faire une chose
dire —— quelqu'un —— faire une chose
demander —— quelqu'un —— faire une chose
permettre —— quelqu'un —— faire une chose
prier quelqu'un —— faire quelque chose
apprendre —— faire quelque chose
s'amuser —— faire une chose
commencer —— faire une chose
penser —— faire une chose

(7) *Give the French equivalent:* wit (*intelligence*), the landscape, the doubt, the mountain, the ruin, the river (*large*); next, free, certain, each, ready; to ring the bell, to be named; especially, everywhere, formerly, whereas, only; everybody.

LESSON XXX

121. The Possessive Pronouns

Singular		Plural		
le mien	[mjɛ̃], *m.*	les miens	[mjɛ̃], *m.*	mine
la mienne	[mjɛn], *f.*	les miennes	[mjɛn], *f.*	
le tien	[tjɛ̃], *m.*	les tiens	[tjɛ̃], *m.*	thine, yours
la tienne	[tjɛn], *f.*	les tiennes	[tjɛn], *f.*	
le sien	[sjɛ̃], *m.*	les siens	[sjɛ̃], *m.*	his, hers, its, one's own
la sienne	[sjɛn], *f.*	les siennes	[sjɛn], *f.*	
le nôtre	[no:tr], *m.*	les nôtres	[no:tr], ours	
la nôtre	[no:tr], *f.*			
le vôtre	[vo:tr], *m.*	les vôtres	[vo:tre], yours	
la vôtre	[vo:tr], *f.*			
le leur	[lœ:r], *m.*	les leurs	[lœ:r], theirs	
la leur	[lœ:r], *f.*			

122. Agreement. Possessive pronouns agree in gender and number with the object possessed, and in person with the possessor:

J'ai mes livres; elle a *les siens.* I have my books; she has hers.

123. Use of Possessive Pronouns. 1. After **être,** mere ownership is regularly expressed by **à** + a disjunctive personal pronoun, while the use of a possessive pronoun implies distinction of ownership, as when a notion of comparison is expressed or suggested.

Cette montre est *à moi.* This watch is mine.
Cette montre est *la mienne.* This watch is *mine* (not yours).

2. **De** and **à** + **le** mien, etc., contract as usual (cf. §§ 35, 46):

Je parle de son ami et *du* mien. I speak of his friend and of mine.

3. Since **le sien, la sienne,** etc., mean *his, hers, its, one's* the context determines which sense is intended:

Il a ses livres; elle a *les siens.* He has his books; she has hers.

4. Observe the idioms:

Un de mes amis.	A friend of mine.
Un Parisien de mes amis.	A Parisian, a friend of mine.

124. Present Indicative of *dire,* *to say, tell* (irreg.), and of *voir,* *to see* (irreg.):

I say, etc.		*I see, etc.*	
je dis [di]	**nous disons** [dizɔ̃]	**je vois** [vwa]	**nous voyons** [vwajɔ̃]
tu dis [di]	**vous dites** [dit]	**tu vois** [vwa]	**vous voyez** [vwaje]
il dit [di]	**ils disent** [di:z]	**il voit** [vwa]	**ils voient** [vwa]

EXERCISE XXX

le **compagnon** [kɔ̃paɲɔ̃] companion
la **comparaison** [kɔ̃parɛzɔ̃] comparison
le **compartiment** [kɔ̃partimɑ̃] compartment
le **couloir** [kulwa:r] corridor, passageway
la **coutume** [kutym] custom
un **exemple** [ɛgzɑ̃pl] example
un **individu** [ɛ̃dividy] fellow, person, individual (*often contemptuous*)
le **milieu** [miljø] middle
la **montre** [mɔ̃:tr] watch
l'**or** *m.* [lɔ:r] gold
la **personne** [pɛrsɔn] person (*man or woman*)
la **poche** [pɔʃ] pocket
le **revolver** [revɔlvɛ:r] revolver
la **voiture** [vwaty:r] carriage
le **voleur** [vɔlœ:r] thief, robber

canadien [kanadjɛ̃] Canadian
commode [kɔmɔd] convenient
dangereux [dɑ̃ʒrø] dangerous
désagréable [dezagreabl] unpleasant
rare [ra:r] infrequent, rare

approcher (de) [aprɔʃe] approach
fallait [falɛ] was necessary (*imperf. of* **falloir**)
pouvait [puvɛ] was able, could (*imperf. of* **pouvoir**)
savait [savɛ] knew (*imperf. of* **savoir**), **sachiez** [saʃje] (*pres. subj.*)
sauter [sote] jump
tirer [tire] pull out

actuellement [aktɥɛlmɑ̃] at present

A. (1) 1. Un Canadien * de mes amis qui voyage actuellement en Europe, m'a écrit une lettre intéressante. 2. Dans cette lettre il fait les comparaisons les plus intéressantes entre les coutumes des Européens [œrɔpeɛ̃] et les nôtres. 3. Par

* For the use of capital letter here, see § 21.

exemple, les chemins de fer en Europe sont différents des nôtres. 4. Les voitures américaines et canadiennes sont plus grandes et plus longues que les leurs, et les leurs ont plusieurs compartiments. 5. Dans ces compartiments il y a de la place pour six à huit personnes, et on peut passer d'un compartiment dans l'autre. 6. Les voitures américaines ont un couloir au milieu. En Europe le couloir est sur un côté de la voiture. 7. Dans les vieilles voitures il n'y avait pas de couloir. Une fois dans un compartiment, il fallait y rester. 8. Ces compartiments étaient assez commodes, mais j'aime mieux les voitures modernes. 9. On pouvait s'y trouver avec un compagnon de voyage désagréable ou même dangereux.

(2) 1. Un jour mon ami s'est trouvé seul dans un compartiment avec un homme qui ne savait pas trop bien la différence entre le mien et le tien. 2. Mon ami avait une jolie montre en or. Son compagnon la voit. 3. Le train approche d'une petite ville et marche moins vite. 4. L'individu tire de sa poche un revolver et dit à mon ami: Votre montre est plus jolie que la mienne. Donnez-la-moi. Je vous donnerai la mienne afin que vous sachiez l'heure. 5. — Que dites-vous? demande mon ami. Voulez-vous me (*from me*) prendre ma montre? 6. — Oui, dit le voleur en approchant son revolver de la tête de mon ami. 7. Alors mon ami a peur. Il lui donne sa montre. 8. Le voleur lui donne la sienne et saute du train.

B. (1) *Complete by a suitable possessive pronoun:* 1. La montre de mon ami était en or, —— était en argent. 2. Leurs voitures sont moins grandes que ——. 3. Il fait une comparaison entre nos chemins de fer et ——. 4. Leurs voitures à (*with*) compartiments sont plus commodes que ——. 5. Votre compagnon de voyage est moins dangereux que ——. 6. La montre du voleur est moins jolie que ——. 7. Vous écriviez à votre mère et j'écrivais à ——. 8. Je saute de mon cheval et elle saute de ——. 9. Tout homme a deux pays, —— et la France. 10. Maintenant le voleur a ma montre et ——.

(2) *Supply in each case the usual expression of ownership* (§ 123, 1): 1. À qui est cette montre? Elle est ——. 2. A

qui sont ces chèvres? Elles sont ——. 3. À qui était cette vache? Elle était ——. 4. À qui sont ces moutons là-bas dans la prairie? Ils sont ——.

(3) *Supply all the possible tense forms in each case in the* 'if' *clause or in the result clause:* 1. (prendre) S'ils voient votre montre ils vous la ——. 2. (avoir) Si je trouve un voleur dans mon compartiment je —— peur. 3. (avoir) Si je voyais un voleur, je —— peur. 4. (sauter) Si le train approchait d'une gare, le voleur en ——. 5. (voyager) Vous aimeriez les paysages de France si vous y ——. 6. (faire) Que —— vous, si un voleur vous ——[1] votre montre en tirant un revolver de sa poche? 7. (vouloir) Si l'on —— passer d'une voiture dans une autre, on ——[2] dans le couloir. 8. (vouloir) J'entrerai dans le couloir si je —— passer dans un autre compartiment. 9. (s'arrêter) Si je faisais une excursion à la campagne, je —— à une auberge pour le déjeuner. 10. (s'arrêter) Si vous —— à une auberge, qu'est-ce que vous ——[3]? 11. (prendre) Je —— un potage, du poulet, des haricots verts et un dessert. 12. (traverser) Si vous —— les Alpes, vous ——[4] en Italie.

(4) *Supply below the proper tense forms* (*present, imperfect, future, past indefinite*) *and other missing words. The basic time of* **a** *is the present.*

a. 1. (être) Je —— dans le compartiment avec ce voleur-là depuis plus de trois heures. 2. (approcher) Quand nous —— d'une gare, il me ——[5] ma montre. 3. (tirer) Quand il —— son revolver de sa poche, j'aurai peur. 4. (s'arrêter) Quand le train ——, il sautera de la voiture. 5. Nous ——[6] —— France depuis plus de quatre mois et nous faisons tous les jours des comparaisons entre —— coutumes et les ——.

b. 1. Dans nos voyages dans le midi de —— France nous ——[7] plus de chèvres que chez nous. 2. (traverser) Nous —— la Normandie la semaine passée; il y ——[8] beaucoup de vaches et de gros chevaux. 3. Les chevaux ——[9] plus grands que les ——. 4. (causer) Je —— avec mes com-

[1] (demander). [2] (entrer). [3] (prendre). [4] (se trouver).
[5] (demander). [6] (voyager). [7] (voir) [8] (avoir). [9] (être).

pagnons de voyage. 5. (aimer) Il y avait quelques individus qui ne —— pas les Américains, mais ce ——[1] rare. 6. (dire) On me —— souvent que la France et l'Amérique ——[1] de bonnes amies depuis plus de cent ans. 7. (répondre) Je —— que ce ——[1] vrai, et que les Français et les Américains ne ——[2] pas —— être de bons amis.

C. (1) *Shift* A, (1), 7–9, *into the present. Note that the verbs that move the story along fall naturally into this form, as do the descriptive imperfect forms.*

(2) *Put* A, (2), 3–6, *into the past. The direct discourse must be made indirect preceded by* **que.** *Then the presents that tell the story take what form (the past participle of* **dire** *is* **dit**)? *What becomes of presents like* **approche, marche?** *What happens to* **est?**

(3) *Change* A, (2), 7–8, *to the past. Does* **a peur** *take a different form from the other three verbs? See* Lesson XXI, § 87.

(4) *a. Note in the vocabulary the imperfects of* **pouvoir, falloir, savoir: pouvait, fallait, savait.** *Conjugate* **pouvait** *and* **savait** *in the singular and plural. We cannot do this for* **fallait** *as this verb is used only in the* ***3d*** *singular of all tense forms. It is called an impersonal verb. What is the present form? the future? the conditional?*

b. The present participle of **savoir** *is* **sachant.** *Conjugate* **savoir** *in the present subjunctive. Is the imperfect indicative formed as you would expect? Compare* Lesson XXVI, E.

D. *Traduisez:* 1. This fellow did not know the difference between mine and thine. 2. My friend could not jump from the train. 3. He was afraid of hurting himself. 4. He had to give his watch to the thief who gave him his, saying (**en lui disant**): "I am giving you mine so that (= in order that) you may know when you are hungry. 5. I-wish-you-a-good-appetite (**Bon appétit**)." 6. Although my friend knows that this fellow was a thief, he still thinks that he was rather (**assez**) interesting.

[1] (être). [2] (cesser).

LESSON XXXI

125. The Demonstrative Pronouns

ce [sə], this, these, that, those, he, she, it, they
ceci [səsi], this
cela [səla], that

celui [səlɥi], *m.*	this, that (one), the (one),	**ceux** [sø], *m.*	these, those, the ones,
celle [sɛl], *f.*	he, she	**celles** [sɛl], *f.*	they
celui-ci [səlɥisi], *m.*	this (one),	**ceux-ci** [søsi], *m.*	these,
celle-ci [sɛlsi], *f.*	the latter	**celles-ci** [sɛlsi], *f.*	the latter
celui-là [səlɥila], *m.*	that (one), the	**ceux-là** [søla], *m.*	those,
celle-là [sɛlla], *f.*	former	**celles-là** [sɛlla], *f.*	the former

126. For the use of **ce** as distinguished from the personal pronoun **il** (**elle**, etc.), see § 97.

127. **Ceci** = *this*, and **cela** = *that*, are used to denote something pointed out or indicated, but not named. **Cela** is often contracted into **ça** in familiar language:

Cela **est joli; je préfère** ***ceci.***	That is pretty; I prefer this.
Pouvez-vous faire ***cela?***	Can you do that?
J'aime ***ça.***	I like that.

128. **Celui,** *that (one), the (one), he,* is used of persons or things, and is regularly followed by a relative clause or a **de** clause:

Celui que **j'attendais est arrivé.**	He whom I expected has arrived.
Ceux qui **cherchent trouvent.**	Those who seek find.
Mes fleurs et ***celles de*** **Marie.**	My flowers and Mary's.
Celles que **vous aimez.**	The ones (flowers) you like.

129. 1. **Celui-ci,** *this, this one, he,* and **celui-là,** *that, that one,* are used of persons or things already mentioned, to contrast the nearer and the more remote:

Voici les deux chaînes; gardez ***celle-ci*** **et donnez-moi** ***celle-là.***	Here are the two chains; keep this (one) and give me that (one).

2. *The latter* is **celui-ci**, and *the former* is **celui-là**, the order of ideas being inverted as compared with English:

Cicéron et Virgile étaient tous deux célèbres; *celui-ci* était poète et *celui-là* orateur.	Cicero and Virgil were both celebrated; the former was an orator and the latter a poet.

EXERCISE XXXI

un **âne** [ɑ̃nɑːn] ass, donkey
le **bâton** [batɔ̃] stick
la **caresse** [karɛs] caress
le **chien** [ʃjɛ̃] dog
le **coup** [ku] blow
le **domestique** [dɔmɛstik] servant
un **étranger** [ɑ̃etrɑ̃ʒe] foreigner
le **maître** [mɛːtr] master
la **patte** [pat] foot (*of animal*)
la **pièce** [pjɛs] room
la **vaisselle** [vɛsɛl] dishes

mécontent (de) [mekɔ̃tɑ̃] dissatisfied (with)
misérable [mizerabl] wretched

avoir beau [avwaːr bo] in vain (*followed by infinitive*)
caresser [karɛse] caress
courant [kurɑ̃] *present participle of* **courir**
se **demander** [sədmɑ̃de] wonder
lu [ly] read (*past part. of* **lire**)
rapporter [rapɔrte] bring (back)
renverser [rɑ̃vɛrse] upset
voulu [vuly] *past participle of* **vouloir**

autant (de) [otɑ̃] as many, as much
loin [lwɛ̃] far
par-ci par-là [parsiparla] here and there
près [prɛ] near (*adv.*)

qu'est-ce? [kɛs] what is it?

près de [prɛdə] near (*prep.*)

A. 1. Il y avait une fois un homme qui avait un âne et un petit chien. 2. Il caressait celui-ci et à celui-là il donnait beaucoup de travail à faire. 3. Le chien s'amusait toute la journée. Il courait par-ci par-là. 4. À table il mangeait avec son maître. 5. Il donnait la patte à tout le monde et tout le monde le caressait. 6. Le pauvre âne voyait tout cela, et il en était très mécontent. 7. Un jour il se demande: —« Pourquoi ne me donne-t-on pas autant de bonnes choses qu'à ce misérable petit chien? 8. Pourquoi donne-t-on toutes les caresses à celui qui ne travaille pas et tous les coups de bâton à celui qui travaille toujours? 9. Je cesserai de travailler. J'entrerai dans la salle à manger de mon maître quand il sera à table avec ses amis. 10. Je donnerai la patte à tous ceux qui

y seront et ils me donneront des caresses ». 11. Le pauvre âne tâche de faire cela; il entre dans la salle à manger. 12. Il salue ceux qui y sont; il chante de sa belle voix. 13. Il veut donner la patte à son maître et à ses amis. 14. Mais en levant la patte, il renverse la table, il fait tomber la vaisselle. 15. Les dames ont peur, elles crient. Le maître se lève de table et appelle ses domestiques. 16. Il leur dit de donner au pauvre âne, non pas des caresses, mais beaucoup de coups de bâton. 17. On lui donne des coups de bâton et des coups de pied aussi et le pauvre âne sort de la pièce en courant. 18. Un âne a beau vouloir cesser d'être âne; il a beau tâcher d'être chien; il reste toujours âne. (*Adapted from La Fontaine*, Fables, IV, 5)

B. (1) *Supply the demonstrative pronouns, suffixing* **-ci** *and* **-là** *when needed.* 1. Cette chèvre-ci est blanche, —— est noire. 2. J'ai dîné hier dans une meilleure auberge que ——. 3. J'ai deux poches; dans —— j'ai mon argent et dans —— ma montre. 4. Cet individu-ci s'appelle Dupin, —— s'appelle Durand. 5. Regardez ces deux enfants; —— se dépêche de finir son travail, —— ne fait rien. 6. Donnez-moi une autre feuille de papier; —— n'est pas propre. 7. —— que vous me donnez actuellement est sale aussi. 8. Voilà mes deux compagnons de voyage; —— s'amuse à regarder le paysage, —— tâche de me faire parler français. 9. —— qui est dans le couloir est un étranger qui arrive d'Espagne. 10. Dites-moi qui sont ces individus-là. ——-ci? Non, ——-là. 11. Voulez-vous m'expliquer ——? 12. Oui, mais d'abord parlons un peu de ——. 13. Mon camarade a perdu son stylo. —— ne fait rien; nous sommes prêts à lui donner ——-ci. 14. Pendant que cet individu-ci me prend ma montre, —— me prend mon argent. 15. Ils ont pris ma montre et —— du monsieur qui m'accompagnait. 16. À qui est cette montre maintenant? 17. Quelle montre? —— que l'individu a prise. 18. Je ne sais pas, mais —— que j'ai à la main est à moi.

(2) *Replace the dash by* **ce,** *or* **il (elle, ils, elles):** 1. Qu'est-ce? —— est un âne. 2. Et cela? —— est un chien. 3. —— sont les chiens de mon père. 4. —— est l'âne qui a renversé la table. 5. Qui a chassé l'âne? —— étaient les domestiques.

6. Que fait cet âne? —— fait tomber la vaisselle. 7. Où est le chien? —— est dans une autre pièce. 8. Qui appelle les domestiques? —— est le maître qui les appelle. 9. —— se lève de table pour les appeler. 10. Quel est ce monsieur? —— est le maître de l'âne et du chien. 11. Quels sont ces individus? —— sont nos amis. 12. Quel est cet animal? —— est notre cher âne. 13. —— est midi. 14. —— est huit heures. 15. —— fait beau. 16. —— pleut. 17. —— est temps de partir. 18. Quand on est âne, —— est nécessaire de rester âne. 19. —— est vrai.

(3) *When is* ' it ' *expressed by* il (elle)? *When is* ce *equivalent to* ' he,' ' she,' ' they '?

C. (1) *Shift* A, 2–6, *to the present. Does this harmonize with the forms used in the rest of the anecdote? If you were to translate the whole passage into English in the present, would the effect be satisfactory? What do you conclude about the use of the present form in French in narration as compared with English? This is often called the ' historical ' present, and is far more frequently used in French than in English.*

(2) *Would it be satisfactory to shift to the past indefinite the imperfects of* A: **donnait, s'amusait, courait, mangeait, donnait, était?** *See* Lesson XXI, § 87. *Is this answer equally true of* **voyait** (6)? *Explain.*

(3) *Beginning with* A, 6, *tell the story in the past* (§ 66, N.B.) *to the end of the paragraph. Does the direct discourse* (7–10) *change?*

(4) *Translate, with especial attention to demonstrative pronouns and participle agreement:* 1. Explain this to him; explain that to her; explain this to them, please. 2. Don't think that. You must not (§ 106, 3) think that. 3. These novels are more interesting than those. 4. Which novels? The ones we bought in Canada. 5. Have you read (**lu**) them? Not (**non pas**) the ones that are in the drawing room, but I have read several times the one we brought from France. 6. When my father was younger he was very fond of (**aimer beaucoup**) those of Victor Hugo, but now he reads (**lit**) oftener Daudet's and Bal-

zac's. 7. Whose motor car is that? 8. That one across (**de l'autre côté de**) the street? It is hers. 9. Mine is on the other side of the street too, a little farther [away]. 10. And those that are nearer belong to (XVII, Vocab.) our schoolmates.

D. *Conjugate* **courir** (*present participle in Vocab.*) *in the present and imperfect indicative, and the present subjunctive* (*see* Lesson XXVI, E, **dormir**); *and in the past indefinite, future, and conditional* (*see* Lessons XIX, B, (3), XXIX, E). *Is the auxiliary* **avoir** *or* **être**? *How about* **marcher**?

LESSON XXXII

130. The Relative Pronouns

qui [ki], who, which, that, whom (*after a preposition*)
que [kə], whom, which, that
dont [dɔ̃], whose, of whom, of which
où [u], in which, into which at which, to which, etc.
lequel [ləkɛl], *m. s.*, **lesquels** [lekɛl], *m. pl.*
laquelle [lakɛl], *f. s.*, **lesquelles** [lekɛl], *f. pl.* } **who, whom, which, that**
quoi [kwa], what, which

131. Agreement. A relative pronoun, whether variable or invariable in form, is of the gender, number and person of its antecedent:

Moi *qui étais* (vous *qui étiez*) là.	I who was (you who were) there.
Les lettres *que* j'ai apportées.	The letters which I have brought.

132. Use of the Relative. 1. The relative of most common use is **qui,** as subject, and **que,** as direct object, of a verb (cf. § 75).

2. **Qui** = *whom* (of persons only) is also used after a preposition:

L'oncle chez *qui* je demeurais.	The uncle with whom I lived.

3. The force of **de** + a relative is generally expressed by **dont**:

Les amis *dont* nous parlions.	The friends of whom we spoke.
L'église *dont* je vois la tour.	The church whose tower I see.

4. **Où** = **dans** (or some other preposition of position) + a relative:

La ville *où* (*or* dans laquelle) je demeure	The city in which I live.

5. **Lequel** is often used instead of **qui** (que, etc.), to avoid ambiguity, and must be used of things after a preposition:

Les sœurs de nos amis, *lesquelles* sont chez nous à présent.	The sisters of our friends, who (*i. e.*, the sisters) are with us now.

6. **Quoi** stands after a preposition, rarely otherwise:

Voilà *de quoi* je parlais.	That is what I was speaking of.

7. The absolute *what, which, that which* as subject is **ce qui,** and, as object or predicate, **ce que;** *of what, that of which,* is **ce dont:**

Je vois *ce qui* vous amuse.	I see what amuses you.
Je sais *ce que* je sais.	I know what I know.
Vous savez *ce que* je suis.	You know what I am.
Je n'ai pas *ce dont* j'ai besoin.	I haven't what (that which) I need.

8. *He who, the one who,* etc. = **celui qui,** etc.

J'aime *ceux qui* m'aiment.	I love those who love me.
Ma montre est plus jolie que *celle que* vous avez.	My watch is prettier than the one you have.

9. The relative pronoun, often omitted in English, is never omitted in French:

Le tableau *que* j'ai vu hier.	The picture I saw yesterday.

133. Present Indicative of *connaître,* *to know, be acquainted with,* etc. (irreg.).

I know, etc.

je connais [ʒəkɔnɛ]	nous connaissons [nukɔnɛsɔ̃]
tu connais [tykɔnɛ]	vous connaissez [vukɔnɛse]
il connaît [ilkɔnɛ]	ils connaissent [ilkɔnɛːs]

EXERCISE XXXII

un **agent (de police)** [œ̃naʒɑ̃-dpɔlis] policeman
un **Allemand** [œ̃nalmɑ̃] German
un **anniversaire** [œ̃nanivɛrsɛːr] anniversary, birthday
un **arc** [œ̃nark] arch, bow
une **avenue** [avny] avenue
la **banque** [bɑ̃ːk] bank
le **bassin** [basɛ̃] basin
le **bout** [bu] end
le **député** [depyte] congressman
un **édifice** [œ̃nedifis] building
une **église** [egliːz] church
la **façade** [fasad] front, façade
la **figure** [figyːr] figure, face
la **loi** [lwɑ] law
un **obélisque** [œ̃nɔbelisk] obelisk
la **peinture** [pɛ̃tyːr] painting
la **pierre** [pjɛːr] stone
la **portière** [pɔrtjɛːr] door, window (*of car*)
le **roi** [rwɑ] king
la **statue** [staty] statue

agréable [agreabl] pleasant
important [ɛ̃pɔrtɑ̃] important
magnifique [maɲifik] magnificent
parisien [parizjɛ̃] Parisian

bâtir [bɑtiːr] build
connaître [kɔnɛːtr] be acquainted with, know
garder [garde] keep, guard
menacer [mənase] threaten
représenter [rəprezɑ̃te] represent, stand for

donc [dɔ̃(ːk)] then, therefore
longtemps [lɔ̃tɑ̃] long
même [mɛːm] even
que! how!
volontiers [vɔlɔ̃tje] gladly, with pleasure

autour de [otuːr də] around

A. (1) *Supply the proper relative word and the demonstrative, too, if one is lacking. Substitute suitable forms of the past participle for the infinitives in footnotes:* 1. Il y a ici un voleur. Voilà le voleur —— nous parlons. 2. Voici la montre —— il m'a ——[1]. 3. Voilà la fenêtre par —— il a ——[2]. 4. On lui a pris le revolver avec —— il m'a ——[3]. 5. Il a quitté la voiture dans —— (*or* ——) nous voyagions. 6. Nous sommes ——[4] à la gare à —— (*or* ——) j'allais descendre. 7. Je vous dirai —— il a fait après. 8. Il a ——[5] dans sa poche le revolver —— il s'était ——[6] pour me menacer. 9. Il m'a dit: — Gardez ces quelques francs —— vous aurez besoin pour payer votre déjeuner. 10. Il ne faut pas montrer votre argent et votre montre à —— qui voyagent dans le même compartiment. 11. Alors il a ——[5] dans une poche ma montre,

[1] (prendre). [2] (sauter). [3] (menacer).
[4] (arriver). [5] (mettre). [6] (servir).

Courtesy of U. S. Army Air Service

LA PLACE DE LA CONCORDE, PARIS

à Vol d'Oiseau

VICTOIRE DE SAMOTHRACE
au Louvre, Paris

—— mon père m'a ——[1] à mon anniversaire. 12. Dans l'autre il a mis mes billets de banque —— on m'avait ——[1] à la banque et —— j'avais besoin pour mon voyage. 13. Comme il veut sortir par la portière, —— était ——[2], un agent de police —— le connaît entre d'une autre voiture —— il voyageait. 14. Mon voleur, —— a peur, s'arrête un instant. 15. Voilà ce —— l'a ——[3]!

(2) *Fill in blanks with suitable words* (*demonstratives, relatives, verbs, etc.*):

1. Je me promène aujourd'hui à Paris avec un de mes amis. Nous voilà sur la Place de la Concorde [kɔ̃kɔrd]. Connaissez-vous cette église —— on voit la façade au bout de la rue Royale [rwɑjal]? 2. — C'est l'église de la Madeleine —— je vous ai parlé. 3. Je vous y mènerai un jour quand nous —— plus de temps. 4. Quel est cet autre édifice de l'autre côté de la Seine? — C'est la Chambre des députés. 5. — Savez-vous —— on y fait? — Oui, on y fait les lois du pays. 6. — Connaissez-vous des députés? — Oui, je —— connais un —— m'a donné deux cartes —— je vais me servir demain. 7. Voulez-vous m'y accompagner? — Volontiers. Et savez-vous ce qu'est (ce que c'est que) ce grand monument en pierre —— se trouve au milieu de la Place? 8. — ——-là, sur —— on voit ces figures amusantes? 9. — Oui, ——-là. — C'est un obélisque —— vient d'Égypte [eʒipt]. 10. — Voilà de grandes et belles statues autour de la Place. Savez-vous —— elles représentent? 11. Il y —— a huit. — Elles représentent les villes les plus importantes de la France. 12. Voyez-vous ——-là sur —— il y a tant de fleurs? 13. — Oui, je me demandais ce —— c'était. — C'est la statue de la belle ville de Strasbourg [strazbu:r] en Alsace [alzas]. 14. Vous savez que la France l'a perdue après la guerre de soixante-dix. Les Parisiens sont si heureux que Strasbourg soit maintenant une ville française! 15. Mais en voilà une autre sur —— il y a beaucoup de fleurs. 16. — C'est la statue de Lille [lil] —— a été longtemps aux mains des Allemands pendant la grande guerre. 17. Dites-moi maintenant quel est ce joli parc à

[1] (donner). [2] (ouvrir). [3] (perdre).

l'ouest de la Place, au bout de —— on voit cet arc magnifique? 18. ——— sont les Champs-Élysées [ʃɑ̃zelize] dans —— il y a de très jolies promenades, et l'arc —— vous parlez est l'Arc de Triomphe [arkdətriɔ̃f], —— a été bâti par Napoléon [napɔleɔ̃]. 19. Regardez donc (*Just look*)! Qu'elle est large et belle, l'avenue par —— on en approche! 20. — Oui, en effet c'est magnifique. Et voilà à l'est l'entrée d'un autre parc. Qu'est-ce? 21. ——— sont les jardins des Tuileries [tɥilri] dans —— il y avait autrefois un beau palais des rois de France. 22. On y trouve —— arbres, —— fleurs, —— jolies statues et —— agréables promenades. 23. Il y a presque toujours —— enfants —— jouent avec leurs petits bateaux autour du bassin des Tuileries. 24. Si nous ——[1] les Tuileries, nous nous trouverions devant le Louvre [luːvr], dans —— (*or* ——) il y a un musée célèbre. 25. C'était autrefois un palais des rois de France. — Que tout cela est intéressant! 26. Nous irons un jour y voir les peintures, n'est-ce pas? — Oh, oui. Quelle ville intéressante que[2] Paris!

B. *Répondez aux questions suivantes:* 1. Qu'est-ce qu'un âne? 2. Est-ce qu'on le caresse? 3. Que lui donne-t-on? 4. Que veut-il avoir? 5. À qui donne-t-on les caresses? 6. Où sont le maître et ses amis? 7. Que fait l'âne? 8. Qu'est-ce qu'il tâche de faire? 9. Est-ce qu'il réussit à amuser son maître? 10. Que fait celui-ci? 11. Et que font les domestiques?

C. (1) *Racontez d'abord oralement, puis écrivez* « L'Histoire de l'âne qui veut qu'on le caresse ».

(2) *Traduisez:* 1. With whom are you going to go around (**se promener**) in (**dans**) Paris? 2. With my old friend; the one with whom I traveled in Italy last year (**année**). 3. We visited the Place de la Concorde yesterday (*after past part.*), around which are (**se trouver**) eight fine statues. 4. The ones that represent Strasbourg and Lille are covered (XXIV, *Vocab.*) with (**de**) flowers. 5. What I liked best was (**c'était**) Napo-

[1] (**traverser**).

[2] **This que** is untranslatable. It is often found before nouns in apposition.

leon's Arc de Triomphe which one sees at the end of that magnificent avenue. 6. We want to go to see the Madeleine, the façade of which we could see at the end of (**la**) rue Royale. 7. We want to visit also the Louvre of which I have often heard (**entendre parler**), and the Tuileries gardens in which the children like to play with their little boats. 8. What an interesting city Paris [is]!

D. 1. *Count from* 50 *to* 59, *putting a different noun after each numeral:* Cinquante et un monuments, cinquante-deux avenues [sẽkãːtdøzavny], *etc.*

2. *Count from* 60 *to* 69: soixante [swasãːt] députés, soixante et un billets de banque, *etc.*

3. *Count from* 70 *to* 79: soixante-dix agents [swasãːt diːz aʒã], soixante-onze figures, *etc.*

E. Dictée: Lesson XXVIII, A.

LESSON XXXIII

134. The Interrogative Pronouns

qui? [ki], who? whom?
que? [kə], what?
quoi? [kwa], what?
lequel? [ləkɛl], *m. s.*, **lesquels?** [lekɛl], *m. pl.* } which? which one(s)?
laquelle? [lakɛl], *f. s.*, **lesquelles?** [lekɛl], *f. pl.* } what one(s)?

135. Use of Interrogatives. 1. **Qui?** = *who? whom?* is used of persons:

***Qui* sonne? *Qui* sont-elles?**	Who is ringing? Who are they?
Dites-moi *qui* sonne.	Tell me who is ringing.
***Qui* a-t-il frappé?**	Whom has he struck?
De *qui* parlez-vous?	Of whom are you speaking?

2. *Whose?* denoting ownership simply = **à qui?** otherwise generally **de qui?** but never **dont:**

***À qui* est ce livre?**	Whose book is this?
***De qui* êtes-vous (le) fils?**	Whose son are you?

3. **Que?** = *what?* stands always as the object or the predicate of a verb:

Que **vous a-t-il dit?**	***Qu'***est-ce?	What did he tell you? What is it?

4. *What?* as subject is usually **qu'est-ce qui?** and *what* in indirect question is usually **ce qui** (ce que, etc.):

Qu'est-ce qui **vous a intéressé?**	What has interested you?
Je ne sais pas *ce qui* m'a frappé.	I do not know what struck me.
Dites-moi *ce que* vous désirez.	Tell me what you desire.

5. **Quoi?** = *what?* stands regularly after a preposition, or absolutely, the verb being understood:

À *quoi* pensez-vous?	What are you thinking of?
Je cherche quelque chose. — *Quoi?*	I am looking for something. — What?

6. **Lequel?** [laquelle? etc.) = *which? which* or *what one?* agrees in gender with the noun referred to. Both parts of **lequel** (**le** and **quel**) are inflected, and the usual contractions with **de** and **à** (cf. §§ 35, 46) take place:

Laquelle **des dames est là?**	Which of the ladies is there?
Auquel **des hommes parle-t-il?**	To which of the men does he speak?

EXERCISE XXXIII

une **architecture** [arʃitɛkty:r] architecture
le **banquier** [bɑ̃kje] banker
la **cité** [site] oldest part of certain cities
un **hôpital** [ɔpital] hospital
une **île** [il] island
un **intérieur** [ɛ̃terjœ:r] interior
le **mari** [mari] husband
le **personnage** [pɛrsɔna:ʒ] character (*in book*), personage
la **photographie** [fɔtɔgrafi] photograph
le **Pont-Neuf** [pɔ̃nœf] Pont-Neuf ('New Bridge')
la **question** [kɛstjɔ̃] question
la **scène** [sɛn] scene
le **sommet** [sɔmɛ] top
la **tour** [tu:r] tower
la **traduction** [tradyksjɔ̃] translation
la **vue** [vy] view

bête [bɛ:t] stupid, foolish
cent [sɑ̃] hundred
droit [drwɑ] right
gauche [go:ʃ] left
gothique [gɔtik] gothic
impossible [ɛ̃pɔsibl] impossible

EXERCISE XXXIII (Continued)

terrible [tɛribl] terrible

s'approcher de [saprɔʃedə] approach
épouser [epuze] marry
jeter [ʒəte] throw
poser [poːze] put, ask (*of questions*)
ramasser [ramase] pick up
se **rappeler** [səraple] remember, recall
rencontrer [rākɔ̃tre] meet
répéter [repete] repeat
ressembler (à) [rəsāble] resemble, be like

tourner [turne] turn
venir de [vəniːr də] to have just . . . (*followed by an infinitive*)

en effet [ānefɛ] in fact
en face [āfas] opposite
ensemble [āsāːbl] together
plus de [ply də] more than
tant (de) [tā] so many, so much

car [kar] for

il **y a** [ilja] ago

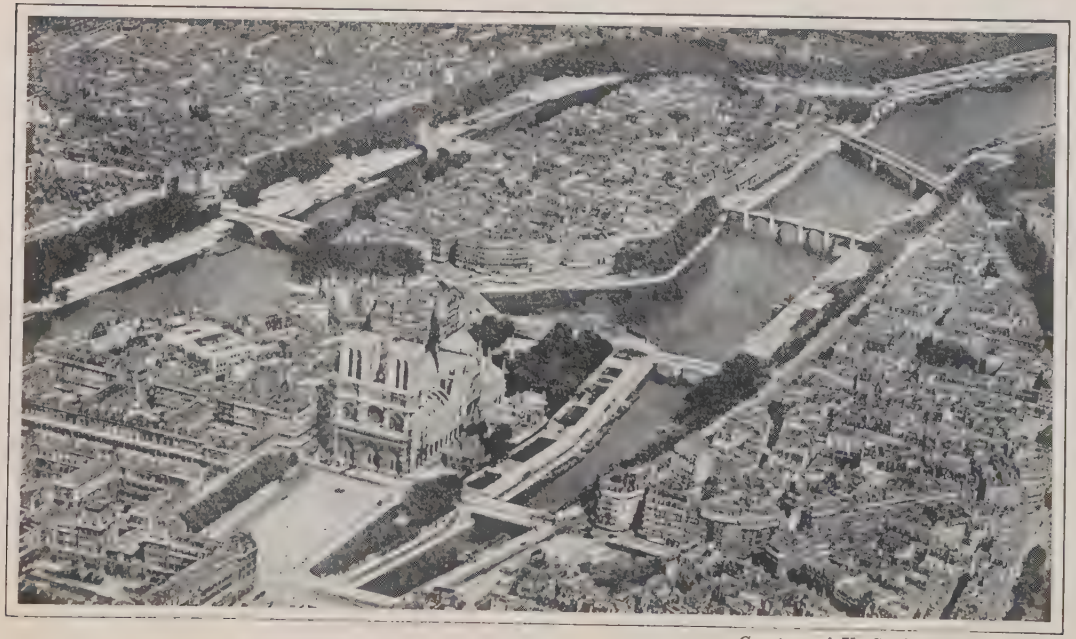
A. 1. Pendant notre promenade je pose à mon ami beaucoup de questions sur ce que nous voyons à Paris. 2. Je lui demande, par exemple: — Qu'est-ce que (*or* qu'est-ce que c'est que) l'île de la Cité dont vous me parlez si souvent? 3. — L'île de la Cité est une île de la Seine [sɛn] où se trouve la partie la plus ancienne de Paris. 4. Voilà le Pont-Neuf par lequel on entre dans la Cité. Traversons-le et tournons à gauche et puis à droite. 5. — Quel est ce grand édifice dont nous nous approchons? — C'est le Palais de Justice. 6. — Mais il y en a une partie qui ressemble à une église. Qu'est-ce que c'est? 7. — C'est en effet une église qui s'appelle la Sainte-Chapelle et qui a été bâtie par Saint Louis il y a plus de six cents ans. 8. C'est un des bijoux de l'architecture gothique. Son intérieur est très, très joli. 9. Prenons maintenant la rue de Lutèce, et tournons à droite. Voyez-vous ce grand édifice à notre gauche? 10. C'est l'Hôtel-Dieu, un hôpital qui a été bâti il y a très, très longtemps. 11. — Et en face de nous quelle est cette grande église? 12. — C'est la cathédrale de Notre-Dame dont vous avez tant entendu parler. 13. — Oh oui, je me rappelle. Que je suis bête! J'en ai vu souvent des photographies. 14. Voilà en effet les deux grandes tours. C'est là que se trouvent les cloches, n'est-ce pas? 15. — Oui. Avez-vous lu *Notre-*

Dame de Paris, ce grand roman de Victor Hugo? 16. — Oui. Je l'ai lu dans une traduction anglaise. 17. Je me rappelle qu'un des personnages de ce roman a été jeté du sommet d'une de ces tours-là, ce qui m'a beaucoup frappé. 18. C'est une scène terrible. — Oui, terrible. Victor Hugo aimait les scènes terribles. 19. Allons maintenant visiter l'intérieur de l'église qui est très beau. 20. La cathédrale est une des plus anciennes et des plus belles de la France. 21. Elle a été bâtie il y a plus de huit cents ans. 22. Du sommet des tours il y a une vue magnifique sur Paris.

B. *Supply the missing relative or interrogative words. Be on the look out especially for examples of* § 132, 7. 1. Dites-moi —— vous avez à la main. 2. Demandez-lui —— il désire faire aujourd'hui. 3. Ne vous rappelez-vous pas —— votre camarade vous a dit? 4. Nous ne pouvons pas entendre —— vous dites, monsieur. 5. —— me frappe dans ce roman c'est la scène de la tour. 6. —— vous me demandez est impossible. 7. Comprenez-vous —— me fait rire? 8. Savez-vous —— est cet objet-ci? C'est à moi. 9. Je vais vous dire —— je pense. 10. Voici —— me fait penser que vous aviez tort. 11. Tout —— vous dites est vrai. 12. Il ne faut pas répéter tout —— vous entendez dire. 13. Tout —— est sur la table est à Marie, n'est-ce pas? 14. Non, —— est à ce bout-ci est à moi, et —— est à l'autre bout est à elle. 15. Je crois —— vous me dites. 16. Il vient de me demander —— j'avais l'intention de faire demain. 17. Mais j'ai beau lui expliquer; il ne peut pas comprendre —— je lui dis. 18. Il faut que j'apprenne (*pres. subj.*) à parler français, —— sera très difficile pour moi.

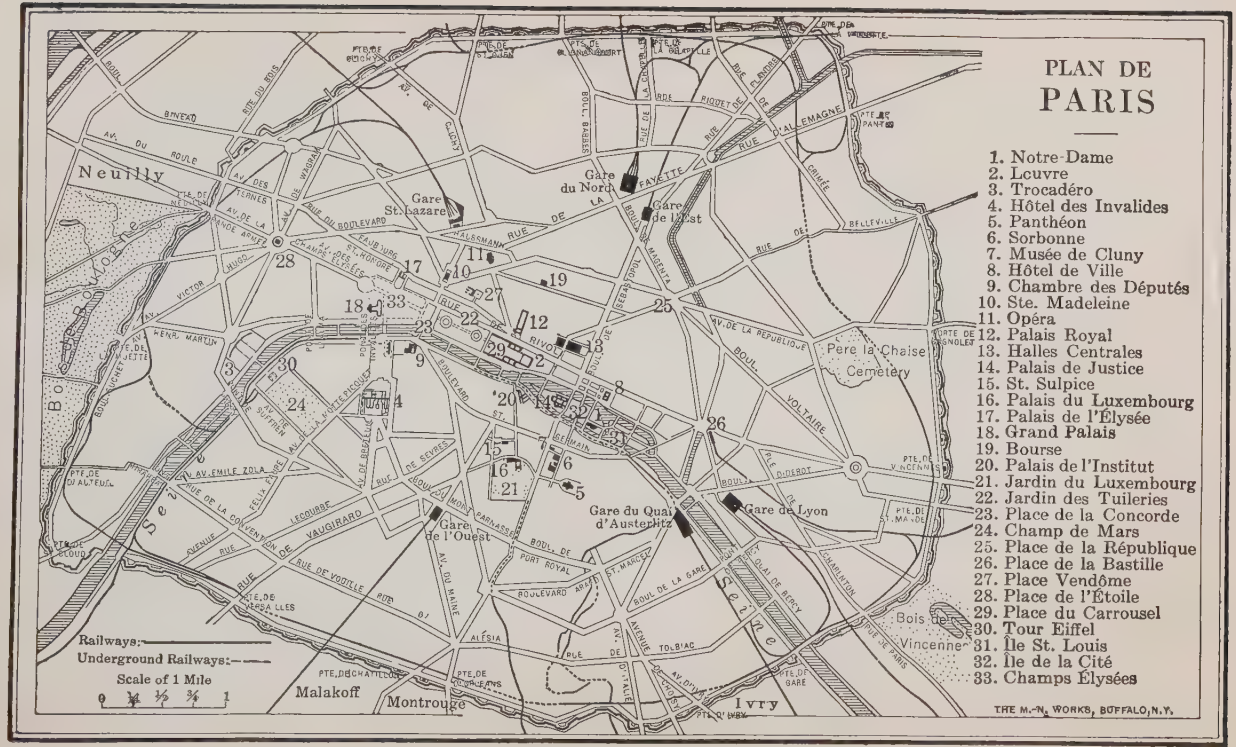
C. (1) *Some of the following sentences have "ragged" ends. Straighten them out, supply missing words* (*prepositions, relatives, and the correct forms of verbs*). 1. Où est l'autobus que nous ——[1] —— coin —— rue? 2. S'arrête-t-il au coin de la rue dans —— nous ——[2]? 3. Les dames à —— l'âne voulait donner la patte ——[3] peur. 4. Voilà l'âne à —— (qui? lequel?) les domestiques ont ——[4] —— coups. 5. Les domestiques ont

[1] (prendre). [2] (demeurer). [3] (avoir). [4] (donner).



Courtesy of U. S. Army Air Service

L'Île de la Cité et Notre-Dame de Paris


PLAN DE
PARIS
1. Notre-Dame
2. Louvre
3. Trocadéro
4. Hôtel des Invalides
5. Panthéon
6. Sorbonne
7. Musée de Cluny
8. Hôtel de Ville
9. Chambre des Députés
10. Ste. Madeleine
11. Opéra
12. Palais Royal
13. Halles Centrales
14. Palais de Justice
15. St. Sulpice
16. Palais du Luxembourg
17. Palais de l'Élysée
18. Grand Palais
19. Bourse
20. Palais de l'Institut
21. Jardin du Luxembourg
22. Jardin des Tuileries
23. Place de la Concorde
24. Champ de Mars
25. Place de la République
26. Place de la Bastille
27. Place Vendôme
28. Place de l'Étoile
29. Place du Carrousel
30. Tour Eiffel
31. Île St. Louis
32. Île de la Cité
33. Champs Élysées
Neuilly
Gare St. Lazare
Gare du Nord
Gare de l'Est
Père la Chaise Cemetery
Gare du Quai d'Austerlitz
Gare de Lyon
Gare de l'Ouest
Bois de Vincennes
Malakoff
Montrouge
Ivry
Seine
Railways:
Underground Railways:
Scale of 1 Mile
0 ¼ ½ ¾ 1
THE M.-N. WORKS, BUFFALO, N.Y.

ramassé la vaisselle que l'âne ——[1] fait[2] tomber en ——[3] —— patte —— amis —— son maître. 6. Connaissez-vous les messieurs qui causent ensemble là-bas? — Oui, ce sont les messieurs —— (*two ways*) votre femme vient de me présenter. 7. Ce sont des personnes —— mon père m'——[1] souvent ——.[4] 8. Je ne connais pas ces deux autres là-bas —— vous voyez les têtes. Ils viennent d'entrer. 9. Quelle est cette église —— vous voyez la façade au bout de cette grande rue? 10. C'est l'église —— je viens de rencontrer le mari de ma sœur. 11. Ah oui! Celui qu'elle vient d'épouser est un jeune militaire de mes amis. Je le —— (*connaître*) bien depuis dix ans.

(2) *A good many idioms or expressions peculiar to the French language in the arrangement and choice of words have already occurred. Express in English:* 1. Vous **avez beau me répéter** ce que vous avez **entendu dire,** je ne vous comprends pas. 2. Nous **venons de rencontrer** le mari de ma sœur. 3. Ma sœur l'a épousé **il y a plus de** trois ans. 4. Monsieur l'agent, voulez-vous me dire où **se trouve** le Bon-Marché? 5. Il **a trouvé** que cette scène était terrible. 6. Ne **vous rappelez-vous** pas que ce personnage a été jeté du sommet de la tour? 7. **Combien êtes-vous?** Nous **sommes dix.** 8. **Quelle belle ville que** Paris!

(3) *Make French sentences of your own on each of these models.*

(4) 1. We have just seen Notre-Dame. It is magnificent. 2. We climbed (in) one (**l'une**) of the towers and admired the view. 3. What a magnificent view of Paris! 4. I thought **of** (**à**) Victor Hugo's great novel, but I tried in vain to recall the name of the heroine (**l'héroïne**), although I have just read the book for the second time. 5. Ah! I remember it! La Esmeralda! 6. The cathedral was built more than eight hundred years ago and is one of the most beautiful in the whole world. It is in the Île de la Cité, which is the oldest part of Paris. 7. It is there that the first Parisians lived (*invert order of subject and verb*) a long time ago. Now it is a very

[1] **(avoir).** [2] When followed by an infinitive, **fait** does not agree with a noun or pronoun object that precedes. [3] **(donner).** [4] **(parler).**

quiet spot. 8. It is there that the traveler must go to see (the) old Paris, for Paris is now a modern (**moderne**) city, which makes it (**le**) less interesting for the foreigner (**étranger**), but more convenient for everybody.

D. *Supply questions for the following answers:* 1. Ce chien noir est à mon frère. 2. Mon frère a un bâton à la main. 3. Il va donner un coup de bâton au chien. 4. C'est le domestique qui a chassé l'âne de la salle à manger. 5. Nous allons visiter les monuments de Paris aujourd'hui. 6. Nous allons déjeuner au restaurant du café Voltaire. 7. Des haricots verts et des petits pois. 8. Nous allons payer notre déjeuner avec ces billets de banque. 9. On nous les a donnés dans une banque qui s'appelle le Crédit Lyonnais. 10. Mon banquier de New-York m'a dit d'y aller. 11. J'y ai rencontré un ancien camarade d'école. 12. Je lui ai parlé de notre projet d'aller voir la cathédrale de Notre-Dame et la Sainte-Chapelle. 13. Il m'a dit qu'il a eu beau essayer de se faire comprendre en français; personne ne le comprenait. 14. Il est le fils d'un vieil ami de mon père. 15. Il s'appelle Pierre Dupont. 16. Des deux églises, la Madeleine et Notre-Dame, nous trouvons Notre-Dame la plus intéressante. 17. Notre-Dame est la plus ancienne des deux.

E. Dictée: Lesson XXXI, A.

LESSON XXXIV

136. Indefinite Pronouns. The indefinite pronouns of most frequent occurrence are:

1. **On** [ɔ̃], *one, some one, we, you, they, people*, etc. (cf. § 48).

2. **Quelqu'un** [kɛlkœ̃], *m.*, **quelqu'une** [kɛlkyn], f., *somebody, some one, any one*, plural **quelques-uns** [kɛlkəzœ̃], *m.*, **quelques-unes** [kɛlkəzyn], *f., some, some people, any, a few.*

Il y a *quelqu'un* à la porte.	There is somebody at the door.
J'ai vu *quelques-unes* de vos amies.	I have seen some of your friends
Avez-vous des cerises, madame?	Have you any cherries, madam?
J'en ai *quelques-unes*.	I have a few.

3. **Quelque chose** [kɛlkəʃoːz], *m., something, anything:*

Quelque chose **est tombé.**	Something has fallen.
J'ai *quelque chose* de bon.	I have something good.

4. Along with **ne** + a verb, or when alone, a verb being understood, **personne** [pɛrsɔn], *m.*, means *nobody, not anybody, no one*, and **rien** [rjɛ̃], *m., nothing, not anything:*

Je *n'*ai parlé à *personne*.	I did not speak to anybody.
Vous *n'*avez *rien* apporté.	You have brought nothing.
Il *n'*a *rien* dit de mauvais.	He said nothing bad.
Qu'a-t-il dit? — *Rien*.	What did he say? — Nothing.
Personne **ici!**	Nobody here!

137. Certain forms serve both as adjectives and as pronouns. Those of most frequent occurrence are:

1. **Autre** [otr], *other* (adjective); **un autre,** *another*, **l'autre,** *the other* (pronoun):

Une *autre* fois; d'*autres* causes.	Another time; other causes.
Les autres **iront aussi.**	The others will go too.

2. Distinguish **un autre** from **encore un:**

Une autre **plume.**	Another (*a different*) pen.
Encore une **plume.**	Another (*an additional*) pen.

3. With **autre** are formed various locutions:

L'une et l'autre **occasion.**	Both occasions.
Les uns et les autres **partent.**	All are going away.
Donnez-le à *l'un ou* à *l'autre*.	Give it to either.
Ce n'est *ni* pour *les uns ni* pour *les autres*.	It is for none of them.
Elles se flattent *les unes les autres*.	They flatter each other.
Ils ont peur *les uns des autres*.	They are afraid of one another.

4. When used with **ne** + a verb, or when alone, the verb being understood, **aucun** [okœ̃], **nul** [nyl], **pas un** [pazœ̃], as adjectives = *no, not one, not any*, and as pronouns = *none, no one, not one:*

Aucun **auteur *ne* dit cela.**	No author says that.
A-t-on de l'espoir? — *Aucun*.	Have they any hope? — None.

5. **Tel** [tɛl] = *such*, **un tel** = *such a*. *Such* as an adverb is **si** [si] or **tellement** [tɛlmɑ̃]:

Telles sont mes douleurs.	Such are my griefs.
Qui raconte *une telle* histoire?	Who tells such a story?
Une *si* belle maison.	Such a beautiful house.
Un homme *tellement* cruel.	Such a cruel man.
Il s'est couché tout de suite, *tellement* il était fatigué.	He was so tired that he went to bed at once.

NOTE. — Observe the idiomatic use of **tel** (**telle**) in the expressions **Monsieur un tel**, Mr. So-and-So; **Madame une telle**, Mrs. So-and-So.

6. **Tout** [tu], *m.*, **toute** [tut], *f.*, **tous** [*pronounced* tu (as adj.), tus (as pron.)], *m. pl.*, **toutes** [tut], *f. pl.*, = *all*, *every*, *any*, *whole*, etc.:

Tous les hommes.	All (the) men.
Toute ma vie.	All my (My whole) life.
Tous (*toutes*) sont arrivé(e)s.	All have come.

7. **Même** [mɛːm], before a noun or as a pronoun = *same;* **même**, following the noun or pronoun qualified = *self*, *very*, *even*, and agrees, but has no article; as adverb **même** = *even*.

La *même* chose.	The same thing.
Ce sont les *mêmes*.	They are the same.
Dieu est la bonté *même*.	God is goodness itself.
Les enfants *mêmes* le savent.	The very children know it.
Nous-*mêmes;* elles-*mêmes*.	We ourselves; they themselves.
Ils nous ont *même* battus.	They even beat us.

EXERCISE XXXIV

la beauté [bote] beauty
le berger [bɛrʒe] shepherd
un endroit [ɑ̃ndrwɑ] spot, place
une entrée [ɑ̃tre] entrance
la grandeur [grɑ̃dœːr] size, grandeur
le loup [lu] wolf
la révolution [revolysjɔ̃] revolution

actif [aktif] lively, energetic
intelligent [ɛ̃tɛliʒɑ̃] intelligent
plein [plɛ̃] full
vide [vid] empty

aider (à) [ɛde] help
devenir [dəvniːr] become; **qu'est-il devenu?** what has become of him (it)?
envoyer [ɑ̃vwaje] send
incendier [ɛ̃sɑ̃dje] set fire to, burn
ramener [ramne] bring back
rendre [rɑ̃ːdr] give back, restore

tellement [tɛlmɑ̃] so
rarement [rarmɑ̃] rarely, not often

A. *Bring out the differences between the words in black type:* 1. Nous venons de faire une promenade dans les champs qui étaient pleins **d'**animaux. 2. Nous avons vu **des** vaches, **des** moutons, **des** chèvres, et **des** chevaux qui mangeaient l'herbe dans **des** prairies vertes. 3. Il y avait là **quelques** enfants qui les gardaient. 4. Ils avaient **des** chiens de berger avec eux. 5. **Quelques-uns** des enfants nous ont arrêtés et ont demandé quelle heure il était. 6. Pendant que nous causions avec eux, **quelques-unes** des vaches ont voulu (*wished*) manger le blé d'un champ voisin. 7. On a envoyé **des chiens** après elles pour les chasser. 8. Les chiens jouaient en courant, mais **quelques-uns,** en entendant la voix **des** petits garçons, sont partis au galop pour ramener les vaches. 9. C'était quelque chose d'amusant de les voir chasser ces grosses bêtes dont **quelques-unes** ne voulaient pas quitter le champ de blé. 10. Mais elles avaient beau vouloir y rester, elles ne le pouvaient pas, tellement les chiens étaient actifs. 11. Aucune (Pas une) n'y est restée. 12. Je n'ai rien vu de plus intelligent que ces chiens de berger, dont **quelques-uns** ressemblaient beaucoup à **de** gros loups. 13. Ils ont fait tout ce que les enfants leur ont dit de faire.

B. (1) *Supply from* §§ 136–137 *the missing words:* 1. Je n'ai —— (*two possibilities*) mangé aujourd'hui, et j'ai faim. 2. Donnez-moi —— de bon pour mon dîner, s'il vous plaît. 3. Je crois que la salle est vide. Je n'y vois ——. 4. Ma tasse est vide; il n'y a —— dans ma tasse. 5. —— n'est dans la salle. 6. Voyez-vous quelqu'un dans la salle? Non, ——; elle est vide. 7. S'il y avait une vache et un mouton dans le champ de blé, les chiens iraient les chasser —— (= *both*). 8. Je ne peux pas dormir, —— (§ 137, 5) je suis fatigué. 9. Nous serons —— fatigués que nous ne pourrons (*fut. of* **pouvoir**) pas dormir. 10. Dites-moi —— de nouveau. 11. Je ne sais —— de nouveau.

(2) *Translate in several ways:* 1. On dit. 2. Que dit-on? 3. On apprend à parler en parlant. 4. On sert le potage avant la viande.

C. (1) *Écrivez en français:* 1. Paris is a city of which people

have often spoken to me. 2. My friend knows the city well and will show me everything that is interesting. 3. The place at which we begin our trip (**promenade**) is the Place de la Concorde. 4. What do those statues represent? Which ones? The ones that are (**se trouver**) around the square. 5. They represent the most important cities in (**de**) France. The one on which you see so many flowers is the statue of the city of Strasbourg, which has just been restored to France. 6. What strikes me is (**c'est**) the size of the square, and the beauty of that broad avenue by which you approach the Arc de Triomphe. 7. But first let's visit those gardens the entrance of which we (**on**) see there, behind us. They are the Tuileries gardens in which (*two ways*) there was formerly a fine palace of the kings of France. 8. What has become of it? It was burned (**On** *and active voice*) during a revolution. 9. Wasn't the Louvre formerly a palace too? What has become of it? 10. There it is on the other side of that square. It is now a famous museum.

(2) 1. We like the very streets of Paris. 2. In France even the children speak French. 3. Everything is interesting. 4. We (**On**) see something new at every street corner. 5. The sheep walk one in front of (**devant**) the other. 6. The cows and dogs were afraid of each other (§ 137, 3). 7. I never saw anything funnier. 8. Some of the goats got frightened. 9. Not one stayed in the neighboring wheat field. 10. Not one? Some of the sheep got frightened too, the dogs were so (**tellement**) energetic.

(3) *Rewrite* A, 5–11, *using the historical present as the basic tense. The 3d sing. pres. of* **envoyer** *is* **envoie.** *Why do not* **jouaient** *and* **c'était** *shift to the present?*

D. (1) *a. Conjugate in the present and in the past indefinite:* Je me rappelle cette scène. *Do the same, substituting a pronoun for the noun object.*

b. Conjugate in the present and translate: je viens (*see* § 178) de rencontrer un vieil ami. *In the imperfect:* je venais de (= *had just*) rendre le journal à mon voisin. *Repeat, substituting the proper pronouns for the noun objects.*

c. Conjugate in the future and conditional, making the necessary changes in the possessive adjective: je ressemble à mon père; je ressemble à mes parents.

d. Conjugate in the present and also in the past indefinite: je viens voir mon ancien professeur.

e. Conjugate in the present and in the imperfect: je pars avant la fin de la pièce; je finis un roman de Victor Hugo.

f. Make a list of the verbs that resemble **partir** (*see* Lesson XVIII, C, 2).

(2) *a. Study the forms of* **envoyer** (§ 161).

b. Does the peculiarity of the present indicative and subjunctive, 1st, 2d, 3d, sing. and 3d pl., appear in the pronunciation or only in the spelling? Is the same thing true of the irregularity of the future and conditional? This peculiarity occurs in the forms of verbs in **-oyer** *where the* **-y-** *would otherwise come before* [ə].

c. Supply the forms of **envoyer** *and then vary by changing the person or number of each subject:* 1. Les enfants —— (*present*) les chiens après les bêtes. 2. Il faut que nous —— (*present*) des chiens pour chasser ces moutons. 3. Le berger —— (*fut.*) le chien pour chasser les vaches de cet endroit. 4. Si nous avions des chiens de berger nous les —— (*cond.*) chercher nos moutons perdus.

E. (1) *Répondez aux questions:* 1. Qui gardaient les bêtes? 2. Qui les aidait? 3. Est-ce que les enfants allaient chasser les bêtes des champs de blé? 4. Est-ce que les chiens dormaient ou jouaient? 5. Comment jouaient-ils? 6. Lesquels étaient les plus grands, les vaches ou les chiens? 7. Est-ce que les chiens avaient peur des vaches? 8. À quels animaux les chiens ressemblaient-ils? 9. Est-ce que quelques vaches restaient dans les champs de blé? 10. Que voulaient-elles y faire? 11. Pourquoi les chiens sont-ils partis au galop? 12. Ont-ils fait tout ce que les enfants leur ont dit de faire? 13. Que venons-nous de faire dans les champs? 14. Qu'est-ce que les enfants nous ont demandé? 15. Avez-vous jamais vu des chiens de berger?

(2) Dictée: Lesson XXXIII, A. 1–12.

VOCABULARY REVIEW No. 5

(1) *Donnez le contraire de:* loin de, actuellement, désagréable, rarement, content, possible, à droite, nouveau, bête (*adj.*), vide.

(2) *À quels autres mots pensez-vous quand on dit:* le milieu, un individu, la soupe, le chien, des caresses, la journée, la soirée, un bâton, une pièce, une église, une grande rue, le bout, un roi, un musée, mener, autrefois?

(3) *Fit words to the definitions:* dire plus d'une fois; aller près de quelqu'un; celui qui accompagne quelqu'un; les assiettes, les tasses, les verres, etc. pour la table; le pied d'un animal; une figure en pierre, etc., qui représente une personne, une ville, etc.; porte d'une voiture; l'endroit où l'on entre dans un parc, etc.; celui qui garde les moutons; animal qui mange les moutons.

(4) *Translate:* 1. The policeman has arrested (**arrêter**) this fellow. 2. He has just set fire to the palace. 3. The dogs tried in vain to bring back the sheep; they would not (= did not want to) come. 4. He cannot remember what you told (*past part. of* **dire** *is* **dit**) him ten minutes ago. 5. These statues are like each other.

(5) *Supply the missing words:* 1. Les voitures de chemin de fer en France ont plusieurs ——. 2. D'un côté elles ont un ——. 3. Pour sortir il faut ouvrir les ——. 4. L'âne a —— la table et fait —— la vaisselle. 5. Le maître a —— les domestiques qui ont donné à l'âne des —— de —— et l'ont —— de la salle. 6. L'âne veut chanter mais sa —— est ——. 7. Les députés font les —— du pays. 8. Presque (*Almost*) tous les édifices en France sont bâtis en ——. 9. Louis XVI était —— de France. 10. Son palais a été incendié pendant une ——. 11. Le voleur a —— son revolver de sa ——. 12. Dans le musée du Louvre il y a de belles ——. 13. Nous traversons la Seine sur un —— qui s'appelle le ——. 14. La —— de Notre-Dame se trouve sur une —— de la ——. 15. Elle a été bâtie —— plus de huit —— ans.

(6) *Translate:* over there, convenient, infrequent, wretched, so much (many), as much (many), together, in fact, opposite, threaten, a bank note, with pleasure (gladly), around, for, because, why, spot (place), give back, full, empty, in former times, to become, to meet, to relate, to send.

(7) *Translate:* 1. What has become of the kings of France (What have the kings . . . become)? 2. What became of you? 3. I shall send you news of myself (= of my news). 4. I begged him to send me news of them. 5. What [a] terrible scene (**que**) that one [is]! 6. What do you think of * (*two ways*) that scene?

(8) *Translate:* Everybody, nobody, somebody; everything, something, nothing; such a day, such a bad day; each other (*two persons*), each other (*more than two persons*), to each other.

(9) **Pièce** *is the general word for* 'room': *what other meaning has it? What are the distinctive meanings of* **chambre** *and* **salle**? *Supply the missing words:* 1. Ma maison a six ——, un salon, une cuisine, trois —— à coucher et une —— à manger. 2. Le jour je travaille à l'école dans notre —— de classe; je passe la nuit chez moi dans ma ——. 3. Nous avons cherché l'enfant dans toutes les —— de la maison.

(10) *Racontez d'abord oralement, puis écrivez* « La Montre de mon ami. » (*Make use of the following words and expressions in Leçon XXX:*) Un jour, se trouver, compartiment, homme, ne savoir pas, la différence, mien, tien. Ami, avoir, montre, or. Train, approcher de, petite ville, marcher, moins vite. L'individu, tirer, poche, revolver, dire. Votre montre, plus jolie, la mienne, donnez-la-moi. Je, donner, la mienne, afin que, vous, savoir l'heure. Le voleur, approcher, revolver, de la tête. Ami, avoir peur. Il, donner, montre. Voleur, donner, la sienne, sauter du train. Compartiment, français, être, commode, mais, on, pouvoir, se trouver avec, compagnon de voyage, désagréable, même dangereux.

* **Penser de** = *think of, have an opinion of;* **penser à** = *think of, have in mind.* Example: **Au revoir! Pensez à moi quand vous serez en France! — Je penserai souvent à vous et je vous enverrai des cartes postales. May penser à** be used in (7), 6?

LESSON XXXV

138. Cardinal Numerals

1	**un, une**	[œ̃, yn]	21	**vingt et un**	[vɛ̃teœ̃]
2	**deux**	[dø]	22	**vingt-deux**	[vɛ̃tdø]
3	**trois**	[trwɑ]	30	**trente**	[trɑ̃:t]
4	**quatre**	[katr]	31	**trente et un**	[trɑ̃:teœ̃]
5	**cinq**	[sɛ̃:k]	40	**quarante**	[karɑ̃:t]
6	**six**	[sis]	50	**cinquante**	[sɛ̃kɑ̃:t]
7	**sept**	[sɛt]	60	**soixante**	[swasɑ̃:t]
8	**huit**	[ɥit]	70	**soixante-dix**	[swasɑ̃:tdis]
9	**neuf**	[nœf]	71	**soixante et onze**	[swasɑ̃:teõ:z]
10	**dix**	[dis]	80	**quatre-vingts**	[katrəvɛ̃]
11	**onze**	[õ:z]	81	**quatre-vingt-un**	[katrəvɛ̃œ̃]
12	**douze**	[du:z]	90	**quatre-vingt-dix**	[katrəvɛ̃dis]
13	**treize**	[trɛ:z]	91	**quatre-vingt-onze**	[katrəvɛ̃õ:z]
14	**quatorze**	[katɔrz]	100	**cent**	[sɑ̃]
15	**quinze**	[kɛ̃:z]	101	**cent un**	[sɑ̃ œ̃]
16	**seize**	[sɛ:z]	200	**deux cents**	[døsɑ̃]
17	**dix-sept**	[disɛt]	201	**deux cent un**	[døsɑ̃œ̃]
18	**dix-huit**	[dizɥit]	1000	**mille**	[mil]
19	**dix-neuf**	[diznœf]	1001	**mille un**	[milœ̃]
20	**vingt**	[vɛ̃]	2000	**deux mille**	[dømil]

Nouns of Number: 1,000,000 = **un million** [œ̃ miljõ]; 2,000,000 = **deux millions** [dø miljõ]; 1,000,000,000 = **un milliard** [œ̃ milja:r].

Observe: 1. The hyphen unites the parts of compound numerals under 100, except where **et** occurs. 2. **Et** stands regularly in 21, 31, 41, 51, 61, **71,** omitted in 81, and elsewhere.

Notes on Pronunciation: 1. The final consonant of 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 17, 18, 19, is silent before initial consonant or **h** aspirate of a word multiplied by them, not elsewhere: **Cinq livres** [sɛ̃ li:vr], but **le cinq mai** [lə sɛ̃:k mɛ]. 2. No elision or liaison occurs before **huit, onze: le huit** [lə ɥit]; **les huit livres** [le ɥi li:vr]; **le onze** [lə õ:z]; **les onze francs** [le õ:z frɑ̃]. 3. The **t** is sounded in **vingt** in 21, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, is sounded with the **d** in 22, is silent from 81 to 99, is silent in **cent un, deux cent un,** etc.

139. Million and **milliard** require **de** before the object enumerated; **cent** = *a* (or *one*) *hundred;* **mille** = *a* (or *one*) *thousand:*

Il a payé un million *de* francs.	He has paid a million (of) francs.
Ceci vaut *cent* francs.	This is worth a hundred francs.

140. Quatre-vingt and the multiples of **cent** take **-s** only when immediately preceding a noun, or when they themselves are used as nouns of number:

Quatre-vingt*s* francs.	Eighty francs.
Trois cent*s* francs.	Three hundred francs.
Les cinq cent*s*.	The five hundreds.

But: **Trois cent un francs; quatre-vingt-un francs,** etc.

Obs.: They are not nouns of number in dates, or when used as ordinals.

141. Multiplicatives. *Once* = **une fois,** *twice* = **deux fois,** *three times* = **trois fois,** etc.:

***Dix fois* dix font cent.**	Ten times ten make a hundred.

142. Ordinal Numerals. They are formed from 'third' upwards by adding **-ième** to the corresponding cardinal, final **e** being dropped; **cinq** adds **u,** and **neuf** changes **f** to **v** before **-ième:**

1st	**premier**	[prəmje]	**7th septième**	[sɛtjɛm]
2nd	**second**	[səgɔ̃]	8th **huitième**	[ɥitjɛm]
	deuxième	[døzjɛm]	9th **neu*v*ième**	[nœvjɛm]
3rd	**troisième**	[trwazjɛm]	10th **dixième**	[dizjɛm]
4th	**quatrième**	[katrijɛm]	11th **onzième**	[ɔ̃zjɛm]
5th	**cinq*u*ième**	[sɛ̃kjɛm]	21st **vingt et unième**	[vɛ̃teynjɛm]
6th	**sixième**	[sizjɛm]	22nd **vingt-deuxième**	[vɛ̃tdøzjɛm]

143. Fractions. The numerator is expressed by a cardinal, the denominator by an ordinal, as in English. *Half* = **moitié,** *f.* (as noun), and **demi** (as adjective); $\frac{1}{4}$ = **un quart,** $\frac{1}{3}$ = **un tiers** [tjɛːr]. Before a noun, **demi** is invariable and joined by a hyphen, but agrees elsewhere. Use **la moitié** (not **demi**) where *the half of* is, or may be, used in English:

Un huitième; les trois dixièmes.	One-eighth; the three tenths.
La moitié de l'année.	(The) half (of) the year.
Une heure et demi*e*.	An hour and a half.
Une demi-heure.	Half an hour.
Les trois quarts de cette somme.	Three-fourths of that sum.

EXERCISE XXXV

le **centime** [sɑ̃tim] centime
la **façon** [fasɔ̃] manner, way
la **moitié** [mwatje] half
la **monnaie** [mɔnɛ] change, money; **monnaie française,** French money (**argent** *is more general*)
le **nom** [nɔ̃] name
un **objet** [ɔbʒɛ] object, article, thing
la **page** [paːʒ] page
le **par-dessus** [pardəsy] overcoat
le **quart** [kaːr] fourth
le **sou** [su] cent, penny, sou
le **tiers** [tjɛːr] third

demi [dəmi] half

compléter [kɔ̃plete] fill out, finish

en être à [ɑ̃nɛːtr a] be (*at a point in a book, etc.*)
se **fâcher** [səfɑʃe] get angry
indiquer [ɛ̃dike] assign, point out
nommer [nɔme] name
ôter [ote] take off, remove
il **vaut** [vo] is worth (*pres. of* **valoir**)
veuillez [vœje] please (*imperative of* **vouloir**)

à **haute voix** [aoːtvwa] aloud

autant (de) [otɑ̃] as many, as much
jusqu'à [ʒyska] until, as far as, up to
par [par] by
sur [syr] out of

A. (1) *Lisez à haute voix en français:* 40, 41, 50, 51, 55, 60, 61, 66, 69, 70, 71, 75, 79, 80, 81, 88, 90, 91, 92, 93, 95, 99, 100, 101, 140, 175, 190, 200, 201, 250, 281, 500, 1000, 1001, 25,000 hommes, 1,000,000 de francs.

(2) *Complétez:* 2 fois 1 font ——; 2 fois 2 font ——; 2 fois 3 font ——. *Continuez jusqu'à* 2 fois 25.

(3) *Parlez-vous français le* $\frac{1}{4}$ *du temps, ou la* $\frac{1}{2}$ *du temps, ou les* $\frac{2}{3}$ *du temps, ou les* $\frac{3}{4}$ *du temps ou tout le temps en classe? Quelle partie du temps le professeur parle-t-il? Parle-t-il trop?*

(4) *On indique la valeur des objets par francs, par sous et par centimes. Il y a 20 sous dans un franc. Un sou vaut un cent américain. Cinq centimes font un sou.*

1. Combien de centimes y a-t-il dans un franc? 2. Combien de sous un dollar américain vaut-il? 3. Quelle partie d'un franc un sou est-il? 4. Quelle partie d'un franc un centime est-il? 5. Quelle partie d'un dollar américain un franc est-il? 6. Quelle est la valeur en monnaie américaine de cinq francs?

7. De dix francs? 8. De cent francs? 9. De cinq centimes? 10. De vingt-cinq centimes? 11. De cinquante centimes? 12. De soixante-quinze centimes?

NOTE. — If the teacher can secure some French coins and bank notes or facsimiles of them, it will be helpful at this point. The teacher may also exhibit a number of articles with the prices marked in francs and centimes. This will stimulate interest in converting the sums into dollars and cents.

Much drill is needed for teaching the numerals thoroughly, more than can be provided in Exercises in the text. In addition to seizing every occasion to make the students count, have them tell the page of each lesson, answer questions involving dates, and tell the prices in French money of real and imaginary articles and meals. The teacher will find it profitable to cut up several pages of a calendar that has the numerals printed in large type and to paste the numbers in order on sheets of paper. These may be manipulated before the class like flash-cards so as to show any desired combination, and are very useful in rapid daily practice.

B. (1) *Study* (*a*), *the future and conditional forms of* **voir** (§ 224); *and* (*b*), *the present indicative and subjunctive, the imperfect indicative, and the imperative. Refer each of these forms to the "principal parts" according to the grouping in* § 159, 1, 2, 3, 4.

(2) *Study the present, imperfect, and future of* **mettre** (§ 198). *Tabulate according to* § 159.

C. (1) *Dites en français:* 1. You must **get** a ticket before taking the train. 2. We **got** enough bread for two days. 3. This fellow **gets** angry too easily. 4. Please go and **get** my hat. 5. His horse **got** frightened.

(2) *Écrivez en français:* 1. If the cows were in our neighbor's wheat field, the dogs would see them. 2. If they were to see the cows, they would go and bring them back. 3. Please go [and] get the animals (**bête**) when you see them in your neighbor's yard. 4. If no one went and got them, they would eat [up] the grass in our neighbor's yard. 5. If he saw them, he would get angry. 6. He will get angry when he sees them in his field. 7. If our neighbors were to see these goats in their fields, there would be no use (**avoir beau** *in 1st pl.: which tense?*)

in our trying to run them out, for (**car**) our neighbors would go and get them first (**les premiers**).

(3) 1. No one puts on his hat in the house. 2. I shall put on my hat before (**avant de**) going out (*see* § 99, 5). 3. When it is cold, you (*indef.*) put on your (*which possessive adj.?*) overcoat before going out and take it off before coming in. 4. Half the time he would put on his overcoat in the house, because his mother had told him to do it (**le**), but once outside he would take it off. 5. Nine times out of ten he would get angry.

D. *Répondez en français:* (1) *a.* 1. Combien de jours y a-t-il dans une semaine? 2. Combien de semaines dans un mois? 3. Combien de jours y a-t-il dans les mois de septembre [sɛptɑ̃ːbr], avril [avril], juin [ʒɥɛ̃], novembre [nɔvɑ̃ːbr]? 4. Combien de jours dans les mois de janvier [ʒɑ̃vje], mars [mars], mai [mɛ], juillet [ʒɥijɛ], août [u], octobre [ɔktɔbr], décembre [desɑ̃ːbr]? 5. Quels sont les mois qui ont trente et un jours? 6. Nommez ceux qui ont trente jours. 7. Combien de jours le mois de février [fevrie] a-t-il? 8. Combien de jours y a-t-il dans une année?

b. 1. Combien d'élèves êtes-vous dans cette classe? 2. Comptez: un élève, deux élèves, etc. 3. Comptez les places dans la salle de classe: une place, deux places, etc. 4. Y a-t-il assez de places pour les élèves? 5. Y a-t-il autant d'élèves qu'il y a de places? 6. Y a-t-il autant de places qu'il y a d'élèves? 7. Y a-t-il plus de places ou moins de places que d'élèves?

c. 1. Combien de pages votre livre de français a-t-il? 2. À quelle page est-ce que nous en sommes? 3. À quelle page en étions-nous hier? 4. Avant-hier? 5. Lundi dernier? 6. À quelle page en serons-nous demain? 7. À quelle page en sommes-nous restés hier? 8. À quelle page en êtes-vous resté avant-hier?

(2) 1. Quel est le premier jour de la semaine? 2–7. Quel est le deuxième jour de la semaine, etc. 8. Quel est le premier mois de l'année? 9–19. Quel est le deuxième mois de l'année? etc. 20. Quelle leçon étudions-nous aujourd'hui? 21. Quelle

leçon aurons-nous pour demain? 22. À quelle leçon en étions-nous hier? 23. À quelle page nous sommes-nous arrêtés hier? 24. À quelle page en sommes-nous restés avant-hier?

E. Dictée: Lesson XXXIII, A, 13–22.

F. *Lisez à haute voix* (*compare* Lessons V, VII): un billet, un âne, une banque, un; deux députés, deux édifices, deux; trois monuments, trois obélisques, trois; quatre statues, quatre arcs de triomphe, quatre; cinq rois, cinq avenues, cinq; six lois, six églises, six; sept promenades, sept objets, sept; huit personnages, huit endroits, huit; neuf ponts, neuf ans, neuf; dix repas, dix avenues, dix.

a. Which of these numerals have two pronunciations? Make examples illustrative of each, using other nouns than those above. See § 138, *Notes on Pronunciation.*

b. Which of these numerals have three pronunciations? Illustrate as in *a.*

LESSON XXXVI

144. Dates, Titles, etc. 1. The form **mil** is used in dates of the Christian era, from 1001 to 1999; from 1100 onward, dates are often expressed by hundreds, as so frequently in English:

(En) l'an *mil* six.	(In) the year 1006.
En *mil* neuf cent vingt.	In nineteen hundred and twenty.
En dix-neuf cent vingt et un.	In 1921.

2. Days of the month and numerical titles of rulers are indicated by cardinals, except *first* = **premier**:

Le premier mai. Charles premier.	The first of May. Charles I.
Paris, le deux mai.	Paris, on the 2nd of May.
Louis quatorze (XIV).	Louis XIV.

Observe: — The English word *the* in titles is not translated in French.

3. Observe the following date idioms:

Quel jour du mois est-ce aujourd'hui?	What day of the month is this?
Quel jour du mois sommes-nous aujourd'hui?	" " " " "
Quel quantième [kātjɛm] du mois est-ce aujourd'hui?	" " " " "
C'est aujourd'hui le quinze.	To-day is the fifteenth.
Ce sera demain le seize.	To-morrow will be the sixteenth.
Le six janvier.	*On* the sixth of January.
Ils sont arrivés lundi.	They came *on* Monday.
D'aujourd'hui en huit.	A week from to-day (*future*).
Il y a quinze jours.	A fortnight ago.

Observe: — The English words *on* and *of* in dates are not translated. Before days of the week *on* is likewise omitted.

4. The names of the seasons are: **l'été,** summer, **l'automne,** autumn, **l'hiver,** winter, **le printemps,** spring. The names of the months may be conveniently learned from the following rhyme; they are all masculine:

Trente jours ont septembre,
Avril, juin, novembre;
Trente et un ont mars et mai,
Août, octobre, puis juillet,
Et décembre et janvier;
De vingt-huit est février.

5. Observe the following idioms referring to age:

Quel âge avez-vous?	How old are you?
J'ai vingt ans.	I am twenty (years old).
Une fillette (âgée) de six ans.	A girl six years old (*or* of age).
À l'âge de vingt-cinq ans.	At the age of twenty-five (years).

EXERCISE XXXVI

le **cadeau** [kado] present	le **foyer** [fwaje] hearth
la **date** [dat] date	une **importance** [ɛ̃portɑ̃:s] importance
une **encyclopédie** [ɑ̃sikləpedi] encyclopedia	la **naissance** [nɛsɑ̃:s] birth
la **fête** [fɛ:t] festival, holiday	le **Noël** [nɔɛl] Christmas

Courtesy of U. S. Army Air Service

La Place de la Bastille, Paris

EXERCISE XXXVI (Continued)

une **origine** [ɔriʒin] origin
la **plupart** (de) [plypa:r] majority, most
la **prise** [pri:z] capture
la **prison** [prizɔ̃] prison
le **règne** [rɛɲ] reign
le **souvenir** [suvni:r] memory

catholique [katɔlik] Catholic
historique [istɔrik] historical
national [nasjɔnal] national
protestant [prɔtɛstɑ̃] Protestant
religieux [rəliʒjø] religious

croire [krwa:r] believe, think
durer [dyre] last

faire froid [fɛ:r frwɑ] be, get cold (*of weather*)
régner [reɲe] reign
revenir [rəvni:r] come back

couramment [kuramɑ̃] fluently, generally
environ [ɑ̃virɔ̃] about
non plus [nɔ̃ply] either, neither
davantage [davɑ̃ta:ʒ] more

à cause de [ako:z də] on account of
jusqu'à [ʒyska] until, up to, as far as
parmi [parmi] among

A. (1) 1. Dans tous les pays il y a des jours de fête où on ne travaille pas. 2. Quelques-uns de ces jours de fête ont une origine religieuse, comme les dimanches et le jour de Noël, le 25 décembre. 3. D'autres ont une origine historique, comme le 14 juillet. 4. La plupart des fêtes ont une origine religieuse, surtout dans les pays catholiques, comme la France. 5. Combien de dimanches y a-t-il dans une année? — Il y en a ——(?). 6. On appelle le premier jour de l'année le « jour de l'an ». 7. Ce jour-là on fait des visites, on envoie des cartes et des lettres à ses amis. 8. La fête du jour de l'an a plus d'importance en France que chez nous.

(2) 1. Le 14 juillet on célèbre la fête nationale française en souvenir de la prise de la Bastille, le 14 juillet, 1789. 2. La Bastille était une prison où le roi mettait les individus dont il avait peur. 3. Ce jour-là la Révolution française a commencé. 4. Elle a duré dix ans environ, jusqu'à Napoléon. 5. Quelle est la date de la fête nationale américaine? 6. Quand est-ce qu'on l'a célébrée la première fois?

(3) 1. Le 25 décembre nous célébrons le jour de Noël, en souvenir de la naissance de Jésus-Christ [ʒezykri]. 2. On célèbre ce jour-là dans les pays protestants aussi bien que dans les pays

catholiques. 3. Le soir du 24 décembre, avant de se coucher, les petits Français laissent leurs souliers autour du foyer, et le petit Noël (ou le petit Jésus [ʒezy]) vient y mettre des cadeaux pendant la nuit. 4. Dans trois semaines nous allons célébrer la fête de Noël.

B. (1) 1. Parmi les rois de France les plus célèbres se trouvent Charlemagne, Saint Louis (Louis IX), François Ier, Henri IV, Louis XIV et Louis XVI, sous lequel la Révolution a commencé. 2. *Trouvez dans une encyclopédie ou un livre d'histoire, les dates de leurs règnes et lisez-les à haute voix dans la classe. Par exemple, François Ier a régné de 1515 à 1547.* 3. *Trouvez les dates de trois présidents de la République française et lisez-les devant la classe.*

(2) *a. Study the present, imperfect, and future indicative, the present subjunctive, the conditional and compound forms of* **aller** (§160); *of* **venir** (§ 178). **Tenir** *is conjugated like* **venir** *except that it takes a different auxiliary in the compound tenses. Which?*

b. Tabulate the forms of these verbs under the principal parts (§ 159).

C. (1) *Étudiez la* § (**section** [sɛksjõ]) 106. *Écrivez en français:* 1. Will winter come soon? I do not want it to come this month. 2. I am glad that it is not cold yet, but I am afraid that winter will come soon. 3. Last year it got very cold in November. 4. Old people (**Les vieux**) do not like the cold, and I do not like it either, although I am young. 5. I want my family to go south (**dans le sud**) before winter comes, because when January and February and March come there will be much snow and ice. 6. It will be necessary for us to wear our gloves and overcoats when we go out, in order not to be cold (in order that we, *etc.*). 7. When spring and summer come, I shall prefer that we come back (*subjunct.*) (to the) north before it gets too warm. 8. We went south last year in December and we came back in April. 9. My mother wants the family to go to Canada for May, June, July, August, and September. 10. I think (**Je crois**) that we shall have to come back before the middle of September, on account of the cold.

(2) *a.* 1. He is coming to-morrow. 2. He used to come every day. 3. They will come on Friday. 4. Our sisters came back on June 1st. 5. They would come back at once if you asked them to do it (**le**).

b. 1. We shall go to the country on June 2nd. 2. We used to go (**y**) on June 15. 3. We should go to France in July if we had 3500 francs. 4. Did those ladies go to England in July or in August?

c. 1. How old is he? He is ten. 2. What is his name? His name is Pierre. 3. He has a sister 15 years old. 4. He wants to go to Europe when he is sixteen and stay two years. 5. He thinks that in (**au bout de**) two years he will be able to speak French fluently.

D. (1) *Voici le participe présent du verbe* **lire**: **lisant.**

Complétez par la forme convenable (proper) *de* **lire**: 1. Je —— (*present*) un roman de Dumas. 2. Nous ne —— (*present*) pas beaucoup de romans français. 3. Il faut que vous —— (*present*) l'histoire de France avant de visiter ce pays. 4. Quoique cet enfant ne —— (*present*) pas trop facilement le français, il aime *les Misérables* de Victor Hugo. 5. Si tous les voyageurs —— (*imperfect*) plus d'histoire, ils s'amuseraient davantage. 6. Quand nous aurons le temps, nous —— (*future*) des romans de Balzac. 7. J'ai déjà —— (*past participle*) son *Eugénie Grandet.*

(2) *Répondez aux questions:* 1. Quel âge avez-vous? 2. Quel âge aurez-vous dans cinq ans? 3. Quelle est la date de l'anniversaire de votre naissance? 4. Quel jour du mois sommes-nous aujourd'hui? 5. Quel jour du mois serons-nous d'aujourd'hui en huit? 6. D'aujourd'hui en quinze? 7. Quel jour du mois étions-nous il y a huit jours? 8. Il y a trois jours? 9. Quel âge aviez-vous il y a trois ans? 10. Il y a cinq ans? 11. Quel jour de la semaine Noël tombe-t-il cette année? 12. Et le 14 juillet quel jour de la semaine tombe-t-il? 13. Quels sont les mois qui n'ont que trente jours? 14. Le mois de février combien de jours a-t-il? 15. Répétez-moi les noms des six premiers mois de l'année. 16. Dans quel mois êtes-vous né?

LESSON XXXVII

145. The Time of Day. The hours and fractions of hours are indicated as follows:

Quelle heure est-il?	What time (o'clock) is it?
Il est deux heures.	It is two o'clock.
Trois heures et demie.	Half-past three.
Trois heures (et) un quart.	A quarter past three.
Quatre heures moins un (le) quart.	A quarter to four.
Trois heures dix (minutes).	Ten minutes past three.
Quatre heures moins cinq (minutes).	Five minutes to four.
Trois heures cinquante-cinq.	Three fifty-five.
Il est midi et demi.	It is half-past twelve (*noon*).
Il est minuit.	It is twelve o'clock (*midnight*).
À sept heures du soir.	At seven o'clock in the evening.
À quelle heure?	At what time?
À trois heures précises.	At three o'clock precisely.
Vers (les) trois heures.	About three o'clock.

It will be noted that:

1. The time of day is expressed by **être** combined with the impersonal subject **il**.

2. Contrary to English usage, in French the hour is given first and then the minutes are added or subtracted. The word **heure**(s) is always mentioned, but the word **minute**(s) is frequently omitted.

3. **Le midi** [midi] means *noon, midday;* **le minuit** [minqi] means *midnight.*

4. **Demi** when preceding a noun, is regarded as part of the noun and is joined to it by means of a hyphen and does not agree with it in gender; as an adjective, following the noun, **demi**(e) observes the usual rules of agreement; *e.g.* **une demi-heure,** *a half-hour,* but **une heure et demie,** *half past one* or, *one and a half hours.*

5. In the French time tables and in the usage of some

Frenchmen, time is counted from 1 to 24 hours; *e.g.* **dix heures (du soir) = vingt-deux heures.**

N.B. — Distinguish carefully between telling *the time of day* (il + **être**) and describing the *condition of weather, temperature and natural phenomena* (**il** + **faire**), § 98.

EXERCISE XXXVII

un **avis** [ɑ̃navi] opinion, mind
un **employé** [ɑ̃nɑ̃plwaje] clerk, agent
le **lendemain** [lɑ̃dmɛ̃] next day, morrow
la **méfiance** [mefjɑ̃:s] distrust
la **part** [pa:r] portion, share; **pour ma part** for my part; **de ma part,** from me
la **partie** [parti] part, game
la **poste** [pɔst] post office
le **repos** [lərpo] rest
le **veston** [vɛstɔ̃] (sack) coat

fou [fu], (*f.* **folle**) mad, crazy
précis [presi] exact, precise

agir [aʒi:r] act, have an effect
avancer [avɑ̃se] be fast, advance
changer [ʃɑ̃ʒe] change
discuter [diskyte] argue, discuss
se **fier à** [səfjea] trust, have faith in
se **méfier de** [səmefjedə] distrust, beware of
oublier [ublie] forget
plaisanter [plɛzɑ̃te] joke
raconter [rakɔ̃te] relate, recount
recommencer [rəkɔmɑ̃se] begin again, do again
remonter [rəmɔ̃te] wind (*of a watch or clock*)
retarder [rətarde] be behind, be late, delay
tromper [trɔ̃pe] deceive, fool
varier [varje] vary

d'**ailleurs** [dajœ:r] besides, furthermore
d'**autant** [dotɑ̃] so much more, all the more

ça va it's all right, it will do, that works
ne . . . jamais [nə ʒamɛ] never

pourtant [purtɑ̃] however

tiens! [tjɛ̃] Is that so! Indeed! (*imperative of* **tenir,** hold)

A. (1) 1. Avez-vous une montre, Louise? — Oui, mademoiselle, j'en ai une. 2. C'est un cadeau de mon père. Il me l'a donnée pour mon anniversaire. 3. — Est-elle en or ou en argent? — En or, mais elle marche mal. À présent elle retarde d'un (*by*) quart d'heure. 4. — Alors ça ne va pas. On ne peut pas se fier à votre montre. 5. Et la vôtre, Édouard, marche-

t-elle mieux que celle de Louise? 6. — Oui, mademoiselle, la mienne marche très bien. Vous savez que les montres des garçons marchent toujours mieux que celles des jeunes filles. 7. — Tiens! Comment expliquez-vous cela, Édouard? — Mais, c'est facile! 8. Les jeunes filles changent si souvent d'avis, elles varient tant elles-mêmes, qu'on ne peut pas se fier à elles, et cela agit sur leurs montres. 9. D'ailleurs elles ne les remontent jamais. Elles oublient toujours de les remonter. 10. — Tiens, Édouard! Vous commencez très jeune à vous méfier des femmes. 11. Vous avez entendu chanter sans doute: « Souvent femme varie, Bien (*very*) fou qui s'y fie ». 12. Pourtant vous avez beau parler de cette façon, vous ferez comme les autres. 13. Vous payerez bien cher cette méfiance. On vous trompera d'autant plus facilement. Vous allez voir! 14. Mais ne discutons pas cette question. Quelle heure est-il à votre montre? — Il est midi moins le quart. 15. — Et à la vôtre, Pierre? — Il est midi moins treize, mademoiselle. 16. — Alors vous avancez de deux minutes? — Non, mademoiselle; je ne crois pas. 17. C'est que la montre d'Édouard retarde de deux minutes. On ne peut pas s'y fier. 18. — Ah? Alors vous n'êtes pas de l'avis d'Édouard sur les jeunes filles et les garçons et leurs montres? 19. Mais je crois qu'il plaisantait. Pourtant nous ne pouvons pas passer l'heure à discuter sur les femmes et leurs montres. 20. Nous ne serions jamais d'accord. Nous n'arriverions jamais à rien.

(2) 1. Racontez-moi votre journée, Pierre. — Les jours de classe je me lève à sept heures moins vingt. 2. Il me faut vingt-cinq minutes pour faire ma toilette, et à sept heures cinq je suis prêt à travailler une demi-heure avant le déjeuner. 3. Le déjeuner est prêt à huit heures moins vingt-cinq et à huit heures dix je pars pour l'école. 4. J'arrive à l'école à huit heures vingt-cinq. La première classe commence à huit heures et demie et dure quarante-cinq minutes. 5. La deuxième classe commence à neuf heures et quart, . . . etc. (*Continuez*). 6. À midi nous avons un peu de repos. Nous prenons notre déjeuner et à une heure les classes recommencent. 7. J'arrive chez moi à quatre heures de l'après-midi, nous dînons à six heures et demie, et après le dîner je travaille ou je m'amuse

à lire jusqu'à dix heures. 8. Alors je me couche et je dors jusqu'au lendemain matin. 9. — Très bien, Pierre. Vous êtes un jeune homme sage. 10. Je comprends pourquoi votre montre marche mieux que celle de Louise, — et même que celle d'Édouard!

B. (1) *Substitute pronouns for the italicized object nouns:* 1. Voici une *lettre.* 2. J'ai écrit la *lettre* hier soir. 3. J'ai demandé à mon frère de mettre la *lettre* à la poste, mais il a mis la *lettre* dans sa poche. 4. Il a mis la *lettre* dans sa poche il y a cinq jours. 5. Il y a trouvé la *lettre* ce matin quand il changeait de veston. 6. Il n'avait pas ouvert la *lettre.* 7. Enfin il a donné la *lettre* au facteur le 4 juillet. 8. Donnez la *lettre* au facteur. 9. Ne mettez pas la *lettre* à la poste. 10. Prenez vos *billets* avant de monter dans une voiture. 11. Il faut donner les *billets* à l'*employé* avant de sortir de la gare de destination.

(2) *Study the present indicative and subjunctive, the imperfect, future, and conditional forms, and the compound forms of* **dire** (§ 193) *and of* **prendre** (§ 202).

Group these forms according to § 159.

C. (1) *Traduisez en français:* 1. People say so (**le**). 2. Some one said so. 3. No one will say so. 4. Your father doesn't want him to say so. 5. Tell me at once. 6. I regret that he told (*perf. subj.; see* § 155) you that. 7. You never say anything (**rien**). 8. What would you say if I told him what you said yesterday? 9. She takes sugar in her coffee. 10. They take the 8:28 train (**le train de . . .**) every morning. 11. Your father must get (**prendre**) the tickets before taking the train. 12. The apples we took were yours, weren't they? 13. Somebody has just taken all my apples. 14. It is 5:45 exactly; I shall put on my overcoat at once and take the street car at the corner. 15. If you took the car at 6:15 exactly, you would get (**être**) to my house before a quarter to seven. 16. Tell him to take the 7:36 train. 17. Don't let's take it.

(2) *For* **les jours de classe** *in* A, (2), 1 *substitute* **hier** *and rewrite to the end of the eighth sentence, making the necessary changes in the tense form.*

(3) *Substitute* **demain** *for* **les jours de classe,** *and rewrite as indicated in* (2).

D. (1) The teacher dictates the English of the examples in § 145 and the class gives the French, orally or in writing.

(2) *a. Note the idiomatic expressions:* 1. Cette dame a **changé de** robe. 2. Vous pouvez **vous fier à** cette jeune fille, car elle ne **ressemble** pas **aux** autres. 3. Si vous **vous méfiez** trop **des** hommes, ils vous tromperont **d'autant plus** souvent. 4. Il passe son temps **à** penser **aux** (*compare* Lesson XX, A, (3), 11, 12, 13 and (7) of *Vocabulary Review No.* 5) parties de base-ball. 5. Elle ne **pense** jamais **à** remonter sa montre. 6. Cet enfant ne **pense à** rien d'utile.

b. Write sentences in French after the model of those in (2) *a.*

E. Dictée: Lesson XXXIV, A.

LESSON XXXVIII

146. Past Definite of *donner, finir, vendre*

I gave, etc.		*I finished, etc.*		*I sold, etc.*	
donn ***ai***	[dɔne]	fin ***is***	[fini]	vend ***is***	[vãdi]
donn ***as***	[dɔna]	fin ***is***	[fini]	vend ***is***	[vãdi]
donn ***a***	[dɔna]	fin ***it***	[fini]	vend ***it***	[vãdi]
donn ***âmes***	[dɔnam]	fin ***îmes***	[finim]	vend ***îmes***	[vãdim]
donn ***âtes***	[dɔnat]	fin ***îtes***	[finit]	vend ***îtes***	[vãdit]
donn ***èrent***	[dɔnɛːr]	fin ***irent***	[finiːr]	vend ***irent***	[vãdiːr]

147. Past Definite of *avoir, être*

I had, etc.			*I was, etc.*		
eus	[y]	eûmes [ym]	fus	[fy]	fûmes [fym]
eus	[y]	eûtes [yt]	fus	[fy]	fûtes [fyt]
eut	[y]	eurent [yːr]	fut	[fy]	furent [fyːr]

a. All verbs have the same endings (**-mes, -tes, -rent**) in the plural, and all take a circumflex over the vowel of the first and second plural.

b. In the **donner** group, the letter **a** appears in the endings of all forms except the 3d plural. Note the pronunciation of **â** in **-âmes** and **-âtes.**

c. The past definite endings of the **finir** and **vendre** groups are alike.

d. Observe the pronunciation of the past definite of **avoir.**

148. Use of the Past Definite. The past definite is used in the literary narrative style to denote what happened (completed past action), or what happened next (successive events). It never denotes, like the imperfect (§ 87), what was happening or used to happen, or continued to happen:

Les Romains **brûlèrent** Carthage.

The Romans **burnt** Carthage.

Dieu **accepta** les présents d'Abel, qui *était* plus pieux que son frère; mais il **détourna** les yeux de ceux de Caïn [kaɛ̃], parce que son cœur n'*était* pas pur... Un jour Caïn et Abel *étaient* seuls dans un champ, et Caïn **se jeta** sur Abel, et le **tua.**

God **accepted** the gifts of Abel, who *was* more righteous than his brother; but he **turned away** his eyes from those of Cain, because his heart *was* not pure.... One day Cain and Abel *were* alone in a field, and Cain **fell** upon Abel, and **slew** him.

149. Past Definite of *faire* (irreg.)

I did, etc.

je fis [ʒəfi]	**nous fîmes** [nufim]
tu fis [tyfi]	**vous fîtes** [vufit]
il fit [ilfi]	**ils firent** [ilfiːr]

EXERCISE XXXVIII

un accueil [œnakœːj] welcome, reception
un automne [otɔn] autumn
le chant [ʃɑ̃] song
la compagne [kɔ̃paɲ] wife, mate
la confiance [kɔ̃fjɑ̃ːs] confidence
le dieu [djø] god
un événement [œnevɛnmɑ̃] event
la faute [foːt] mistake, fault
la miette [mjɛt] crumb
le nid [ni] nest
la pitié [pitje] pity
le printemps [prɛ̃tɑ̃], spring
le rouge-gorge [ruːʒgɔrʒ] redbreast
la saison [sɛzɔ̃] season
gentil [ʒɑ̃ti] nice, pretty
joyeux [ʒwajø] merry, cheerful
avoir pitié de [avwaːrpitjedə] have pity on
corriger [kɔriʒe] correct
employer [ɑ̃plwaje] use
savoir [savwaːr] know how (= can); **je ne saurais,** I cannot
sembler [sɑ̃ːble] seem, appear
tuer [tɥe] kill
voler [vɔle] fly
de nouveau [dənuvo] again
lorsque [lɔrskə] when
entre [ɑ̃ːtr] between

A. 1. Un petit rouge-gorge frappa à notre fenêtre. Il semblait dire: « Ayez pitié de moi! 2. Ouvrez-moi, je vous prie; il neige, il fait du vent. 3. J'ai bien froid et je ne puis rien trouver à manger parce que la terre est couverte de neige. » 4. Nous eûmes pitié du petit rouge-gorge, et nous ouvrîmes la fenêtre. 5. Le gentil petit oiseau entra dans la chambre. 6. Il vola même dans la salle à manger et mangea les miettes qui étaient tombées de la table. 7. Bientôt il mangea même dans nos mains et il resta chez nous tout l'hiver jusqu'au printemps. 8. Mais lorsque la neige fut partie, le printemps revint, et les arbres se couvrirent de feuilles. 9. Nous ouvrîmes de nouveau la fenêtre, et notre petit ami en sortit joyeux. 10. Il alla dans le bois voisin où il fit son nid et nous entendîmes souvent ses chants joyeux. 11. Lorsque l'été et l'automne furent passés, l'hiver revint, et le rouge-gorge revint aussi, cette fois avec sa petite compagne. 12. Les deux petits oiseaux ne semblaient pas du tout se méfier de nous. 13. J'ouvris la fenêtre et ils entrèrent avec confiance dans la maison, où ils passèrent la froide saison sans essayer même de nous quitter avant le printemps. 14. Vous pouvez être sûr que nous leur fîmes bon accueil.

B. (1) *Study the present indicative and subjunctive, the imperfect, future, conditional, and compound tense forms of* **pouvoir** (§ 221); *of* **savoir** (§ 222). *Group these forms according to* § 159.

(2) *a. Change to the conversational past the literary past forms in the story of Cain and Abel* (§ 148). *Are the three imperfect forms changed? Explain.*

b. Similarly, retell the incident in the present.

(3) *Traduisez:* 1. I cannot trust you (**à vous**). 2. They can trust their friends. 3. Why couldn't you trust your watch? 4. We shall come when we can. 5. He could come to-morrow if he wished (*insert* **le**). 6. The pupils must (**Il faut**) be able to leave home (**partir de chez eux**) earlier (*compar. of* **tôt**). 7. I could have left home earlier if I had wished.

C. (1) *Traduisez* (*use the past definite where suitable*): 1. What did Cain do? 2. Do you not know what Cain did

(*inverted order*)? 3. Did you know that Cain killed his brother (*see* § 148, *example* 2)? 4. I couldn't (*compare* B, (1)) kill my brother. 5. Could you kill yours? 6. Cain did not know that God was looking at him. 7. Do you know that God saw everything (§ 132, 7, 9) Cain did (*use past of conversation*)? 8. When he learned (*past indef. of* **savoir**) that I had fallen ill, he came to see me at once. 9. You must (**devez**) know that I would not distrust those persons if I did not know (**connaître** *or* **savoir?**) them very well. 10. The pupils must (**Il faut**) know how to explain the difference between " connaître " and " savoir." 11. If I were to ask you (*supply* it, **le**), could you answer the question?

(2) *Rewrite* A, *changing the past narrative of literary style to the past narrative of conversational style. Note that* **fut partie** *becomes* **était partie.** *Why do not the imperfects change?*

(3) *a.* Some verbs have a special meaning in the past definite, differing from that of the infinitive:

avoir to have	**j'eus** I have received
savoir to know	**je sus** I found out (learned)
être to be	**je fus** I became

b. Traduisez: 1. Il était bien triste quand il reçut (*see* § 213) ma lettre. 2. Il fut bien triste quand il reçut ma lettre.

(4) *Racontez en français les événements de la journée, en indiquant l'heure à laquelle vous vous êtes levé, etc.* [Leçon XXXVII, A, (2)].

(5) *Écrivez* « L'Histoire du rouge-gorge, » *le livre fermé. Employez les temps de la conversation. Servez-vous des expressions et des mots suivants:* frapper, sembler dire, avoir pitié, ouvrir, il neige, fait froid, terre couverte de neige. Nous ouvrir, gentil petit oiseau, entrer, manger miettes, rester, tout l'hiver, partir au printemps, bâtir nid, chanter, été, automne passer, hiver revenir, rouge-gorge revenir avec compagne, ne se méfier pas, leur faire bon accueil.

D. Dictée: « L'Histoire du rouge-gorge. » Chaque élève corrige les fautes de son devoir en se servant du texte, et le donne ensuite au professeur.

LESSON XXXIX

150. Imperfect Subjunctive of *donner, finir, vendre*

(*That*) *I gave, might give, etc.*		(*That*) *I finished, might finish, etc.*		(*That*) *I sold, might sell, etc.*	
donn *asse*	[dɔnas]	fin *isse*	[finis]	vend *isse*	[vādis]
donn *asses*	[dɔnas]	fin *isses*	[finis]	vend *isses*	[vādis]
donn *ât*	[dɔna]	fin *ît*	[fini]	vend *ît*	[vādi]
donn *assions*	[dɔnasjõ]	fin *issions*	[finisjõ]	vend *issions*	[vādisjõ]
donn *assiez*	[dɔnasje]	fin *issiez*	[finisje]	vend *issiez*	[vādisje]
donn *assent*	[dɔnas]	fin *issent*	[finis]	vend *issent*	[vādis]

151. Imperfect Subjunctive of *avoir, être*

(*That*) *I had, might have, etc.*				(*That*) *I was, were, might be, etc.*			
eusse	[ys]	eussions	[ysjõ]	fusse	[fys]	fussions	[fysjõ]
eusses	[ys]	eussiez	[ysje]	fusses	[fys]	fussiez	[fysje]
eût	[y]	eussent	[ys]	fût	[fy]	fussent	[fys]

152. Tense Sequence. In complex sentences any other tense than the present or future (§ 107) in the governing clause regularly requires the imperfect subjunctive in the governed clause; so also for compound subjunctive tenses, the auxiliary in the principal clause being considered as the verb:

Impf. **Je désirais**	**qu'il restât.**	I was desiring him to remain.
P. Def. **Je désirai**		I desired him to remain.
P. Indef. **J'ai désiré**		I (have) desired him to remain.
Condl. **Je désirerais**		I should desire him to remain.
Plupf. **J'avais désiré**		I had desired him to remain.

Note. — The imperfect subjunctive is of very limited use in the language of everyday life, being rarely employed except in the literary or elevated style. There is a tendency in tense sequence to avoid the imperfect and the pluperfect subjunctive in favor of the present and the perfect subjunctive; *e.g.* **j'allais rentrer dans l'église en attendant qu'il *vienne* (*instead of* vînt) me chercher.**

EXERCISE XXXIX

le **compatriote** [kɔ̃patriɔt] fellow countryman
la **mort** [mɔːr] death
le **petit-fils** [ləptifis] grandson
le **prince** [prɛ̃ːs] prince
la **religion** [larliʒjɔ̃] religion
le **rocher** [rɔʃe] rock (*large*), boulder
le **sang** [sɑ̃] blood
le **siècle** [sjɛkl] century
le **soldat** [sɔlda], soldier (*more specific than* **militaire**)

assassiné [asasine] assassinated
civil [sivil] civil, civilian
entier [ɑ̃tje] whole, entire
habitué [abitɥe] accustomed
montagneux [mɔ̃taɲø] mountainous
royal [rwɑjal] royal

accepter [aksɛpte] accept
s'agir de [saʒiːrdə] be a question of
devoir [dəvwaːr] owe
élever [elve] bring up
grimper [grɛ̃pe] climb
lutter [lyte] fight, struggle
mourir [muriːr] die
nourrir [nuriːr] feed
ordonner [ɔrdɔne] give orders
reconnaître [rəkɔnɛːtr] recognize, acknowledge
ruiner [rɥine] ruin
vivre [viːvr] live

d'**ordinaire** [dɔrdinɛːr] usually
en **soldat** [ɑ̃sɔlda] like a soldier, in the rôle of a soldier

A. (1) 1. Il s'agit de l'éducation d'Henri IV qui fut roi de France au seizième siècle. 2. Il fut élevé non (*not*) en prince, mais en soldat. 3. Son grand-père ne voulut pas qu'on l'élevât comme on élève d'ordinaire les enfants de sang royal. 4. Il ordonna qu'on habillât et qu'on nourrît son petit-fils comme les autres enfants de son pays montagneux de Navarre. 5. Il voulut aussi que le jeune prince vécût (**vivre,** § 211) comme ses jeunes compatriotes. 6. Il voulut qu'il courût, jouât, luttât avec eux comme s'il n'était pas de sang royal. 7. Et même il voulut qu'il fût habitué à grimper aux arbres et à courir sur les rochers pour se faire fort. 8. Il désira que son petit-fils n'eût peur de rien.

(2) 1. Henri IV devint roi de France en 1589 par la mort de son cousin Henri III. 2. Il fut le premier roi de la famille des Bourbons. 3. La ville de Paris ne voulut pas le reconnaître roi parce qu'il était protestant. 4. Voyant que la France entière ne voulait pas accepter un roi protestant, et qu'il s'agissait de ruiner son pays par la guerre civile, s'il con-

servait sa religion, il se fit catholique. 5. Henri IV fut un excellent roi jusqu'au moment où il mourut assassiné en 1610.

B. (1) *a. With what tense of the indicative is the imperfect subjunctive evidently to be grouped in formation? With what tense of the indicative do we group the present subjunctive in formation?*

b. Observe that the endings of all imperfect subjunctives are spelled alike: **-sse, -sses, -t, -ssions, -ssiez, -ssent;** *and that the stem vowel preceding the* **-t** *of the 3d pers. sing. is always spelled with a circumflex accent.*

c. Study the forms of **mourir** (§174) *and of* **vivre** (§ 211). *Are there any irregularities in groups* 2 *and* 4 (§ 159) *of* **mourir**? *Does the vowel sound represented by* **eu** [œ] *occur in those forms of* **mourir** *that have the stress on the stem or on the ending?*

d. Point out the phonetic resemblances in the conjugation of **appeler, mener, venir, mourir, vouloir, pouvoir.**

(2) *Study* **devoir** *and* **vouloir** (§§ 214, 225) *as in the preceding lessons. Group all the forms according to* § 159.

(3) *a. Note the various meanings of* **devoir** *and* **vouloir. Devoir*** *may be translated in several ways:*

Combien est-ce que je vous dois?	How much do I owe you?
Il me doit 3 fr. 50.	He owes me three francs fifty centimes.
Vous devez expliquer clairement cette phrase.	You are to explain this sentence clearly.

b. It is less emphatic than **il faut.**

Vous devez avoir froid.	You must be cold. (It is likely that . . .)
Il devait raconter cette histoire.	He was to tell that story.
Le facteur devait passer à 3 h. 10.	The postman was to go by at 3:10.
Il dut (a dû) changer de veston.	He had to change his coat.

* The chief difficulty with **devoir** is due to the fact that it is a fully conjugated verb in French, and that the corresponding English verbs (*ought, should, must*) have only a few forms. The result is that in English we have to make up for the missing forms by the use of auxiliaries. The same is true of **pouvoir** and, to a certain extent, of **vouloir.**

Le professeur devrait indiquer la leçon d'avance.	The teacher ought to (but does not) assign the lesson in advance.
Il aurait dû expliquer cette difficulté.	He should have (ought to have) explained this difficulty.
Elle a dû changer d'avis.	She must have (probably has) changed her mind.
Vous auriez dû vous méfier.	You ought to have been on your guard.
Le facteur a dû passer sans apporter de lettres.	The postman must have gone by without bringing any letters.

(4) *Meanings of* **vouloir**:

Je ne veux pas.	I will not.
L'oiseau veut entrer.	The bird wants to come in.
Voulez-vous manger ces miettes de pain?	Will you (Do you want to) eat these bread crumbs?
Le rouge-gorge n'a pas voulu rester plus longtemps.	The robin would not stay longer.
Je lui ai demandé de raconter son histoire, mais il n'a pas voulu.	I asked him to tell his story, but he wouldn't.
Je voudrais (aimerais) discuter la question avec eux.	I should like to discuss the question with them.
J'aurais voulu agir autrement.	I should have liked to act differently.
Il voulait que le prince se méfiât des femmes.	He wanted the prince to beware of women.

Note that English ' will,' ' should,' ' would,' *have a variety of meanings, which are therefore expressed in French in various ways, according to the particular case.*

C. *Traduisez:* (1) 1. You must know the date of the capture of the Bastille. 2. The Bastille must have been a prison. 3. The French national festival must have had an historical origin. 4. The taking of the Bastille was to be the beginning of the French revolution. 5. Henry IV was obliged (*past def.*) to become [a] Catholic in order (**pour**) to be king. 6. You should have given the letters to the postman. 7. You ought to know that he is to come at 8:35.

(2) 1. However, if you *will* not give him the letter, please (**veuillez**) mail it yourself. 2. We begged the robin to come in, but he wouldn't. 3. I should like the robin and his mate to come back (*pres. subj.*) every winter. 4. We should like to hear his merry songs again. 5. I have explained the matter (**affaire**) to him, but he will not (*two ways, two meanings*) change his mind. 6. We begged the teacher to explain the use (**emploi**) of these verbs, but he will not or cannot. 7. Say what you will (§ 94), he will not change religions (*sing.*). 8. Do what you will (§ 94).

(3) * *Beginning with* **Il fut élevé** *in* A, *write out the passage in the conversational past, making the necessary changes in the verb forms, e.g.,* **Il a été élevé,** *etc.*

(4) * *Write out the passage on the basis of the historical present.*

(5) *Racontez en français, oralement, l'Anecdote du rouge-gorge.*

D. Dictée: Leçon XXXVIII, A.

VOCABULARY REVIEW No. 6

(1) *À quels autres mots pensez-vous quand on dit:* la moitié, un franc, de la monnaie, avoir froid, croire, Noël, la Révolution française, catholique, le facteur, la méfiance, le nid, vivre, le prince, civil, le printemps?

(2) *Quel est le contraire de:* se fier à, vivre, joyeux, gentil, avancer, avoir chaud, faire chaud, se rappeler, s'en aller?

(3) *Remplacez le tiret par le mot convenable* (' Replace the dash by the proper word '): 1. J'ai quatre francs et je vous en donne deux; c'est la —— de ce que j'ai. 2. Louis XVI —— quand la Révolution a commencé; elle a commencé pendant son ——. 3. Le quatorze juillet est la —— nationale française. 4. Le 25 décembre est le jour de ——. 5. Le 1er janvier est le jour de ——. 6. Un homme qui est en prison n'est pas ——.

* Note. — In doing (3) and (4), shift the imperfect subjunctives to present or perfect subjunctives, consulting the alphabetical Reference List, § 226, in order to find the proper forms of the irregular verbs.

7. Le jour de l'an en France on envoie des —— et on fait des ——. 8. Il faut mettre cette lettre à la ——. 9. Ma montre ne marche pas; j'ai dû oublier de la ——. 10. Voulez-vous corriger les —— dans ce devoir? 11. Les enfants aiment à —— sur les arbres. 12. Les grands-pères aiment leurs ——. 13. Henri IV est —— en 1610. Il a été ——. 14. Son grand-père a voulu —— le prince comme les autres ——. 15. Le voisin se —— si les bêtes mangent son blé.

(4) *Traduisez:* pendant, pendant que. *Distinguish the latter from* **tandis que.** *Use the two in sentences.*

(5) *Employez dans des phrases:* jusqu'à; à cause de; penser à, penser de; il s'est agi de; tiens!; d'ailleurs; pourtant.

(6) *Traduisez:* ça ne va pas, habillé en soldat, environ cent personnes, à six heures précises, couramment, lorsque, jours d'école, la montre marche mieux, elle retarde d'une heure, être d'accord, d'autant plus facilement, avoir beau, à haute voix, neuf fois sur dix.

(7) *Racontez en français, oralement,* « L'Éducation et l'histoire de Henri IV, roi de France, » *en vous servant des expressions et des mots suivants:* s'agir, éducation, seizième siècle, élever, en prince, en soldat. Son grand-père, vouloir, élever, d'ordinaire, enfants de sang royal. Il ordonna, habiller, nourrir, comme, les enfants, pays montagneux. Il voulut, jeune prince, courir, jouer, lutter, grimper, les arbres. Henri IV, devenir roi en ——. La ville de Paris, ne vouloir pas, reconnaître, protestant. Il s'agissait, ruiner, pays, guerre civile, se faire catholique. Il, être, excellent roi, mourir, assassiner en ——.

(8) *Traduisez:* 1. You're joking, aren't you? 2. Tell him from me (*use* **part**) that I was joking. 3. That's right! That works! 4. It is a question of bringing him up like the son of a poor man. 5. However, he is rich. Furthermore, he will be king of France some day. 6. What page are we on? At what page did we stop yesterday? 7. He lost a third or a fourth of his money. 8. I think so. He says so. We think not (**que non**). 9. We have just finished this part of the book. 10. It is a question now of remembering what we have learned. 11. If we succeed in doing so (**le**), we shall know a good deal of French.

ANECDOTES

XL. La Théière du Matelot

(The sections indicated give the forms of the irregular verbs.)

A. Un matelot, à bord d'un vaisseau, ayant [1] eu la maladresse de laisser tomber par-dessus le bord une théière d'argent, alla [2] trouver le capitaine et lui dit [3]: « Peut-on [4] dire [3] d'une chose, qu'elle est [5] perdue [6], lorsqu'on sait [7] où elle est [5]? — Non, mon ami. — En ce cas, vous n'avez [1] rien à craindre [8] pour votre théière, car je sais [7] qu'elle est [5] au fond de la mer. »

[1] § 154. [2] § 160. [3] § 193. [4] § 221. [5] § 154. [6] § 210. [7] § 222. [8] § 190.

B. *Complete the following by conjugating the tense in full, repeating also the remainder of the expression along with the verb:*
1. Il alla trouver le capitaine. 2. Il lui dit. 3. Peut-il dire? 4. Il sait où elle est. 5. Elle est perdue. 6. Vous n'avez rien à craindre.

C. (*Oral.*) 1. De quelles personnes parle-t-on dans cette histoire? 2. Où étaient ces personnes? 3. Qu'avait fait le matelot? 4. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'une théière? 5. En quoi était cette théière? 6. À qui était-elle? 7. Où était-elle tombée? 8. Savait-on où elle était? 9. Était-elle alors vraiment perdue? 10. Mais quel était l'argument du matelot?

D. 1. The sailor was so clumsy as to let the teapot fall. 2. If you let a silver teapot fall into the sea, it is lost. 3. Go to the captain. 4. I went to the captain. 5. Tell him that the teapot is not lost. 6. The captain will say: " My good fellow, did you drop my silver teapot into the sea? " 7. When we are on board of a ship we do not let teapots fall into the sea. 8. Where is the teapot? 9. I do not know where it is. 10. No one finds teapots at the bottom of the sea.

XLI. L'Arabe et les Perles

A. Un Arabe, égaré dans le désert, n'avait[1] pas mangé[2] depuis deux jours, et se voyait[3] menacé[4] de mourir[5] de faim. En passant près d'un de ces puits où les caravanes viennent[6] abreuver leurs chameaux, il voit[3] sur le sable un petit sac de cuir. Il le ramasse et le tâte. « Allah soit[7] béni[8]! dit-il[9]; ce sont,[7] je crois,[10] des dattes ou des noisettes. » Plein de cette douce espérance, il se hâte d'ouvrir[11] le sac; mais, à la vue de ce qu'il contient[12]: « Hélas! s'écrie-t-il douloureusement, ce ne sont[7] que des perles! »

[1] § 154. [2] § 156. [3] § 224. [4] § 156. [5] § 174. [6] § 178. [7] § 154. [8] § 163. [9] § 193. [10] § 191. [11] § 176. [12] § 177.

B. *Complete the following, as in the preceding exercise:* 1. Il n'avait pas mangé. 2. Il se voyait menacé. 3. Ils viennent. 4. Il voit son sac. 5. Il le tâte. 6. Qu'il soit béni! 7. Je le crois. 8. Il se hâte d'ouvrir le sac. 9. Il s'écria.

Relate the story in the first person singular, thus: « Égaré dans le désert, je n'avais pas, » etc.

C. (*Oral.*) 1. Où demeurent les Arabes? 2. Où est l'Arabie? 3. Où s'était égaré l'Arabe? 4. Est-ce qu'il y a beaucoup de déserts dans ce pays? 5. Dans quel état se trouvait l'Arabe? 6. Par où passait-il? 7. Qu'est-ce qu'il a vu? 8. Qu'est-ce qu'il y avait dans le sac? 9. Était-il content de trouver les perles? 10. Est-ce que les perles ne sont pas des choses précieuses? 11. Qu'est-ce qu'il espérait trouver dans le sac? 12. Pourquoi préférait-il des noisettes à des perles? 13. Lesquelles préféreriez-vous maintenant?

D. 1. The Arab has lost his way. 2. If we had not eaten for two days, we should be hungry. 3. We saw ourselves threatened with starvation. 4. The caravans will come to water their camels at the well. 5. We shall water our camels. 6. If I saw pearls on the sand, I should pick them up. 7. He felt the dates in the bag. 8. If there had been hazelnuts in the leathern bag, he would have hastened to open it. 9. But the bag did not contain nuts, it contained only pearls. 10. At the sight of that he exclaimed: "I shall die of hunger."

XLII. Le Paysan et les Épis de Blé

A. Un paysan accompagné de son fils, le petit Auguste, alla[1] un jour visiter ses champs pour voir[2] dans quel état était[3] son blé. Ils arrivèrent à un champ où certains épis se tenaient[4] droits tandis que d'autres étaient[3] lourdement inclinés vers la terre. Auguste s'écria: « Quel dommage que ces épis soient[3] si courbés! Combien je préfère[5] ceux-là qui sont[3] vigoureux et droits. » Le père prit[6] deux des épis, les roula entre ses doigts pour faire[7] sortir[8] le grain, et répondit[9]: « Regarde un peu mon enfant; ces épis courbés sont[3] pleins du meilleur blé, car c'est[3] le poids qui fait[7] pencher leur tête, tandis que ceux qui la relèvent[10] si fièrement sont[3] vides et ne valent[11] rien. »

[1] § 160. [2] § 224. [3] § 154. [4] § 177. [5] § 158. [6] § 202. [7] § 195. [8] § 166. [9] § 210. [10] § 158. [11] § 223.

B. *Complete the following, as above:* 1. Il alla visiter ses champs. 2. Ils arrivèrent à un champ. 3. Ils se tenaient droits. 4. Il s'écria. 5. Quel dommage qu'ils soient si courbés! 6. Je préfère ceux-là. 7. Il en prit deux. 8. Il fait pencher leur tête. 9. Ils ne valent rien.

Give the present indicative in full of: 1. Alla. 2. Se tenaient. 3. Prit. 4. Fait. 5. Valent.

Relate the story, substituting the past indefinite for the past definite, thus: « Un paysan . . . est allé visiter, » etc.

C. (*Oral.*) 1. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un paysan? 2. Où ce paysan est-il allé? 3. Est-ce qu'il était seul? 4. Qui est allé avec lui? 5. Pourquoi sont-ils allés aux champs? 6. Comment se tenaient certains épis dans les champs qu'ils ont visités? 7. Tous les épis se tenaient-ils droits? 8. Comment les autres se tenaient-ils? 9. Quels épis préférait le petit Auguste? 10. Qu'est-ce qu'il s'est écrié? 11. Lesquels préférez-vous? 12. Pourquoi les préférez-vous? 13. Lesquels des épis étaient courbés? 14. Qu'est-ce qui leur faisait pen-

cher la tête? 15. Pourquoi les autres se tenaient-ils si droits? 16. Lesquels valent le plus? 17. Comment le père a-t-il démontré cela à son fils? 18. Les personnes fières valent-elles ordinairement grand'chose? 19. Préférez-vous les personnes modestes?

D. 1. I am going to see the fields. 2. If you were to go and visit the fields, in what condition would you find the wheat? 3. We reach the field where the wheat is standing upright. 4. Some of the ears of wheat are heavily weighted. 5. Why do you exclaim: "What a pity they are so bent down?" 6. You prefer those that are standing upright, do you? 7. Hold yourself upright. 8. Take two ears of wheat. 9. Rub the grain out. 10. The best wheat is not in the upright ears. 11. The full ears are bent, while the empty ears are upright. 12. Just look, my boy, the upright ears are empty. 13. Full heads are worth a great deal, but empty heads are worth nothing. 14. Do you not observe the same thing amongst men as among the ears of wheat?

Use either the past definite or the past indefinite for the narrative tenses of the following:

E. Little Augustus went one day to the fields. He went with his father who was going to see whether his wheat was ripe. They arrived at a wheat field. Augustus observed that certain ears of wheat were bent down towards the earth. He observed also that others held themselves upright. He said to his father: "Look at those ears of wheat. What a pity they are so bent down! I prefer those which hold themselves upright." His father wished to teach him a lesson. He took two of the ears of wheat and rolled them between his fingers. The one was empty and was worth nothing. The other was full of good wheat. Then he said: "Look, my boy, this ear which raised its head so proudly was almost empty. On the contrary, this other which was so bent down was full of the best grain. We observe the same thing amongst men. Those who are proud have an (the) empty head. They are worth nothing. On the contrary, those who are modest and humble are generally the best."

XLIII. Le Trésor du Laboureur

A. Un laboureur étant sur le point de mourir [1], et voulant [2] donner à ses enfants une dernière preuve de sa tendresse, les fit [3] venir [4] auprès de lui, et leur dit [5]: « Mes enfants, après moi vous aurez le champ que mon père a possédé [6], le champ qui m'a servi [7] à élever [8] et à nourrir ma famille. Cherchez bien dans ce champ, et vous trouverez un trésor. »

Les enfants, après la mort de leur père, se mirent [9] à retourner le champ en tous sens, bêchant, labourant la terre. Ils n'y trouvèrent ni or ni argent; mais la terre bien remuée, bien labourée, produisit [10] une moisson abondante. Le sage vieillard ne les avait pas trompés; il leur avait enseigné que le travail est un trésor.

[1] § 174. [2] § 225. [3] § 195. [4] § 178. [5] § 193. [6] § 158. [7] § 166. [8] § 158. [9] § 198. [10] § 185.

B. *Complete the following, as above:* 1. Il les fit venir auprès de lui. 2. Ils se mirent à retourner le champ. 3. Il produisit une moisson. 4. Il ne les avait pas trompés.

Give the future and the past definite in full of: 1. Mourir. 2. Voulant. 3. Fit. 4. Venir. 5. Dit. 6. Servir.

C. (*Oral.*) 1. De quelles personnes parle l'histoire? 2. Qu'est-ce (que c'est) qu'un laboureur? 3. Ce laboureur-ci était-il un jeune homme? 4. Dans quel état se trouvait-il? 5. Qu'est-ce qu'il allait laisser à ses enfants? 6. Avait-il acheté ce champ? 7. Était-ce un bon champ? 8. Quel conseil le laboureur a-t-il donné à ses enfants? 9. Ont-ils bien cherché? 10. Est-ce qu'ils y ont trouvé de l'or? 11. Leur père les avait-il trompés, alors? 12. Quel trésor ont-ils trouvé? 13. Quelle est la morale de l'histoire?

D. 1. The father gave his children a proof of his love. 2. He called his children into his presence. 3. The children will own the field after the father. 4. The children dug up and plowed the field. 5. Stir the land, and it will produce a harvest. 6. If you plow this field, you will find a treasure. 7. It will not be silver or gold, but it will be a good harvest.

8. Your father is not deceiving you, he is teaching you a good lesson.

E. A husbandman, who was at the point of death, wished to teach his children that labor is a treasure. Calling his children into his presence, he told them that they would have the field which his father had owned. It was a good field, and it had fed his father and his father's family. If they would seek in it, they would find a treasure there. After the old man's death, the children dug everywhere in the field, but they found no treasure. There was no gold or silver, but they stirred the land so well that they had an abundant harvest. They had not been deceived. Their father had taught them a good lesson.

XLIV. Louis XIV et Jean Bart

A. Louis XIV, traversant avec sa cour la galerie de Versailles, aperçoit[1] Jean Bart fumant sa pipe dans l'embrasure d'une fenêtre ouverte[2]; il le fait[3] appeler[4], et lui dit[5] d'un ton affectueux: « Jean Bart, je viens[6] de vous nommer chef d'escadre. — Vous avez bien fait[3], sire, répondit[7] le marin en continuant de fumer tranquillement sa pipe. » Cette brusque réponse ayant excité parmi les sots courtisans un grand éclat de rire: « Vous vous trompez, messieurs, leur dit[5] gravement le roi, cette réponse est celle d'un homme qui sent[8] ce qu'il vaut[9], et qui compte m'en donner bientôt de nouvelles preuves. Sans doute, Jean Bart ne parle pas comme vous; mais qui de vous peut[10] faire[3] ce que fait[3] Jean Bart? »

[1] § 213. [2] § 176. [3] § 195. [4] § 158. [5] § 193. [6] § 178. [7] § 210. [8] § 166. [9] § 223. [10] § 221.

B. *Complete the following, as above:* 1. Il aperçoit Jean Bart. 2. Il le fait appeler. 3. Je viens de le nommer. 4. Vous avez bien fait. 5. Vous vous trompez. 6. Il sent ce qu'il vaut. 7. Il ne parle pas comme les autres. 8. Je ne peux faire ce que fait Jean Bart. 9. Il continue de fumer tranquillement. 10. Il leur dit gravement. 11. Comptez-vous donner de nouvelles preuves?

Give the imperfect indicative and the imperfect subjunctive of: 1. Aperçoit. 2. Fait. 3. Dit. 4. Viens. 5. Sent. 6. Nomme. 7. Répondit. 8. Vaut. 9. Appelle. 10. Permit. 11. Montre. 12. Continuant.

C. (*Oral.*) 1. Qui était Louis XIV? 2. Où est Versailles? 3. Qu'est-ce que c'était autrefois? 4. Quel est l'autre personnage de notre histoire? 5. Quelle était sa profession? 6. Était-il, ce jour-là, à bord de son vaisseau? 7. Qu'est-ce qu'il faisait qui montrait qu'il n'était pas courtisan? 8. De quelle façon le roi a-t-il montré qu'il n'en était pas mécontent? 9. Quelle sorte de réponse Jean Bart a-t-il faite au roi? 10. Quelle impression a-t-elle faite sur les courtisans? 11. Quelle en était l'opinion du roi? 12. Pourquoi était-il permis à Jean Bart, et non pas aux courtisans, de faire une brusque réponse?

D. 1. The king sends for Jean Bart. 2. I shall call him. 3. We have just called Jean Bart. 4. The king had just appointed him rear admiral. 5. A great outburst of laughter was excited by Jean Bart's blunt answer. 6. The king did not appoint the silly courtiers rear admirals. 7. We are mistaken; it is not a blunt answer. 8. Do not make a mistake. 9. The silly courtiers did not make blunt answers, because they did not feel their own worth. 10. Jean Bart hopes soon to give the king new proofs of his worth. 11. We cannot do what Jean Bart did.

E. Jean Bart was coolly smoking his pipe in the embrasure of a window in the palace (**château**) of Versailles, as the king, accompanied by his courtiers, was passing through the great gallery. The king sent for the brave sailor, and told him that he had just been appointed rear admiral. The sailor's blunt reply: "You have done well, sire," caused a burst of laughter among those who were with the king. But Louis knew that it was the reply of a man who would soon give proofs of his worth. Jean Bart did not talk like a courtier, but he did what courtiers could not do. At that time Jean Bart was already forty-one years old and it was late for him (**pour qu'il**) to change the habits of his youth.

XLV. La Fourmi et le Brin d'Herbe

A. J'ai vu [1] une petite fourmi qui allait [2] çà et là cherchant fortune. Elle a rencontré sur son chemin un brin d'herbe qu'elle voudrait [3] bien emporter; mais comment faire [4]? Il est si gros, et elle est si faible. Alors elle est montée sur un caillou, du haut duquel elle regarde la campagne, comme du haut d'une tour. Elle regarde, elle regarde; enfin elle a aperçu [5] deux de ses compagnes qui passent par là, et elle court [6] à elles. Elle se frotte le nez contre leur nez pour leur dire [7]: « Venez [8] vite avec moi; il y a par là quelque chose de bon! » Les trois fourmis se précipitent vers le brin d'herbe et le saisissent. Ce que l'une ne pouvait [9] faire [4], les trois le font [4] aisément, et elles emportent en triomphe le brin devenu [10] léger pour elles.

[1] § 224. [2] § 160. [3] § 225. [4] § 195. [5] § 213. [6] § 164. [7] § 193. [8] § 178. [9] § 221. [10] § 178.

B. *Complete the following, as above:* 1. Elle allait çà et là. 2. Elle voudrait bien l'emporter. 3. Elle est montée. 4. Elle court à elles. 5. Elle se frotte le nez. 6. Venez. 7. Elles se précipitent. 8. Elles le saisissent. 9. Elle ne pouvait pas le faire. 10. Elles le font aisément.

Give in full the past definite of: 1. Vu. 2. Rencontré. 3. Regardé. 4. Aperçu. 5. Court. 6. Se précipitent. 7. Font.

Beginning at the second sentence, relate the story in the past definite, thus: « Elle rencontra, » etc.

C. (*Oral.*) 1. De quel insecte parle-t-on ici? 2. Qu'est-ce qu'elle faisait? 3. Qu'est-ce qu'elle a rencontré sur son chemin? 4. Le brin d'herbe était-il gros ou petit? 5. Et la fourmi était-elle forte ou faible? 6. Qu'est-ce que la fourmi aurait voulu faire? 7. Est-ce qu'elle pouvait le faire toute seule? 8. Où est-elle montée? 9. Qu'est-ce qu'elle a regardé du haut du caillou? 10. Pour la fourmi le caillou était comme une tour, n'est-ce pas? 11. Qu'est-ce qu'elle aperçoit enfin? 12. Que faisaient les deux compagnes de la fourmi? 13. Et la fourmi qu'est-ce qu'elle a fait? 14. Est-ce qu'elle leur a parlé? 15. Comment leur a-t-elle parlé? 16. Qu'est-ce qu'elle

leur a dit? 17. Quelle est la première chose qu'ont faite les trois fourmis? 18. Et ensuite qu'ont-elles fait? 19. Une fourmi pouvait-elle emporter le brin d'herbe? 20. Les trois fourmis ensemble pouvaient-elles le faire aisément? 21. Pourquoi le brin d'herbe est-il devenu léger?

D. A little ant was going hither and thither one day. She found a blade of grass on the road. "This blade of grass is very big," thought the ant. "I am too weak to carry it off alone. I know what I shall do. I shall climb upon a pebble. From the top of the pebble I shall look around. The pebble will be for me like a tall tower." She did so. She looked about her a long time. At last she saw two of her companions. They were passing along (par) the same road. She called them, and they ran to her. She said to them: "Come here, for I have found something good." She said this by rubbing her nose against theirs. Ants, as you know, cannot speak like men. After that the three ants rushed towards the blade of grass. They seized it quickly. It had been very heavy for one ant. But the three together carried it off easily.

XLVI. Le Bon Samaritain

A. Un homme descendit [1] de Jérusalem à Jéricho, et tomba parmi des brigands, qui le dépouillèrent. Après l'avoir blessé de plusieurs coups, ils s'en allèrent [2], le laissant à demi mort.[3] Un prêtre, qui par hasard descendait [1] par ce chemin-là, l'ayant vu [4], passa outre. Un lévite, venant [5] aussi dans le même endroit, et le voyant [4], passa outre. Mais un Samaritain, qui voyageait [6], vint [5] vers cet homme, et le voyant [4], fut touché de compassion. S'approchant de lui, il banda ses plaies, et il y versa de l'huile et du vin; puis il le mit [7] sur sa monture, le mena [8] à une auberge, et prit [9] soin de lui. Le lendemain, en partant [10], il tira de sa poche deux deniers d'argent, et les donnant à l'aubergiste, lui dit [11]: « Aie soin de lui, et tout ce que tu dépenseras de plus je te le rendrai [1] à mon retour. »

[1] § 210. [2] § 160. [3] § 174. [4] § 224. [5] § 178. [6] § 156. [7] § 198. [8] § 158. [9] § 202. [10] § 166. [11] § 193.

B. *Complete the following, as above:* 1. Il descendit. 2. Ils le dépouillèrent. 3. Ils s'en allèrent. 4. Il descendit par ce chemin. 5. Il passa outre. 6. Il vint vers cet homme. 7. Il y versa de l'huile. 8. Il le mit sur sa monture. 9. Il prit soin de lui.

Give the present indicative and present subjunctive of: 1. S'en allèrent. 2. Mort. 3. Venant. 4. Voyant. 5. Mit.

C. (*Oral.*) 1. D'où a-t-on tiré cette histoire? 2. Comment s'appelle l'histoire? 3. Où sont Jérusalem et Jéricho? 4. Est-ce que la terre sainte est un grand ou un petit pays? 5. Qu'ont fait les brigands au voyageur? 6. En quel état se trouvait-il après leur départ? 7. Quelles personnes sont venues ensuite? 8. Qu'est-ce qu'elles ont fait? 9. Qui est venu après le prêtre et le lévite? 10. Est-ce que les Samaritains étaient bien aimés des Juifs? 11. Est-ce que cela a empêché le Samaritain de faire le bien? 12. Qu'est-ce qu'il a fait au Juif? 13. Après l'avoir soigné qu'a-t-il fait? 14. Qu'a-t-il donné à l'aubergiste? 15. En quittant l'auberge, qu'a-t-il dit?

D. 1. If we fall among thieves, they will strip us. 2. After having wounded us they will depart. 3. If you should see a poor traveler half dead, would you pass by on the other side? 4. If the priest had been touched with compassion, he would have bound up the wounds. 5. Let us pour oil and wine into his wounds. 6. Let us put the poor man on our own beast. 7. Let us take him to the inn. 8. Let us take care of him there. 9. The next day we shall give money to the innkeeper. 10. On our return we shall give him back whatever he shall have spent for our friend.

E. A man, who was going down from Jerusalem to Jericho, fell among thieves. They stripped him and wounded him, and left him half dead. Then a priest and a Levite came by chance to the same place, and they saw him and passed by on the other side. But a Samaritan, who was going down by that road, saw him, and was touched with compassion. Then, after having bound up his wounds, he put him on his beast and took him to an inn. On the morrow he gave money to

the innkeeper, and said that on his return he would give the innkeeper whatever he should spend if he took care of the poor man.

XLVII. M. Laffitte et l'Épingle

A. Lorsque M. Laffitte, le fameux banquier, vint[1] à Paris, en 1788, à l'âge de 21 ans, toute son ambition se bornait à obtenir[2] une petite place dans une maison de banque. Il se présenta chez un riche banquier. « Impossible de vous admettre[3] chez moi, du moins pour le moment, lui dit[4] le banquier: mes bureaux sont au complet. » Le jeune homme salue et se retire. En traversant la cour, il aperçoit[5] à terre une épingle, et la ramasse. Debout devant la fenêtre de son cabinet le riche banquier avait suivi[6] des yeux la retraite du jeune homme. Il lui vit[7] ramasser l'épingle et ce trait lui fit[8] plaisir. Le soir même le jeune homme reçut[5] un billet du banquier, qui lui disait[4]: « Vous avez une place dans mes bureaux; vous pouvez[9] venir[1] l'occuper dès demain. » Le jeune homme devint[1] bientôt caissier, puis associé, puis maître, de la première maison de banque de Paris, et enfin homme d'État très influent sous Louis-Philippe.

[1] § 178. [2] § 177. [3] § 198. [4] § 193. [5] § 213. [6] § 206. [7] § 224. [8] § 195. [9] § 221.

B. *Complete the following, as above:* 1. Il vint à Paris. 2. Elle se bornait à cela. 3. Il se présenta chez le banquier. 4. Il se retire. 5. Il aperçoit à terre une épingle. 6. Il l'avait suivi des yeux. 7. Il vit ramasser l'épingle. 8. Il reçut un billet. 9. Il lui disait. 10. Vous pouvez venir. 11. Il devint maître.

Give in full the future and conditional of: 1. Tenir. 2. Admettre. 3. Aperçoit. 4. Suivi. 5. Vit.

C. (*Oral.*) 1. Quel âge avait M. Laffitte à son arrivée à Paris? 2. Qu'est-ce qu'il cherchait? 3. Réussit-il d'abord à trouver une place? 4. Où se présenta-t-il? 5. Que lui a-t-on dit? 6. En se retirant où va-t-il? 7. Qu'est-ce qu'il trouve? 8. Qui l'a vu? 9. En était-il content? 10. De quelle façon

a-t-il montré son contentement? 11. Qu'est devenu le jeune homme par la suite? 12. Quelle est la morale de l'histoire?

D. 1. If your ambition is only to get a humble position, you will get it. 2. Present yourself at the office of the rich banker. 3. He will admit you into his employ. 4. His offices are not full. 5. Do you see that pin on the ground? 6. Pick it up. 7. There is the rich banker standing at his office window. 8. The banker is watching the young man as he retires. 9. If we see him pick up a pin, it (**cela**) will please us. 10. Did you receive a note from the banker? 11. You shall have a position in his banking-house. 12. You will soon become his partner, will you not? 13. Those who pick up pins may become statesmen.

E. When M. Laffitte was twenty-one years of age he came to Paris. He wished to get a humble position with a rich banker. But when he presented himself, the rich banker told him that his offices were full, and that he could not admit him. He withdrew. The rich banker watched him from his office window, and saw him pick up a pin which he noticed on the ground as he was crossing the yard. This action pleased the banker. That very evening he sent a note to the young man, which said that he could have a position in his offices the very next day. The young man became head of a great banking-house, and at last an influential statesman.

XLVIII. Le Sifflet de Benjamin Franklin

A. Benjamin Franklin raconte l'anecdote suivante [1]: « Quand j'étais un enfant de cinq ou six ans, mes amis, un jour de fête, remplirent ma petite poche de sous. Je partis [2] tout de suite pour une boutique où l'on vendait [3] des jouets. Chemin faisant [4], je vis [5] dans les mains d'un autre petit garçon un sifflet, dont le son me charma. Je lui donnai en échange tout mon argent. Revenu [6] chez moi, fort content de mon achat, sifflant par toute la maison, je fatiguai les oreilles de toute la famille.

[1] § 206. [3] § 210. [5] § 224.
[2] § 166. [4] § 195. [6] § 178.

Mes frères et mes sœurs apprenant[1] que j'**avais tout donné** pour un mauvais instrument, me dirent[2] que je l'avais payé[3] dix fois plus cher qu'il ne valait[4]. Alors ils énumérèrent[5] toutes les jolies choses que j'aurais pu[6] acheter[5] avec mon argent si j'avais été plus prudent. Ils me tournèrent tellement en ridicule que j'en pleurai. Cependant, cet accident fut de quelque utilité pour moi. Lorsque plus tard j'étais tenté d'acheter[5] quelque chose qui ne m'était pas nécessaire, je disais[2] en moi-même: *Ne donnons pas trop pour le sifflet*, et j'épargnais mon argent. »

[1] § 202. [3] § 157. [5] § 158.
[2] § 193. [4] § 223. [6] § 221.

B. *Complete the following, as above:* 1. Quand j'étais un enfant. 2. Ils remplirent ma poche. 3. Je partis tout de suite. 4. Je vis un sifflet. 5. Je fatiguai tous mes amis. 6. Je remplis mes poches, tu remplis tes poches, etc. 7. Ils me dirent, ils te dirent, etc. 8. Je disais en moi-même, **tu** disais en toi-même, etc.

C. (*Oral.*) 1. Qui était Benjamin Franklin? 2. À quelle époque vivait-il? 3. Quel âge avait-il à l'époque de l'anecdote? 4. Qu'est-ce qu'il avait dans sa poche? 5. Qui le lui avait donné? 6. Pour quel endroit est-il parti ensuite? 7. Y est-il jamais arrivé? 8. Quel était l'obstacle? 9. Qu'est-ce qu'il a fait de son argent? 10. À son retour chez lui, qu'est-ce qu'il a fait? 11. A-t-il charmé ses frères et ses sœurs? 12. Est-ce qu'il avait payé assez cher son sifflet? 13. Est-ce que la famille était contente de son achat? 14. De quelle façon la famille a-t-elle fait voir son mécontentement? 15. Le pauvre Franklin était-il content à la fin? 16. Quelle leçon Franklin a-t-il reçue par cet accident?

D. 1. You have paid twice as much for that apple as it is worth. 2. If you pay ten cents for that pencil, that will be three times as much as it is worth. 3. Never pay more for things than they are worth. 4. We could have bought many pretty things with our money, if we had been prudent. 5. If our friend had been less prudent, he could not have bought so many pretty things. 6. That accident will be of some use to

our friends. 7. When we are (*fut.*) tempted to buy something which is not necessary for us, we shall say to ourselves: "We are not going to give too much for the whistle."

E. When Benjamin Franklin was five years old, his brother, on a holiday, filled his pockets with coppers. Starting off at once for a shop where toys were sold, he met on the way another little boy who had a whistle. The sound of the instrument charmed him, and he gave all his money to have it. He was much pleased with his purchase, but he whistled so much all over the house that he tired the whole family. His brothers and sisters asked him where he had bought his whistle and how much he had paid for it. He told them he had given all his money to the little boy. Then they told him he had paid too much for it. They said too that if he had been more prudent, he could have bought ten times as many pretty things, and he cried on account of it. But the affair was of some use to him later on. Whenever he was tempted to buy things which he did not need, he would always say to himself: "I will not give too much for the whistle."

XLIX. Henri IV et le Paysan

A. Henri IV, dans une chasse, s'étant écarté, suivant [1] sa coutume, de ses gardes et de sa cour, rencontra un paysan assis [2] sous un arbre. « Que fais-tu [3] là? lui dit [4] le prince. — J'étais venu [5] ici dès le point du jour, pour voir [6] passer le roi, répondit [7] le paysan; sans ce désir, je serais à labourer mon champ, qui n'est pas fort éloigné. — Si tu veux [8] monter sur la croupe de mon cheval, lui répliqua Henri, je te conduirai [9] où est le roi, et tu le verras [6] à ton aise. »

Le paysan, enchanté, profite de la rencontre, monte à côté du roi, et demande, chemin faisant [3], comment il pourra [10] reconnaître [11] le roi. « Tu n'auras qu'à regarder celui qui sera couvert [12] pendant que tous les autres auront la tête nue. »

Enfin le moment arrive où le roi rejoint [13] une partie de sa cour et se trouve parmi ses courtisans; tous se découvrent [12],

[1] § 206. [2] § 215. [3] § 195. [4] § 193. [5] § 178. [6] § 224. [7] § 210. [8] § 225. [9] § 185. [10] § 221. [11] § 188. [12] § 176. [13] § 190.

excepté lui. Alors il demande au paysan: « Eh bien, quel est le roi? — Ma foi, monsieur, lui répondit-il[1], c'est vous ou moi, car il n'y a que nous deux qui ayons le chapeau sur la tête. »

[1] § 210.

B. *Complete the following, as above:* 1. J'étais venu. 2. Tu veux voir le roi. 3. Tu le verras à ton aise. 4. Il pourra reconnaître le roi. 5. Il sera couvert. 6. Il rejoint les courtisans. 7. Ils se découvrent. 8. Il n'y a que nous qui ayons.

C. (*Oral.*) 1. Qui était Henri IV? 2. À quelle époque vivait-il? 3. Quelle était sa coutume quand il était à la chasse? 4. Qui a-t-il rencontré un jour? 5. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un paysan? 6. Que faisait le paysan? 7. Depuis combien de temps y était-il? 8. Pourquoi y était-il venu? 9. S'il n'était pas venu où aurait-il été? 10. Qu'est-ce que le roi a proposé au paysan? 11. Le paysan a-t-il accepté? 12. Qu'est-ce que le paysan a demandé au roi en chemin? 13. Quel était le signe par lequel on reconnaîtrait le roi? 14. Où le roi et le paysan arrivent-ils bientôt? 15. Qu'est-ce que les courtisans ont fait à leur approche? 16. Combien de personnes restaient couvertes? 17. Et combien de rois y avait-il dans la compagnie?

D. 1. We have wandered from the court. 2. If the king had not wandered from the court, he would not have met the peasant. 3. We came here at the very peep of day. 4. I have not seen the king go by. 5. The peasants are busy plowing the field. 6. If you get up beside me, you will see the king. 7. As they went along, the peasant said to the king: "Take me where the king is." 8. Everybody had his hat on, and we could not recognize the king. 9. If the courtiers had taken off their hats, we could have recognized the king.

E. One day Henry IV had wandered from his courtiers. Meeting a peasant who was sitting under a tree, he asked the latter what he was doing there. The peasant replied that he had been there since daybreak, and that he wished to see

the king, and that if he had not come, he would be busy plowing his field. The king said to him: "Get up behind me, and I shall take you where you can see the king." The peasant was delighted, and got up beside the king. As they went along, he asked how he should recognize the king, and the king told him to look at the one who should have his hat on, while the others should be bareheaded. When they arrived where the courtiers were, the latter took off their hats. Then the king asked the peasant which was the king. He replied: "We two have our hats on, the others are bareheaded: it is you or I."

L. Thomas et les Cerises

A. Un paysan traversait la campagne avec son fils Thomas. « Regarde! lui dit-il [1] en chemin, voilà par terre un fer à cheval perdu [2], ramasse-le! »

« Bah! répondit [2] Thomas, il ne vaut [3] pas la peine de se baisser pour si peu de chose! » Le père ne dit [1] rien, ramassa le fer et le mit [4] dans sa poche. Arrivé au village voisin, il le vendit [2] pour quelques centimes au maréchal ferrant, et acheta [5] des cerises avec cet argent.

Cela fait [6], ils se remirent [4] en route. Le soleil était brûlant. Thomas mourait [7] de soif, et avait de la peine à poursuivre [8] son chemin. Le père, qui marchait le premier, laissa, comme par hasard, tomber une cerise. Thomas la ramassa avec empressement, et la mangea [9]. Quelques pas plus loin, une seconde cerise s'échappa des mains du père, et Thomas la saisit avec le même empressement. Le père fit [6] de même avec toutes les cerises. Lorsque l'enfant eut porté à la bouche la dernière cerise, le père se retourna et lui dit [1]: « Vois [10], mon ami, tu n'as pas voulu [11] te baisser une fois pour ramasser le fer à cheval, et tu as été obligé [12] de te baisser plus de vingt fois pour ramasser les cerises. »

[1] § 193. [2] § 210. [3] § 223. [4] § 198. [5] § 158. [6] § 195. [7] § 174. [8] § 206. [9] § 156. [10] § 224. [11] § 225. [12] § 156.

B. *Complete the following, as above:* 1. Il ne dit rien. 2. Il

vendit le fer. 3. Il mourait de soif. 4. Il mangea une cerise. 5. Il la saisit. 6. Il fit de même. 7. Ils se remirent en route. 8. Il s'échappa de ses mains. 9. Il se retourna. 10. Tu t'es baissé.

C. (*Oral.*) 1. De quelles personnes parle-t-on dans cette histoire? 2. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un paysan? 3. Était-il seul? 4. Qu'est-ce qu'ils ont vu en chemin? 5. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un fer à cheval? 6. Qu'est-ce que le père a dit au fils? 7. Qu'est-ce que le fils a répondu? 8. Lequel des deux était le plus prudent? 9. Par quelle action a-t-il montré sa prudence? 10. À qui a-t-on vendu le fer à cheval? 11. Pourquoi l'a-t-on vendu à un maréchal ferrant? 12. Qu'est-ce qu'on a acheté avec l'argent? 13. Quel temps faisait-il? 14. Quel était l'effet de la chaleur sur le petit Thomas? 15. Est-ce que le père n'avait rien pour la soif? 16. Est-ce que les cerises sont bonnes pour la soif? 17. Qu'est-ce que le père a fait des cerises? 18. Et qu'est-ce que son fils en a fait? 19. Combien en a-t-il mangées? 20. Pourquoi aurait-il mieux fait de se baisser pour le fer à cheval?

D. 1. It was not worth the trouble. 2. It will not be worth the trouble. 3. If it is worth the trouble, we shall pick up the horseshoe. 4. Put the horseshoe into your pocket and buy cherries. 5. We shall set out again on our journey. 6. If the sun is hot, they will not set out again. 7. I am very thirsty (dying with thirst); give me some cherries. 8. We have difficulty in picking up the cherries. 9. If you are dying with thirst, I shall drop a cherry. 10. The cherries are on the ground; pick them up. 11. If you walk ahead, will you pick up the cherries? 12. A few steps farther on, I stooped to pick up the horseshoe. 13. Why did you seize the horseshoe so eagerly? 14. We did not seize it eagerly. 15. If you had been willing to turn around, we should have given you the cherries. 16. Stoop, if you wish to pick them up.

E. As a peasant and his son were crossing the country, they saw a horseshoe on the ground. The father told his son to pick it up and put it into his pocket. The son replied that it was not worth while to stoop for a horseshoe. Then the

father stooped and picked it up. They sold it to the blacksmith of the neighboring village, and bought some cherries, which the father put into his pocket. They pursued their way, the father walking ahead. The sun was hot and Thomas was very thirsty, and, as if by chance, a cherry fell from his father's pocket. The son seizing it, ate it, and also a second one, which slipped from his father's pocket. Soon the last cherry was carried to his mouth, and his father, turning round, told him that if he had been willing to stoop once for the horseshoe, he would not have been obliged to stoop twenty times for the cherries.

LI. Frédéric le Grand et son Page

A. Un jour Frédéric le Grand, roi de Prusse, ayant sonné sans que personne répondît [1] à cet appel, ouvrit [2] la porte de son antichambre et trouva son page endormi [3] sur une chaise. Au moment où il allait [4] le réveiller, il aperçut [5] un papier écrit [6] sortant [7] de la poche du page. La curiosité du roi fut excitée, il prit [8] le papier et le lut [9]. C'était une lettre de la mère du jeune homme, dans laquelle elle remerciait son fils de ce qu'il lui envoyait [10] une partie de ses gages pour la soulager [11] dans sa misère. Le roi, ayant lu [9] la lettre, prit [8] un rouleau de ducats et le glissa avec la lettre dans la poche du page. Un instant après il sonna si fort que le page se réveilla et accourut [12] auprès de lui. « Vous avez dormi [3] » lui dit [13] le roi. Le jeune homme, ayant honte, tâcha de s'excuser. Dans son embarras il mit [14] la main dans sa poche, et y trouva le rouleau de ducats. Il le prit [8], pâlit, trembla, et ne put [15] articuler un seul mot. « Qu'avez-vous? dit [13] le roi. — Hélas! sire, dit [13] le page, quelqu'un veut [16] me perdre [1]; je ne sais [17] pas d'où m'est venu [18] cet or. — La fortune ne vient-elle [18] pas souvent en dormant [3]? reprit [8] Frédéric. Envoie [10] cette somme à ta mère, en lui faisant [19] mes compliments et assure-la bien que j'aurai soin d'elle et de toi. »

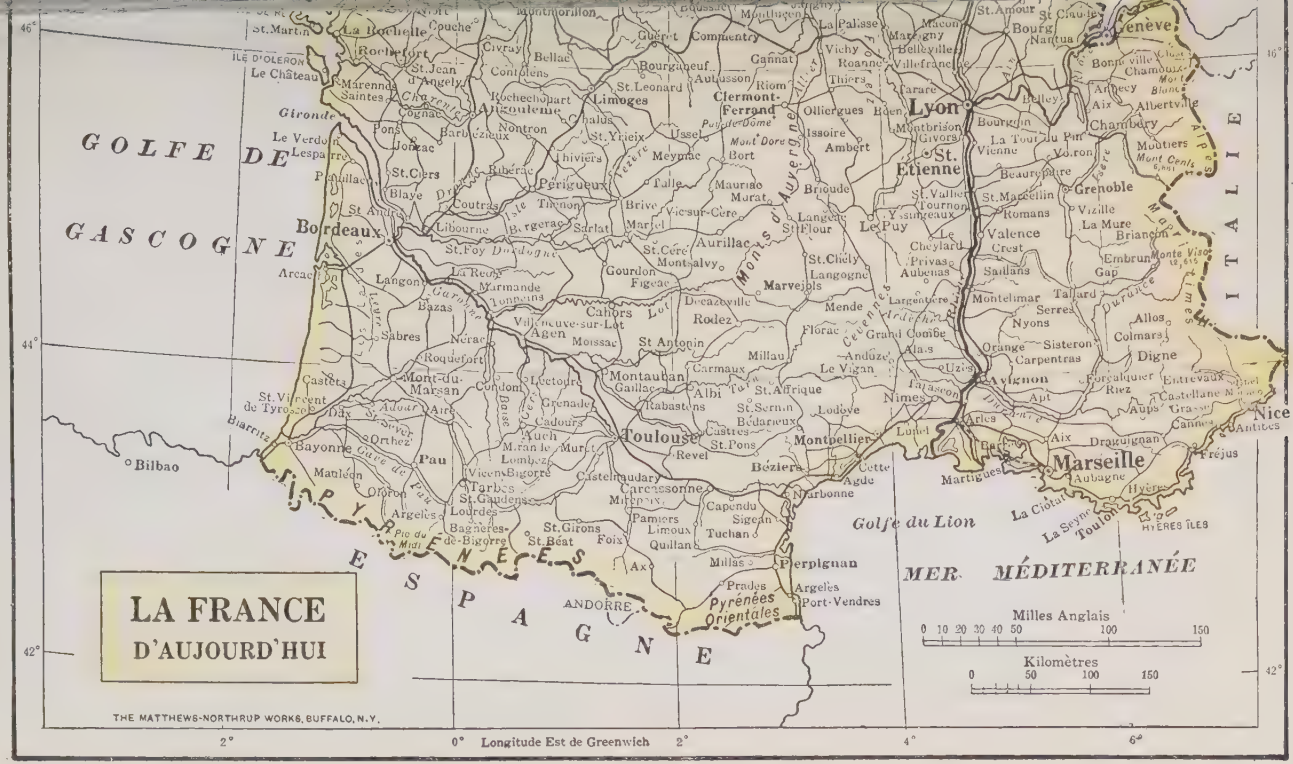
[1] § 210. [2] § 176. [3] § 166. [4] § 160. [5] § 213. [6] § 194. [7] § 166. [8] § 202. [9] § 197. [10] § 157. [11] § 156. [12] § 164. [13] § 193. [14] § 198. [15] § 221. [16] § 225. [17] § 222. [18] § 178. [19] § 195.

B. *Complete the following, as above:* 1. Sans qu'il répondît. 2. Il ouvrit la porte. 3. Il lut le billet. 4. Il allait le réveiller. 5. Il aperçut un papier. 6. Il remerciait le roi. 7. Il envoyait l'argent. 8. Il prit le rouleau.

C. (*Oral.*) 1. Quel est le sujet de cette anecdote? 2. À quelle époque vivait Frédéric le Grand? 3. Où est la Prusse? 4. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un page? 5. Où était le page dont parle l'histoire? 6. Qu'est-ce qu'il y faisait? 7. Qu'est-ce que les pages devraient faire dans les antichambres des rois? 8. Est-ce que le roi s'est mis en colère contre le page? 9. Qu'est-ce qu'il a fait? 10. En lisant la lettre qu'est-ce que le roi a découvert? 11. Est-ce que la mère du page était riche? 12. Qu'est-ce que le page faisait pour elle? 13. Le roi en était-il content? 14. De quelle façon a-t-il montré son contentement? 15. Comment le jeune homme a-t-il découvert ce que le roi avait fait? 16. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un ducat? 17. Que pensait-il en sentant les ducats dans sa poche? 18. De quelle façon le roi a-t-il calmé le jeune homme? 19. Est-ce que le proverbe est toujours vrai: « La fortune nous vient en dormant? »

D. One day Frederick the Great rang, and nobody answered him. Opening the door of the antechamber, he finds his page asleep. A letter, which was sticking out of the page's pocket, aroused the king's curiosity. The young man used to send his mother a part of his wages, and in this letter she was thanking him for it. The king read the letter, and, taking a roll of ducats, slipped it, with the letter, into the young man's pocket. Then ringing very loud, he waked the page, who hastened into his presence. He asked the young man if he had been asleep. The young man was ashamed, and tried to excuse himself. Putting his hand into his pocket he finds the ducats. He trembles, and cannot utter a word. The king asked him what was the matter with him, and he replied that somebody wished to ruin him, for he did not know where the ducats came from. The king replies that good luck comes to us often while we sleep. He tells the page that he will take care of his mother.

Londres
MER DU NORD
PAYS-BAS
ANGLETERRE
Tamise
Pas de Calais
Anvers
Bruxelles
Cologne
Aix-la-Chapelle
Rhin
ALLEMAGNE
Dunkerque
Calais
Ostende
Bruges
Gand
Ypres
Douvres
Salisbury
Southampton
Exeter
Plymouth
Dartmouth
Portsmouth
WIGHT
BELGIQUE
Louvain
Boulogne
Lille
FLANDRE
Mons
Namur
Liège
Malmédy
Meuse
Moresnet
Montreuil
Hesdin
Lens
Arras
Douai
Valenciennes
Maubeuge
Dinant
Rochefort
Coblenz
Moselle
LA MANCHE
Somme
Cambrai
Le Tréport
Abbeville
Bapaume
Le Cateau
Dieppe
Frankt
Albert
Péronne
Hirson
Rocroi
Arlon
Virton
Neufchâteau
Arlon
Aumale
Picquigny
Amiens
PICARDIE
St Quentin
Marle
Mézières
Sedan
LUXEMBOURG
Trèves
Luxembourg
Saarholzbach
SARRE BASSIN
Longwy
Montmédy
Stenay
Buzancy
Grandpré
Vouziers
Monthois
Argonne
Verdun
Toul
Metz
Sarrebourg
Pont à Mousson
Nancy
Strasbourg
Colmar
Belfort
Mulhouse
Altkirch
Epinal
Remiremont
Gérardmer
Raon
Senones
Charmes
St Dié
Mirecourt
Neufchâteau
Ancelot
Chaumont
Langres
Plombières
Luxeuil
Vesoul
Montbéliard
Pontarlier
Saint-Hippolyte
Besançon
Dijon
Gray
Semur
Auxerre
Tonnerre
Avallon
Clamecy
Cosne
Briare
Gien
Sancerre
Vierzon-Ville
Bourges
Châteauroux
Issoudun
Nevers
Arnay le Duc
Beaune
Nolay
Autun
Chagny
Pouilly
Saulieu
Varzy
La Charité
Château Chinon
Montbard
Champlitte
Jussey
Châtillon sur Seine
Bar sur Aube
Troyes
Bouilly
Bar sur Seine
Romilly
Nogent sur Seine
Provins
Melun
Montereau
Fontainebleau
Milly
Etampes
Nemours
Pithiviers
Artenay
Montargis
Sens
Joigny
St Florentin
Tournan
Esternay
Sézanne
Fère Champenoise
Vitry le François
Wassy
Joinville
Doulevant
Bar le Duc
Void
St Dizier
Gondrecourt
Toul
Thiaucourt
Ste Menehould
Forêt
Verdun
Grandpré
Buzancy
Stenay
Longwy
Montmédy
Arlon
Virton


LA FRANCE
D'AUJOURD'HUI
GOLFE DE GASCOGNE
ESPAGNE
ITALIE
MER MÉDITERRANÉE
Golfe du Lion
PYRÉNÉES
Pyrénées Orientales
ANDORRE
Bordeaux
Lyon
St. Etienne
Marseille
Toulouse
Nice
Genève
Grenoble
Avignon
Montpellier
Béziers
Perpignan
Pau
Bayonne
Bilbao
Limoges
Clermont-Ferrand
Angoulême
Rochefort
La Rochelle
Le Puy
Valence
Nîmes
Toulon
Milles Anglais
0 10 20 30 40 50 100 150
Kilomètres
0 50 100 150
THE MATTHEWS-NORTHRUP WORKS, BUFFALO, N.Y.
Longitude Est de Greenwich
2° 0° 2° 4° 6°
46° 44° 42°

PART II

THE VERB

REGULAR VERBS

153. Regular Conjugations. Regular verbs are conveniently divided into three classes or conjugations, according as the present infinitive ends in **-er, -ir, -re,** and are inflected in their simple tenses as follows:

I	II	III
	Infinitive Mood	
PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT
donn **er,** *to give*	fin **ir,** *to finish*	romp **re,** *to break*
	Participles	
PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT
donn **ant,** *giving*	fin **iss ant,** *finishing*	romp **ant,** *breaking*
PAST	PAST	PAST
donn **é,** *given*	fin **i,** *finished*	romp **u,** *broken*
	Indicative Mood	
PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT
I give, am giving, etc.	*I finish, am finishing, etc.*	*I break, am breaking, etc.*
je donn **e**	je fin **i s**	je romp **s**
tu donn **es**	tu fin **i s**	tu romp **s**
il donn **e**	il fin **i t**	il romp **t**
nous donn **ons**	nous fin **iss ons**	nous romp **ons**
vous donn **ez**	vous fin **iss ez**	vous romp **ez**
ils donn **ent**	ils fin **iss ent**	ils romp **ent**

Imperfect	Imperfect	Imperfect
I was giving, used to give, etc.	*I was finishing, used to finish, etc.*	*I was breaking, used to break, etc.*
je donn **ais**	je fin **iss ais**	je romp **ais**
tu donn **ais**	tu fin **iss ais**	tu romp **ais**
il donn **ait**	il fin **iss ait**	il romp **ait**
nous donn **ions**	nous fin **iss ions**	nous romp **ions**
vous donn **iez**	vous fin **iss iez**	vous romp **iez**
ils donn **aient**	ils fin **iss aient**	ils romp **aient**

Past Definite	Past Definite	Past Definite
I gave, etc.	*I finished, etc.*	*I broke, etc.*
je donn **ai**	je fin **is**	je romp **is**
tu donn **as**	tu fin **is**	tu romp **is**
il donn **a**	il fin **it**	il romp **it**
nous donn **âmes**	nous fin **îmes**	nous romp **îmes**
vous donn **âtes**	vous fin **îtes**	vous romp **îtes**
ils donn **èrent**	ils fin **irent**	ils romp **irent**

Future	Future	Future
I shall give, etc.	*I shall finish, etc.*	*I shall break, etc.*
je donner **ai**	je finir **ai**	je rompr **ai**
tu donner **as**	tu finir **as**	tu rompr **as**
il donner **a**	il finir **a**	il rompr **a**
nous donner **ons**	nous finir **ons**	nous rompr **ons**
vous donner **ez**	vous finir **ez**	vous rompr **ez**
ils donner **ont**	ils finir **ont**	ils rompr **ont**

Conditional	Conditional	Conditional
I should give, etc.	*I should finish, etc.*	*I should break, etc.*
je donner **ais**	je finir **ais**	je rompr **ais**
tu donner **ais**	tu finir **ais**	tu rompr **ais**
il donner **ait**	il finir **ait**	il rompr **ait**
nous donner **ions**	nous finir **ions**	nous rompr **ions**
vous donner **iez**	vous finir **iez**	vous rompr **iez**
ils donner **aient**	ils finir **aient**	ils rompr **aient**

Imperative Mood

Present	Present	Present
Give, etc.	*Finish, etc.*	*Break, etc.*
donn **e** *	fin **is**	romp **s**
(qu'il donn **e**)	(qu'il fin **iss e**)	(qu'il romp **e**)
donn **ons**	fin **iss ons**	romp **ons**
donn **ez**	fin **iss ez**	romp **ez**
(qu'ils donn **ent**)	(qu'ils fin **iss ent**)	(qu'ils romp **ent**)

* This form becomes **donn** *es* when followed by **-y** or **-en** (cf. § 370, 3, *obs.* 3, 4).

Subjunctive Mood

Present	Present	Present
(*That*) *I* (*may*) *give, etc.*	(*That*) *I* (*may*) *finish, etc.*	(*That*) *I* (*may*) *break, etc.*
(que) je donn **e**	(que) je fin **iss e**	(que) je romp **e**
(que) tu donn **es**	(que) tu fin **iss es**	(que) tu romp **es**
(qu') il donn **e**	(qu') il fin **iss e**	(qu') il romp **e**
(que) nous donn **ions**	(que) nous fin **iss ions**	(que) nous romp **ions**
(que) vous donn **iez**	(que) vous fin **iss iez**	(que) vous romp **iez**
(qu') ils donn **ent**	(qu') ils fin **iss ent**	(qu') ils romp **ent**
Imperfect	**Imperfect**	**Imperfect**
(*That*) *I* (*might*) *give, etc.*	(*That*) *I* (*might*) *finish, etc.*	(*That*) *I* (*might*) *break, etc.*
(que) je donn **asse**	(que) je fin **isse**	(que) je romp **isse**
(que) tu donn **asses**	(que) tu fin **isses**	(que) tu romp **isses**
(qu') il donn **ât**	(qu') il fin **ît**	(qu') il romp **ît**
(que) nous donn **assions**	(que) nous fin **issions**	(que) nous romp **issions**
(que) vous donn **assiez**	(que) vous fin **issiez**	(que) vous romp **issiez**
(qu') ils donn **assent**	(qu') ils fin **issent**	(qu') ils romp **issent**

AUXILIARY VERBS

154. The auxiliary verbs **avoir,** *to have,* and **être,** *to be,* are conjugated in their simple tenses as follows:

Infinitive

Pres. avoir, *to have* Pres. être, *to be*

Participles

avoir	être
PRES. ayant, *having*	PRES. étant, *being*
PAST. eu, *had*	PAST. été, *been*

Indicative

PRESENT	PRESENT
I have, am having, etc.	*I am, am being, etc.*
j'ai nous avons	je suis nous sommes
tu as vous avez	tu es vous êtes
il a ils ont	il est ils sont
IMPERFECT	IMPERFECT
I had, was having, etc.	*I was, was being, etc.*
j'avais nous avions	j'étais nous étions
tu avais vous aviez	tu étais vous étiez
il avait ils avaient	il était ils étaient
PAST DEFINITE	PAST DEFINITE
I had, etc.	*I was, etc.*
j'eus nous eûmes	je fus nous fûmes
tu eus vous eûtes	tu fus vous fûtes
il eut ils eurent	il fut ils furent
FUTURE	FUTURE
I shall have, etc.	*I shall be, etc.*
j'aurai nous aurons	je serai nous serons
tu auras vous aurez	tu seras vous serez
il aura ils auront	il sera ils seront
CONDITIONAL	CONDITIONAL
I should have, etc.	*I should be, etc.*
j'aurais nous aurions	je serais nous serions
tu aurais vous auriez	tu serais vous seriez
il aurait ils auraient	il serait ils seraient

Imperative

PRESENT	PRESENT
Have, etc.	*Be, etc.*
ayons	soyons
aie ayez	sois soyez
(qu'il ait) (qu'ils aient)	(qu'il soit) (qu'ils soient)

Subjunctive

Present		Present	
(That) I (may) have, etc.		*(That) I (may) be, etc.*	
(que) j'aie	(que) nous ayons	(que) je sois	(que) nous soyons
(que) tu aies	(que) vous ayez	(que) tu sois	(que) vous soyez
(qu') il ait	(qu') ils aient	(qu') il soit	(qu') ils soient
Imperfect		**Imperfect**	
(That) I (might) have, etc.		*(That) I (might) be, etc.*	
(que) j'eusse	(que) nous eussions	(que) je fusse	(que) nous fussions
(que) tu eusses	(que) vous eussiez	(que) tu fusses	(que) vous fussiez
(qu') il eût	(qu') ils eussent	(qu') il fût	(qu') ils fussent

COMPOUND TENSES

155. Formation. Compound tenses are formed from the past participle of the principal verb along with an auxiliary verb (usually **avoir,** sometimes **être**), see §§ 227–229.

Avoir	*Être*
Infinitive	
Perfect	Perfect
To have given	*To have arrived*
avoir donné	être arrivé(e)(s)
Participle	
Perfect	Perfect
Having given	*Having arrived*
ayant donné	étant arrivé(e)(s)
Indicative	
Past Indefinite	Past Indefinite
I have given, etc.	*I have arrived, etc.*
j'ai donné	je suis arrivé(e)
tu as donné, etc.	tu es arrivé(e), etc.
Pluperfect	Pluperfect
I had given, etc.	*I had arrived, etc.*
j'avais donné, etc.	j'étais arrivé(e), etc.

PAST ANTERIOR	PAST ANTERIOR
I had given, etc.	*I had arrived, etc.*
j'eus donné, etc.	je fus arrivé(e), etc.
FUTURE ANTERIOR	FUTURE ANTERIOR
I shall have given, etc.	*I shall have arrived, etc.*
j'aurai donné, etc.	je serai arrivé(e), etc.
CONDITIONAL ANTERIOR	CONDITIONAL ANTERIOR
I should have given, etc.	*I should have arrived, etc.*
j'aurais donné, etc.	je serais arrivé(e), etc.

Subjunctive

PERFECT	PERFECT
(*That*) *I* (*may*) *have given, etc.*	(*That*) *I* (*may*) *have arrived, etc.*
(que) j'aie donné, etc.	(que) je sois arrivé(e), etc.
PLUPERFECT	PLUPERFECT
(*That*) *I* (*might*) *have given, etc.*	(*That*) *I* (*might*) *have arrived, etc.*
(que) j'eusse donné, etc.	(que) je fusse arrivé(e), etc

ORTHOGRAPHICAL PECULIARITIES

156. Verbs in *-cer* and *-ger*

1. Verbs in **-cer,** *e.g.,* **avancer** [avɑ̃se], *to advance,* require the [s] sound of **c** throughout their conjugation, and hence **c** becomes **ç** before **a** or **o** of an ending (§ 5, 4), but not elsewhere:

Pres. Part.	*Pres. Indic.*	*Impf. Indic.*	*Past Def.*	*Impf. Subj.*
avançant	avance	avançais	avançai	avançasse
	avances	avançais	avanças	avançasses
	avance	avançait	avança	avançât
	avançons	avancions	avançâmes	avançassions
	avancez	avanciez	avançâtes	avançassiez
	avancent	avançaient	avancèrent	avançassent

2. Verbs in **-ger,** *e.g.,* **manger** [mɑ̃ʒe], *to eat,* require the [ʒ] sound of **g** throughout their conjugation, and hence **g** becomes **ge** before **a** or **o** (§ 19, 2), but not elsewhere:

Pres. Part.	*Pres. Indic.*	*Impf. Indic.*	*Past Def.*	*Impf. Subj.*
mangeant	mange	mangeais	mangeai	mangeasse
	manges	mangeais	mangeas	mangeasses
	mange	mangeait	mangea	mangeât
	mangeons	mangions	mangeâmes	mangeassions
	mangez	mangiez	mangeâtes	mangeassiez
	mangent	mangeaient	mangèrent	mangeassent

157. Verbs in *-yer*

Verbs in **-oyer** and **-uyer** change **y** to **i** whenever it comes before [ə] in conjugation, but not elsewhere; verbs in **-ayer** and **-eyer** may either retain **y** throughout, or change it to **i** before [ə]:

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Subj.*	*Fut.*	*Condl.*
nettoie, etc.	nettoie, etc.	nettoierai, etc.	nettoierais, etc.
paye, / paie, } etc.	paye, / paie, } etc.	payerai, / paierai, } etc.	payerais, / paierais, } etc.

158. Verbs with Stem-vowel *e* or *é*

Verbs with stem-vowel **e** require the [ɛ] sound of **e** (§ 12, 1) whenever, in conjugation, the next syllable contains [ə], *i.e.*, when the stress falls on the stem-vowel; so also verbs with the stem-vowel **é**, shown orthographically as follows: —

1. By changing **e** or **é** to **è** (§ 12, 1), *e.g.*, **mener**, *to lead*, **céder**, *to yield:*

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Subj.*	*Fut.*	*Condl.*
mène	mène	mènerai	mènerais
mènes	mènes	mèneras	mènerais
mène	mène	mènera	mènerait
menons	menions	mènerons	mènerions
menez	meniez	mènerez	mèneriez
mènent	mènent	mèneront	mèneraient

But **céder** with the stem-vowel **é**:

cède, etc. cède, etc. céderai [sɛd(ə)re], etc. céderais [sɛd(ə)rɛ], etc.

Obs.: In **mené-je** ? [mənɛːʒ], **e** of the ending is not mute, and hence the stem-vowel **e** is unchanged.

Like **mener**: Verbs with stem-vowel **e** (for exceptions in **-eler** and **-eter**, see below).

Like **céder**: Verbs with stem-vowel **é** + **consonant**, *e.g.*, **régner**, *reign*, etc.

NOTE. — Verbs like **créer**, *create*, with stem-vowel followed by a vowel, are regular: Je crée, etc.

2. Most verbs in **-eler, -eter**, however, indicate the [ɛ] sound by doubling **l** or **t**, *e.g.*, **appeler**, *to call*, **jeter**, *to throw*:

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Subj.*	*Fut.*	*Condl.*
appelle	appelle	appellerai	appellerais
appelles	appelles	appelleras	appellerais
appelle	appelle	appellera	appellerait
appelons	appelions	appellerons	appellerions
appelez	appeliez	appellerez	appelleriez
appellent	appellent	appelleront	appelleraient

So also, **jeter**:

jette, etc.	jette, etc.	jetterai, etc.	jetterais, etc.

A few verbs in **-eler, -eter** take the grave accent precisely like **mener**, *e.g.*, **acheter**, *to buy*:

achète, etc.	achète, etc.	achèterai, etc.	achèterais, etc.

Exceptions like **acheter**:

agneler, *lamb*	épousseter, *dust*	modeler, *model*
becqueter, *peck*	étiqueter, *label*	peler, *peel*
bourreler, *goad, torture*	geler, *freeze*	rapiéceter, *patch*
démanteler, *dismantle*	harceler, *harass*	trompeter, *trumpet*
écarteler, *quarter*	marteler, *hammer*	

* *Fut.* **épousseterai** according to the *Dictionnaire de l'Académie*.

Exceptions like **appeler** *or* **acheter**:

botteler, *bale* (hay, etc.)	caqueter, *cackle*	crocheter, *pick* (a lock)
canneler, *groove*	ciseler, *chisel*	

FORMATION OF TENSES

159. Principal Parts. By the following rules, the various tenses of all regular verbs and of most irregular verbs may be known from five forms of the verb, called principal parts or primary tenses: —

1. The *Infinitive* gives the *Future* by adding **-ai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont**, and the *Conditional* by adding **-ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient**

— dropping the final infinitive **-e** of the third conjugation for both tenses.

2. The *Present Participle* gives the *Imperfect Indicative* by changing **-ant** into **-ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient,** and the *Present Subjunctive* by changing **-ant** into **-e, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.**

3. The *Past Participle* gives the *Compound Tenses*, with the auxiliary **avoir** (§ 227) or **être** (§ 228), and the *Passive*, with the auxiliary **être** (§ 239).

4. The *Present Indicative* gives the *Imperative* by dropping the pronoun subject of the second singular and first and second plural, the **-s** of the first conjugation second singular being also dropped, except before **y** and **en** (cf. § 370, 3, *obs.* 3, 4).

5. The *Past Definite* gives the *Imperfect Subjunctive* by changing the final letter of the first singular (**-i** or **-s**) into **-sse, -sses, -t, -ssions, -ssiez, -ssent,** and putting a circumflex accent over the last vowel of the third singular.

Obs.: The tenses, except the future and conditional, are not really *derived* from the principal parts, as is sometimes said in grammars· the method is merely an aid to memory.

IRREGULAR VERBS IN **-er**

160. Aller, *to go*

1. *Infinitive.* **aller**; *fut.* * irai, iras, ira, etc.; *condl.* **irais**, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **allant**; *impf. indic.* allais, etc.; *pres. subj.* aille [a:j], ailles, aille, allions, alliez, aillent.

3. *Past Part.* **allé**; *past indef.* je suis allé, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **vais** [ve], vas, va, allons, allez, vont; *impve.* va (vas-y), allons, allez.

5. *Past Def.* **allai,** allas, alla, allâmes, allâtes, allèrent; *impf. subj.* allasse, allasses, allât, allassions, allassiez, allassent.

* The stem of the future is from the Latin infinitive **ire.**

Like **aller:**

s'en aller, *go away.*

161. Envoyer, *to send*

1. *Infinitive.* **envoyer**; *fut.* enverrai, etc.; *condl.* enverrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **envoyant**; *impf. indic.* envoyais, envoyais, envoyait, envoyions [ãvwaijɔ̃], envoyiez, envoyaient; *pres. subj.* envoie, envoies, envoie, envoyions [ãvwaijɔ̃], envoyiez, envoient.

3. *Past Part.* **envoyé**; *past indef.* j'ai envoyé, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **envoie,** envoies, envoie, envoyons, envoyez, envoient; *impve.* envoie, envoyons, envoyez.

5. *Past Def.* **envoyai,** envoyas, envoya, envoyâmes, envoyâtes, envoyèrent; *impf. subj.* envoyasse, envoyasses, envoyât, envoyassions, envoyassiez, envoyassent.

Like **envoyer:**

renvoyer, *send away, dismiss*

IRREGULAR VERBS IN -ir

162. Acquérir, *to acquire*

1. *Infinitive.* **acquérir**; *fut.* acquerrai, acquerras, etc.; *condl.* acquerrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **acquérant**; *impf. indic.* acquérais, etc.; *pres. subj.* acquière, acquières, acquière, acquérions, acquériez, acquièrent.

3. *Past Part.* **acquis**; *past indef.* j'ai acquis, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **acquiers,** acquiers, acquiert, acquérons, acquérez, acquièrent; *impve.* acquiers, acquérons, acquérez.

5. *Past Def.* **acquis,** acquis, acquit, acquîmes, acquîtes, acquirent; *impf. subj.* acquisse, acquisses, acquît, acquissions, acquissiez, acquissent.

Like **acquérir:**

conquérir, *conquer* * querir *or* quérir, *seek* requérir, *require, claim*
s'enquérir, *inquire* reconquérir, *reconquer*

* Has only the infinitive.

163. Bénir, *to bless*

Is regular, but has also an irregular past participle **bénit,** used only as adjective:

De l'eau *bénite;* du pain *bénit* Holy water; consecrated bread

164. Courir, *to run*

1. *Infinitive.* **courir**; *fut.* courrai, courras, etc.; *condl.* courrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **courant**; *impf. indic.* courais, etc.; *pres. subj.* coure, coures, coure, courions, couriez, courent.

3. *Past Part.* **couru**; *past indef.* j'ai couru, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **cours,** cours, court, courons, courez, courent; *impve.* cours, courons, courez.

5. *Past Def.* **courus,** courus, courut, courûmes, courûtes, couru-

rent; *impf. subj.* courusse, courusses, courût, courussions, courussiez, courussent.

Like **courir** are its compounds:

accourir, *run up, hasten*
concourir, *coöperate, concur, compete*
discourir, *discourse*
encourir, *incur*
parcourir, *run over*
recourir, *run again, apply*
secourir, *succor, help*

NOTE. — **Courre,** *chase* (a hunting term), sometimes replaces **courir** in the infinitive.

165. Cueillir, *to gather, pick*

1. *Infinitive.* **cueillir;** *fut.* cueillerai, etc.; *condl.* cueillerais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **cueillant;** *impf. indic.* cueillais, etc.; *pres. subj.* cueille, cueilles, cueille, cueillions, cueilliez, cueillent.

3. *Past Part.* **cueilli;** *past indef.* j'ai cueilli, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **cueille,** cueilles, cueille, cueillons, cueillez, cueillent; *impve.* cueille, cueillons, cueillez.

5. *Past Def.* **cueillis,** cueillis, cueillit, cueillîmes, cueillîtes, cueillirent; *impf. subj.* cueillisse, cueillisses, cueillît, cueillissions, cueillissiez, cueillissent.

Obs.: The present indicative, future, and conditional are like those of **donner.**

Like **cueillir:**

accueillir, *welcome*
recueillir, *gather, collect*
* assaillir, *assail*
† saillir, *jut out*
* tressaillir, *start*

* Regular in future and conditional: **assaillirai,** etc.

† **Saillir,** *gush out, rush forth,* is regular, like **finir.**

166. Dormir, *to sleep*

1. *Infinitive.* **dormir;** *fut.* dormirai, etc.; *condl.* dormirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **dormant;** *impf. indic.* dormais, etc.; *pres. subj.* dorme, dormes, dorme, dormions, dormiez, dorment.

3. *Past Part.* **dormi;** *past indef.* j'ai dormi, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **dors,** dors, dort, dormons, dormez, dorment; *impve.* dors, dormons, dormez.

5. *Past Def.* **dormis,** dormis, dormit, dormîmes, dormîtes, dormirent; *impf. subj.* dormisse, dormisses, dormît, dormissions, dormissiez, dormissent.

Like **dormir:**

endormir, *put to sleep*
s'endormir, *fall asleep*
rendormir, *put to sleep again*
se rendormir, *go to sleep again*
redormir, *sleep again*
bouillir, *boil*
ébouillir, *boil away*
rebouillir, *boil again*
mentir, *lie*
démentir, *contradict, belie*

partir, *set out*	se repentir, *repent*	servir, *serve*
départir, *distribute*	sentir, *feel*	se servir, *make use*
se départir, *desist*	consentir, *consent*	desservir, *clear the table*
repartir, *set out again*, *reply*	pressentir, *forebode*	sortir, *go out*
	ressentir, *resent*	ressortir, *go out again*

NOTE. — **Asservir,** *enslave*, **assortir,** *sort*, *match*, **ressortir,** *depend* (on, **à**), **répartir,** *distribute*, are like **finir.**

Observe the Present Indicative of the following types, which are represented in the above list:

bouillir: bous, bous, bout, bouillons, bouillez, bouillent
mentir: mens, mens, ment, mentons, mentez, mentent
partir: pars, pars, part, partons, partez, partent
se repentir: repens, repens, repent, repentons, repentez, repentent
sentir: sens, sens, sent, sentons, sentez, sentent
servir: sers, sers, sert, servons, servez, servent
sortir: sors, sors, sort, sortons, sortez, sortent

167. Faillir, *to fail*

1. *Infinitive.* **faillir**; *fut.* faudrai, faudras, etc.; *condl.* faudrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **faillant**; *impf. indic.* faillais, etc.; *pres. subj.* faille, failles, faille, faillions, failliez, faillent.
3. *Past Part.* **failli**; *past indef.* j'ai failli, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **faux,** faux, faut, faillons, faillez, faillent; *impve.* ——, ——, ——.
5. *Past Def.* **faillis,** faillis, faillit, faillîmes, faillîtes, faillirent; *impf. subj.* faillisse, faillisses, faillît, faillissions, faillissiez, faillissent.

NOTE. — The irreg. forms of pres. indic., fut., and condl. are usually replaced by the regular forms (cf. **finir**).

Like **faillir:**

défaillir, *faint*, *fail* (pres. indic. usually **défaus, défaus, défaut**)

NOTE. — **Faillir,** *fail in business*, is usually like **finir.**

168. Férir, *to strike*

Used only in **Sans coup** ***férir,*** *Without striking a blow,* and in the *past part.* **féru,** *wounded* (a veterinary term).

169. Fleurir, *to flourish*, etc.

Pres. Part. **florissant**; *impf. indic.* florissais, etc. when used of persons or a collection of persons, *or* fleurissais, etc., when used of things otherwise like **finir.**

NOTE. — **Fleurir,** *blossom*, *bloom* (in a literal sense) is like **finir.**

170. **Fuir,** *to flee, fly*

1. *Infinitive.* **fuir**; *fut.* fuirai, etc.; *condl.* fuirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **fuyant**; *impf. indic.* fuyais, etc.; *pres. subj.* fuie, fuies, fuie, fuyions, fuyiez, fuient.
3. *Past Part.* **fui**; *past indef.* j'ai fui, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **fuis,** fuis, fuit, fuyons, fuyez, fuient; *impve.* fuis, fuyons, fuyez.
5. *Past Def.* **fuis,** fuis, fuit, fuîmes, fuîtes, fuirent; *impf. subj.* fuisse, fuisses, fuît, fuissions, fuissiez, fuissent.

Like **fuir:**

s'enfuir, *flee, escape*

171. **Gésir,** *to lie, lie buried*

1. *Infinitive.* **gésir**; *fut.* ——; *condl.* ——.
2. *Pres. Part.* **gisant**; *impf. indic.* gisais, etc.; *pres. subj.* ——.
3. *Past Part.* ——.
4. *Pres. Indic.* ——, ——, **gît,** gisons, gisez, gisent; *impve.* ——, ——, ——.
5. *Past Def.* ——; *impf. subj* ——.

Note. — Its most frequent use is in epitaphs: **Ci-gît,** *Here lies,* **Ci-gisent,** *Here lie.*

172. **Haïr,** *to hate*

1. *Infinitive.* **haïr**; *fut.* haïrai, etc.; *condl.* haïrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **haïssant**; *impf. indic.* haïssais, etc.; *pres. subj.* haïsse, haïsses, haïsse, haïssions, haïssiez, haïssent.
3. *Past Part.* **haï**; *past indef.* j'ai haï, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **hais,** hais, hait, haïssons, haïssez, haïssent; *impve.* hais, haïssons, haïssez.
5. *Past Def.* **haïs,** haïs, haït, haïmes, haïtes, haïrent; *impf. subj.* haïsse, haïsses, haït, haïssions, haïssiez, haïssent.

Obs.: **Haïr** loses its diæresis in the present indicative and imperative singular, and takes no circumflex accent; otherwise like **finir.**

173. **Issir,** *to spring* (*from,* **de**), etc.

Used only in the *past part.* **issu**; *past indef.* je suis issu, etc.

174. **Mourir,** *to die*

1. *Infinitive.* **mourir**; *fut.* mourrai, mourras, etc.; *condl.* mourrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **mourant**; *impf. indic.* mourais, etc.; *pres. subj.* meure, meures, meure, mourions, mouriez, meurent.

3. *Past Part.* **mort**; *past indef.* je suis mort, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **meurs**, meurs, meurt, mourons, mourez, meurent; *impve.* meurs, mourons, mourez.

5. *Past Def.* **mourus**, mourus, mourut, mourûmes, mourûtes, moururent; *impf. subj.* mourusse, mourusses, mourût, mourussions, mourussiez, mourussent.

Obs.: The stem-vowel becomes **eu** wherever it bears the stress.

Like **mourir**:

se mourir, *be dying* (used only in infin., pres. indic., impf. indic.)

175. Ouïr, *to hear*

Is hardly used beyond the infinitive and past participle: **J'ai *ouï* dire,** *I have heard said,* etc.

176. Ouvrir, *to open*

1. *Infinitive.* **ouvrir**; *fut.* ouvrirai, etc.; *condl.* ouvrirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **ouvrant**; *impf. indic.* ouvrais, etc.; *pres. subj.* ouvre, ouvres, ouvre, ouvrions, ouvriez, ouvrent.

3. *Past Part.* **ouvert**; *past indef.* j'ai ouvert, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **ouvre**, ouvres, ouvre, ouvrons, ouvrez, ouvrent; *impve.* ouvre, ouvrons, ouvrez.

5. *Past Def.* **ouvris**, ouvris, ouvrit, ouvrîmes, ouvrîtes, ouvrirent; *impf. subj.* ouvrisse, ouvrisses, ouvrît, ouvrissions, ouvrissiez, ouvrissent.

Obs.: The present indicative is like that of **donner.**

Like **ouvrir**:

entr'ouvrir, *open slightly*
rouvrir, *open again*
couvrir, *cover*
découvrir, *discover*
recouvrir, *cover again*
offrir, *offer*
souffrir, *suffer*

177. Tenir, *to hold*

1. *Infinitive.* **tenir**; *fut.* tiendrai, tiendras, etc.; *condl.* tiendrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **tenant**; *impf. indic.* tenais, etc.; *pres. subj.* tienne, tiennes, tienne, tenions, teniez, tiennent.

3. *Past Part.* **tenu**; *past indef.* j'ai tenu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **tiens**, tiens, tient, tenons, tenez, tiennent; *impve.* tiens, tenons, tenez.

5. *Past Def.* **tins,** tins, tint, tînmes [tē:m], tîntes [tē:t], tinrent [tē:r]; *impf. subj.* tinsse, [tē:s], tinsses, tînt, tinssions, tinssiez, tinssent.

Obs.: The stem-vowel becomes **ie** wherever it bears the stress.

Like **tenir** are its compounds:

s'abstenir, *abstain*	détenir, *detain*	obtenir, *obtain*
appartenir, *belong*	entretenir, *entertain*	retenir, *retain*
contenir, *contain*	maintenir, *maintain*	soutenir, *sustain*

178. Venir, *to come*

1. *Infinitive.* **venir;** *fut.* viendrai, viendras, etc.; *condl.* viendrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **venant;** *impf. indic.* venais, etc.; *pres. subj.* vienne, viennes, vienne, venions, veniez, viennent.

3. *Past Part.* **venu;** *past indef.* je suis venu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **viens,** viens, vient, venons, venez, viennent; *impve.* viens, venons, venez.

5. *Past Def.* **vins,** vins, vint, vînmes [vē:m], vîntes [vē:t], vinrent [vē:r]; *impf. subj.* vinsse [vē:s], vinsses, vînt, vinssions, vinssiez, vinssent.

Obs.: 1. The stem-vowel becomes **ie** wherever it bears the stress. 2. **Venir** is precisely like **tenir** in its irregularities, but owing to its difficulty it is given in full.

Like **venir** are its compounds:

avenir, *happen*	disconvenir, *be discordant*	redevenir, *become again*
advenir, *happen*	intervenir, *intervene*	se souvenir, *recollect*
convenir, *agree, suit*	parvenir, *attain*	subvenir, *aid*
contrevenir, *violate*	prévenir, *prevent, anticipate*	survenir, *occur*
circonvenir, *circumvent*	provenir, *proceed (from,* de)	se ressouvenir, *recollect*
devenir, *become*	revenir, *come back*	

179. Vêtir, *to clothe*

1. *Infinitive.* **vêtir;** *fut.* vêtirai, etc.; *condl.* vêtirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **vêtant;** *impf. indic.* vêtais, etc.; *pres. subj.* vête, vêtes, vête, vêtions, vêtiez, vêtent.

3. *Past Part.* **vêtu;** *past indef.* j'ai vêtu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **vêts,** vêts, vêt, vêtons, vêtez, vêtent; *impve.* vêts, vêtons, vêtez.

5. *Past Def.* **vêtis,** vêtis, vêtit, vêtîmes, vêtîtes, vêtirent; *impf. subj.* vêtisse, vêtisses, vêtît, vêtissions, vêtissiez, vêtissent.

Like **vêtir:**

dévêtir, *divest*	revêtir, *clothe, invest*	se revêtir, *put on clothing*
se dévêtir, *take off clothing*		

IRREGULAR VERBS IN -re

180. Battre, *to beat*

Loses one **t** in the present indicative singular: **bats, bats, bat**; otherwise like **rompre**.

Like **battre**:

abattre, *fell* débattre, *debate* rabattre, *beat down*
combattre, *fight, oppose* se débattre, *struggle*

181. Boire, *to drink*

1. *Infinitive.* **boire**; *fut.* boirai, etc.; *condl.* boirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **buvant**; *impf. indic.* buvais, etc.; *pres. subj.* boive, boives, boive, buvions, buviez, boivent.
3. *Past Part.* **bu**; *past indef.* j'ai bu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **bois,** bois, boit, buvons, buvez, boivent; *impve.* bois, buvons, buvez.
5. *Past Def.* **bus,** bus, but, bûmes, bûtes, burent; *impf. subj.* busse, busses, bût, bussions, bussiez, bussent.

Like **boire**:

emboire, *coat* (in painting) imboire, *imbibe, imbue*
s'emboire, *become dull* (used in third person) reboire, *drink again*

182. Bruire, *to murmur, rustle*

1. *Infinitive.* **bruire**; *fut.* bruirai, etc.; *condl.* bruirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **bruyant**; *impf. indic.* bruyais, etc.; *pres. subj.* ——.
3. *Past Part.* **bruit**; *past indef.* j'ai bruit, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **bruis,** bruis, bruit, ——, ——, ——; *impve.* ——.
5. *Past Def.* ——; *impf. subj.* ——.

NOTES.— 1. The *pres. part.* **bruyant,** *noisy,* is used as adjective only. 2. The forms **bruissant, bruissais,** etc., **bruisse,** etc., are also in use.

183. Clore, *to close, enclose*

1. *Infinitive.* **clore**; *fut.* clorai, etc.; *condl.* clorais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* ——; *impf. indic.* ——; *pres. subj.* close, closes, close, closions, closiez, closent.
3. *Past Part.* **clos**; *past indef.* j'ai clos, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **clos,** clos, clôt, ——, ——, ——; *impve.* ——.
5. *Past Def.* ——; *impf. subj.* ——.

Like **clore**:

déclore, *throw open*
* éclore, *hatch, open* (of flowers)
† enclore, *enclose*
†† forclore, *foreclose, debar*

* Has also *pres. pl.* **éclosons,** etc.; *impf. indic.* **éclosais,** etc. Its future and conditional are **éclorai,** etc.

† Has also *pres. pl.* **enclosons,** etc.; *pres. part.* **enclosant**; *impf. indic.* **enclosais,** etc.

†† Hardly used beyond the infinitive, past participle, and compound tenses.

184. Conclure, *to conclude*

1. *Infinitive.* **conclure**; *fut.* conclurai, etc.; *condl.* conclurais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **concluant**; *impf. indic.* concluais, etc.; *pres. subj.* conclue, conclues, conclue, concluions, concluiez, concluent.
3. *Past Part.* **conclu**; *past indef.* j'ai conclu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **conclus,** conclus, conclut, concluons, concluez, concluent; *impve.* **conclus,** concluons, concluez.
5. *Past Def.* **conclus,** conclus, conclut, conclûmes, conclûtes, conclurent; *impf. subj.* conclusse, conclusses, conclût, conclussions, conclussiez, conclussent.

Like **conclure**:

exclure, *exclude*
* inclure, *enclose*
† reclure, *shut up*

* *Past Part.* **inclus.**

† Used only in infin., past part., and comp. tenses. *Past part.* **reclus.**

185. Conduire, *to conduct,* etc.

1. *Infinitive.* **conduire**; *fut.* conduirai, etc.; *condl.* conduirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **conduisant**; *impf. indic.* conduisais, etc.; *pres. subj.* conduise, conduises, conduise, conduisions, conduisiez, conduisent.
3. *Past Part.* **conduit**; *past indef.* j'ai conduit, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **conduis,** conduis, conduit, conduisons, conduisez, conduisent; *impve.* conduis, conduisons, conduisez.
5. *Past Def.* **conduisis,** conduisis, conduisit, conduisîmes, conduisîtes, conduisirent; *impf. subj.* conduisisse, conduisisses, conduisît, conduisissions, conduisissiez, conduisissent.

Like **conduire**:

se conduire, *conduct oneself*
éconduire, *show out, dismiss*
reconduire, *lead back*
déduire, *deduct*
enduire, *coat* (with plaster)
induire, *induce*
introduire, *introduce*
produire, *produce*
réduire, *reduce*
reproduire, *reproduce*
séduire, *seduce*
traduire, *translate*
construire, *construct*

déconstruire, *take apart*
instruire, *instruct*
reconstruire, *reconstruct*
détruire, *destroy*
cuire, *cook*
recuire, *cook again*
* luire, *shine*
* reluire, *glisten*
† nuire, *injure*

* *Past part.* **lui** and **relui** respectively. No past def. or impf. subj.
† *Past part.* **nui.**

186. Être, *to be*

See § 154 for the full conjugation.

187. Confire, *to preserve*, etc.

1. *Infinitive.* **confire**; *fut.* confirai, etc.; *condl.* confirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **confisant**; *impf. indic.* confisais, etc.; *pres. subj.* confise, confises, confise, confisions, confisiez, confisent.
3. *Past Part.* **confit**; *past indef.* j'ai confit, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **confis**, confis, confit, confisons, confisez, confisent; *impve.* confis, confisons, confisez.
5. *Past Def.* **confis**, confis, confit, confîmes, confîtes, confirent; *impf. subj.* confisse, confisses, confît, confissions, confissiez, confissent.

Like **confire:**

déconfire, *discomfit;* circoncire (p.p. **-cis**), *circumcise:* suffire (p.p. **suffi**), *suffice*

188. Connaître, *to know*, etc.

1. *Infinitive.* **connaître**; *fut.* connaîtrai, etc.; *condl.* connaîtrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **connaissant**; *impf. indic.* connaissais, etc.; *pres. subj.* connaisse, connaisses, connaisse, connaissions, connaissiez, connaissent.
3. *Past Part.* **connu**; j'ai connu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **connais**, connais, connaît, connaissons, connaissez, connaissent; *impve.* connais, connaissons, connaissez.
5. *Past Def.* **connus**, connus, connut, connûmes, connûtes, connurent; *impf. subj.* connusse, connusses, connût, connussions, connussiez, connussent.

Obs.: Stem-vowel **i** has circumflex (î) everywhere before **t.**

Like **connaître:**

méconnaître, *not to know*
reconnaître, *recognize*
paraître, *appear*
apparaître, *appear*
comparaître, *appear* (law term)
disparaître, *disappear*
reparaître, *reappear*
* paître, *graze*
repaître, *feed, feast*
se repaître, *feed, feast*

* Lacks the past part., past def., and impf. subj.

NOTE. — **Apparoir** (also used in third singular **il appert,** *it appears*) and **comparoir** are archaic variants of **apparaître** and **comparaître.**

189. Coudre, *to sew*

1. *Infinitive.* **coudre**; *fut.* coudrai, etc.; *condl.* coudrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **cousant**; *impf. indic.* cousais, etc.; *pres. subj.* couse, couses, couse, cousions, cousiez, cousent.

3. *Past Part.* **cousu**; *past indef.* j'ai cousu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **couds,** couds, coud, cousons, cousez, cousent; *impve.* couds, cousons, cousez.

5. *Past Def.* **cousis,** cousis, cousit, cousîmes, cousîtes, cousirent; *impf. subj.* cousisse, cousisses, cousît, cousissions, cousissiez, cousissent.

Like **coudre:**

découdre, *rip, unsew* recoudre, *sew again*

190. Craindre, *to fear*

1. *Infinitive.* **craindre**; *fut.* craindrai, etc.; *condl.* craindrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **craignant**; *impf. indic.* craignais, etc.; *pres. subj.* craigne, craignes, craigne, craignions, craigniez, craignent.

3. *Past Part.* **craint**; *past indef.* j'ai craint, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **crains,** crains, craint, craignons, craignez, craignent; *impve.* crains, craignons, craignez.

5. *Past Def.* **craignis,** craignis, craignit, craignîmes, craignîtes, craignirent; *impf. subj.* craignisse, craignisses, craignît, craignissions, craignissiez, craignissent.

Like **craindre:**

in -aindre:
contraindre, *constrain*
plaindre, *pity*
se plaindre, *complain*

in -eindre:
astreindre, *abstract*
atteindre, *attain*
ceindre, *enclose, gird, gird on* (a sword, etc.)
dépeindre, *depict*
empreindre, *imprint*
enceindre, *gird*
enfreindre, *infringe*
épreindre, *squeeze out*
éteindre, *extinguish*
étreindre, *draw tight*
feindre, *feign*
geindre, *groan*
peindre, *paint*
ratteindre, *overtake*
repeindre, *paint again*
restreindre, *restrain*
teindre, *dye*
déteindre, *fade*
reteindre, *dye again*

in -oindre:
joindre, *join*
adjoindre, *adjoin*
conjoindre, *conjoin*
déjoindre, *disjoin*
disjoindre, *disjoin*
enjoindre, *enjoin*
rejoindre, *rejoin*
oindre, *anoint*
* poindre, *dawn*

* Hardly used beyond the infinitive and future.

191. Croire, *to believe*

1. *Infinitive.* **croire**; *fut.* croirai, etc.; *condl.* croirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **croyant**; *impf. indic.* croyais, etc.; *pres. subj.* croie, croies, croie, croyions, croyiez, croient.

3. *Past Part.* **cru**; *past indef.* j'ai cru, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **crois**, crois, croit, croyons, croyez, croient; *impve.* crois, croyons, croyez.

5. *Past Def.* **crus**, crus, crut, crûmes, crûtes, crurent; *impf. subj.* crusse, crusses, crût, crussions, crussiez, crussent.

Like **croire**:

* accroire, *believe* (an untruth) † décroire, *disbelieve*

* Found only in **faire accroire**, *to cause to believe* (an untruth).

† Used only in **je ne crois ni ne *décrois***, *I neither believe nor disbelieve.*

192. Croître, *to grow*

1. *Infinitive.* **croître**; *fut.* croîtrai, etc.; *condl.* croîtrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **croissant**; *impf. indic.* croissais, etc.; *pres. subj.* croisse, croisses, croisse, croissions, croissiez, croissent.

3. *Past Part.* **crû** (f. **crue**); *past indef.* j'ai crû, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **croîs**, croîs, croît, croissons, croissez, croissent; *impve.* croîs, croissons, croissez.

5. *Past Def.* **crûs**, crûs, crût, crûmes, crûtes, crûrent; *impf. subj.* crusse, crusses, crût, crussions, crussiez, crussent.

Obs.: The circumflex accent distinguishes several otherwise similar forms of **croître** and **croire**.

193. Dire, *to say, tell*

1. *Infinitive.* **dire**; *fut.* dirai, etc.; *condl.* dirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **disant**; *impf. indic.* disais, etc.; *pres. subj.* dise, dises, dise, disions, disiez, disent.

3. *Past Part.* **dit**; *past indef.* j'ai dit, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **dis**, dis, dit, disons, dites, disent; *impve.* dis, disons, dites.

5. *Past Def.* **dis**, dis, dit, dîmes, dîtes, dirent; *impf. subj.* disse, disses, dît, dissions, dissiez, dissent.

Like **dire**:

* contredire, *contradict* * interdire, *interdict* * prédire, *predict*
* dédire, *retract, deny* * médire (de), *slander* redire, *say again*

* The 2nd pl. pres. indic. and impve. is: **Contredisez**, **dédisez**, **interdisez**, etc.

Note. — **Maudire** is like **dire** only in infinitive, **past** participle (**maudit**), future, and conditional; otherwise like **finir**.

194. Écrire, *to write*

1. *Infinitive.* **écrire**; *fut.* écrirai, etc., *condl.* écrirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **écrivant**; *impf. indic.* écrivais, etc.; *pres. subj.* écrive, écrives, écrive, écrivions, écriviez, écrivent.
3. *Past Part.* **écrit**; *past indef.* j'ai écrit, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **écris,** écris, écrit, écrivons, écrivez, écrivent; *impve.* écris, écrivons, écrivez.
5. *Past Def.* **écrivis,** écrivis, écrivit, écrivîmes, écrivîtes, écrivirent; *impf. subj.* écrivisse, écrivisses, écrivît, écrivissions, écrivissiez, écrivissent.

Like **écrire** are all verbs in **-(s)crire:**

circonscrire, *circumscribe*	prescrire, *prescribe*	souscrire, *subscribe*
décrire, *describe*	proscrire, *proscribe*	transcrire, *transcribe*
inscrire, *inscribe*	récrire, *rewrite*	

195. Faire, *to do, make*

1. *Infinitive.* **faire**; *fut.* ferai [f(ə)re], etc.; *condl.* ferais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **faisant** [fəzɑ̃]; *impf. indic.* faisais [fəzɛ], etc.; *pres subj.* fasse, fasses, fasse, fassions, fassiez, fassent.
3. *Past Part.* **fait**; *past indef.* j'ai fait, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **fais,** fais, fait, faisons [fəzɔ̃], faites, font; *impve* fais, faisons, faites.
5. *Past Def.* **fis,** fis, fit, fîmes, fîtes, firent; *impf. subj.* fisse, fisses, fît, fissions, fissiez, fissent.

Like **faire:**

contrefaire, *imitate*	méfaire, *harm*	refaire, *do again*
défaire, *undo*	parfaire, *complete*	satisfaire, *satisfy*
forfaire, *forfeit*	redéfaire, *undo again*	surfaire, *overcharge*

196. Frire, *to fry* (intr.)

1. *Infinitive.* **frire**; *fut.* frirai, etc.; *condl.* frirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* ——; *impf. indic.* ——; *pres. subj.* ——.
3. *Past Part.* **frit**; *past indef.* j'ai frit, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **fris,** fris, frit, ——, ——, ——; *impve.* fris, ——, ——.
5. *Past Def.* ——; *impf. subj.* ——.

197. Lire, *to read*

1. *Infinitive.* **lire**; *fut.* lirai, etc.; *condl.* lirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **lisant**; *impf. indic.* lisais, etc.; *pres. subj.* lise, lises, lise, lisions, lisiez, lisent.
3. *Past Part.* **lu**; *past indef.* j'ai lu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **lis**, lis, lit, lisons, lisez, lisent; *impve.* lis, lisons, lisez.
5. *Past Def.* **lus**, lus, lut, lûmes, lûtes, lurent; *impf. subj.* lusse, lusses, lût, lussions, lussiez, lussent.

Like **lire**:

élire, *elect* réélire, *reëlect* relire, *read again*

198. Mettre, *to place, put*

1. *Infinitive.* **mettre**; *fut.* mettrai, etc.; *condl.* mettrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **mettant**; *impf. indic.* mettais, etc.; *pres. subj.* mette, mettes, mette, mettions, mettiez, mettent.
3. *Past Part.* **mis**; *past indef.* j'ai mis, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **mets**, mets, met, mettons, mettez, mettent; *impve.* mets, mettons, mettez.
5. *Past Def.* **mis**, mis, mit, mîmes, mîtes, mirent; *impf. subj.* misse, misses, mît, missions, missiez, missent.

Like **mettre**:

se mettre, *begin*
admettre, *admit*
commettre, *commit*
compromettre, *compromise*
démettre, *dismiss*
émettre, *emit*
s'entremettre, *interpose*
omettre, *omit*
permettre, *permit*
promettre, *promise*
remettre, *put back, hand to*
reprommettre, *promise again*
soumettre, *submit*
transmettre, *transmit*

199. Moudre, *to grind*

1. *Infinitive.* **moudre**; *fut.* moudrai, etc.; *condl.* moudrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **moulant**; *impf. indic.* moulais, etc.; *pres. subj.* moule, moules, moule, moulions, mouliez, moulent.
3. *Past Part.* **moulu**; *past indef.* j'ai moulu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **mouds**, mouds, moud, moulons, moulez, moulent; *impve.* mouds, moulons, moulez.
5. *Past Def.* **moulus**, moulus, moulut, moulûmes, moulûtes, moulurent; *impf. subj.* moulusse, moulusses, moulût, moulussions, moulussiez, moulussent.

Like **moudre**:

émoudre, *whet* remoudre, *grind again* rémoudre, *sharpen*

200. Naître, *to be born, arise,* etc.

1. *Infinitive.* **naître**; *fut.* naîtrai, etc.; *condl.* naîtrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **naissant**; *impf. indic.* naissais, etc.; *pres. subj.* naisse, naisses, naisse, naissions, naissiez, naissent.

3. *Past Part.* **né**; *past indef.* je suis né, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **nais**, nais, naît, naissons, naissez, naissent; *impve.* nais, naissons, naissez.

5. *Past Def.* **naquis**, naquis, naquit, naquîmes, naquîtes, naquirent; *impf. subj.* naquisse, naquisses, naquît, naquissions, naquissiez, naquissent.

Obs.; Stem-vowel **i** has the circumflex (î) everywhere before **t.**

Like **naître:**

renaître, *revive*

201. Plaire, *to please*

1. *Infinitive.* **plaire**; *fut.* plairai, etc.; *condl.* plairais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **plaisant**; *impf. indic.* plaisais, etc.; *pres. subj.* plaise, plaises, plaise, plaisions, plaisiez, plaisent.

3. *Past Part.* **plu**; *past indef.* j'ai plu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **plais**, plais, plaît, plaisons, plaisez, plaisent; *impve.* plais, plaisons, plaisez.

5. *Past Def.* **plus**, plus, plut, plûmes, plûtes, plurent; *impf. subj.* plusse, plusses, plût, plussions, plussiez, plussent.

Like **plaire:**

complaire, *humor* déplaire, *displease* * taire, *say nothing about*

* **Il tait** has no circumflex.

202. Prendre, *to take*

1. *Infinitive.* **prendre**; *fut.* prendrai, etc.; *condl.* prendrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **prenant**; *impf. indic.* prenais, etc.; *pres. subj.* prenne, prennes, prenne, prenions, preniez, prennent.

3. *Past Part.* **pris**; *past indef.* j'ai pris, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **prends**, prends, prend, prenons, prenez, prennent; *impve.* prends, prenons, prenez.

5. *Past Def.* **pris**, pris, prit, prîmes, prîtes, prirent; *impf. subj.* prisse, prisses, prît, prissions, prissiez, prissent.

Like **prendre** are its compounds:

apprendre, *learn* entreprendre, *undertake* rapprendre, *learn again*
déprendre, *part* s'éprendre, *be taken* reprendre, *take back*
désapprendre, *unlearn* se méprendre, *be mistaken* surprendre, *surprise*
comprendre, *understand*

203. Résoudre, *to resolve*

1. *Infinitive.* **résoudre**; *fut.* résoudrai, etc.; *condl.* résoudrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **résolvant**; *impf. indic.* résolvais, etc.; *pres. subj.* résolve, résolves, résolve, résolvions, résolviez, résolvent.
3. *Past Part.* **résolu** and * **résous**; *past indef.* j'ai résolu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **résous,** résous, résout, résolvons, résolvez, résolvent; *impve.* résous, résolvons, résolvez.
5. *Past Def.* **résolus,** résolus, résolut, résolûmes, résolûtes, résolurent; *impf. subj.* résolusse, résolusses, résolût, résolussions, résolussiez, résolussent.

* Of restricted usage.

Like **résoudre**:

* absoudre, *absolve* * dissoudre, *dissolve*

* *Past part.* **absous** (f. **absoute**), **dissous** (f. **dissoute**), respectively: lack the past definite and imperfect subjunctive.

204. Rire, *to laugh*

1. *Infinitive.* **rire**; *fut.* rirai, etc.; *condl.* rirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **riant**; *impf. indic.* riais, etc.; *pres. subj.* rie, ries, rie, riions, riiez, rient.
3. *Past Part.* **ri**; *past indef.* j'ai ri, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **ris,** ris, rit, rions, riez, rient; *impve.* ris, rions, riez.
5. *Past Def.* **ris,** ris, rit, rîmes, rîtes, rirent; *impf. subj.* risse, risses, rît, rissions, rissiez, rissent.

Like **rire**:

se rire, *make sport* (*of*, de) sourire, *smile*

205. Sourdre, *to rise, spring up*, etc.

1. *Infinitive.* **sourdre**; *fut.* il sourdra; *condl.* il sourdrait.
2. *Pres. Part.* **sourdant**; *impf. indic.* il sourdait; *pres. subj.* il sourde.
3. *Past Part.* ——; *past indef.* ——.
4. *Pres. Indic.* ——, ——, sourd, ——, ——, sourdent; *impve.* ——.
5. *Past Def.* **il sourdit**; *impf. subj.* il sourdît.

Note. — Little used beyond the infin. and third sing. pres. indic.

206. Suivre, *to follow*

1. *Infinitive.* **suivre**; *fut.* suivrai, etc.; *condl.* suivrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **suivant**; *impf. indic.* suivais, etc.; *pres. subj.* suive, suives, suive, suivions, suiviez, suivent.

3. *Past Part.* **suivi;** *past indef.* j'ai suivi, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **suis,** suis, suit, suivons, suivez, **suivent;** *impve.* suis, suivons, suivez.

5. *Past Def.* **suivis,** suivis, **suivit,** suivîmes, suivîtes, **suivirent;** *impf. subj.* suivisse, suivisses, **suivît,** suivissions, suivissiez, suivissent.

Like **suivre:**

s'ensuivre (impers.), *it follows* poursuivre, *pursue*

207. Tistre, *to weave*

Used only in the *past part.* **tissu,** and compound tenses.

208. Traire, *to milk*

1. *Infinitive.* **traire;** *fut.* trairai, etc.; *condl.* trairais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **trayant;** *impf. indic.* trayais, etc.; *pres. subj.* traie, traies, traie, trayions, trayiez, traient.

3. *Past Part.* **trait;** *past indef.* j'ai trait, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **trais,** trais, trait, trayons, trayez, **traient;** *impve.* trais, trayons, trayez.

5. *Past Def.* ——; *impf. subj.* ——.

Like **traire:**

abstraire, *abstract*	extraire, *extract*	soustraire, *subtract*
attraire, *attract*	rentraire, *darn*	* braire, *bray*
distraire, *distract*	retraire, *redeem* (legal)	

* Commonly used only in the infin. and the third pers. pres. indic., fut. and cond.

209. Vaincre, *to conquer*

1. *Infinitive.* **vaincre;** *fut.* vaincrai, etc.; *condl.* vaincrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **vainquant;** *impf. indic.* vainquais, etc.; *pres. subj.* vainque, vainques, vainque, vainquions, vainquiez, vainquent.

3. *Past Part.* **vaincu;** *past indef.* j'ai vaincu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **vaincs** [vɛ̃], vaincs, vainc, vainquons, vainquez, vainquent; *impve.* vaincs, vainquons, vainquez.

5. *Past Def.* **vainquis,** vainquis, vainquit, vainquîmes, vainquîtes, vainquirent; *impf. subj.* vainquisse, vainquisses, vainquît, vainquissions, vainquissiez, vainquissent.

Obs.: Stem **c** [k] becomes **qu** [k] before any vowel except **u.**

Like **vaincre:**

convaincre, *convince, convict*

210. Vendre, *to sell*

Irregular only in third singular present indicative: **Il vend** (t omitted).

Like **vendre:**

All verbs in **-andre, -endre,* -erdre, -ondre, -ordre**

* Except **prendre, reprendre, surprendre,** etc.

211. Vivre, *to live*

1. *Infinitive.* **vivre;** *fut.* vivrai, etc.; *condl.* vivrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **vivant;** *impf. indic.* vivais, etc.; *pres. subj.* vive, vives, vive, vivions, viviez, vivent.
3. *Past Part.* **vécu;** *past indef.* j'ai vécu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **vis,** vis, vit, vivons, vivez, vivent; *impve.* vis, vivons, vivez.
5. *Past Def.* **vécus,** vécus, vécut, vécûmes, vécûtes, vécurent; *impf. subj.* vécusse, vécusses, vécût, vécussions, vécussiez, vécussent.

Like **vivre:**

revivre, *revive* survivre, *survive*

IRREGULAR VERBS IN -oir

Note. — The few verbs in **-oir,** which are all irregular, form in some grammars a separate conjugation, the third, verbs in **-re** being the fourth.

212. Avoir, *to have*

See § 154 for the full conjugation of this verb.

Like **avoir:**

ravoir, *have again* (used only in the infinitive)

213. Recevoir, *to receive*

1. *Infinitive.* **recevoir;** *fut.* recevrai, etc.; *condl.* recevrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **recevant;** *impf. indic.* recevais, etc.; *pres. subj.* reçoive, reçoives, reçoive, recevions, receviez, reçoivent.
3. *Past Part.* **reçu;** *past indef.* j'ai reçu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **reçois,** reçois, reçoit, recevons, recevez, reçoivent; *impve.* reçois, recevons, recevez.
5. *Past Def.* **reçus,** reçus, reçut, reçûmes, reçûtes, reçurent; *impf. subj.* reçusse, reçusses, reçût, reçussions, reçussiez, reçussent.

Obs.: 1. Stem-vowel becomes **oi** wherever it bears the stress. 2. Stem **c** [s] is written **ç** [s] before **o** or **u** (§ 5, 4).

Like **recevoir:**

apercevoir, *perceive* décevoir, *deceive* percevoir, *collect taxes*
concevoir, *conceive*

214. Devoir, *to owe*

1. *Infinitive.* **devoir;** *fut.* devrai, etc.; *condl.* devrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **devant;** *impf. indic.* devais, etc.; *pres. subj.* doive, doives, doive, devions, deviez, doivent.

3. *Past Part.* **dû** (f. **due**, pl. **du**(e)**s**); *past indef.* j'ai dû, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **dois,** dois, doit, devons, devez, doivent; *impve.* ——.

5. *Past Def.* **dus,** dus, dut, dûmes, dûtes, durent; *impf. subj.* dusse, **dusses,** dût, dussions, dussiez, dussent.

Note. — **Devoir** follows the **recevoir** model, but, as its forms present some difficulty, they have been given in full.

Like **devoir:**

redevoir, *still owe*

215. Asseoir, *to seat*

1. *Infinitive.* **asseoir;** *fut.* assiérai, etc., *or* asseyerai, etc., *or* assoirai, etc.; *condl.* assiérais, etc., *or* asseyerais, etc., *or* assoirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **asseyant** *or* **assoyant;** *impf. indic.* asseyais, etc., *or* assoyais, etc.; *pres. subj.* asseye, asseyes, asseye, asseyions, asseyiez, asseyent, *or* assoie, assoies, assoie, assoyions, assoyiez, assoient.

3. *Past Part.* **assis;** *past indef.* j'ai assis, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **assieds,** assieds, assied, asseyons, asseyez, asseyent, *or* **assois,** assois, assoit, assoyons, assoyez, assoient; *impve.* assieds, asseyons, asseyez, *or* assois, assoyons, assoyez.

5. *Past Def.* **assis,** assis, assit, assîmes, assîtes, assirent; *impf. subj.* assisse, assisses, assît, assissions, assissiez, assissent.

Like **asseoir:**

s'asseoir, *sit down* se rasseoir, *sit down again* * messeoir, *fit badly*
rasseoir, *reseat, calm* * seoir, *be becoming* † surseoir, *suspend, reprieve*

* Used in third person of the following: *Pres. indic.* sied, siéent (messied, messiéent); *impf. indic.* seyait, seyaient (messeyait, messeyaient), *pres. subj.* siée, siéent (messiée, messiéent); *fut.* siéra, siéront (messiéra, messiéront); *condl.* siérait, siéraient (messiérait, messiéraient).

† Like the forms in **oi** (**oy**) of **asseoir,** but *fut.* and *condl.* **surseoirai**(s)

216. Déchoir, *to decline*, etc.

1. *Infinitive.* **déchoir**; *fut.* décherrai, etc.; *condl.* décherrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* ——; *impf. indic.* ——; *pres. subj.* déchoie, déchoies, déchoie, déchoyions, déchoyiez, déchoient.
3. *Past Part.* **déchu**; *past indef.* j'ai déchu *or* je suis déchu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **déchois,** déchois, déchoit, déchoyons, déchoyez, déchoient; *impve.* déchois, déchoyons, déchoyez.
5. *Past Def.* **déchus,** déchus, déchut, déchûmes, déchûtes, déchurent; *impf. subj.* déchusse, déchusses, déchût, déchussions, déchussiez, déchussent.

Like **déchoir:**

* choir, *fall* * rechoir, *fall again*

* Hardly used beyond the infin. and comp. tenses.

217. Échoir, *to fall due*, etc.

1. *Infinitive.* **échoir**; *fut.* il écherra; * *condl.* il écherrait.*
2. *Pres. Part.* **échéant**; *impf. indic.* il échoyait; *pres. subj.* il échoie.
3. *Past Part.* **échu**; *past indef.* je suis échu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* ——, ——, échoit *or* échet, ——, ——, échoient *or* échéent; *impve.* ——.
5. *Past Def.* ——, ——, il **échut**; ——, ——, ils échurent; *impf. subj.* il échût.

* Or regular: **il échoira(it).**

218. Falloir, *must*, etc. (impers.)

1. *Infinitive.* **falloir**; *fut.* il faudra; *condl.* il faudrait.
2. *Pres. Part.* ——; *impf. indic.* il fallait; *pres. subj.* **il faille.**
3. *Past Part.* **fallu**; *past indef.* il a fallu.
4. *Pres. Indic.* il **faut**; *impve.* ——.
5. *Past Def.* il **fallut**; *impf. subj.* il fallût.

219. Mouvoir, *to move, drive*

1. *Infinitive.* **mouvoir**; *fut.* mouvrai, etc.; *condl.* **mouvrais, etc.**
2. *Pres. Part.* **mouvant**; *impf. indic.* mouvais, etc.; *pres. subj.* meuve, meuves, meuve, mouvions, mouviez, meuvent.
3. *Past Part.* **mû** (f. **mue,** pl. **mu(e)s**); *past indef.* **j'ai mû,** etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **meus,** meus, meut, mouvons, **mouvez,** meuvent; *impve.* meus, mouvons, mouvez.

5. *Past Def.* **mus,** mus, mut, mûmes, mûtes, **murent;** *impf. subj.* musse, musses, mût, mussions, mussiez, mussent.

Obs.: Stem-vowel becomes **eu** wherever stressed.

Like **mouvoir:**

* émouvoir, *arouse* * promouvoir, *promote*

* Past participle has no circumflex accent.

220. Pleuvoir, *to rain* (impers.)

1. *Infinitive.* **pleuvoir;** *fut.* il pleuvra; *condl.* il pleuvrait.
2. *Pres. Part.* **pleuvant;** *impf. indic.* il pleuvait; *pres. subj.* il pleuve
3. *Past Part.* **plu;** *past indef.* il a plu.
4. *Pres. Indic.* il **pleut;** *impve.* ——.
5. *Past Def.* il **plut;** *impf. subj.* il plût.

221. Pouvoir, *to be able,* etc.

1. *Infinitive.* **pouvoir;** *fut.* pourrai, etc.; *condl.* pourrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **pouvant;** *impf. indic.* pouvais, etc.; *pres. subj.* puisse, puisses, puisse, puissions, puissiez, puissent.
3. *Past Part.* **pu;** *past indef.* j'ai pu.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **puis** *or* **peux,** peux, peut, pouvons, pouvez, peuvent; *impve.* ——.
5. *Past Def.* **pus,** pus, put, pûmes, pûtes, purent; *impf. subj.* pusse, pusses, pût, pussions, pussiez, pussent.

Obs.: The first sing. pres. indic. in negation is usually **je ne peux pas** *or* **je ne puis;** in questions, only **puis-je ?** otherwise **puis** or **peux.**

222. Savoir, *to know,* etc.

1. *Infinitive.* **savoir;** *fut.* saurai, etc.; *condl.* saurais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **sachant;** *impf. indic.* savais, etc.; *pres. subj.* sache, saches, sache, sachions, sachiez, sachent.
3. *Past Part.* **su;** *past indef.* j'ai su, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **sais** [se], sais, sait, savons, savez, savent; *impve.* sache, sachons, sachez.
5. *Past Def.* **sus,** sus, sut, sûmes, sûtes, surent; *impf. subj.* susse, susses, sût, sussions, sussiez, sussent.

223. Valoir, *to be worth*

1. *Infinitive.* **valoir;** *fut.* vaudrai, etc.; *condl.* vaudrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **valant;** *impf. indic.* valais, etc.: *pres. subj.* vaille, **vailles, vaille, valions, valiez,** vaillent.

3. *Past Part.* **valu**; *past indef.* j'ai valu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **vaux,** vaux, vaut, valons, valez, **valent**; *impve.* vaux, valons, valez.

5. *Past Def.* **valus,** valus, valut, valûmes, valûtes, valurent; *impf. subj.* valusse, valusses, valût, valussions, valussiez, valussent.

Like **valoir:**

équivaloir, *be equivalent* * prévaloir, *prevail* † chaloir
revaloir, *pay back, return like for like*

* *Pres. subj.* **prévale,** etc.

† Hardly used beyond, **Il ne me chaut de,** *I care not for.*

224. Voir, *to see*

1. *Infinitive.* **voir**; *fut.* verrai, etc.; *condl.* **verrais,** etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **voyant**; *impf. indic.* voyais, etc.; *pres. subj.* voie, voies, voie, voyions, voyiez, voient.

3. *Past Part.* **vu**; *past indef.* j'ai vu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **vois,** vois, voit, voyons, voyez, voient; *impve.* vois, voyons, voyez.

5. *Past Def.* **vis,** vis, vit, vîmes, vîtes, virent; *impf. subj.* visse, visses, vît, vissions, vissiez, vissent.

Like **voir:**

entrevoir, *catch sight of* * pourvoir, *provide* † prévoir, *foresee*
revoir, *see again* * dépourvoir, *strip, leave destitute*

* *Past def.* **-vus,** etc.; *impf. subj.* **-vusse,** etc.; *fut.* and *condl.* **-voirai(s),** regular.

† *Fut.* and *condl.* **-voirai(s),** etc., regular.

225. Vouloir, *to will,* etc.

1. *Infinitive.* **vouloir**; *fut.* voudrai, etc.; *condl.* voudrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **voulant**; *impf. indic.* voulais, etc.; *pres. subj.* veuille, veuilles, veuille, voulions, vouliez, veuillent.

3. *Past Part.* **voulu**; *past indef.* j'ai voulu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **veux,** veux, veut, voulons, voulez, veulent; *impve.* veux, voulons, voulez.

5. *Past Def.* **voulus,** voulus, voulut, voulûmes, voulûtes, voulurent; *impf. subj.* voulusse, voulusses, voulût, voulussions, voulussiez, voulussent.

Obs.: Stem-vowel becomes **eu** whenever it is stressed.

Note. — The regular *impve.* **veux, voulons, voulez** is rare; **veuillez** = *have the kindness to* generally serves as second plural imperative.

226. Reference List of Irregular Verbs

NOTE. — Each verb in the list is referred to the section in which its irregularity is explained. For verbs in **-cer, -ger,** see § 156; for verbs in **-yer,** § 157; for verbs with stem-vowel **e** or **é,** § 158; for verbs in **-andre, -endre, -erdre, -ondre, -ordre,** § 210.

A

abattre.....§ 180
absoudre..... 203
abstenir..... 177
abstraire..... 208
accourir..... 164
accroire..... 191
accueillir..... 165
acquérir..... 162
adjoindre..... 190
admettre..... 198
advenir..... 178
aller..... 160
apercevoir..... 213
apparaître..... 188
apparoir..... 188
appartenir..... 177
apprendre..... 202
assaillir..... 165
asseoir..... 215
astreindre..... 190
atteindre..... 190
attraire..... 208
avenir..... 178
avoir..... 154

B

battre..... 180
bénir..... 163
boire..... 181
bouillir..... 166
braire..... 208
bruire..... 182

C

ceindre.....§ 190
chaloir..... 223
choir..... 216
circoncire..... 187
circonscrire..... 194
circonvenir..... 178
clore..... 183
combattre..... 180
commettre..... 198
comparaître..... 188
comparoir..... 188
complaire..... 201
comprendre..... 202
compromettre... 198
concevoir..... 213
conclure..... 184
concourir..... 164
conduire..... 185
confire..... 187
conjoindre..... 190
connaître..... 188
conquérir..... 162
consentir..... 166
construire..... 185
contenir..... 177
contraindre..... 190
contredire..... 193
contrefaire..... 195
contrevenir..... 178
convaincre..... 209
convenir..... 178
coudre..... 189
courir.....§ 164
courre..... 164
couvrir..... 176
craindre..... 190
croire..... 191
croître..... 192
cueillir..... 165
cuire..... 185

D

débattre..... 180
décevoir..... 213
déchoir..... 216
déclore..... 183
déconfire..... 187
déconstruire.... 185
découdre..... 189
découvrir..... 176
décrire..... 194
décroire..... 191
dédire..... 193
déduire..... 185
défaillir..... 167
défaire..... 195
déjoindre..... 190
démentir..... 166
démettre..... 198
départir..... 166
dépeindre..... 190
déplaire..... 201
dépourvoir..... 224
déprendre..... 202
désapprendre... 202

desservir..... § 166
déteindre..... 190
détenir..... 177
détruire..... 185
devenir..... 178
dévêtir..... 179
devoir..... 214
dire..... 193
disconvenir..... 178
discourir..... 164
disjoindre..... 190
disparaître..... 188
dissoudre..... 203
distraire..... 208
dormir..... 166

E

ébouillir..... 166
échoir..... 217
éclore..... 183
éconduire..... 185
écrire..... 194
élire..... 197
emboire..... 181
émettre..... 198
émoudre..... 199
émouvoir..... 219
empreindre..... 190
enceindre..... 190
enclore..... 183
encourir..... 164
endormir..... 166
enduire..... 185
enfreindre..... 190
enfuir..... 170
enjoindre..... 190
enquérir..... 162
ensuivre..... 206
entremettre..... 198
entreprendre..... 202
entretenir..... 177
entrevoir..... 224
entr'ouvrir..... § 176
envoyer..... 161
épreindre..... 190
éprendre..... 202
équivaloir..... 223
éteindre..... 190
être..... 154
étreindre..... 190
exclure..... 184
extraire..... 208

F

faillir..... 167
faire..... 195
falloir..... 218
feindre..... 190
férir..... 168
fleurir..... 169
forclore..... 183
forfaire..... 195
frire..... 196
fuir..... 170

G

geindre..... 190
gésir..... 171

H

haïr..... 172

I

imboire..... 181
inclure..... 184
induire..... 185
inscrire..... 194
instruire..... 185
interdire..... 193
intervenir..... 178
introduire..... 185
issir..... 173

J

joindre..... 190

L

lire..... 197
luire..... 185

M

maintenir..... § 177
maudire..... 193
méconnaître..... 188
médire..... 193
méfaire..... 195
mentir..... 166
méprendre..... 202
messeoir..... 215
mettre..... 198
moudre..... 199
mourir..... 174
mouvoir..... 219

N

naître..... 200
nuire..... 185

O

obtenir..... 177
offrir..... 176
oindre..... 190
omettre..... 198
ouïr..... 175
ouvrir..... 176

P

paître..... 188
paraître..... 188
parcourir..... 164
parfaire..... 195
partir..... 166
parvenir..... 178
peindre..... 190
percevoir..... 213
permettre..... 198
plaindre..... 190
plaire..... 201
pleuvoir..... 220
poindre..... 190
poursuivre..... 206
pourvoir..... 224
pouvoir..... 221
prédire..... 193

prendre..... § 202
prescrire..... 194
pressentir..... 166
prévaloir..... 223
prévenir..... 178
prévoir..... 224
produire..... 185
promettre..... 198
promouvoir..... 219
proscrire..... 194
provenir..... 178

Q

querir } 162
quérir }

R

rabattre..... 180
rapprendre..... 202
rasseoir..... 215
ratteindre..... 190
ravoir..... 212
reboire..... 181
rebouillir..... 166
recevoir..... 213
rechoir..... 216
reclure..... 184
reconduire..... 185
reconnaître..... 188
reconquérir..... 162
reconstruire..... 185
recoudre..... 189
recourir..... 164
recouvrir..... 176
récrire..... 194
recueillir..... 165
recuire..... 185
redéfaire..... 195
redevenir..... 178
redevoir..... 214
redire..... 193
redormir..... 166
réduire..... 185
réélire..... § 197
refaire..... 195
rejoindre..... 190
relire..... 197
reluire..... 185
remettre..... 198
remoudre..... 199
rémoudre..... 199
renaître..... 200
rendormir..... 166
rentraire..... 208
renvoyer..... 161
repaître..... 188
reparaître..... 188
repartir..... 166
repeindre..... 190
repentir..... 166
reprendre..... 202
reproduire..... 185
repromettre..... 198
requérir..... 162
résoudre..... 203
ressentir..... 166
ressortir..... 166
ressouvenir..... 178
restreindre..... 190
reteindre..... 190
retenir..... 177
retraire..... 208
revaloir..... 223
revenir..... 178
revêtir..... 179
revivre..... 211
revoir..... 224
rire..... 204
rouvrir..... 176

S

saillir..... 165
satisfaire..... 195
savoir..... 222
secourir..... 164
séduire..... § 185
sentir..... 166
seoir..... 215
servir..... 166
sortir..... 166
souffrir..... 176
soumettre..... 198
sourdre..... 205
sourire..... 204
souscrire..... 194
soustraire..... 208
soutenir..... 177
souvenir..... 178
subvenir..... 178
suffire..... 187
suivre..... 206
surfaire..... 195
surprendre..... 202
surseoir..... 215
survenir..... 178
survivre..... 211

T

taire..... 201
teindre..... 190
tenir..... 177
tistre..... 207
traduire..... 185
traire..... 208
transcrire..... 194
transmettre..... 198
tressaillir..... 165

V

vaincre..... 209
valoir..... 223
vendre..... 210
venir..... 178
vêtir..... 179
vivre..... 211
voir..... 224
vouloir..... 225

USE OF AUXILIARY VERBS

227. **Avoir** + the past participle forms the compound tenses of all transitive and of most intransitive verbs (cf. § 155).

228. **Être** + the past participle forms the compound tenses of all reflexive verbs (§ 242), and of the following intransitives denoting motion or change of condition (cf. § 155):

aller, *go*
arriver, *arrive*
décéder, *die*
descendre, *descend*
échoir, *fall due*
éclore, *hatch out*
entrer, *enter, go (come) in*
monter, *go up*
mourir, *die*
naître, *be born*
partir, *set out*
remonter, *go up again*
rentrer, *go in again*
rester, *remain*
retourner, *go back*
sortir, *go out*
tomber, *fall*
venir, *come*

So also, the following compounds of **venir**:

devenir, *become*
redevenir, *become again*
intervenir, *intervène*
parvenir, *attain*
provenir, *proceed*
revenir, *come back*
survenir, *supervene*

229. 1. **Avoir** or **être** + the past participle forms the compound tenses of a number of intransitive verbs, the general distinction being that **avoir,** when so used, denotes action, while **être** denotes state or condition resulting from action:

Il a passé par Lyon.	He went by way of Lyons.
C'est passé de mode.	It is out of fashion.
Elle a grandi bien vite.	She grew up very fast.
Elle est grandie.	She is grown up.

2. Reference list of verbs with **avoir** or **être**:

aborder, *land*
accourir, *run to*
apparaître, *appear*
baisser, *fall, decline*
cesser, *cease*
changer, *change*
croître, *grow*
déborder, *overflow*
déchoir, *decay*
décroître, *decrease*
dégénérer, *degenerate*
demeurer, *remain*
disparaître, *disappear*
échapper, *escape*
échouer, *be stranded, fail*
embellir, *grow handsomer*
empirer, *grow worse*
expirer, *expire*
grandir, *grow up*
passer, *pass*
réchapper, *escape again*
repasser, *pass again*
sonner, *strike, toll*
vieillir, *grow old*

a. Any verb in the list, used transitively, must, of course, take **avoir** (§ 227):

Il m'*a* passé la plume.	He handed me the pen.
***Avez*-vous rentré votre blé ?**	Have you taken in your wheat?
Ils *ont* descendu le tableau.	They have taken down the picture.

b. The meaning also determines the auxiliary in a few other cases:

Avoir	**Être**
convenir, *suit, become*	convenir, *agree*
disconvenir, *not to suit, be discordant*	disconvenir, *deny*
repartir, *reply*	repartir, *go away again*
Nous *sommes* convenus du prix.	We are (have) agreed on the price.
Le prix ne m'*a* pas convenu.	The price did not suit me.

USE OF VERB PHRASES

230. Auxiliary Function. Several verbs, when followed by an infinitive, have a sort of auxiliary function, and serve to form verb phrases of various values, modal, temporal, etc.:

1. **Vouloir** = *will, wish to, want to, desire to,* etc.:

Je ne veux pas rester.	I will not remain.
Il voudrait (bien) le savoir.	He would like to know it.
Elle n'a pas voulu m'écouter.	She would not listen to me.
Il aurait voulu le faire.	He would have liked to do so.
Veuillez le faire.	Be so good as to do so.

a. Distinguish from 'will' of simple futurity:

Elle vous écoutera.	She will listen to you.

2. **Devoir** = *ought, should, must, be to, have to, be obliged to, intend to,* etc., varies in force in different tenses:

Present: **je *dois* rester.**	I am to (have to, intend to, must) remain.
Imperfect: **je *devais* parler.**	I was to (had to, etc.) speak.
Future: **je *devrai* revenir.**	I shall have to (be obliged to) come back.
Conditional: **je *devrais* écrire.**	I ought to (should) write.
Past Indefinite: **j'*ai dû* m'arrêter.**	I have had to (been obliged to) stop, must have stopped.

Past Definite: je ***dus*** revenir.	I had to come back.
Conditional Anterior: ***j'aurais dû*** savoir.	I ought to have (should have) known.

3. **Pouvoir** = *can, be able to, be permitted to, may,* etc.:

Il ne pouvait pas porter le sac.	He could not carry the sack.
Puis-je aller à la ville?	May I go to town?
Ils auraient pu le faire.	They could (might) have done it.
Je pourrais le faire, si je voulais.	I could do it if I would.
Pouvaient-ils en trouver?	Could they find any?
Pourrais-je vous demander?	Might I ask you?

4. **Savoir** = *know how to, can,* etc.:

Elle sait chanter et danser.	She can sing and dance.
Il ne sait pas lire.	He can't read.

a. Distinguish **savoir** in this sense from **pouvoir**:

Elle est enrouée et ne ***peut*** pas chanter ce soir.	She is hoarse and cannot sing this evening.

b. The conditional with **ne** has peculiar idiomatic force:

Je ***ne saurais*** le croire.	I cannot believe it.

5. **Oser** = *dare:*

Je n'ose pas le lui dire.	I dare not tell him so.

NOTE. — The above five verbs are sometimes called 'Modal Auxiliaries.

6. **Faire** = *make, cause to, cause to be, have, order, order to be,* etc.:

J'ai fait étudier les enfants.	I have made the children study.
Il les fera écouter.	He will make them listen.
Il s'est fait faire un habit.	He had a coat made for himself.

a. A governed substantive follows the infinitive, but a governed conjunctive personal pronoun (not reflexive) goes with **faire**:

Faites venir le domestique.	Have the servant come.
Faites-***le*** venir.	Have him come.

b. If the infinitive with **faire** have a direct object, the personal object of **faire** must be indirect (cf. § 293, 2, *a*):

Je fis écrire mon ***fils***.	I had my son write.
Je fis écrire un devoir ***à*** mon fils.	I made my son write an exercise.
Faites-le-***lui*** écrire.	Make him write it.
Je le ***leur*** fis voir.	I showed them it.

c. Possible ambiguity is sometimes avoided by **par**:

Il fit porter le sac *par* le guide. He had the sack carried by the guide.

d. Note the (seeming) passive force of a transitive infinitive after **faire**:

Je ferai écrire une lettre. I shall have a letter written.

7. **Laisser** = *let*, is in construction somewhat like **faire**:

Laissez écrire les enfants. Let the children write.
Laissez-*leur* (*or* ***-les***) **écrire un devoir.** Let them write an exercise.

8. The present and imperfect of **aller** + an infinitive give a kind of immediate future, as also in English:

Il va l'acheter. He is going to (is about to) buy it.
Nous allions nous arrêter. We were about to stop.
Il allait se noyer. He was on the point of drowning.

9. Similarly the present and imperfect of **venir de** + an infinitive give a kind of immediate past:

Je viens de le voir. I have just seen him.
Il venait de l'entendre. He had just heard it.

AGREEMENT OF VERB AND SUBJECT

231. General Rule. The verb agrees with its subject in number and person:

Les hommes sont mortels. Men are mortal.
Tout le monde est ici. Everybody is here.
Toi et moi (nous) ne faisons qu'un. You and I are but one.

232. Simple Subject. Special rules for the agreement of a verb with one subject are:

1. A collective subject singular, when not followed by **de**, or when followed by **de** + the singular, has regularly a singular verb:

Le peuple français est brave. The French people are brave.
Le sénat l'a décidé. The senate has (*or* have) decided it.
La plupart du monde le croit. Most people believe it.

2. A collective subject singular + **de** + a plural takes a plural verb, unless the sense of the collective be dominant:

Une nuée de sauvages l'attaquèrent.	A host of savages attacked him.
Une nuée de traits l'obscurcit.	A cloud of arrows hid him.
Une partie des soldats restent.	A part of the soldiers remain.
Une partie des bourgeois protesta.	A part of the citizens protested.
Cette sorte de poires est chère.	This sort of pears is dear.

a. When so used, adverbs of quantity, *e.g.*, **beaucoup, peu,** etc., the nouns **nombre, quantité,** without article, and **la plupart,** are regularly plural in sense; so also, **force:**

Beaucoup de gens pensent ainsi.	Many people think so.
Peu de gens le savent.	Few people know it.
Que d'ennemis m'attaquent!	How many enemies attack me!
Nombre d'Athéniens avaient fui.	Many Athenians had fled.
La plupart des soldats périrent.	Most of the soldiers perished.
Force sots le tenteront.	Many a fool will try it.

b. **Beaucoup, peu, combien,** used absolutely, are singular or plural according to the sense of the **de** clause implied; **la plupart** when so used is generally plural:

Beaucoup (*sc.* **de gens**) **le croient.**	Many (*sc.* people) believe it.
Peu (*sc.* **de ceci**) **me suffira.**	Little (*sc.* of this) will suffice me.
La plupart votèrent contre.	The majority voted nay.

c. **Plus d'un** is singular, unless reciprocal or repeated, and **moins de deux** is plural:

Plus d'un témoin a déposé.	More than one witness has sworn.
Moins de deux ne valent rien.	Less than two is no use.
Plus d'un fripon se dupent l'un l'autre.	More rogues than one cheat each other.
Plus d'un officier, plus d'un général furent tués.	More than one officer, more than one general was killed.

3. **Ce** requires a plural verb only when the predicate is a plural noun, a plural pronoun of the third person, or when **ce** refers to a preceding plural:

Sont-ce vos amis? — Ce sont eux.	Is it your friends? It is they.
Ce doivent être les siens.	Those must be his.
Ce sont nos semblables.	They are our fellow-creatures.
Ses désirs, ce sont sa loi.	His desires are his law.

But: **C'est moi; c'est toi; c'est lui; c'*est* nous; c'*est* vous.**

a. The third singular is often used for the third plural in this construction, more especially in familiar language or to avoid harsh locutions.

Est-ce les Anglais que je crains?	Is it the English that I fear?
C'est eux qui l'ont fait.	It is they who did it.
C'est des bêtises.	That is stupidity.
Ne fût-ce que quelques lignes.	If it were only a few lines.

b. The verb with **ce** is singular when the predicate is a numeral + a noun of collective force:

C'est dix heures qui sonnent.	It is ten o'clock that is striking.

c. **Si ce n'est** is always singular:

Qui, si ce n'est nos parents?	Who, if it is not our parents?

4. **Il** (impers.) always has a singular verb, whatever be the logical subject:

Il est arrivé bien des choses.	There have happened many things.
Il en reste trois livres.	There remain three pounds of it.

a. **Importer** is construed personally or impersonally:

Qu'importe (importent) les dépens?	What matters the cost?

233. Composite Subject. A verb common to two or more subjects is regularly plural; when the subjects differ in person, the verb agrees with the first person, if one subject is of the first person, otherwise with the second:

Toi et moi nous ne faisons qu'un.	You and I are but one.
Sa sœur et lui sont là.	His sister and he are there.

a. With subjects of different person, pleonastic **nous, vous** is generally used:

Vous et lui vous l'avez vu.	You and he have seen it.

b. With **ou** = *or*, **ni . . . ni** = *neither . . . nor*, the verb is singular if the sense is clearly alternative, *i.e.*, the one subject excluding the other, otherwise generally plural; **l'un ou l'autre** is always singular:

Sa vie ou sa mort en dépend.	His life or death depends on it.
Ni lui ni votre frère n'aura ce poste.	Neither he nor your brother will have that post.
Ni l'un ni l'autre ne sont bons.	Neither is good.
L'une ou l'autre viendra.	The one or the other will come.
L'un ou l'autre jour me convient.	Either day suits me.

c. If the subjects (generally without et) are synonymous, or nearly so, or form a climax, the verb may be singular:

Sa dignité, sa noblesse frappa tout le monde.	His dignity, his nobility struck everybody.
L'heure, le lieu, le bras se choisit aujourd'hui.	The hour, the place, the arm are chosen to-day.
Une excuse, un mot le désarme.	An excuse, a word disarms him.

d. When the subjects are recapitulated by a word in the singular, *e.g.*, **tout, rien,** etc., the verb is singular agreeing with it:

Remords, crainte, périls, *rien* ne m'*a* retenue.	Remorse, fear, dangers, nothing deterred me.

e. With an intervening clause, *e.g.*, **ainsi que, plus que,** etc., the subject is usually only apparently composite:

La vertu, plus que le savoir, élève l'homme.	Virtue, more than knowledge, elevates man.

f. Even with **et** the sense is occasionally singular, or distributive, or alternative, and a singular verb is required:

Le bien et le mal est en ta main.	Good and ill are in thy hand.
L'été est revenu et le soleil.	Summer has returned and the sun.
Tombe Argos et ses murs.	Let Argos and its walls fall.

234. Relative Subject. The verb agrees with the relative pronoun subject, which is itself of the number and person of the antecedent (see also Relative Pronoun, § 396):

C'est nous qui l'avons fait.	It is we who have done it.
Dieux (vous) qui m'exaucez !	(Ye) Gods who hear me !

POSITION OF SUBJECT

235. General Rule. The subject usually precedes the verb. Exceptions to this rule are noted in the following sections.

236. Interrogative Word Order. Direct interrogation is expressed as follows:

1. A personal pronoun subject (also **ce** or **on**) follows the verb, and is joined to it by a hyphen:

Parlez-*vous* français?	Do you speak **French?**
Est-*ce* lui?	Is it he?

a. The letter **-t-** is inserted after a third singular with final vowel before a pronoun with initial vowel:

Parla-*t*-elle? Parle-*t*-on?	Did she speak? Do they speak?

b. A final **e** of the first singular takes acute accent, but with the sound of [ɛ]:

Donné-je? [dɔnɛːʒ]	Do I give?

2. A noun subject precedes the verb, and is repeated after it by a pleonastic pronoun; so also, possessive, demonstrative, and indefinite pronouns:

Cet homme parle-t-*il* anglais?	Does that man speak English?
Cela est-*il* vrai?	Is that true?
Les miens ne sont-*ils* pas bons?	Are mine not good?

3. Questions are also asked by interrogative words (adjectives, pronouns, adverbs):

Quel poète a écrit cela?	What poet wrote that?
À quelle heure partira son ami?	At what time will his friend go?
Qui est là? Qu'y a-t-il?	Who is there? What is the matter?
Lequel des deux est parti?	Which of the two has gone?
Combien coûte cela? / ***Combien* cela coûte-t-*il*?**	How much does that cost?

a. The word order of either of the last two examples is commonly permissible for noun subject under this rule.

b. The word order of the last example is obligatory when the verb has a direct object (not reflexive), or a prepositional complement, or when ambiguity might arise; this arrangement is preferable with **pourquoi?** or when a compound tense is used:

Où le roi tient-il sa cour?	Where does the king hold his court?
De quoi le roi parle-t-il?	Of what is the king speaking?
Quel prix le roi paya-t-il?	What price did the king pay?
Jean qui aime-t-il?	Whom does John love?
Pourquoi mon ami part-il?	Why does my friend go?
Quand ce roi a-t-il été décapité?	When was this king beheaded?

4. By prefixing **est-ce que?** a statement becomes a question without change in its word order:

Est-ce que vous partez?	Are you going away?
Quand est-ce que vous partez?	When are you going away?

a. The use of **est-ce que?** is permissible with all forms of the verb, but is obligatory with a monosyllabic first singular (except **ai-je? suis-je? dis-je? dois-je? fais-je? puis-je? sais-je? vais-je? vois-je?**), and is preferable to avoid forms like **donné-je?**:

Est-ce que je sers, moi?	Do I serve?
Est-ce que je parle de lui?	Do I speak of him?

5. Interrogation is also expressed by mere inflection of the voice, without change in word order:

Vous partez déjà?	You are going already?

237. Rhetorical Inversions. Owing to rhetorical considerations, the noun subject not uncommonly follows the verb, or the sentence assumes interrogative form, though not interrogative, as follows:

1. In interjected remarks explanatory of direct quotation, as in English:

Fais comme tu voudras, dit-il.	Do as you please, said he.
Que veux-tu? demanda la mère.	What do you wish? asked the mother.

2. In optative clauses when **que** is omitted, and also after the rare omission of **si,** *if:*

Vive le roi! Périsse le tyran!	(Long) live the king! Perish the tyrant!
Voulait-il de l'argent, son père lui en donnait toujours.	If he wished money, his father always gave him some.
Ne fût-ce que pour cela.	If it were only for that.

3. Very commonly after certain adverbs and adverbial locutions:

Du moins devrait-il attendre.	He should at least wait.
À peine le jour fut-il arrivé.	Hardly had the day arrived.

Such are:

à peine, *hardly*	* peut-être, *perhaps*	toutefois, *however*
aussi, *hence*	encore, *besides*	en vain, *in vain*
aussi bien, *moreover*	toujours, *however*	rarement, *rarely*
au moins, *at least*	tout au plus, *at most*	probablement, *probably*
du moins, *at least*	d'autant plus, *the more*	etc.

* **Peut-être que** does not cause inversion: **Peut-être qu'il le fera,** *Perhaps he will do so.*

4. Sometimes in exclamatory sentences:

Avons-nous crié!	Didn't we shout!

5. When a predicate adjective heads the phrase:

Telle fut la fin de Carthage.	Such was the end of Carthage.
Quelque riche que soit cet homme.	However rich that man is.

NOTE. — All the above inversions, except the last given, may take place whatever be the nature of the subject, but the following rules do not usually hold good for a personal pronoun subject.

6. Very commonly in a relative clause, especially when a second relative clause qualifies its subject:

Il fera ce que peut faire un homme qui se respecte.	He will do what a man can who respects himself.
Dites-moi ce qu'a fait votre ami.	Tell me what your friend did.
Dis-moi où est ton ami.	Tell me where your friend is.

NOTE. — The relative is unstressed (proclitic), and naturally stands next the verb which governs it.

7. Commonly after **c'est que,** and in the second member of a comparative sentence:

C'est en vous qu'espèrent tous.	It is in you that all hope.
J'en ai plus que n'en a mon ami.	I have more of it than my friend has.

8. Commonly when an adverb, other than those mentioned in (3) above, *e.g.*, **ainsi, bientôt, ici, là,** etc., or an adverbial phrase heads the sentence:

Ainsi va le monde.	So goes the world.
Bientôt viendra le printemps.	Spring will soon come.
À la tête de l'armée fut porté l'étendard sacré.	At the head of the army was carried the sacred standard.

9. Quite exceptionally, when the verb comes first:

Viendra un autre.	(Along) will come another.

NOTE. — No inversion of noun subject usually occurs if the verb has a direct object or a prepositional complement.

238. Indirect Interrogation. It has no special rules of word order apart from those of the clause in which it occurs:

Dis-moi ce qu'il a dit.	Tell me what he said.

THE PASSIVE VOICE

239. Formation. The passive voice of a transitive verb is formed from the auxiliary **être** + the past participle, which agrees with the subject of the verb in gender and number:

PRES. INFIN. Être loué(e) *or* loué(e)s, *to be praised*
PERF. INFIN. Avoir été loué(e) *or* loué(e)s, *to have been praised*
PRES. PART. Étant loué(e) *or* loué(e)s, *being praised*
PERF. PART. Ayant été loué(e) *or* loué(e)s, *having been praised*

PRESENT INDICATIVE		PAST INDEFINITE INDICATIVE	
I am (I am being) praised, etc.		*I have been (I was) praised, etc.*	
je suis	loué(e)	j'ai été	loué(e)
tu es		tu as été	
il (elle) est		il (elle) a été	
nous sommes	loué(e)s	nous avons été	loué(e)s
vous êtes		vous avez été	
ils (elles) sont		ils (elles) ont été	etc., etc.

Obs.: 1. The past participle **été** is always invariable. 2. The past participle after **vous** agrees with the sense: **Madame, vous serez méprisée de tous,** *Madam, you will be despised by all.*

240. The Agent. The person by whom the action is done is usually denoted by **par,** when a specific intention or definite volition is implied, and by **de** when the action is habitual, usual, or indefinite, a condition rather than a definite action:

Elle fut saisie *par* le voleur.	She was seized by the thief.
Le général fut suivi de près *par* l'ennemi.	The general was closely followed by the enemy.
La reine était suivie *de* ses dames.	The queen was followed by her ladies.
Ils sont aimés *de* tous.	They are loved by everybody.

241. Remarks. 1. Only transitive verbs regularly have the passive voice, but the intransitive **obéir, désobéir, pardonner** (§ 296, 2) may also be made passive:

Vous êtes pardonnés tous.	You are all pardoned.
Elle est toujours obéie.	She is always obeyed.

2. The passive is less used than in English, especially if the agent be not specified, or if the corresponding French

verb is intransitive, or if an indirect object be present. Substitutes are:

a. A verb with the indefinite pronoun **on**:

On m'a trompé.	I have been deceived.
On me soupçonne.	I am suspected.
On a répondu à ma question.	My question has been answered.
On lui a rendu l'argent.	The money has been given back to him.

b. A reflexive construction:

Ce livre se publie à Paris.	This book is published in Paris.
La guerre se prolongea.	The war was prolonged.
Voilà ce qui se dit.	This (*or* that) is what is being said.

3. A transitive infinitive in French sometimes equals a passive in English, after verbs of 'perceiving,' (**voir,** etc.), after **faire, laisser,** and when **à** + an infinitive is used adjectivally (cf. § 284).

Le ferez-vous vendre?	Will you have it sold?
On entend dire cela.	You hear that said.
Une faute à éviter.	A mistake to be avoided.

THE REFLEXIVE VERB

242. Compound Tenses. The auxiliary **être** + the past participle forms the compound tenses of all reflexive verbs, as follows:

PRES. INFIN. Se flatter, *to flatter oneself*
PERF. INFIN. S'**être** flatté(e) *or* flatté(e)s, *to have flattered oneself*
PRES. PART. Se flattant, *flattering oneself*
PERF. PART. S'**étant** flatté(e) *or* flatté(e)s, *having flattered oneself*

Indicative

PRESENT	PAST INDEFINITE	
I flatter myself, etc.	*I (have) flattered myself, etc.*	
je **me** flatte	je me **suis**	flatté(e)
tu **te** flattes	tu t'**es**	flatté(e)
il(elle) **se** flatte	il (elle) s'**est**	flatté(e)
nous **nous** flattons	nous nous **sommes**	flatté(e)s
vous **vous** flattez	vous vous **êtes**	flatté(e)s
ils (elles) **se** flattent	ils (elles) se **sont**	flatté(e)s etc., etc.

Imperative

Flatter thyself, etc.	*Do not flatter thyself, etc.*
flatte-toi	ne te flatte pas
(qu'il se flatte)	(qu'il ne se flatte pas)
flattons-nous	ne nous flattons pas
flattez-vous	ne vous flattez pas
(qu'ils se flattent)	(qu'ils ne se flattent pas)

NOTES. — 1. **Se flatter, se flattant,** etc., are the infinitive and participial forms found in dictionaries, but **se** must be replaced by **me, te,** etc., according to the sense.

2. Except in the use of **être** as auxiliary, reflexive verbs have no peculiarities of conjugation on account of being reflexive.

243. Reflexive or Reciprocal. A reflexive verb often has reciprocal force, especially in the plural. Ambiguity is generally avoided by some modifying expression:

Elles *se* flattent.	{ They flatter themselves. { They flatter each other.
Elles *se* flattent *l'une l'autre*.	They flatter one another.
On *se* dupe *mutuellement*.	They cheat each other.

244. Agreement of Past Participle. 1. In compound tenses, the past participle of a reflexive agrees in gender and number with the direct object, as in the case of verbs compounded with **avoir:**

Elle *s'*est *écriée*.	She cried out.
Elle *s'*est *dit* à elle-même.	She said to herself.
Ils *se* sont *écrit*.	They wrote to each other.
Elles *se* sont *acheté* des robes.	They bought themselves dresses.

2. Besides the reflexive object, a direct object may precede the verb, and with this object the participle agrees:

Les plumes *qu'*ils se sont achetées. The pens they bought themselves.

NOTES. — 1. The auxiliary **être** is considered as replacing **avoir,** and the above agreements are explained by the general principle (§ 291).

2. The agreement with **vous** is according to the sense: **Vous** *vous* **êtes trompée, madame,** *You were mistaken, madam.*

245. Omission of Reflexive Object. 1. It is always omitted with the past participle used as attributive adjective:

Le temps écoulé. The time past.

2. The infinitives of certain verbs, such as **s'asseoir, se souvenir, se taire,** regularly omit **se** when preceded by **faire**; but modern French has many exceptions.

Faites asseoir vos amis.	Make your friends sit down.
Je vous en ferai souvenir.	I shall remind you of it.
But also: **Il la fit se souvenir de . . .**	He reminded her of . . .

a. A similar omission of **se** sometimes occurs after **laisser, entendre, voir,** etc.

246. Remarks. The reflexive construction is much commoner in French than in English:

1. It often translates the English passive, especially when the agent is not specified:

La bourse s'est retrouvée.	The purse has been recovered.
Cela se raconte partout.	That is being told everywhere.

2. Or it is expressed by an English non-reflexive verb, generally intransitive:

S'arrêter; s'écrier; se porter.	Stop; exclaim; be (of health).
S'asseoir; se hâter; se tromper.	Sit down; hasten; be mistaken.

3. Or the French reflexive + a preposition has the value of an English transitive:

S'approcher de; se douter de.	Approach; suspect.
S'attendre à; se fier à.	Expect; trust.
Se passer de; se souvenir de.	Do without; recollect.

247. S'en Aller. The conjugation of **s'en aller,** *to go away,* presents special difficulty:

Present Indicative	Past Indefinite Indicative
I go away, etc.	*I have gone (I went) away, etc.*
je m'en vais	je m'en suis }
tu t'en vas	tu t'en es } allé(e)
il s'en va	il (elle) s'en est }
nous nous en allons	nous nous en sommes }
vous vous en allez	vous vous en êtes } allé(e)s
ils s'en vont	ils (elles) s'en sont }

Imperative	Imperative Negative
Go away, etc.	*Do not go away, etc.*
va-t'en	ne t'en va pas
(qu'il s'en aille)	(qu'il ne s'en aille pas)
allons-nous-en	ne nous en allons pas
allez-vous-en	ne vous en allez pas
(qu'ils s'en aillent)	(qu'ils ne s'en aillent pas)

Further examples:

Est-ce que je m'en vais?	**Ils ne s'en sont pas allés.**
Vous en allez-vous?	**Ne nous en sommes-nous pas allé(e)s?**
S'en sont-elles allées?	

IMPERSONAL VERBS

248. Conjugation. An impersonal verb, or a verb used as such, is one conjugated, in the third singular only, with the subject **il** = *it, there,* used indefinitely and absolutely, *e.g.*, **tonner,** *to thunder:*

Indicative

Pres. Il tonne, *it thunders*	Past Indf. Il a tonné, *it has thundered*
Impf. Il tonnait, *it thundered*	Plupf. Il avait tonné, *it had thundered*
Past Def. Il tonna, *it thundered*	Past Ant. Il eut tonné, *it had thundered*

etc., etc., like the third singular of **donner**

Note. — Apart from being limited to the third singular, their conjugation does not differ from that of ordinary verbs. Some are regular, others irregular.

249. Use of Impersonals. 1. Verbs denoting natural phenomena and time are impersonal, as in English:

Il tonne; il a plu; il pleuvra.	It thunders; it rained; it will rain.
Il a gelé hier; il dégèle.	It froze yesterday; it is thawing.
Il est une heure; il est tard.	It is one o'clock; it is late.

Such verbs are:

pleuvoir, *rain*	grêler, *hail*	geler, *freeze*
neiger, *snow*	éclairer, *lighten*	dégeler, *thaw*

2. **Faire** = *make,* is also much used impersonally to describe weather, temperature, etc.:

Quel temps fait-il?	What kind of weather is it?
Il fait beau (temps) ce matin.	It is fine (weather) this morning.
Il a fait bien froid hier.	It was very cold yesterday.
Il faisait du vent aussi.	It was windy too.
Est-ce qu'il fera obscur ce soir?	Will it be dark this evening?
Il fait des éclairs.	It is lightning.

Obs.: Distinguish these from constructions with a personal subject: **Le temps *est* beau,** *The weather is fine;* **L'eau *est* froide,** *The water is cold.*

250. Impersonal *avoir* and *être*. 1. The verb **avoir,** preceded by **y,** used impersonally = *there is, there are, there was, there were,* etc.:

Il y a. Il y a eu. Y a-t-il?	There is. There has been. Is there?
Il n'y a pas. Il n'y a pas eu.	There is not. There has not been.
Y a-t-il eu? N'y a-t-il pas eu?	Has there been? Has there not been?
Y aura-t-il? Il peut y avoir.	Will there be? There may be.

2. **Il est** is sometimes used for **il y a** in this sense:

Il *est* des hommes qui le croient.	There are men who think so.

3. **Il y a** = *there is, there are,* is distinguished from **voilà** = *there is, there are.* **Voilà** answers the question 'where is?' 'where are?' and makes a specific statement about an object to which attention is directed by pointing or the like, while **il y a** does not answer the question 'where is?' 'where are?' and makes a general statement.

Il y a des plumes sur la table.	There are pens on the table.
Voilà les plumes sur la table.	*There* are the pens on the table.

4. **Y avoir** also forms idiomatic expressions of time, reckoned backwards, and of distance:

Ils sont arrivés il y a trois jours.	They came three days ago.
Il y avait trois jours que j'étais là.	I had been there three days.
Combien y a-t-il d'ici à la ville?	How far is it to the city?
Il y a dix milles d'ici à la ville.	It is ten miles from here to the city.

251. Falloir = *be necessary,* expresses the various meanings of *must, be obliged to, have to, need,* as follows:

1. *Must* + infinitive = **falloir + que** and subjunctive:

Il faut que je parte.	I must go.
Il faudra que vous restiez.	You will have to (be obliged to) stay.

2. Or the subject of *must*, etc., if a personal pronoun, may become indirect object of **falloir** + an infinitive:

Il me faudrait rester.	I should be obliged to remain.
Il leur faut faire cela.	They must do that.
Il lui a fallu parler.	He was forced (obliged) to speak.

3. The infinitive construction without indirect object is used in general or indefinite statement:

Il faut faire son devoir.	One must do one's duty.
Il ne faut pas voler.	We must not steal.

4. **Falloir** + an indirect object and a substantive signifies *lack, need:*

Il faut une ardoise à Jean.	John needs a slate.
Il leur faudra cent francs.	They will need a hundred francs.

5. **S'en falloir** = *lack:*

Il s'en faut de beaucoup que l'un vaille l'autre.	The one is not nearly so good as the other.

252. Other Impersonals. 1. Besides **faire** and **avoir,** already noted, many other verbs take a special meaning as impersonals:

De quoi s'agit-il?	What is the matter?
Il est souvent arrivé que, etc.	It has often happened that, etc.
Il vaudra mieux ne rien dire.	It will be better to say nothing.
Il y va de ses jours.	His life is at stake.
Il se peut que je me trompe.	It may be that I am mistaken.

Obs.: Compare the literal meanings: **agir,** *act,* **arriver,** *arrive,* **valoir,** *be worth,* **aller,** *go,* **pouvoir,** *be able.*

2. Many verbs may stand in the third singular with impersonal **il** representing a logical subject, singular or plural, following the verb:

Il viendra un meilleur temps.	There will come a happier time.
Il en reste trois livres.	There remain three pounds of it.
Il est arrivé des messagers.	Messengers have arrived.

253. Omission of *il*. Il is understood in certain phrases, such as:

Reste à savoir.	It remains to be seen.
N'importe.	No matter (it matters not).
Mieux vaut tard que jamais.	Better late than never.

THE INDICATIVE MOOD

254. Use of Indicative. The indicative is the mood of direct or indirect assertion, and of direct or indirect interrogation. It stands both in principal and in subordinate clauses, both affirmative and negative:

Dieu créa le monde.	God created the world.
Moïse dit que Dieu créa le monde.	Moses says that God created the world.
Où allez-vous?	Where are you going?
Dites-moi où vous allez.	Tell me where you are going.
Je le ferais, si je pouvais.	I should do so if I could.

NOTES. — 1. It should be noted especially that the indicative is regularly the mood of indirect discourse and of 'if' clauses.

2. When the verb of a subordinate clause is subjunctive, the mood is determined by the context, and not simply by the fact that the clause is subordinate.

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

255. Periphrastic Forms. Such forms, so common in English, are not used in French:

Je parle.	I speak (am speaking, do speak).
Il a écrit.	He has written (has been writing).
Il disait.	He was saying (used to say, etc.).

256. Elliptical Forms. Ellipsis of part of a verb form is common in English; in French the form is either fully given or entirely avoided:

J'irai. — Moi, je n'irai pas.	I shall go. — I shall not (go).
Il a promis de venir, mais il n'est pas venu.	He promised to come, but he did not (come).

Il est venu. — Vraiment!	He has come. — Has he! (Indeed!)
Vous viendrez, n'est-ce pas?	You will come, will you not?
Il était sorti, n'est-ce pas?	He had gone out, had he not?

257. Present Indicative. The present tense is used:

1. To denote what is happening, including the habitual and the universally true:

Je crois qu'il pleut.	I think it is raining.
Il se lève toujours de bon matin.	He always rises early.
L'homme propose et Dieu dispose.	Man proposes and God disposes.

2. To denote what has happened and still continues, after **il y a . . . que, voici (voilà) . . . que, depuis, depuis quand? depuis . . . que:**

Depuis quand *attendez*-vous?	How long have you been waiting?
Il y a (*or* voici, voilà) trois jours que j'*attends*, *or* j'*attends* depuis trois jours.	I have waited (I have been waiting) for three days.

3. Instead of a past tense in animated narrative:

La nuit approche, l'instant arrive, César se présente, etc.	Night draws on, the moment comes, Cæsar appears, etc.

a. This use is much commoner than in English, especially side by side with past tenses. It is called the 'Historical Present.'

b. **C'*est* . . . *que*** + a past tense = *was . . . that:*

C'*est* là que je l'ai vu.	It was there that I saw him.

4. Instead of a future in familiar style:

Nous partons demain matin.	We go to-morrow morning.

5. As a virtual future after **si** = *if:*

Je serai content, si vous venez.	I shall be glad if you (will) come.

258. Imperfect Indicative. The action or state denoted by the imperfect is in general viewed as being in progress, *i.e.*, as contemporaneous, customary, continued, etc., and it is employed as follows:

1. To denote what was happening, when something else happened or was happening:

Il était nuit, quand je sortis.	It was night when I went out.
Il parlait, pendant que je chantais.	He was talking while I sang.

2. To denote what used to happen:

Il se levait de bon matin.	He used to rise early.
Je parlais souvent de cela.	I often spoke (used to speak, would speak) of that.
Les Romains brûlaient leurs morts.	The Romans were accustomed to burn their dead.

3. To denote what continued to happen:

Son père était négociant et demeurait dans cette rue.	His father was a merchant and lived in this street.

4. To denote what had happened and still continued, after **il y a . . . que, voici (voilà) . . . que, depuis, depuis quand? depuis . . . que** (cf. § 257, 2):

Je le *disais* depuis longtemps.	I had long been saying so.
Voilà un an que je le *disais*.	I had been saying so for a year.

5. In indirect discourse, after a past tense, instead of the present:

Je croyais qu'il revenait.	I thought he was coming back.
Je demandai où il était.	I asked where he was.
But: **Où *est*-il? demandai-je.**	"Where is he?" I asked.

6. Regularly in an 'if' clause when the 'result' clause is conditional:

S'il *venait*, je serais content.	If he came, I should be glad.

7. Occasionally, instead of the conditional anterior in conditional sentences:

Si je ne l'avais pas arrêté, il *tombait* (= serait tombé) du train.	Had I not stopped him he would have fallen from the train.

8. Sometimes instead of the past definite (§ 260):

Un moment après, le père Alphée se dressait, marchait à grands pas, voilà, s'écriait-il, etc.	A moment afterwards, Father Alpheus rose, walked about with great strides, "There," cried he, etc.

259. Past Indefinite. The past indefinite is used:

1. To denote what has happened or has been happening, equivalent to an English tense with 'have,' reference to the present being implied:

J'ai fini mon ouvrage.	I have finished my work.
L'avez-vous vu dernièrement?	Have you seen him lately?
Je l'ai souvent rencontré.	I have often met him.
J'ai chanté toute la matinée.	I have been singing all morning.

2. In familiar style, spoken or written, to denote a past event, without implied reference to the present, or a succession of such past events as mark the progress of a narrative, answering the question 'What happened?' or 'What happened next?' For narrative in the literary style, see § 260:

Ils sont arrivés ce soir.	They arrived this evening.
Je l'ai vu il y a dix ans.	I saw him ten years ago.
De quoi est-il mort?	What did he die of?
J'ai quitté Rome le dix. Puis je suis allé voir des amis à Lyon, j'ai passé quelques jours à Paris, et je suis revenu à Londres hier.	I left Rome on the tenth. Then I visited some friends at Lyons, I spent some days in Paris, and I came back to London yesterday.

3. Occasionally instead of a future anterior:

Attendez, j'ai bientôt fini.	Wait, I shall have finished soon.

260. Past Definite. The past definite denotes a past event, or a succession of such past events as mark the progress of the narrative, answering the question 'What happened?' or 'What happened next?' Its use is largely confined to literary or "book" French, and formal public address. It is not much used in conversation or in easy correspondence:

Dieu *créa* le monde.	God created the world.
La guerre *dura* sept ans.	The war lasted seven years.
On *força* le palais, les scélérats n'*osèrent* pas résister longtemps et ne *songèrent* qu'à fuir. Astarbé *voulut* se sauver dans la foule, mais un soldat la *reconnut;* elle *fut* prise.	They broke into the palace, the villains did not dare to resist long, and only thought of fleeing. Astarbé tried to escape in the crowd, but a soldier recognized her; she was captured.

a. Some verbs have a special force in the past definite:

Être: je *fus*.	To be: I became.
Avoir: j'*eus*.	To have: I received.
Savoir: je *sus*.	To know: I found out (learned).
Connaître: je *connus*.	To know: I realized.

In this force **fus** and **sus** are common, the other two less so.

261. Examples of Narrative. 1. The following examples illustrate the principal uses of the past definite, imperfect, past indefinite, and historical present, in the literary narrative style:

Les Turcs, qui cependant **entouraient** cette maison tout embrasée, **voyaient** avec une admiration mêlée d'épouvante que les Suédois n'en **sortaient** point; mais leur étonnement **fut** encore plus grand lorsqu'ils **virent** ouvrir les portes, et le roi et les siens fondre sur eux en désespérés. Charles et ses principaux officiers **étaient** armés d'épées et de pistolets: chacun **tira** deux coups à la fois à l'instant que la porte s'**ouvrit**; et dans le même clin d'œil, jetant leurs pistolets et s'armant de leurs épées, ils **firent** reculer les Turcs plus de cinquante pas; mais le moment d'après cette petite troupe **fut** entourée: le roi, qui **était** en bottes selon sa coutume, s'**embarrassa** dans ses éperons, et **tomba**; vingt et un janissaires se **jettent** aussitôt sur lui: il **jette** en l'air son épée pour s'épargner la douleur de la rendre; les Turcs l'**emmènent** au quartier du bacha. — *Voltaire.*

Stanislas se **déroba** un jour à dix heures du soir de l'armée suédoise qu'il **commandait** en Poméranie, et **partit** avec le baron Sparre, qui **a été** depuis ambassadeur en Angleterre et en France, et avec un autre colonel: il **prend** le nom d'un Français, nommé Haran, alors major au service de Suède, et qui **est mort** depuis commandant de Dantzick. — *Voltaire.*

2. So nearly identical may be the force of the past definite and the past indefinite, as narrative tenses, that they are often used interchangeably, as in the following extract, taken from a newspaper:

Londres, 5 août. — Hier soir, à onze heures et demie, un incendie **a éclaté** dans l'atelier de composition de la *National Press Agency*. Plusieurs pompes à vapeur **arrivèrent** immédiatement sur le lieu du sinistre, et l'incendie s'**étendit** avec une telle rapidité, que toute la maison **a été** complètement détruite. — *Le Matin.*

262. Pluperfect and Past Anterior. 1. Both denote what 'had happened,' like the English pluperfect:

Lorsque je l'avais (eus) fini.	When I had finished it.

2. The pluperfect is of much commoner occurrence than the past anterior, and is used after **si** = *if*, in conditional clauses, or when custom, continuance, etc., is implied (but cf. §§ 258, 275, *b*):

Si je l'avais vu, je l'aurais dit.	Had I seen it, I should have said so.
J'avais toujours fini avant midi.	I always had finished before noon.

3. The past anterior denotes what had happened immediately before another past event. It is rarely used except after conjunctions of time, such as **lorsque, quand, après que, aussitôt que, ne ... pas plus tôt ... que,** etc.:

Après qu'il eut dîné, il partit.	After he had dined, he set out.

263. Future. The future is used:

1. To denote what will happen:

Ils viendront demain.	They will come to-morrow.
Je les verrai bientôt.	I shall see them soon.
Je ne sais pas s'il viendra.	I know not whether he will come.

a. Distinguish English 'will' of futurity from 'will' of volition, and from 'will' of habitual action:

Il ne *restera* pas.	He will not stay.
Il ne *veut* pas *rester*.	He will not stay.
Ce chasseur *reste* souvent dans les bois pendant des mois entiers.	That hunter will often remain whole months in the woods.

b. Observe the following commonly occurring forms:

Ne voulez-vous pas rester?	Will you not stay?
Voulez-vous que je reste?	Shall I stay?
Je ne resterai pas.	I shall not stay.

2. Regularly in a subordinate clause of implied futurity:

Payez-le quand il viendra.	Pay him when he comes.
Faites comme vous voudrez.	Do as you please.
Tant que je vivrai.	As long as I live.

3. To denote probability, conjecture, or possibility, etc.:

La nef appartient au XIIe siècle, mais le chœur sera du XVe. The nave belongs to the 12th century, but the choir is probably of the 15th.

4. Sometimes with imperative force:

Tu ne tueras point. Thou shalt not kill.
Vous voudrez bien m'écouter. Be good enough to hear me.

a. This use is common in official style (edicts, etc.).

264. Future Anterior. The future anterior is used:

1. To denote what will have happened:

Il aura bientôt fini. He will soon have done.

2. To denote implied futurity (cf. § 263, 2), probability, conjecture, or possibility, etc. (cf. § 263, 3):

Quand vous serez rentré je sortirai. When you have come home, I shall go out.
Je me serai trompé. I must have made a mistake.

265. Conditional. 1. The main use of the conditional is to denote result dependent on condition, *i.e.*, what would happen in case something else were to happen:

Je serais content, s'il venait. I should be glad if he came.

a. The condition on which the result would depend is often merely implied, but not formally stated:

Hésiter serait une faiblesse. To hesitate would be weakness.

b. Distinguish English 'should' of duty, etc., 'would' of volition, and 'would' of past habit, from conditional 'should' and 'would':

Je *devrais* partir. I should (ought to) set out.
Il ne *voulait* pas écouter. He would not listen.
J'*allais* souvent le voir. I would often go to see him.

2. It corresponds to an English past in a subordinate clause of implied futurity (cf. § 263, 2):

Je prendrais ce qui resterait. I should take what remained.

3. In indirect discourse, it denotes what was once future and is now regarded as past, *i.e.*, the original future of the

assertion or question becomes a conditional when in a clause subordinate to a verb in a past tense:

Je croyais qu'il pleuvrait.	I thought it would rain.
A-t-il dit s'il le ferait?	Did he say whether he would do so?
But: **Je le ferai, dit-il.**	"I shall do so," said he.

4. It is used in statement or request expressed with deference or reserve:

Je le croirais au moins.	I should think so, at least.
Auriez-vous la bonté d'y aller?	Would you have the kindness to go?
Cela ne serait jamais vrai.	That never could (can) be true
Je ne saurais vous le dire.	I cannot tell you.
Je voudrais qu'il fût (soit) ici.	I wish he were here.

5. It sometimes denotes probability, conjecture, or possibility, etc., in exclamations and questions (cf. § 263, 3):

Serait-il vrai qu'il l'ait dit?	Can it be true that he said so?
Serait-il possible?	Can (could) it be possible?

6. It sometimes denotes concession after **quand, quand même,** or with **que**:

Quand (même) il me tuerait, etc.	Even if he should kill me, etc.
Vous me le jureriez que je ne vous croirais pas.	Even if you swore it to me, I should not believe you.

7. It is used to give the substance of hearsay information:

À ce qu'on dit, le roi serait malade.	By what they say, the king is ill.

266. Conditional Anterior. Its uses are precisely parallel with those of the conditional (§ 265); it denotes what would have happened, etc., etc.:

Je serais parti, s'il était venu.	I should have gone had he come.
Selon les journaux, la guerre se serait déclarée hier soir.	According to the newspapers, war was declared last evening.

267. Imperative Mood. It is used in general as in English:

Lisez-le. Ne le lisez pas.	Read it. Do not read it.
Allons-nous-en à présent.	Let us go away now.
Veuillez m'écouter.	Be good enough to hear me.

a. The first plural sometimes serves instead of the lacking first singular:

Soyons digne de ma naissance.	Let me be worthy of my birth.
Pensons un moment.	Let me think a moment.

b. The imperatives **va, allons, allez, voyons,** often have special idiomatic force:

Allons donc! Allons, **du courage!**	Nonsense! Come, courage!
J'en suis content, *allez!*	I am glad of it, I can assure you!
Voyons, **que pensez-vous?**	Come now, what do you think?

c. An imperative perfect is rare:

Ayez fini votre tâche ce soir.	Have your task done to-night.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

268. General Function. The subjunctive denotes, in general, what is viewed as being desirable or undesirable, uncertain, contingent, or the like, and usually stands in a subordinate clause.

269. Subjunctive in Noun Clause. The subjunctive is used in a clause introduced by **que** and serving as logical subject or as object of a verb:

1. After expressions of desiring (including willing, wishing, preferring) and avoiding:

Je désire (veux) qu'il parte.	I desire (wish) him to go.
Voulez-vous que je reste?	Do you wish me to (shall I) stay?
Je souhaite qu'il ait du succès.	I wish that he may have success.
Il préfère que vous restiez.	He prefers that you should stay.
Évitez qu'il (ne) vous voie.	Avoid his seeing you.

Such are:

aimer, *like*	éviter, *avoid*	souhaiter, *wish*
aimer mieux, *prefer*	préférer, *prefer*	il me tarde, *I long*
avoir envie, *be desirous*	prendre garde, *take care* (lest)	vouloir, *will, wish,* etc.
désirer, *desire, wish*		

a. **Prendre garde** requires **ne** in the subjunctive clause; so also, **éviter** generally.

Prends garde que cela *ne* **se fasse.**	Take care lest that happen.

2. After expressions of commanding (including requesting, exhorting), forbidding, consenting:

Vous ordonnez que je m'en aille.	You order me to go.
Je demande que vous me payiez.	I ask that you should pay me.
Dis-leur qu'ils soient prêts.	Tell them to be ready.
Le médecin défend que je sorte.	The doctor forbids me to go out.
Je consens que cela se fasse.	I consent that that be done.

Such are:

admettre, *admit*	demander, *ask*	permettre, *permit*
agréer, *permit*	empêcher, *hinder*	prier, *beg, ask*
avoir soin, *take care*	exhorter, *exhort*	souffrir, *suffer*
conjurer, *implore*	exiger, *exact*	supplier, *beg, pray*
consentir, *consent*	laisser, *allow*	trouver naturel, *find natural*
convenir, *agree*	s'opposer, *oppose*	veiller, *take care*
défendre, *forbid*	ordonner, *order*	etc.

So also, **dire,** *tell,* **écrire,** *write,* **entendre,** *mean,* **prétendre,** *intend,* when denoting command.

a. The future or conditional often stands after **arrêter, commander, décider, décréter,** etc., especially when the subject is a word denoting final authority, such as **cour, roi,** etc.:

Le roi décrète qu'il sera pendu.	The king decrees that he shall be hanged.

b. The subjunctive after **empêcher** usually has **ne:**

Empêchez qu'il *ne* sorte.	Prevent his going out.

3. After expressions of judgment or opinion involving approval or disapproval:

J'approuve qu'il revienne.	I approve of his coming back.
Il mérite qu'on le craigne.	He deserves to be feared.
Il vaut mieux que vous restiez.	It is better for you to stay.
Je tiens beaucoup à ce qu'il y soit.	I am very anxious that he should be there.

Such are:

approuver, *approve*	louer, *praise*	trouver juste, *think just*
blâmer, *blame*	mériter, *deserve*	trouver injuste, *think unjust*
désapprouver, *disapprove*	tenir (à ce que), *insist*	valoir, *be worthy*
être digne, *be worthy*	trouver bon, *approve*	etc.
être indigne, *be unworthy*	trouver mauvais, *disapprove*	
juger à propos, *think fit*		

So also, a large number of impersonals of like force:

il convient, *it is fitting*
il est, *it is* . . . .
+ à propos, *proper*
+ bien, *well*
+ bon, *good*
+ convenable, *fitting*
+ essentiel, *essential*
+ à désirer, *to be desired*
+ facile, *easy*
+ important, *important*
+ indispensable, *indispensable*
+ juste, *just*
+ naturel, *natural*
+ nécessaire, *necessary*
+ à souhaiter, *to be wished*
+ temps, *time*
il faut, *it is necessary, must*
il importe, *it is important*
il peut se faire, *it may be*
il suffit, *it suffices*
il vaut mieux, *it is better*
etc., and their opposites

4. After expressions of emotion or sentiment, such as joy, sorrow, anger, shame, wonder, fear:

Êtes-vous content qu'il soit ici?	Are you glad he is here?
Je regrette qu'il soit parti.	I regret that he has gone.
Il est fâché que vous le blâmiez.	He is angry at your blaming him.
Il a honte que vous le sachiez.	He is ashamed that you know it.
Je m'étonne qu'il n'ait pas honte.	I wonder he is not ashamed.
J'ai peur qu'il n'ait trop dit.	I fear he has said too much.

Such are:

admirer, *be astonished*
s'affliger, *grieve*
avoir honte, *be ashamed*
avoir crainte, *fear*
avoir peur, *fear*
craindre, *fear*
déplorer, *deplore*
c'est, *it is* . . . .
+ un bonheur, *fortunate*
+ dommage, *a pity*
+ une honte, *a shame*
+ honteux, *a shame*
+ pitié, *a pity*
il est, *it is* . . . .
+ curieux, *strange*
+ étonnant, *astonishing*
+ fâcheux, *annoying*
+ heureux, *fortunate*
enrager, *be enraged*
s'étonner, *be astonished*
être, *be* . . . .
+ affligé, *grieved*
+ bien aise, *very glad*
+ charmé, *delighted*
+ content, *glad*
+ désolé, *very sorry*
+ étonné, *astonished*
+ fâché, *sorry, angry*
+ heureux, *happy*
+ indigné, *indignant*
+ joyeux, *glad*
+ mécontent, *displeased*
+ satisfait, *satisfied*
+ surpris, *surprised*
+ triste, *sad*
se fâcher, *be sorry, angry*
se plaindre, *complain*
redouter, *fear*
regretter, *regret*
se réjouir, *rejoice*
se repentir, *repent*
soupirer, *sigh*
trembler, *tremble*
etc.

a. When it is feared something will happen the subjunctive has **ne**; when it is feared something will not happen the subjunctive has **ne . . . pas**; when the expression of fearing is negative, *or* interrogative, *or* conditional, **ne** is usually omitted; with double negation **ne . . . pas** stands in both (see also § 419 and Appendix referring to § 419):

Je crains qu'il *ne* vienne.	I fear he will come.
Je crains qu'il *ne* vienne *pas*.	I fear he will not come.
Je ne crains pas qu'il vienne.	I do not fear he will come.
Craignez-vous qu'il vienne?	Do you fear he will come?

Ne craignez-vous pas qu'il *ne* vienne? Do you not fear he will come?
Si je craignais qu'il vînt. If I feared he would come.
Je ne crains pas qu'il *ne* vienne *pas*. I do not fear he will not come.

b. After expressions of emotion or sentiment (except fear), which admit **de** after them, **de ce que** + indicative may be used:

J'ai honte *de ce qu'*il *a* échoué. I am ashamed that he failed.

5. After expressions of doubt, denial, despair, ignorance, or very slight probability:

Il doute que je sois loyal. He doubts that (whether) I am honest.
Je nie que cela soit vrai. I deny that that is true.
Il est rare que vous ayez tort. You are rarely in the wrong.

Such are:

contester, *dispute*
désespérer, *despair*
disconvenir, *deny*
dissimuler, *not confess*
se dissimuler, *be hidden*
douter, *doubt*
il est, *it is . . .*
+ douteux, *doubtful*
+ faux, *false*
+ impossible, *impossible*
+ possible, *possible*
+ rare, *rare*
il s'en faut, *there is wanting*
ignorer, *not know*
nier, *deny*
de (à) quoi sert-il? *of what use is it?*
il ne sert de (à) rien, *it is of no use*
il se peut, *it may be*
il ne se peut pas, *it cannot be*
il semble, *it seems*, etc.

a. **Douter si** (= *if, whether*) requires the indicative:

Il doute si je suis loyal. He doubts if (whether) I am honest.

b. **Il semble** regularly has the subjunctive, since it indicates slight probability as distinguished from **il paraît** = *it appears, is evident*, and **il me semble** = *it appears to me* (personal conviction; but cf. 6, *c*):

Il semble que vous me *craigniez*. It seems that you fear me.
Il me semble (il paraît) que vous me *craignez*. It seems to me (it appears) that you fear me.

c. Verbs of doubt and denial used negatively or interrogatively regularly require **ne** in the subjunctive clause:

Je ne nie pas que je *ne* le sois. I do not deny that I am such.

d. **Ignorer** + negative = *know well*, and hence takes indicative:

Je n'ignore pas qu'il *a* menti. I know well he has lied.

NOTE. — **Peut-être que,** *perhaps*, and **sans doute que,** *doubtless*, require the indicative.

6. After expressions of perceiving, thinking, knowing, declaring, resulting, but only when uncertainty or doubt is

implied by negation, interrogation, or condition; otherwise the indicative:

Verra-t-on que j'aie pleuré?	Will they see that I have wept?
Je ne crois pas que ce soit lui.	I do not think that that is he.
Espérez-vous qu'il réussisse?	Do you hope he will succeed?
Je ne suis pas sûr qu'il vienne.	I am not sure he will come.
Si je prétendais qu'il eût tort.	If I claimed that he was wrong.
But: **Je crois que c'*est* lui.**	I think it is he.
J'espère qu'il *réussira*.	I hope he will succeed.

Such are:

affirmer, *affirm*	espérer, *hope*	prévoir, *foresee*
s'apercevoir, *perceive*	être certain, *be certain*	promettre, *promise*
apprendre, *learn, hear*	être persuadé, *be persuaded*	se rappeler, *recollect*
assurer, *assure*	être sûr, *be sure*	reconnaître, *acknowledge*
s'attendre, *expect*	se figurer, *imagine*	remarquer, *remark*
avertir, *warn*	se flatter, *flatter oneself*	répéter, *repeat*
avouer, *declare*	imaginer, *imagine*	répondre, *answer*
conclure, *conclude*	s'imaginer, *imagine*	savoir, *know*
connaître, *recognize*	juger, *judge, think*	sentir, *feel, notice*
croire, *believe, think*	jurer, *declare*	soutenir, *maintain*
déclarer, *declare*	oublier, *forget*	se souvenir, *recollect*
deviner, *guess*	penser, *think*	supposer, *suppose*
dire, *say, tell*	persuader, *persuade*	trouver, *find, think*
se douter, *suspect*	pressentir, *forebode*	voir, *see*
écrire, *write*	prétendre, *assert, claim*	etc.
entendre dire, *hear said*	prévenir, *forewarn*	

So also, a number of impersonals of like force:

il s'ensuit, *it follows*	+ évident, *evident*	+ sûr, *sure*
il est avéré, *it is stated*	+ démontré, *demonstrated*	+ vraisemblable, *probable*
il est, *it is . . .*	+ incontestable, *indisputable*	il résulte, *it follows*
+ certain, *certain*	+ probable, *probable*	il me semble, *it seems to me*
+ clair, *clear*		

a. Negative question usually implies affirmation; hence the indicative:

Ne trouves-tu pas qu'il est beau?	Don't you think he is handsome?

b. When what the speaker regards as fact follows the negative or conditional clause, or when a person is questioned as to his knowledge of what is regarded as fact, the indicative stands:

Il ne croit pas que je suis ici.	He does not believe I am here.
S'il savait que tu es ici.	If he knew you were here.
Savez-vous qu'il est arrivé?	Do you know that he has come?

c. **Il ne me semble pas** is followed by the subjunctive, but in negative interrogation by the indicative (cf. also 5, *b*):

Il ne me semble pas qu'il soit fou.	It does not seem to me he is mad.
Ne vous semble-t-il pas qu'il est fou?	Does it not seem to you he is mad?

d. A preceding dependent clause with this class of verbs always has the subjunctive:

Qu'il *ait* échoué, je le sais.	That he has failed, I know.

NOTE. — For the choice between **que** clause and infinitive see § 283.

270. Subjunctive in Adjectival Clause. The subjunctive is used as follows in clauses introduced by a relative pronoun:

1. When purpose regarding the antecedent, or unattained result is implied:

Montrez-moi un chemin qui conduise à la science.	Show me a way which leads to knowledge.
Je cherche un endroit où je sois en paix.	I seek a place where I may be in peace.

a. The indicative, however, is used to express what is regarded as fact or certain result:

Montrez-moi le chemin qui conduit à la ville.	Show me the road which leads to the town.
J'irai où je serai libre.	I shall go where I shall be free.

2. When the principal clause contains general negation, interrogation implying negative answer, or condition (all of which imply non-existence of the antecedent):

Il n'a pas de raison qui vaille.	He has no reason worth anything.
As-tu un seul ami qui soit fidèle?	Have you one friend who is true?
Si j'ai un ami qui soit fidèle c'est lui.	If I have one friend who is true, it is he.

a. General negation is sometimes merely implied:

Il y a peu de gens qui le sachent.	There are few people who know it.

b. When the negation is not general, or when the interrogation does not imply negative answer, the indicative stands:

Ce n'est pas vous que je crains.	It is not you that I fear.
N'est-ce point un songe que je vois!	Is it not a dream that I see?

c. In a negative relative clause **ne**, not **ne . . . pas**, is used when the principal clause is negative or implies negation:

En est-il un seul qui *ne* tremble?	Is there one who does not tremble?

3. When the antecedent is qualified by a superlative, or by **seul, unique, premier, dernier** (all with superlative force):

C'est le meilleur ami que j'aie.	He is the best friend that I have.
C'est le seul ami que j'aie.	He is the only friend I have.

a. What is stated unreservedly as fact requires the indicative:

C'est la seule chose qu'il a dite.	It is the only thing he said.

4. With concessive force in compound relative and indefinite clauses (= 'whoever,' 'whatever,' etc.):

Quoi que vous fassiez.	Whatever you do.
Qui qu'on y puisse élire.	Whosoever may be elected to it.
Qui que tu sois, parle!	Whoever you are, speak!
Quelles que soient vos raisons.	Whatever be your reasons.

271. Subjunctive in Adverbial Clause. The subjunctive is used in clauses of adverbial force, as follows:

1. After conjunctions of time before which or up to which (**avant que, en attendant que, jusqu'à ce que**):

Dis-le-lui, avant qu'il parte.	Tell it to him before he goes.
Asseyez-vous, en attendant qu'il revienne.	Sit down until he comes back.
Persévérez jusqu'à ce que vous ayez réussi.	Persevere till you have succeeded.

a. **Jusqu'à ce que** may have the indicative when referring to completed past event:

Il y resta jusqu'à ce que je revins.	He remained till I came back.

2. After conjunctions of purpose or result (**afin que, pour que, de crainte que, de peur que**):

J'écris ceci afin que (pour que) vous sachiez la vérité.	I write this in order that you may know the truth.
Je le tins de crainte qu'il ne tombât.	I held him for fear he should fall.

a. So also, **de sorte que, en sorte que, de telle sorte que, de façon que, de manière que, tel . . . que, tellement . . . que,** when denoting purpose, but not result:

Agis de sorte que tu réussisses.	Act in such a way as to succeed.
But: **J'ai agi de sorte que j'ai réussi.**	I acted so that I succeeded.

3. After conjunctions of condition (**en cas que, au cas que, à moins que . . . ne, pourvu que, supposé que, en supposant que**):

Je viendrai au cas que je sois libre demain, ou à moins que je ne sois retenu.	I shall come in case I am free tomorrow, or unless I am detained.

a. After **si** = *if*, the pluperfect subjunctive stands exceptionally (§ 275, *b*).

b. The present subjunctive sometimes expresses condition:

Vienne l'ennemi, il s'enfuit.	If the enemy comes, he flees.

c. **À (la) condition que** takes indicative, conditional, or subjunctive:

Je lui donne l'argent à (la) condition qu'il *partira* (*or* *parte*).	I give him the money on condition that he will go.

Note. — **Dans le cas où, au cas où** usually have conditional: **Au cas où cela *serait* vrai,** *In case that should be true.*

4. After conjunctions of concession (**quoique, bien que, encore que, nonobstant que, soit que . . . soit que** *or* **ou que, pour (si) peu que, si tant est que, malgré que**):

Bien qu'il soit malade, il sortira.	Although he is ill, he will go out.
Pour peu qu'il fût malade, il se croyait mourant.	If he were ever so little ill, he thought himself dying.

a. The present subjunctive with **que** sometimes has concessive force:

Qu'il perde ou gagne, il partira.	Though he lose or win, he will go.

b. The use of a subjunctive after adverbial **quelque** (**tout, si,** etc.) + **que** = *however* depends on the same principle:

Quelque grand que vous soyez.	However great you may be.
Si brave qu'il se croie.	However brave he thinks himself.

c. **Quand (même)** used concessively sometimes takes the pluperfect subjunctive for the conditional anterior (cf. § 265, 6):

Quand (même) il m'eût dit cela.	Even if he had told me that.

5. After conjunctions of negative force (**non que, non pas que, loin que, sans que**):

Il partit sans que je le susse.	He went away without my knowing it.

6. After **que** replacing any conjunction requiring the subjunctive, and also after **que** replacing **si** = *if*:

Venez *que* (= afin que, pour que) je vous voie.	Come, that I may see you.
***Si* je viens et *que* je le voie.**	If I come, and if I see him.

272. Subjunctive in Principal Clause. The subjunctive is sometimes used in principal clauses, as follows:

1. Either with or without **que** to denote what is desired, etc.:

Ainsi soit-il! Vive le roi!	So be it! (Long) live the king!
Plût à Dieu qu'il en fût ainsi!	Would to God it were so!
Qu'il parte tout de suite.	Let him go at once.
(Que) je meure, si je mens!	May I die if I am lying!
Le croie qui voudra!	Let him believe it who will!

a. **Que** followed by the third person present subjunctive regularly serves as an imperative; so also, sometimes, the first singular:

Qu'il parte.	Let him go.
Que je vous entende.	Let me hear you.

NOTE. — This construction, as also those without **que**, may be explained by ellipsis of some expression of desire, command, etc. (§ 269, 1, 2).

2. The present subjunctive first singular of **savoir** is sometimes used to denote modified assertion:

Je ne sache rien de plus beau.	I know nothing finer.

3. The pluperfect subjunctive stands exceptionally for conditional anterior in a 'result' clause (cf. § 275, *b*):

S'il eût (*or* avait) su cela, il ne l'eût (*or* aurait) pas dit.	If he had known that, he would not have said it.

273. Tense Sequence. The tense of the subjunctive is usually determined by the tense of the finite verb in the governing clause, as follows:

1*a*. A present (including present subjunctive and imperative) or a future, in the governing clause, requires the present subjunctive in the governed clause in order to denote incomplete action:

Je *doute*	qu'il *vienne.*	I doubt that (whether) he will come.
Quoique je *doute*		Though I doubt that he will come.
Doutez		Doubt that he will come.
Je *douterai*		I shall doubt that he will come.

1*b*. But if we wish to denote completed action the perfect subjunctive must be used:

Je *doute* qu'il *soit venu.*	I doubt that he has come.

2*a*. Any other tense than the above (*i.e.*, an imperfect, past definite, past indefinite, conditional, etc.) requires the imperfect subjunctive in order to denote incomplete action:

Je *doutais*	qu'il *vînt.*	I doubted whether he would come.
Quoique je *doutasse*		Though I doubted that he would come.
Je *doutai* / J'ai *douté*		I doubted that he would come.
Je *douterais*		I should doubt that he would come.

2*b*. But if we wish to denote completed action, the pluperfect subjunctive must be used:

Je *doutais*	qu'il *fût venu.*	I doubted that he had come.
J'aurais *douté*		I should have doubted that he had come.

3. The following exceptional cases depend mainly on the sense of the context:

a. J'ai douté qu'il vienne. I have doubted that he will come.

b. After verbs of saying, believing, etc., a governing present may take a past subjunctive and *vice versa:*

Je ne dis pas qu'il fût à blâmer.	I do not say he was to blame.
Il ne croyait pas qu'il y ait un Dieu.	He did not believe that there is a God.

c. In a relative clause a past indefinite may stand for a pluperfect:

Il portait cet habit la seule fois que je l'*aie vu.*	He was wearing that coat the only time that I saw him.

d. The conditional of modified assertion (§ 265, 4), being virtually a present, is commonly followed by the present subjunctive:

Je désirerais que vous *veniez.*	I should like you to come.
Il faudrait qu'il s'en *aille.*	He would have to go.

e. The imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, with the force of an English conditional, may follow any tense:

Il n'y *a* pas de rang qu'elle ne *pût* tenir.	There is no rank she could not hold.
Je *doute* qu'il *jouât* (eût joué), s'il avait (avait eu) de l'argent.	I doubt that he would play (would have played) if he had (had had) money.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

274. Typical Form. A conditional sentence consists regularly of two parts: the condition, introduced by **si** = *if*, and the result:

Si j'avais le temps, j'irais à B.	If I had time, I should go to B.

a. The condition may, of course, either precede or follow the result:

Irez-vous à B, s'il pleut?	Will you go to B if it rains?
S'il ne fait pas beau, je n'irai pas.	If it is not fine, I shall not go.

b. The condition is often disguised or implied, or the result understood:

Hésiter serait une faiblesse.	To hesitate would be weakness.
Je n'irais pas (*si j'étais* de lui).	I should not go (if I were he).
Ah! si j'étais à sa place.	Ah, if I were in his place!

275. Mood and Tense. A 'result' clause in the present indicative, imperative, or future, regularly requires the 'if' clause in the present indicative; a 'result' clause in the conditional regularly requires the 'if' clause in the imperfect indicative:

S'il *a* le temps, il y *va.*	If he has time, he goes there.
S'il *a* le temps, *dites*-lui de venir.	If he has (have, will have, should have) time, tell him to come.

S'il *a* le temps, il *viendra*.	If he has (have, will have, should have) time, he will come.
S'il *avait* le temps, il *viendrait*.	If he had (had he, were he to have, if he should have, should he have) time, he would come.

Obs.: The condition is regularly expressed by the indicative present or imperfect, whatever be the corresponding English form.

a. The above rules hold good for compound tenses, the auxiliary being considered as the verb:

S'il l'*a* dit, il le *fera*.	If he has said it, he will do it.
S'il *est venu*, *faites*-le-moi savoir.	If he has come, let me know.
S'il *a eu* le temps, il *sera venu*.	If he has had time, he will have come.
Si j'*avais eu* le temps, je *serais parti*.	If I had had time, I should have gone.
S'il *était* brave, il *aurait fait* cela.	If he were brave, he would have done that.

b. Sometimes, in literary style, the pluperfect subjunctive stands in the 'if' clause, or in the 'result' clause, or in both:

S'il eût (*or* avait) su cela, il ne l'eût (*or* aurait) pas dit.	Had he known that, he would not have said so.

c. Occasionally the imperfect indicative stands in the 'if' clause instead of the pluperfect, and in the 'result' clause instead of the conditional anterior:

Si Stanislas demeurait (= *était demeuré*), il était (= *aurait été*) perdu.	If Stanislas had remained, he would have been lost.

d. Occasionally the condition is expressed by inversion, without si:

N'était-ce la crainte de cela.	If it were not for fear of that.
Eût-il été moins riche.	If he had been poorer.

e. A virtual condition (concession) is sometimes expressed by various locutions:

Quiconque le fera.	Whoever (if any one) does it.
Quand même il ne l'aurait pas dit.	Even though he had not said so.
Il le dirait que je ne le croirais pas.	Even if he said it, I should not believe it.

f. The past definite is rare in the 'if' clause. The expression **s'il en fut,** however, is noteworthy:

Riche, s'il en fut (jamais), mais corrompu.	Rich, if any one ever was, but corrupt.

g. **Si** = *whether* may take the future or conditional:

Dis-moi si tu iras (irais) chez elle.	Tell me whether (if) you will (would) go to her house.

THE INFINITIVE MOOD

276. Function. The infinitive is a verbal noun. As a verb it governs, and as a noun it serves as subject, object, etc.:

Vous devriez lui parler.	You ought to speak to him.
Voir c'est croire.	Seeing is believing.
Il lit sans comprendre.	He reads without understanding.

277. Use of Infinitive. The chief difficulty in the use of the infinitive is to determine, (1) when it should stand without any preposition, (2) when it should be preceded by **à**, (3) when it should be preceded by **de.**

278. Infinitive without Preposition. The infinitive without any preposition is used:

1. As subject, or in apposition:

Mentir est honteux.	To lie (lying) is base.
Trop parler nuit.	Too much talk does harm.
Vivre c'est souffrir.	To live is to suffer.

2. As predicate after a few verbs (see list below):

Vous semblez hésiter.	You seem to hesitate.
Il est censé l'avoir fait.	He is supposed to have done it.

3. As logical subject after a few impersonals (see list below):

Il vaudrait mieux se taire.	It would be better to keep quiet.
Il fait cher vivre à Paris.	Living is dear in Paris.

4. As object or complement after the so-called modal auxiliaries (§ 230), after most verbs of motion and causation of motion, after verbs of desiring and preferring, after verbs of perceiving, after verbs of thinking and intending, after

verbs of saying and declaring, and after certain verbs of lacking and failing (see list below):

Voulez-vous dîner chez nous?	Will you dine with us?
Faites-lui apprendre sa leçon.	Make him learn his lesson.
Envoyez chercher le médecin.	Send for the doctor.
Je désirerais lui parler.	I should like to speak to him.
Je les vois venir.	I see them come (coming).
Quand comptez-vous revenir?	When do you expect to come back?
Il prétend avoir raison.	He claims to be in the right.
J'avais beau crier.	It was in vain that I shouted.

5. Sometimes, in elliptical expressions, as an imperative, as a direct or indirect interrogative, or absolutely:

Voir les affiches.	See the posters.
Que faire? Où me cacher?	What (am I) to do? Where hide?
Je ne sais que faire.	I know not what to do.
Penser qu'il a dit cela!	To think that he said that!

6. Reference list of verbs requiring direct infinitive:

accourir, *hasten*
affirmer, *affirm*
aimer (condl.), *should like*
aimer autant, *like as well*
aimer mieux, *prefer*
aller, *go*
apercevoir, *perceive*
assurer, *assure*
avoir beau, *be in vain*
avouer, *avow*
compter,[1] *intend*
confesser, *confess*
courir, *run*
croire, *think*
daigner, *deign*
déclarer, *declare*
déposer, *testify*
descendre,[3] *come(go)down*
désirer,[1] *desire, wish*
devoir, *ought, to be, etc.*
dire,[4] *say*
écouter, *listen to*
entendre, *hear, intend*
envoyer, *send*
espérer,[1] *hope*
être, *be*
être censé, *be supposed*
faillir,[2] *be on the point of*
faire, *make, cause*
il fait (impers.), *it is*
falloir, *be necessary*
se figurer, *imagine*
s'imaginer, *fancy*
juger, *consider*
jurer,[4] *swear,attest by oath*
laisser,[3] [4] *let, allow*
mener, *lead, bring*
mettre, *set, put at*
monter, *go up*
oser, *dare*
ouïr, *hear*
paraître, *appear*
penser,[3] *intend, be near*
pouvoir, *can, may*
préférer, *prefer*
prétendre, *assert, claim*
se rappeler,[1] *recollect*
reconnaître, *acknowledge*
regarder, *look at*
rentrer, *go in again*
retourner, *go back*
revenir, *come back*
savoir, *know how to, can*
sembler, *seem*
sentir, *hear, feel*
souhaiter,[1] *wish*
soutenir, *maintain*
supposer, *suppose*
être supposé, *be supposed*
témoigner, *testify*
se trouver, *be*
valoir autant, *be as good*
valoir mieux, *be better*
venir,[3] [4] *come*
voir, *see*
voler, *fly*
vouloir, *will, wish*

[1] Sometimes takes **de**. [2] Sometimes takes **à** or **de**. [3] See also list of verbs requiring **à** (§ 279, 6). [4] See also list of verbs requiring **de** (§ 280, 6).

a. **Devoir** = *owe, be indebted,* with indirect object takes **de:**

Je lui dois d'être encore en vie.	I owe to him that I am still alive.

b. **Faire** takes **de** in **ne faire que de:**

Il ne fait que de sortir.	He has just gone out.

c. **Ne pas laisser** = *not to cease,* etc., takes **de:**

Il ne laisse pas (que) de le dire.	He is always saying so (says so for all that).

279. Infinitive with the Preposition *à*. The infinitive preceded by **à** = *to, in, at, by,* etc., is used:

1. As direct object of a few transitives (see list below):

J'aime à chanter.	I like to sing.
Continuez à lire.	Continue to read.
Il m'enseigne à chanter.	He teaches me to sing (singing).
J'ai à étudier demain.	I have to study to-morrow.
Il n'y a pas à se plaindre.	There is nothing to complain of.

2. As a complement, after many verbs, to denote the object to which the action tends (answering the question 'to do what?') or the object in, at, on, about which the action takes place (answering the question 'in doing what?' 'at doing what?' etc.):

Il aspire à devenir riche.	He aspires to become rich.
Poussez-les à agir.	Urge them to act.
Je les ai invités à venir.	I have invited them to come.
Aidez-moi à porter cette malle.	Help me to carry this trunk.
Il réussit à me trouver.	He succeeded in finding me.
Je suis à écrire une lettre.	I am (busy) writing a letter.
Il s'amuse à me taquiner.	He amuses himself teasing me.
J'ai gagné à vendre ma maison.	I gained by selling my house.
Il joue à faire le malade.	He plays at being ill.

3. As the complement of certain adjectives (cf. § 280, 2) and nouns denoting fitness, tendency, purpose, etc.:

Ceci est bon à manger.	This is good to eat.
Je suis prêt à vous écouter.	I am ready to hear you.
Quelque chose d'utile à savoir.	Something useful to know.
Cela est facile à faire.	That is easy to do.

La tendance à se croire grand.	The tendency to think oneself great.
Une bonne à tout faire.	A maid of all work.

a. So also, **le premier, le dernier, le seul:**

Il n'est pas le seul à le dire.	He is not the only one to say so.

4. To form adjectival phrases denoting use, fitness, quality, etc.:

Une salle à manger.	A dining-room.
Une chose à voir.	A thing worth seeing.
Des contes à dormir debout.	Very tiresome stories.
Un spectacle à faire peur.	A terrible sight.
De manière à réussir.	In such a way as to succeed.
Vous êtes à plaindre.	You are to be pitied.
C'est à en mourir.	It is enough to kill one.

5. To form adverbial phrases:

Elle chante à ravir.	She sings charmingly.
Elle pleurait à faire pitié.	She wept pitifully.
À vrai dire, je le plains.	To tell the truth, I pity him.
Elle est laide à faire peur.	She is frightfully ugly.

6. Reference list of verbs requiring infinitive with **à**:

s'abaisser, *stoop*
abandonner (s'), *give up*
aboutir, *end* (*in*), *tend*
s'abuser, *be mistaken* (*in*)
s'accorder,[2] *agree* (*in*)
être d'accord, *agree* (*in*)
accoutumer (s'),[2] *accustom*
s'acharner, *be bent* (*on*)
admettre, *admit*
s'adonner, *addict o. s.*
aguerrir (s'), *inure*
aider, *help*
aimer,[4] *like*
amener, *lead*
amuser (s'), *amuse* (*in*, *by*)
animer (s'), *excite*
appeler, *call*
appliquer (s'), *apply*
apprendre, *learn*, *teach*
apprêter (s'), *get ready*
s'arrêter, *stop*
aspirer, *aspire*
assujettir (s'), *subject*
astreindre, *compel*
s'astreindre, *bind o. s.*
attacher, *attach*
s'attacher, *be intent* (*on*)
attendre (s'), *expect*
autoriser, *authorize*
s'avilir, *stoop*
avoir, *have*, *must*
avoir (de la) peine, *have difficulty* (*in*)
balancer, *hesitate*
se borner, *limit o. s.*
chercher, *seek*, *try*
commencer,[2] *begin*
se complaire, *take pleasure* (*in*)
concourir, *coöperate* (*in*)
condamner (se), *condemn*
condescendre, *condescend*
conduire, *lead*
consacrer (se), *devote*
consentir, *consent*
consister, *consist* (*in*)
conspirer, *conspire*
consumer (se), *consume* (*in*)
continuer,[1] *continue*
contraindre,[1] *constrain*
contribuer, *contribute*
convier,[2] *invite*
coûter, *cost*
décider,[3] *induce*
se décider, *resolve*
défier,[3] *challenge*, *incite*
demander,[1] *ask*
demeurer, *remain*
dépenser, *spend* (*in*)
désapprendre, *forget*

descendre,[4] *stoop, abase*
destiner, *destine* [*o.s.*
déterminer,[3] *induce*
se déterminer, *resolve*
dévouer (se), *devote*
différer,[2] *delay*
disposer (se), *dispose*
divertir (se), *amuse*
donner, *give*
dresser, *train*
s'efforcer,[1] *try*
s'égayer, *divert o. s. (by)*
employer (s'), *employ (in)*
s'empresser,[1 3] *be eager*
encourager, *encourage*
engager (s'),[2] *engage, advise*
enhardir,[2] *embolden*
s'enhardir,[2] *venture*
s'ennuyer,[2 3] *tire o. s. (in)*
enseigner, *teach*
s'entendre, *know well how*
entraîner, *allure*
essayer,[1] *try*
s'essayer, *try o. s. (in)*
être,[3] *to be occupied (in, at)*
être à,[3] *be one's turn*
s'étudier, *apply o. s.*
s'évertuer, *exert o. s., try*
exceller, *excel (in)*
exciter (s'), *excite*
exercer (s'), *exercise (in)*
exhorter, *exhort*
exposer (s'), *expose*
se fatiguer,[3] *tire o. s. (in, at)*

finir (neg.),[3] *have done*
forcer,[1] *force*
gagner, *gain (by)*
habituer,[2] *accustom*
s'habituer, *accustom o. s.*
haïr, *hate*
se hasarder,[2] *venture*
hésiter,[2] *hesitate*
inciter, *incite*
incliner, *incline*
induire, *induce*
instruire, *instruct*
intéresser(s'),*interest(in)*
inviter, *invite*
jouer, *play (at)*
laisser,[3 4] *leave*
se lasser,[3] *tire o. s. (in)*
manquer,[3] *be remiss (in)*
mettre, *put, set*
se mettre, *set about*
montrer, *show how*
obliger,[1 3] *oblige, force*
s'obliger,[2] *bind o. s.*
s'obstiner, *persist (in)*
occuper (s'),[3] *employ (in)*
s'offrir,[2] *offer*
s'opiniâtrer, *persist (in)*
parvenir, *succeed (in)*
passer, *spend (in)*
pencher, *incline*
penser,[4] *think (of)*
perdre, *lose (in, by)*
persévérer, *persevere (in)*
persister, *persist (in)*
se plaire, *delight (in)*
se plier, *submit*

porter, *induce*
pousser, *urge, incite*
prendre garde,[3] *take care*
prendre plaisir, *delight (in)*
se prendre, *begin*
préparer (se), *prepare*
prétendre,[4] *aspire*
prier,[3] *invite (formally)*
procéder, *proceed*
provoquer, *incite*
recommencer,[1] *begin again*
réduire, *reduce*
se réduire, *confine o. s.*
refuser,[3] *refuse to give*
se refuser, *refuse*
renoncer, *renounce*
répugner, *be reluctant*
se résigner, *resign o. s.*
résoudre,[3] *induce*
se résoudre, *resolve*
rester, *remain*
réussir, *succeed (in)*
servir, *serve*
songer, *think (of)*
souffrir,[1] *suffer*
suffire, *suffice*
surprendre, *discover*
tarder,[1] *be long, delay (in)*
tendre, *tend*
tenir, *be anxious*
travailler, *work*
trembler,[3] *tremble (at, on)*
trouver, *find*
venir,[3 4] *happen*
viser, *aim*
vouer (se), *devote*

[1] Or **de.** [2] Sometimes takes **de.** [3] See also list of verbs requiring **de** (§ 280, 6). [4] See also list of verbs requiring direct infinitive (§ 278, 6).

a. **Suffire** sometimes takes **pour:**

Cela suffira pour l'amuser. That will suffice to amuse him.

b. The infinitive after **être à** often has passive force:

Cet ouvrage est à refaire. That work has to be done again.

c. **Haïr** may take **de** when negative:

Il ne hait pas à (*d'*) être endetté. He does not dislike being in debt.

280. Infinitive with the Preposition *de*. The infinitive preceded by **de** = *to, of, from, for, at,* etc., is used:

1. As logical subject of an impersonal verb (for rare exceptions see § 278, 3)

Il est facile de faire cela.	It is easy to do that.
Il importe d'arriver à temps.	It is important to arrive in time.
Bien vous sied de vous taire.	It well becomes you to be silent.

a. Similarly as subject in inverted sentences:

C'est une folie (que) d'aller là.	It is madness to go there.

2. As complement of most adjectives and nouns (cf. § 279, 3):

Le désir de partir.	The desire of going.
La nécessité de rester.	The necessity of remaining.
Il n'est pas digne de vivre.	He is not worthy to live.
J'ai envie de pleurer.	I feel like crying.

a. So also, many expressions, like the last example, made from verb + noun, *e.g.*, **avoir besoin** (**honte, peur, raison, soin, tort,** etc.), **faire envie** (**plaisir, semblant,** etc.), **courir risque,** etc., etc.

3. After verbs as object or complement, usually to denote the source or occasion of action (answering 'whence?' 'concerning what?'), or to denote separation or cessation from (answering 'from what?'). See list below:

Je me réjouis de le voir.	I rejoice to see it.
Elle se pique d'être la première.	She prides herself on being first.
Prenez garde de (ne pas) tomber.	Take care not to fall.
Il s'excuse d'y aller.	He excuses himself from going.
Promettez de ne pas le dire.	Promise not to tell it.

4. As historical infinitive (= a past definite):

Et l'ennemi *de* s'enfuir.	And the enemy fled.

5. After **que** in the second member of a comparison, unless the sentence be very short:

Il vaudra mieux rester que de partir si tard.	It will be better to stay than to go so late.
But: **Mieux vaut savoir qu'avoir.**	Better wisdom than wealth.

6. Reference list of verbs requiring infinitive with **de:**

s'absenter, *absent o. s. (from)*
s'absoudre, *absolve o. s.*
s'abstenir, *abstain (from)*
accorder, *grant*[*customed*
avoir accoutumé, *be ac-*
accuser (s'), *accuse (of)*
achever, *finish*
admirer, *wonder (at)*
affecter, *affect*
s'affliger, *grieve (at, over)*
s'apercevoir, *perceive*
s'applaudir, *congratulate o. s. (on)*
appréhender, *fear*
arrêter, *prevent (from), determine* [*(at)*
s'attrister, *become sad*
avertir, *notify, warn*
s'aviser, *think (of)*
blâmer, *blame (for)*
brûler, *long*
censurer, *censure (for)*
cesser, *cease* [*over)*
se chagriner, *grieve (at,*
charger, *charge*
se charger, *undertake*
choisir, *choose*
commander, *command*
commencer,[1] *begin*
conjurer, *beseech*
conseiller, *advise*
consoler, *console (for)*
se contenter, *be satisfied*
continuer,[1] *continue*
contraindre,[1] *constrain*
convaincre, *convict (of)*
convenir, *agree*
craindre, *fear*
crier, *cry*
décider,[3] *decide, resolve*
décourager (se), *discourage (from)*
dédaigner, *disdain*
défendre, *forbid*
se défendre, *forbear, excuse o. s.*
défier,[3] *defy*
se défier, *distrust*
dégoûter, *disgust (with)*
délibérer, *deliberate (about)*
demander,[1] *ask*
se dépêcher, *make haste*
désaccoutumer (se), *disaccustom (from)*
désespérer, *despair (of)*
déshabituer (se), *disaccustom (from)*
déterminer,[3] *resolve*
détester, *detest* [*(from)*
détourner, *dissuade*
dire,[4] *bid*
discontinuer, *cease*
disconvenir, *deny* [*(for)*
se disculper, *excuse o. s.*
dispenser, *dispense (from)*
dissuader, *dissuade (from)*
douter, *hesitate*
se douter, *suspect*
écrire, *write*
s'efforcer,[1] *try*
s'effrayer, *be afraid*
empêcher, *prevent*
s'empêcher, *abstain (from)*
s'empresser,[3] *hasten*
s'empresser,[1] *be eager*
enjoindre, *enjoin*
s'ennuyer,[2 3] *be tired (of)*
s'enorgueillir, *be proud*
enrager, *be enraged (at)*
entreprendre, *undertake*
épargner, *spare*
essayer,[1] *try*
s'étonner, *be astonished*
être à,[2 3] *be duty* or *office (of)*
éviter, *avoid*
excuser (s'), *excuse (from)*
exempter, *exempt (from)*
faire bien, *do well*
se fatiguer,[3] *be tired (of)*
feindre, *feign*
féliciter (se), *congratulate*
finir,[3] *finish* [*(on)*
se flatter, *flatter o. s.*
forcer,[1] *force*
frémir, *shudder*
gager, *wager*
garder (se), *forbear*
gémir, *groan*
gêner, *incommode*
se glorifier, *boast (of)*
gronder, *scold (for)*
hasarder, *venture*
se hâter, *hasten*
imaginer, *imagine*
s'impatienter, *be impatient*
imputer, *impute*
s'indigner, *be indignant*
s'ingérer, *meddle (with)*
inspirer, *inspire*
interdire, *interdict (from)*
jouir, *enjoy*
juger bon, *think fit*
jurer,[4] *promise (on oath)*
ne pas laisser,[3 4] *not to cease*
se lasser,[3] *be weary (of)*
louer, *praise (for)*
mander, *bid* [*point of*
manquer,[3] *fail, be on*
méditer, *meditate*
se mêler, *meddle (with)*
menacer, *threaten*
mériter, *deserve* [*(of)*
se moquer, *make sport*
mourir, *die, long*
négliger, *neglect*
notifier, *notify*

obliger,[1] *oblige, force*
obliger,[3] *do favour*
obtenir, *obtain*
s'occuper,[3] *be intent (on)*
offrir, *offer*
omettre, *omit*
ordonner, *order*
oublier,[2] *forget*
pardonner, *forgive*
parier, *bet*
parler, *speak*
se passer, *do without*
permettre (se), *permit*
persuader, *persuade*
se piquer, *pride o. s. (on)*
plaindre, *pity* [*(of)*
se plaindre, *complain*
prendre garde,[3] *take care not, beware (of)*
prendre soin, *take care*
prescrire, *prescribe*
presser, *urge*
se presser, *hasten*
présumer, *presume*
prier,[3] *beg, pray*
priver (se), *deprive (of)*
projeter, *intend*
promettre (se), *promise*
proposer, *propose*
se proposer, *intend*
protester, *protest*
punir, *punish (for)*
recommander, *recommend*
recommencer,[1] *begin again*
refuser,[3] *refuse*
regretter, *regret*
se réjouir, *rejoice*
remercier, *thank (for)*
se repentir, *repent (of)*
reprendre, *reprove (for)*
réprimander, *reprimand (for)*
reprocher (se), *reproach (with)*
résoudre,[3] *resolve*
se ressouvenir, *remember*
rire (se), *laugh*
risquer, *risk*
rougir, *blush*
sommer, *summon*
se soucier, *care*
souffrir,[1] *suffer*
soupçonner, *suspect*
sourire, *smile*
se souvenir, *recollect*
suggérer, *suggest*
supplier, *beseech*
tâcher,[2] *try*
tenter,[2] *attempt*
trembler,[3] *tremble, fear*
trouver bon, *think fit*
se vanter, *boast (of)*
venir,[3 4] *have just*

[1] Or **à**. [2] Sometimes **à**. [3] See also list of verbs requiring **à** (§ 279, 6). [4] See also list of verbs requiring direct infinitive (§ 278, 6).

281. Distinctions. As appears from the list, the same verb sometimes requires **à, de,** or the direct infinitive. The following are examples of cases in which the sense varies with the construction:

1. **Aimer:**

J'aimerais bien le connaître.	I should like to know him.
J'aime mieux vous dire tout.	I prefer to tell you all.
Aimez-vous *à* demeurer ici?	Do you like to live here?

2. **Décider:**

Il m'a décidé *à* entrer.	He induced me to go in.
Nous décidâmes *de* partir.	We decided to set out.

3. **Défier:**

On le défia *à* boire.	They challenged him to drink.
Je vous défie *de* prouver cela.	I defy you to prove that.

4. **Descendre:**

Descends chercher ton chapeau.	Go down and get your hat.
Il descendit même *à* voler.	He even descended to theft.

5. **Déterminer:**

Je l'ai déterminé *à* rester.	I induced him to stay.
Il avait déterminé *de* le rebâtir.	He had determined to rebuild it.

6. **Dire:**

Il dit l'avoir vu.	He says he saw it.
Je lui ai dit *de* venir.	I told him to come.

7. **S'empresser:**

Il s'empressait *à* lui plaire.	He was eager to please her.
Il s'empressa *de* répondre.	He hastened to reply.

8. **Être:**

Je suis *à* écrire des lettres.	I am (busy) writing letters.
C'est à vous *de* parler.	It is your place (*or* turn) to speak.
C'est à vous *à* parler.	It is your turn to speak.

9. **Se fatiguer:**

Il se fatigua *à* jouer au billard.	He fatigued himself playing billiards.
Il est fatigué *de* jouer.	He is tired playing.

10. **Finir:**

Il ne finissait pas *à* me le dire.	He was never done telling me so.
J'ai fini *de* travailler.	I have finished working.

11. **Jurer:**

Je jure l'avoir vu.	I swear I saw it.
Je jure *de* le faire.	I swear I will do it.

12. **Laisser:**

Je l'ai laissé dire.	I let him talk.
Je vous laisse *à* penser.	I leave you to think.
Il ne laissa pas *de* parler.	He did not stop talking.

13. **Se lasser:**

Il s'est lassé *à* courir.	He tired himself out (by) running.
Il se lasse *de* courir.	He is tired of running.

14. **Manquer:**

Ne manquez pas *d'*y être.	Don't fail to be there.
Je manquai *de* tomber.	I was on the point of falling.
Il ne manque jamais *à* faire son devoir.	He never fails to do his duty.

15. **Obliger:**

Je l'ai obligé *à* (*de*) le faire.	I obliged him to do it.

Je suis obligé *de* partir.	I am obliged to go.
Vous m'obligerez beaucoup *de* le faire.	You will greatly oblige me by doing it.

16. **S'occuper:**

Il s'occupe *à* lire.	He is busy reading.
Il s'occupe *de* détruire les abus.	He is intent on destroying abuses.

17. **Penser:**

Que pensez-vous faire?	What do you intend to do?
Je pensai tomber.	I nearly fell.
Je pense *à* répliquer à cela.	I think of replying to that.

18. **Prendre garde:**

Prenez garde *à* ne pas le faire.	Take care not to do it.
Prenez garde *de* (ne pas) tomber.	Take care not to fall.

19. **Prétendre:**

Il prétend vous connaître.	He asserts that he knows you.
Il prétend *à* devenir savant.	He aspires to become learned.

20. **Prier:**

Il m'a prié *à* dîner.	He invited me to dine.
Je vous prie *de* m'aider.	I pray (ask) you to help me.

21. **Refuser:**

Me refusez-vous *à* manger?	Do you refuse to give me food?
Je refuserai *d'*y aller.	I shall refuse to go.

22. **Résoudre:**

Il m'a résolu *à* l'acheter.	He induced me to buy it.
J'ai résolu *de* l'acheter.	I have determined to buy it.

23. **Trembler:**

Il tremble *à* me voir.	He trembles when he sees me.
Il tremble *de* me rencontrer.	He fears to meet me.

24. **Venir:**

Venez nous voir.	Come to see us.
Si vous veniez *à* le voir.	If you should happen to see him.
Je viens *de* le voir.	I have just seen him.

282. Infinitive with other Prepositions. The infinitive stands also after **par, pour, sans, après, entre,** and after locutions ending in **de** or **à,** such as **afin de, avant de, jusqu'à,** etc.:

1. **Par** = *by* usually only after **commencer** and **finir**:

Il finit par m'insulter.	He ended by insulting me (*or* He finally insulted me).

2. **Pour** usually translates *in order to, for the purpose of;* sometimes also *for, from, because, though,* etc., and *to* after **assez, trop,** etc.:

Il faut manger pour vivre.	We must eat (in order) to live.
Il est mort pour avoir trop bu.	He died from over-drinking.
Il fut puni pour avoir ri.	He was punished for laughing.
Pour être pauvre, il n'est pas larron.	Though poor, he is no thief.
Il est trop franc pour se taire.	He is too frank to keep quiet.

a. **Pour** after a verb of motion (§ 278, 4) emphasizes the purpose:

J'irai pour le voir.	I shall go to see him.

3. **Sans** = *without:*

Ne partez pas sans manger.	Do not go without eating.

4. **Après** = *after* requires the perfect infinitive:

Après avoir dîné, je partis.	After having dined, I set out.

283. Infinitive for Subordinate Clause. 1. An infinitive construction usually replaces a **que** clause of which the subject is the same with that of the subject or object (direct or indirect) of the principal clause:

Il croit vous avoir vu.	He thinks that he has seen you.
Dites-leur de s'en aller.	Tell them to be gone.

2. Similarly **afin de, à moins de, après, avant de, de crainte de, de peur de, de façon à, de manière à, pour, sans,** etc. + the infinitive stand for **afin que,** etc. + the subjunctive, but only when the subject of both verbs is the same:

Il partit sans me voir.	He went without seeing me.
But: **Il partit sans que je le visse.**	He went without my seeing him.

284. Infinitive with Passive Force. A transitive infinitive has (seeming) passive force after verbs of perceiving

(**voir**, etc.), after **faire, laisser,** and when **à** + an infinitive is used adjectively (cf. § 241, 3):

J'ai vu bâtir cette maison.	I saw this house being built.
Je me fais faire un habit.	I am having a coat made for myself.
Vous êtes à plaindre.	You are to be pitied.
Une faute à éviter.	A mistake to be avoided.

NOTE. — This construction may be explained by supplying some such ellipsis as the following: **J'ai vu bâtir une maison** *à or par quelqu'un, I have seen somebody building a house.*

285. Infinitive for English *-ing*. The infinitive must be used to translate many such forms (see § 287, 2, 3, 4).

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

286. Functions. The participial form in **-ant** serves as a verbal adjective, as a present participle (without **en**), and as a gerund (with **en**):

1. As a verbal adjective, it denotes quality or state, and agrees like an adjective:

Elle paraît bien portante.	She seems well.
Les enfants doivent être obéissants.	Children must be obedient.
Les vivants, et les mourants.	The living and the dying.
Des paroles consolantes.	Comforting words.

Obs.: The verbal adjective, attributively, regularly follows the noun, as in the last example.

a. Some verbs have a special form for the verbal adjective:

ADJ.	PART.	ADJ.	PART.
différent, *different*	différant	négligent, *careless*	négligeant
convaincant, *convincing*	convainquant	puissant, *powerful*	pouvant
fatigant, *fatiguing*	fatiguant	savant, *learned*	sachant

2. As a present participle, it is used, in general, like the English present participle, to denote simultaneous action, manner, cause, motive, etc., and is invariable:

Pleurant, elle continua le récit.	Weeping, she continued the story.
Je le trouvai riant comme un fou.	I found him laughing like mad.
Elle ne sortit pas, étant malade.	She did not go out, being ill.

Ayant parlé ainsi, il sortit.	Having thus spoken, he went out.
Il n'entrera pas, moi vivant.	He shall not enter while I live.

NOTES. — 1. It is often difficult to determine whether the form in **-ant** is participle (invariable) or adjective (variable). As a participle, the action (generally transitory) is prominent, but as an adjective, quality or else continued action (state) is denoted. It is nearly always a participle when it has a complement or a construction peculiar to the verb, such as object, negative, adverb following: **Une femme mourante,** *A dying woman;* **Des gens mourant de faim,** *People dying of hunger;* **Les ennemis se retirèrent, brûlant les villes partout,** *The enemy retired, burning the towns everywhere;* **Une femme ne craignant rien,** *A woman fearing nothing;* **Des dames parlant doucement,** *Ladies speaking softly;* **De soi-disant amis,** *So-called friends.*

2. In the last example, **soi-disant,** though adjective in force, remains invariable in view of the literal meaning, *calling themselves.*

3. **Ayant** and **étant** are also always invariable, except in **les ayants-droit (-cause).**

3. As a gerund, it denotes either simultaneous action or 'means by which,' and is invariable; **en** = *while, in, on, when, as, by,* etc., or is untranslated:

En jouant, j'ai perdu ma montre.	While playing, I lost my watch.
En rentrant, j'ai trouvé la lettre.	On returning, I found the letter.
Vous perdrez, en agissant ainsi.	You will lose if you act thus.
En lisant on apprend à lire.	By reading one learns to read.

a. Both participle and gerund denote simultaneous action, but the use of **en,** strengthened sometimes by **tout,** usually emphasizes the continuity of the action:

(En) disant ceci, il prit la lyre.	(While) saying this, he took the harp.
Tout en pleurant, elle continua.	Still weeping, she went on.

b. The gerund usually refers to the subject:

Je l'ai vu en allant à la poste.	I saw him while going to the post.
But: **L'appétit vient en mangeant.**	One's appetite comes while eating.

c. **En** is sometimes omitted, especially after **aller:**

Généralement parlant.	Generally speaking.
Il s'en va (en) grondant.	Off he goes grumbling.

d. The gerund denotes progressive action in a few expressions formed from **aller:**

Cela alla (en) diminuant.	That kept growing less and less.

287. English Forms in *-ing*. These are variously translated into French; idiomatic differences are:

1. Periphrastic tense forms are avoided in French:

Il a joué toute la matinée.	He has been playing all morning.

2. English gerunds are translated by an **-ant** form only when the preposition **en** may be used; otherwise by an infinitive, a noun, or a clause:

En lisant on apprend à lire.	By reading one learns to read.
But: **Il parle de partir.**	He speaks of going away.
Il fut pendu pour avoir volé.	He was hanged for having stolen.
Elle partit sans dire adieu.	She went without saying good-bye.
Voir c'est croire.	Seeing is believing.
J'aime la chasse (*or* **à chasser**).	I like hunting.
Je suis étonné qu'il soit venu.	I am surprised at his coming.

3. After verbs of perception (**entendre, sentir, voir,** etc.), the relative or infinitive construction is much commoner than the participle:

Je les vois venir (**qui viennent** *or* **venant**).	I see them coming.
Les voilà qui passent!	See them passing!
Il a vu sortir mes frères.	He saw my brothers going out.
Les avez-vous entendus frapper (**qui frappaient**)?	Did you hear them knocking?
Je la (*or* **lui**) **vis frapper l'enfant.**	I saw her striking the child.

4. Compound nouns with a first component in **-ing** are not literally translated:

Une machine à coudre.	A sewing-machine.

5. It is often more elegant to avoid a French form in **-ant,** even when permissible:

Pendant mon voyage.	While traveling.

THE PAST PARTICIPLE

288. General Use. The past participle is used, (1) without auxiliary, (2) with **être,** (3) with **avoir** (or **être** used as **avoir**).

289. Without Auxiliary. A past participle without any auxiliary has the force of an adjective (attributive, predica-

tive, appositive), and agrees, like an adjective, in gender and number with the word qualified:

Des fêtes donnée*s* par le roi.	Festivities given by the king.
Les battu*s*; les mort*s*.	The beaten; the dead.
Le passé n'est plus à nous.	The past is no longer ours.
Jean et Marie semblent fatigué*s*.	John and Mary look tired.
Tenez les portes fermée*s*.	Keep the doors closed.
Ils me regardèrent étonné*s*.	They looked at me astonished.

a. Certain past participles have prepositional force when preceding the substantive, and are invariable, but are variable when following:

Vu les difficultés.	In view of the difficulties.
Excepté eux; eux excepté*s*.	Except them; they excepted.

Such are: **Approuvé, attendu, certifié, collationné, y compris, non compris, entendu, excepté, ouï, payé, passé, supposé, vu,** etc.

b. **Ci-inclus** = *enclosed* and **ci-joint** = *herewith*, are invariable when beginning a sentence, or when followed by a noun without article:

Ci-inclus la copie, etc.	Herewith the copy, etc.
Vous recevez ci-joint copie, etc.	You receive herewith a copy, etc.
But: **J'envoie ci-jointe une (la) copie,** etc.	I send herewith a (the) copy, etc.

290. Past Participle with *être*. A past participle with **être** agrees with the subject; for exceptions see § 244:

Ils sont (ont été) battu*s*.	They are (have been) beaten.
Marie et Louise sont venue*s*.	Mary and Louisa have come.
Ils sont sorti*s*.	They have gone out.
Les dames étant arrivée*s*.	The ladies having come.
Elle parla d'avoir été blessée.	She spoke of having been hurt.

a. Hence the past participle of an impersonal verb with **être** is invariable, agreeing strictly with the grammatical subject **il**:

Il était venu des soldats.	Soldiers had come.

291. Past Participle with *avoir*. 1. A past participle with **avoir** agrees with a preceding direct object; otherwise it is invariable:

La pièce *que* j'ai écrite, l'avez-vous lue?	Have you read the play I wrote?
Quels *livres* a-t-il apportés?	What books did he bring?

But: **J'ai écrit la lettre.**	I have written the letter.
Elles ont lu et écrit.	They have read and written.
Je lui ai donné la lettre.	I have given her the letter.

2. Similarly, the past participle of a reflexive verb (conjugated with **être** for **avoir**) always agrees with the reflexive object, unless that object be indirect:

Ils *se* sont réjouis.	They have rejoiced.
Elles *s'*étaient trompé*es*.	They were mistaken.
Elle *s'*est blessé*e*.	She wounded (*or* hurt) herself.
Elle *s'*est laissé*e* tomber.	She has fallen (fell).
But: **Ils se sont écrit.**	They wrote to each other.
Elle s'est blessé la main.	She wounded her hand.
Ils se sont arrogé ce privilège.	They assumed that privilege.
Ils se sont plu à Paris.	They enjoyed themselves in Paris.

a. Besides the indirect reflexive object, a direct object may be present, with which the following past participle agrees:

Les robes qu'elle s'est achetées.	The dresses she bought herself.

292. Remarks. All cases of the agreement of the past participle depend upon the above general principles; special difficulties are:

1. The past participle of an impersonal verb is invariable:

La belle journée qu'il a fait!	What a fine day it was!
La disette qu'il y a eu.	The scarcity that there was.

2. A noun denoting distance, time, price, weight, etc., with such verbs as **marcher, courir, vivre, coûter, peser, valoir,** etc., is adverbial accusative (not direct object); hence no agreement:

Les dix milles que j'ai marché.	The ten miles I walked.
Les cent francs que cet ouvrage m'a coûté.	The hundred francs that book cost me.

a. Such verbs used transitively, or figuratively with transitive force, follow the general rule:

La malle que j'ai pesée.	The trunk which I weighed.
Les dangers qu'il a courus.	The dangers he incurred.
La peur que cela a coûtée.	The fear which that caused.

3. A past participle preceded by an expression of number or quantity, a collective, etc., is variable or invariable according to the sense (cf. § 231–234):

Que de maux il a soufferts!	What ills he endured!
C'est la moitié des meubles qu'on a saisie.	It is the half of the furniture that has been seized.
La moitié des meubles que j'ai vendus.	The half of the furniture which I sold.
Quelle joie, quel bonheur vous lui avez procuré!	What joy, what happiness you have procured him!

a. Partitive **en** is never a direct object; agreement, however, takes place with **combien, plus, moins,** preceding **en,** if the sense be plural:

Combien Dieu en a-t-il exaucés!	How many of them God has heard!
Plus on vous a donné de livres, plus vous en avez lus.	The more books you were given, the more of them you read.

4. When an infinitive (with or without a preposition) follows, the past participle is invariable when the preceding direct object is governed by the infinitive, and variable if governed by the past participle alone:

La lettre que j'ai voulu écrire.	The letter I wished to write.
La lettre que j'ai oublié d'écrire.	The letter I forgot to write.
Il nous a priés d'y aller.	He begged us to go.
On nous a dit de sortir.	They told us to go out.

a. **Entendu, vu, laissé,** agree when the infinitive has active force, but are invariable if it has passive force (§ 284):

La dame que j'ai entendue chanter.	The lady I heard sing(ing).
Les enfants que j'ai vu battre.	The children I saw beaten.

b. After **dû, pu, voulu, osé,** with auxiliary force, a governing infinitive is either expressed or implied; hence no agreement:

J'ai lu tous les livres que j'ai pu (lire).	I read all the books that I could (read).
But: **Les livres que j'ai voulus.**	The books I wished.

c. **Fait** + infinitive is invariable:

Les médecins qu'il a fait venir.	The doctors he sent for.

d. The past participle of **avoir à** is variable or invariable:

Les lettres que j'ai eu (eues) à lire.	The letters I had to read.

5. The relative pronoun **que** is sometimes direct object of a verb in a following **que** clause, either fully expressed or implied, and hence the past participle is invariable:

Des choses que j'ai cru qu'il ferait.	Things I thought he would do.
J'ai lu les livres qu'il a voulu (que je lusse).	I read the books which he wished (me to read).

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS

293. Transitives. 1. A transitive verb governs a direct object, as in English:

J'ai écrit la lettre (des lettres).	I wrote the letter (letters).

2. A transitive verb can have only one direct object; other substantives related to it must stand as indirect object or as prepositional complement:

Pardonnez-lui ses péchés.	Pardon him his sins.
Je donne le dé à la fille.	I give the girl the thimble.
Je lui donne le dé avec plaisir.	I give her the thimble with pleasure.
Je conseille à mon fils de partir.	I advise my son to go.

a. By an extension of this principle, the verb **faire** = *make, cause to,* etc., + an infinitive, requires an indirect personal object when the infinitive has a direct object:

Je fais lire ce livre *à* mon *fils*.	I make (have) my son read this book.
Je *lui* fais lire ce livre.	I make him read this book.
But: **Je fais lire mon *fils*.**	I make my son read.
Je *le* fais lire.	I make him read.

b. **Laisser, voir, entendre, ouïr,** may have, and frequently do have, the same construction:

Laissez-*le* (-*lui*) lire le livre.	Let him read the book.
Je *l'*(*lui*) ai vu jouer ce rôle.	I saw him play that part.
But: **Laissez lire l'*enfant*.**	Let the child read.

294. Intransitives. An intransitive verb can have no direct object, but may, of course, have an indirect object or a prepositional complement:

Il parle à ce soldat.	He is speaking to that soldier.
Il lui parle de la guerre.	He speaks to him of the war.

a. A very few intransitives govern a direct object anomalously:

Il a vécu sa vie en héros.	He lived his life like a hero.
Il va tout droit son chemin.	He goes straight on his way.

NOTE. — Many verbs serve either as transitives or intransitives: **Il est descendu** (intransitive), *He has gone down;* **Il a descendu le tableau** (transitive), *He has taken down the picture.*

295. Predicative Complement. Nouns are used predicatively after certain verbs, as follows:

1. In nominative relation:

Ils sont Anglais.	They are Englishmen.
Il est médecin.	He is a doctor.
Elle est morte jeune fille.	She died a young girl.

Such verbs are:

demeurer, *remain*	être censé, *be supposed*	passer, *pass*
devenir, *become*	mourir, *die*	rester, *remain*
entrer, *enter*	naître, *be born*	sembler, *seem*
être, *be*	paraître, *appear*	sortir, *go out*, etc.

2. In accusative relation:

On le fit roi.	They made him king.
Je le crois honnête homme.	I think he is an honest man.
Je le connais incapable de mentir.	I know he is incapable of falsehood.

Such verbs are:

appeler, *call*	estimer, *esteem*	se montrer, *show oneself*
couronner, *crown*	faire, *make*	nommer, *name*
croire, *believe*	se faire, *become*	proclamer, *proclaim*
déclarer, *declare*	instituer, *institute*	savoir, *know*, etc.

296. Prepositional Complement. The use of **de** and **à** presents special difficulty; other prepositions have, in general, their usual literal force:

1. Some verbs with **de** have the force of an English transitive:

Il jouit d'une parfaite santé.	He enjoys perfect health.
Elle s'est trompée de porte.	She took the wrong door.
On se sert d'encre pour écrire.	Ink is used for writing.

Such verbs are:

abuser de, *misuse*	s'approcher de, *approach*	avoir peur de, *fear*
s'apercevoir de, *perceive*	avoir besoin de, *need*	avoir pitié de, *pity*

convenir de, *admit*
se défier de, *mistrust*
se démettre de, *resign*
disconvenir de, *deny*
douter de, *doubt*
se douter de, *suspect*
gémir de, *bemoan*
jouir de, *enjoy*
manquer de, *lack*
médire de, *slander*
se méfier de, *mistrust*
partir de, *leave*
se passer de, *do without*
se servir de, *use*
se souvenir de, *recollect*
se tromper de, *mistake*
user de, *employ, use*
etc.

2. Similarly, some verbs with **à** have the force of an English transitive:

Il obéit à son père. He obeys his father.
Elle ressemble à sa mère. She resembles her mother.

Such verbs are:

aller à, *fit, suit*
arriver à, *reach*
attenter à, *attempt (the life)*
compatir à, *pity*
convenir à, *suit*
déplaire à, *displease*
désobéir à, *disobey*
se fier à, *trust*
importer à, *concern*
nuire à, *harm*
obéir à, *obey*
obvier à, *obviate*
ordonner à, *order*
pardonner à, *pardon*
parvenir à, *attain*
permettre à, *permit*
persuader à, *persuade*
plaire à, *please*
promettre à, *promise*
remédier à, *remedy*
renoncer à, *renounce*
répondre à, *answer*
résister à, *resist*
ressembler à, *resemble*
succéder à, *succeed*
survivre à, *survive*
etc.

3. In some instances, on the contrary, a French transitive has the force of an English verb + a preposition.

Payez-lui les livres. Pay him *for* the books.
Je regarde cet arbre-là. I am looking *at* that tree.

Such verbs are:

accepter, *accept of*
admettre, *admit of*
approuver, *approve of*
attendre, *wait for*
chercher, *look for*
demander, *ask for*
désirer, *wish for*
écouter, *listen to*
envoyer chercher, *send for*
espérer, *hope for*
payer, *pay for*
regarder, *look at*
rencontrer, *meet with*
souhaiter, *wish for*
etc.

4. **De** and **à** frequently have, as compared with English, a special idiomatic force with certain verbs:

Cela dépend *de* vous. That depends on you.
Pensez *à* votre devoir. Think of your duty.

Such verbs are:

s'affliger de, *grieve at*
approcher(s') de, *draw near to*
blâmer de, *blame for*
complimenter de, *compliment on*
consoler de, *console for*
déjeuner de, *breakfast on*
dépendre de, *depend on*

se désoler de, *grieve over*
dîner de, *dine on*
féliciter de, *congratulate on*
gémir de, *lament over*
louer de, *praise for*
se mêler de, *meddle with*
se nourrir de, *live on*
profiter de, *profit by*
punir de, *punish for*
récompenser de, *reward for*
se réjouir de, *rejoice at*
remercier de, *thank for*
rire de, *laugh at*
triompher de, *triumph over*
vivre de, *live on*
etc.

---

acheter qqch. à qqu., *buy something from* (or *for*) *some one*
arracher qqch. à qqu., *snatch from*
cacher qqch. à qqu., *hide from*
conférer qqch. à qqu., *confer on*
demander qqch. à qqu., *ask for* (*of*)
dérober qqch. à qqu., *steal from*
emprunter qqch. à qqu., *borrow from*
infliger qqch. à qqu., *inflict on*
inspirer qqch. à qqu., *inspire with*
mêler qqch. à qqch., *mingle with*
ôter qqch. à qqu., *take away from*
pardonner qqch. à qqu., *pardon for*
payer qqch. à qqu., *pay for*
penser à qqch. *or* à qqu., *think of*
prendre qqch. à qqu., *take from*
pourvoir à qqch., *provide for*
procurer qqch. à qqu., *procure for*
prodiguer qqch. à qqu., *lavish on*
reprocher qqch. à qqu., *reproach with*
souhaiter qqch. à qqu., *wish*
voler qqch. à qqu., *steal from*

5. Many verbs have a double construction with varying meaning:

Ils jouent *aux* cartes. They are playing cards.
Elle joue *du* piano. She is playing the piano.

Such verbs are:

abuser qqu., *deceive*
abuser de qqch., *misuse*
assister qqu., *help*
assister à qqch., *be present at, witness*
concourir à qqch., *contribute to*
concourir pour qqch., *compete for*
convenir à qqu., *suit*
convenir de qqch., *agree about*
croire qqu. *or* qqch., *believe*
croire à, en, *believe in*
demander qqu. *or* qqch., *ask after*
demander qqch. à qqu., *ask for* (*from, of*)
hériter de qqu., *be heir of*
hériter de qqch., *inherit*
jouer qqu., *deceive*
jouer d'un instrument, *play on an instrument*
jouer à un jeu, *play* (*at*) *a game*
manquer qqu. *or* qqch., *miss*
manquer de, *lack, be nearly*
manquer à, *fail in*
penser à, *think of* (*about*)
penser de, *have opinion of*
prétendre qqch., *assert*
prétendre à, *aspire to*
servir, *serve* (tr. and intr.)
servir de, *serve as*
servir à, *be useful for*
se servir de, *make use of*
suppléer qqu., *take the place of*
suppléer à qqch., *complete*
toucher qqu. *or* qqch., *touch*
toucher de l'argent, *draw money*
toucher à, *meddle with, be near to*
toucher d'un instrument, *play an instrument* (keyed)
user qqch., *wear out*
user de, *make use of*
en user de, *deal, act*
veiller qqu., *watch over, nurse*
veiller à qqch., *attend to, watch over*
veiller sur qqu., *watch over*, etc.

297. Position. Objects and prepositional complements regularly follow the verb, the direct object (if any) being first; but if of unequal length, the longer is usually last. For position of personal pronouns, see the Pronoun.

298. Composite Complement. The various parts of a complement must be of the same grammatical value, *i.e.*, all nouns, all verbs, etc.:

Il apprend à lire et à chanter.	He learns to read and sing.
Il apprend la lecture et le chant.	He learns reading and singing.

299. Manifold Verb. Two or more verbs can govern the same complement only if alike in government:

Il aime et respecte son *oncle*.	He loves and respects his uncle.
Il aime son *oncle* et *lui* obéit.	He loves and obeys his uncle.

THE NOUN

GENDER OF NOUNS

300. General Rule. Nouns in French are either masculine or feminine. As an aid to memory, general rules for determining gender are given in the following sections.

301. Gender by Derivation. 1. Nouns derived from Latin masculines are regularly masculine:

Mur (L. *murum*); **livre** (L. *librum*); **ordre** (L. *ordinem*); **poète** (L. *poeta*). Wall; book; order; poet.

a. Exceptions are not uncommon; Latin masculine abstracts in **-or** (accusative **-orem**) have become feminine, except masculine **honneur, déshonneur, labeur, amour:**

candeur, f. (L. *candorem*), *innocence*
* couleur, f. (L. *colorem*), *color*
douleur, f. (L. *dolorem*), *pain*
erreur, f. (L. *errorem*), *error*
fureur, f. (L. *furorem*), *fury*
etc.

* Masculine in such phrases as **couleur de feu, couleur de rose,** etc., *e.g.*, **ce ruban est d'un beau couleur de rose.**

2. Nouns derived from Latin feminines are regularly feminine:

Justice (L. *justitiam*); **charité** (L. *caritatem*); **main** (L. *manum*); **foi** (L. *fidem*).	Justice; charity; hand; faith.

3. Nouns derived from Latin neuters are regularly masculine:

Corps (L. *corpus*); **fer** (L. *ferrum*); **or** (L. *aurum*); **pré** (L. *pratum*); **siècle** (L. *sæculum*); **verbe** (L. *verbum*).	Body; iron; gold; meadow; century; verb.

a. More than a hundred neuter plurals in **-a** have become feminine singular in French, just as if derived from nouns in **-a** of the Latin first declension:

arme (L. *arma*), *arm*	feuille (L. *folia*), *leaf*	lèvre (L. *labra*), *lip*
date (L. *data*), *date*	graine (L. *grana*), *seed*	œuvre (L. *opera*), *work*
dette (L. *debita*), *debt*	huile (L. *olea*), *oil*	pomme (L. *poma*) *apple*
étude (L. *studia*), *study*	joie (L. *gaudia*), *joy*	etc.

302. Gender by Endings. 1. Masculine are most nouns ending as follows:

(1) In a vowel sound (not **-e** mute):

Un opéra (**côté, chapeau, cheveu**).	An opera (side, hat, hair).
Un parti (**zéro, caillou, tissu**).	A party (zero, pebble. tissue).

a. Feminine exceptions are:

guérilla, *guerilla*	moitié, *half*	bru, *daughter-in-law*
gutta-percha, *gutta-percha*	fourmi, *ant*	glu, *bird lime*
polka, *polka*	merci, *mercy*	tribu, *tribe*
razzia, *raid*	foi, *faith*	vertu, *virtue*
tombola, *charity lottery*	loi, *law*	eau, *water*
véranda, *veranda*	paroi, *wall*	peau, *skin*
cité, *city*	virago, *virago*	etc.

Further, most abstracts in **-té, -tié:**

amitié, *friendship*	liberté, *liberty*	santé, *health*
charité, *charity*	pitié, *pity*	etc.

(2) In a consonant:

Le sac (**pied, joug, sol, nez, temps**).	The sack (foot, yoke, soil, nose, time)

a. Feminine exceptions are:

clef, *key*	chair, *flesh*	vis, *screw*	croix, *cross*
nef, *ship, nave*	cour, *court*	dent, *tooth*	faux, *scythe*
soif, *thirst*	cuiller, *spoon*	dot, *dower*	noix, *walnut*
faim, *hunger*	mer, *sea*	forêt, *forest*	paix, *peace*
façon, *fashion*	tour, *tower*	gent, *tribe*	perdrix, *partridge*
fin, *end*	brebis, *sheep*	mort, *death*	poix, *pitch*
leçon, *lesson*	fois, *time*	nuit, *night*	toux, *cough*
main, *hand*	oasis, *oasis*	part, *part, share*	voix, *voice*
rançon, *ransom*	souris, *mouse*	chaux, *lime*	etc.

Further, nouns in **-son, -ion** and most abstracts in **-eur** (cf. § 301, *a*):

chanson, *song*	nation, *nation*	faveur, *favor*
maison, *house*	occasion, *occasion*	fureur, *fury*
raison, *reason*	possession, *possession*	peur, *fear*
trahison, *treason*	couleur, *color*	etc.

(3) In **-acle, -age, -asme, -ège, -ème, -isme, -tère:**

Le spectacle (voyage, sarcasme, collège, diadème, magnétisme, mystère).	The spectacle (journey, sarcasm, college, diadem, magnetism, mystery).

a. The following feminines in **-age** should be noted:

cage, *cage*	nage, *swimming*	plage, *beach*
image, *image*	page, *page* (of a book)	rage, *rage*

2. Feminine are most nouns ending as follows:

(1) In **-e** preceded by a vowel or double consonant:

Une année (vie, vue, raie, soie, roue, pluie, famille, flamme, couronne, tristesse, botte).	A year (life, sight, streak, silk, wheel, rain, family, flame, crown, sadness, boot).

(2) In **-ace, -ade, -ance, -ence, -ense, -ière, -oire, -ude, -ure:**

La préface (salade, constance, présence, défense, lumière, histoire, habitude, culture).	The preface (salad, constancy, presence, defence, light, history, habit, culture).

303. Gender by Meaning. 1. Names of male beings are usually masculine, and names of female beings feminine:

Un homme; une femme.	A man; a woman.
Un bœuf; une vache.	An ox; a cow.

a. Most nouns denoting professions, *e.g.*, **auteur,** *author,* **écrivain,** *writer,* **imprimeur,** *printer,* etc., and a few nouns lacking a feminine form, *e.g.*, **ange,** *angel,* **témoin,** *witness,* etc., remain masculine when applied to females:

Cette dame est un auteur distingué.	That lady is a celebrated authoress.
Marie est un ange.	Mary is an angel.

b. Some names of lower animals are masculine only, *e.g.*, **éléphant,** *elephant,* **hibou,** *owl;* others are feminine only, *e.g.*, **fourmi,** *ant,* **souris,** *mouse;* ambiguity may be avoided by adding **mâle** or **femelle**:

Un éléphant mâle (femelle).	A bull (cow) elephant.

c. Some nouns are feminine only, whether applied to males or females:

caution, *surety*	personne, *person*	vedette, *scout*
connaissance, *acquaintance*	pratique, *customer*	victime, *victim*
dupe, *dupe*	recrue, *recruit*	vigie, *look-out man*
ganache, *blockhead*	sentinelle, *sentinel*	etc.

2. The following are masculine:

(1) Names of cardinal points and winds:

Le nord; le sud; le zéphyr.	The north; the south; the zephyr.

a. Feminine exceptions are:

bise, *north wind*	mousson, *monsoon*	tramontane, *north wind*
brise, *breeze*		

(2) Names of seasons, months, days of the week:

Le printemps; octobre; lundi.	Spring; October; Monday.

(3) Names of countries not ending in **-e:**

Le Canada; le Dauphiné; le Chili.	Canada; Dauphiny; Chile.

(4) Most names of mountains not ending in **-es,** and most names of rivers:

Le Hartz; le Jura.	The Hartz mts.; the Jura mts.
Les Apennins.	The Apennines.
Le Volga; le Rhône; le Rhin.	The Volga; the Rhone; the Rhine.

But fem.: **Les Alp*es*** (**Pyrénée*s***, **Vosge*s***, etc.).

a. The rivers of France in **-e** are nearly all feminine:

La Seine, la Loire, etc.	The Seine, the Loire, etc.

(5) Names of trees and shrubs:

Le chêne; le bouleau; le pommier.	The oak; the birch; the apple tree.

a. Feminine exceptions are:

aubépine, *hawthorn* épine, *thorn* vigne, *vine*
bourdaine, *buckthorn* hièble, *dwarf elder* viorne, *wild clematis*
bruyère, *heath* ronce, *bramble* etc.

(6) Names of weights and measures of the metrical system:

Un mètre (**gramme, litre,** etc.). A meter (gramme, liter, etc.).

(7) Names of metals and chemicals:

Le fer (**or, cuivre, argent, sulfate**). Iron (gold, copper, silver, sulphate).

a. Feminine exceptions are:

fonte, *cast iron* tôle, *sheet iron*

(8) Words and phrases not nouns when used as nouns:

Le beau; le blanc; le français. The beautiful; white; French.
Un a; un mais; un ouï-dire. An 'a'; a 'but'; a rumor.
Le derrière de la tête. The back of the head.

a. Adjectives referring to concrete objects have the gender of the noun understood:

Une belle (*sc.* **dame, femme,** etc.). A beauty.
Une capitale (*sc.* **ville, lettre**). A capital.

b. The names of the letters of the alphabet, as given in § 4, are all masculine, but **f, h, l, m, n, r, s** are often treated as feminine.

Un a; un b; une (*or* **un**) **f.** An 'a'; a 'b'; an 'f.'

3. The following are feminine:

(1) Names of countries in **-e:**

La France (**Asie, Normandie**). France (Asia, Normandy).

a. Some masculine exceptions are:

le Bengale, *Bengal* le Mexique, *Mexico* le Maine, *Maine* (in Fr.)

(2) Most names of cities and towns, especially in **-e, -es:**

Rome; Athènes; Tyr; Ilion. Rome; Athens; Tyre; Ilium.

a. Masculine exceptions are:

le Caire, *Cairo* Londres, *London* Paris, *Paris*
le Havre, *Havre* Versailles, *Versailles* etc.

Notes. — 1. Any name of a town or city is masculine as a collective: **Tout Rome le sait,** *All Rome knows it.* 2. In case of doubt as to the gender, the name may always be preceded by **la ville de** = *the town* (*city*) *of.*

(3) Names of holidays, **fête de** being understood:

La Saint-Martin; la mi-juin. Martinmas; mid-June.

a. Observe:

Noël, m. (**la Noël, la fête de Noël**). Christmas.

(4) Names of arts, sciences, trades:

La peinture (**chimie, librairie**). Painting (chemistry, book-trade).

a. Principal exception:

le dessin, *drawing*

304. Nouns of Double Gender. 1. Some nouns denoting persons, mostly in **-e,** and adjectives in **-e,** when so used, are either masculine or feminine:

Un (**une**) **artiste; un** (**une**) **élève.** An artist; a pupil.
Un (**une**) **malade; un** (**une**) **rebelle.** A patient; a rebel.

Such nouns are:

aide, *assistant*	* enfant, *child*	propriétaire, *owner*
camarade, *comrade*	esclave, *slave*	pupille, *ward*
compatriote, *compatriot*	locataire, *tenant*	etc.

* Regularly masculine in the plural. But: **belles enfants,** *pretty little girls.*

2. The meaning of some nouns varies with the gender:

***Un* critique; *une* critique.** A critic; a criticism.
***Le* mode; *la* mode.** The mode, mood (*gram.*); the fashion.

Other such nouns are:

	Masc.	Fem.		Masc.	Fem.
aide	*assistant*	*assistant, help*	page	*page*	*page* (of a book)
aune	*alder*	*ell*	pendule	*pendulum*	*clock*
crêpe	*crape*	*pancake*	poêle	*stove, pall*	*frying-pan*
garde	*guard* (mil.), *keeper*	*keeper, body of troops, watch, hilt*	politique	*politician*	*politics*
			poste	*position*	*post office*
guide	*guide*	*rein*	somme	*sleep, nap*	*sum*
livre	*book*	*pound*	souris	*smile*	*mouse*
manche	*handle*	*sleeve*	statuaire	*sculptor*	*sculpture*
mémoire	*memorandum*	*memory*	tour	*turn, trick*	*tower*
merci	*thanks*	*mercy, pity*	trompette	*trumpeter*	*trumpet*
moule	*mould*	*mussel*	vapeur	*steamer*	*steam*
mousse	*cabin-boy*	*moss*	vase	*vase*	*slime, mud*
office	*service*	*larder*	voile	*veil*	*sail*

3. The following nouns are either masculine or feminine, with identical or closely related meaning:

a. **Après-midi** = *afternoon* and **automne** = *autumn* are usually masculine, sometimes feminine.

b. **Amour** (m.) = *love, loved object, passion, amour;* **amour** (f. s. poet.) = *passion, amour;* **amours** (f. pl.) = *passion, amours.*

c. **Automobile** (m. or f.), more commonly feminine.

d. **Délice** = *delight* and **orgue** = *organ* (*music*) are masculine in singular and feminine in plural.

e. **Hymne** (m.) = *hymn, song of praise;* **hymne** (f.) = (*church*) *hymn.* (Commonly **cantique** is used.)

f. **Couple** (m.) = *couple, pair* (joined by affection, sentiment, etc.); **couple** (f.) = *couple, two* (two like objects taken together):

***Un* couple d'amoureux.**	A pair of lovers.
***Une* couple d'œufs.**	Two (a couple of) eggs.
Note: **Une *paire* de gants,** etc.	A pair of gloves, etc.

g. **Pâque** *or* **pâques** (m. s.) = *Easter;* **pâques fleuries** (f. pl.) = *Palm Sunday* (so also in other phrases); **pâque** (f.) = *Passover.*

h. **Orge** (f.) = *barley* is masculine in **orge mondé** (**perlé**) = *pot-* (*pearl-*) *barley.*

i. **Foudre** (f.) = *thunderbolt* is sometimes masculine in poetry or elevated prose; **foudre** (m.) in **le foudre de Jupiter** = *Jove's thunderbolt* and in figurative expressions, *e.g.*, **un grand foudre de guerre** = *a great warrior.*

j. **Œuvre** (f.) = *work, works,* is sometimes masculine in elevated style; **œuvre** (m. s.) = *works* (collectively of an engraver or musician); **le grand œuvre** = *the philosopher's stone.*

k. **Gens** (pl. m. *or* f.) = *people, persons,* etc. Attributive adjectives are feminine when preceding, and masculine when following **gens,** but predicatives, before or after, are masculine. *All* is translated by **toutes** only when attributive and separated from **gens** by an adjective variable for the feminine; otherwise by **tous:**

De bonnes gens.	Good people.
Les vieilles gens sont malheureux.	Old people are unhappy.

Les petites gens et les grands.	The small people and the great.
Merci, bonnes gens, merci.	Thanks, good people, thanks.
Ces gens sont heureux.	Those people are happy.
Toutes les vieilles gens.	All (the) old people.
Tous les gens.	All the people.
But: **Tous les habiles gens.**	All the clever people.
Tous ces gens-ci.	All these people.
Tous sont de bonnes gens.	All are good people.
Les gens sont tous ici.	The people are all here.

NOTES. — 1. A pronoun to which **gens** is antecedent is masculine: **Les gens *qui* sont *venus,*** *The people who have come.* 2. **Gens** in expressions like **gens de robe** = *lawyers* and in **jeunes gens** = *young men* is always masculine.

305. Gender of Compound Nouns. 1. Compound nouns made up of a verb + a governed noun are regularly masculine:

Un cure-dents; un porte-plume.	A toothpick; a penholder.
Un tire-bouchon; un portefeuille.	A corkscrew; a portfolio.

a. Occasionally they are feminine:

Une perce-neige.	A snowdrop.

2. The gender of other compounds is regularly that of the noun when only one noun is present, or of the principal noun in case there are two:

Une eau-forte.	An etching.
Une mappe-monde.	A map of the world.
La fête-dieu.	Corpus Christi day.

306. Formation of the Feminine. Most nouns denoting living beings distinguish the masculine and feminine as follows:

1. Some by a different word:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
bœuf, *ox*	vache	mari, *husband*	femme
bouc, *he-goat*	chèvre	oncle, *uncle*	tante
coq, *cock*	poule	parrain, *godfather*	marraine
frère, *brother*	sœur	porc, *pig*	truie
homme, *man*	femme	etc.	etc.

a. The feminine form is often obviously cognate:

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
ambassadeur, *ambassador*	ambassadrice	gouverneur, *tutor*	gouvernante
canard, *drake*	cane	loup, *wolf*	louve
* chanteur, *singer*	cantatrice	mulet, *mule*	mule
cochon, *hog*	coche	*procureur, *proxy*	procuratrice
compagnon, *companion*	compagne	serviteur, *servant*	servante
dindon, *turkey cock*	dinde	vieillard, *old man*	vieille
empereur, *emperor*	impératrice	etc.	etc.

* Also in **-euse,** see § 337, 2 (2), *a.*

2. Some by adding **-esse** to the last consonant:

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
abbé, *abbot*	abbesse	ogre, *ogre*	ogresse
âne, *ass*	ânesse	pair, *peer*	pairesse
chanoine, *canon*	chanoinesse	pauvre, *pauper*	pauvresse
comte, *count*	comtesse	prêtre, *priest*	prêtresse
diable, *devil*	diablesse	prince, *prince*	princesse
drôle, *rogue*	drôlesse	suisse, *Swiss*	suissesse
druide, *druid*	druidesse	tigre, *tiger*	tigresse
hôte, *host*	hôtesse	traître, *traitor*	traîtresse
maître, *master*	maîtresse	etc.	etc.

a. So also the following, but with changes in the stem:

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
dieu, *god*	déesse	défendeur, *defendant*	défenderesse
doge, *doge*	dogaresse	* demandeur, *plaintiff*	demanderesse
duc, *duke*	duchesse	docteur, *doctor*	doctoresse
larron, *thief*	larronnesse	enchanteur, *enchanter*	enchanteresse
nègre, *negro*	négresse	pécheur, *sinner*	pécheresse
prophète, *prophet*	prophétesse	* vendeur, *seller* (law)	venderesse
* chasseur, *huntsman*	chasseresse	vengeur, *avenger*	vengeresse

* Also in **-euse,** see § 337, 2 (2), *a.*

3. A few nouns take **-ine:**

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
tsar, *czar*	tsarine	Philippe, *Philip*	Philippine
héros, *hero*	héroïne	etc.	etc.

4. Most other nouns follow the analogy of adjectives of like termination, and will be noted under the Adjective.

NUMBER OF NOUNS

307. General Rule. The plural of a noun is regularly formed by adding **-s** to the singular:

Roi(*s*); **reine**(*s*); **jardin**(*s*).	King(*s*); queen(*s*); garden(*s*).

308. Principal Exceptions. The following are the principal exceptions to the above rule:

1. Nouns in **-s, -x, -z** remain unchanged in the plural; so also invariable words when used as nouns:

Le bras; **la voix**; **le nez.**	The arm; the voice; the nose.
Les bras; **les voix**; **les nez.**	The arms; the voices; the noses.
Les *oui* et les *non*; les *on dit*.	The ayes and noes; the rumors.
Plusieurs *peu* font un beaucoup.	Many littles make a 'muckle.'

2. Nouns in **-au, -eu,** and seven in **-ou,** take **-x**:

Noyau(*x*); **château**(*x*); **jeu**(*x*), **vœu**(*x*).	Kernel(*s*); castle(*s*); game(*s*); vow(*s*).

The seven nouns in **-ou** are:

bijou(**x**), *jewel*	**genou**(**x**), *knee*	**joujou**(**x**), *toy*
caillou(**x**), *pebble*	**hibou**(**x**), *owl*	**pou**(**x**), *louse*
chou(**x**), *cabbage*		

But: **clou**(**s**), *nail,* **sou**(**s**), *half-penny,* etc.

3. Most nouns in **-al** change **-al** to **-au,** and add **-x** as above:

Général; **cheval**; **journal.**	General; horse; newspaper.
Généraux; **chevaux**; **journaux.**	Generals; horses; newspapers.

a. But the following, and a few rarer ones in **-al,** are regular:

aval(**s**), *endorsement*	**cal**(**s**), *callosity*	**chacal**(**s**), *jackal*
bal(**s**), *ball (for dancing)*	**carnaval**(**s**), *carnival*	**régal**(**s**), *treat*

4. The following in **-ail** have the plural in **-aux:**

bail (**-aux**), *lease*	**travail** (**-aux**), *work*	**vitrail** (**-aux**), *stained glass window*
corail (**-aux**), *coral*	**vantail** (**-aux**), *folding-door*	
soupirail (**-aux**), *air-hole*	**ventail** (**-aux**), *ventail*	

But: **détail**(**s**), *detail;* **éventail**(**s**), *fan,* etc., are regular.

NOTE. — **Bestiaux** (pl.), *cattle,* is often given as the plural of **bétail,** *cattle;* it is from an obsolete form **bestiail,** parallel to **bétail.**

5. **Gent** = *race, tribe,* has the plural **gens** = *people,* etc.

309. Double Plurals. The following have two plural forms, mostly with varying meaning:

aïeul (aïeux), *ancestor*
aïeul (aïeuls), *grandfather*
ail (aulx), *garlic*
ail (ails), *garlic*
ciel (cieux), *sky, heaven, climate*
ciel (ciels), *bed-tester, sky (in painting), roof (of a quarry)*
œil (yeux), *eye*
œil (œils-) in compounds, *e.g.*, œils-de-bœuf, *oval windows*
pal (paux), *pale, stake*
pal (pals), *pale, stake*
travail (travaux), *work*
travail (travails), *report (of a minister, etc.), brake (for horse-shoeing)*

Obs.; The **-x** plural regularly has the literal meaning of the word.

310. Foreign Nouns. Nouns of foreign origin take **-s,** usually only when fully naturalized, but usage varies greatly (see a dictionary):

a. Partial list of variable foreign nouns:

accessit(**s**), *honorable mention*
album(**s**), *album*
alibi(**s**), *alibi*
bifteck(**s**), *beefsteak*
bill(**s**), *bill*
duo(**s**), *duo*
jury(**s**), *jury*
opéra(**s**), *opera*
pensum(**s**), *task*
toast(**s**), *toast*
tramway(**s**), *street-railway*
vivat(**s**), *hurrah*
etc.

b. Partial list of invariable foreign nouns:

amen	in-folio	magnificat	requiem	veto
facsimile	in-octavo	nota bene	Te Deum	etc.
item	intérim	post-scriptum	vade mecum	

c. A few Italian nouns retain their plural in **i:**

dilettante(**-i**), *dilettante*
libretto(**-i**), *libretto*
soprano(**-i**), *soprano*
lazzarone(**-i**), *beggar*
quintetto(**-i**), *quintette*
etc.

311. Compound Nouns. The only components which take a plural sign are nouns and adjectives. The following are special rules:

1. Compounds without hyphen are treated as one word, and follow the general rules:

Portemanteau(*x*); **grand'mère**(*s*). Valise(*s*); grandmother(*s*).

a. Exceptions are:

bon(**s**)homme(**s**), *goodman, etc.*
gentil(**s**)homme(**s**), *nobleman*
monsieur (**mes**sieurs), *Mr., sir,* etc.
madame (**mes**dames), *madam, Mrs.*
mademoiselle (**mes**demoiselles), *Miss*
monseigneur (**mes**seigneurs), *my lord*

2. When placed in juxtaposition and connected by a hyphen, nouns and adjectives are variable:

Chef(*s*)-lieu(*x*); chou(*x*)-fleur(*s*); grand(*s*)-père(*s*). Country-town(*s*); cauliflower(s); grandfather(*s*).

a. **Demi-** is invariable in compounds.

Des *demi*-heures. Half hours.

b. Further exceptions are:

blanc-seing(s), *signature in blank*
chevau-léger(s), *light-horseman*
terre-plein(s), *platform*
etc.

3. Of two nouns joined by preposition and hyphens, the first only is variable:

Arc(*s*)-en-ciel; chef(*s*)-d'œuvre. Rainbow; masterpiece.

a. The preposition **de** is sometimes understood:

bain(s)-marie, *water bath, double boiler*
hôtel(s)-dieu, *hospital*
timbre(s)-poste, *postage-stamp*
etc.

b. The following are invariable, since the idea conveyed by their plural does not properly belong to the first component simply:

coq-à-l'âne, *cock-and-bull story*
pied-à-terre, *temporary lodging*
pot-au-feu, *beef and soup*
tête-à-tête, *private interview*

4. A noun with preceding invariable component is usually variable:

Anglo-Saxon(*s*); avant-garde(*s*) Anglo-Saxon; vanguard
tire-bouchon(*s*); vice-roi(*s*) corkscrew; viceroy
bouche-trou(*s*) stop-gap

a. But the final noun remains invariable when the plural idea does not properly belong to it:

abat-jour, *lamp shade*
coupe-gorge, *cut-throat place*
crève-cœur, *heartbreak*
contre-poison, *antidote*
gagne-pain, *means of living*
perce-neige, *snowdrop*
prie-dieu, *praying-stool*
boute-en-train, *jolly fellow*
réveille-matin, *alarm clock*
serre-tête, *headband*
etc.

b. On the other hand, a final noun of clearly plural sense retains **-s** in the singular:

un (des) casse-noisette**s**, *nutcracker*
un (des) cure-dent**s**, *toothpick*
un (des) porte-clef**s**, *turnkey*
etc.

5. Invariable words, such as verb, adverb, preposition, etc., are invariable in compounds:

Des on dit; des passe-partout. Rumors; master-keys.

a. **Garde-** is usually variable in compounds denoting persons, and invariable in those denoting things:

Des gardes-malades.	Sick-nurses.
But: **Des garde-robes.**	Wardrobes.

312. Plural of Proper Nouns. 1. Names of persons or families are usually invariable in the plural:

Les deux Racine.	The two Racines.
Les Corneille et les Racine de la scène.	The Corneilles and Racines of the stage (*i.e.*, Corneille, Racine, and others like them).
Les Duval sont arrivés.	(The) Duvals have come.

a. A few Latin names, originally plural in form, and certain well-known historical names of families and dynasties, take **-s**:

Les Bourbons	Les Gracques	Les Pharaons	Les Tudors
Les Césars	Les Guises	Les Scipions	etc.
Les Condés	Les Horaces	Les Stuarts	

b. Names of persons used as common nouns to denote 'persons like' or 'works by' those named are often variable, but usage is not fixed:

Les Corneille*s* sont rares.	Corneilles are rare.
J'ai vu deux Raphaël*s*.	I saw two Raphaels.

But: **les Hamlet; les La Fontaine; les Goethe; les Washington,** etc.

2. Names of places take **-s** when the idea is plural:

Les Inde*s*; les Vosge*s*.	The Indies; the Vosges.
Les deux Rome*s*.	The two Romes (*i.e.*, the ancient and modern).

CASE RELATION AND AGREEMENT OF NOUNS

313. Case Relations. The noun in French does not vary in form to denote case; it is used as follows:

1. With verbs, as subject, object, predicate:

Le père aime son fils.	The father loves his son.
Jean est devenu soldat.	John has become a soldier.

2. In appositions, and with adjectival force:

Henri IV, roi de France.	Henry IV, King of France.
Un roi enfant.	A child king.

3. After prepositions:

J'ai parlé à son père.	I have spoken to his father.

4. Absolutely, generally with adverbial force:

Le dîner fini, il partit.	The dinner ended, he set out.
Il était là, le chapeau à la main.	He was there, (with) his hat in his hand.
Je suis venu samedi.	I came on Saturday.
Il est resté trois heures.	He stayed three hours.
J'ai marché dix milles.	I walked ten miles.
Nous l'avons acheté dix francs.	We bought it for ten francs.

5. Vocatively:

Bonjour, mes amis.	Good morning, my friends.

314. Agreement. A predicate noun, or a noun used adjectivally, usually agrees like an adjective with the word referred to (see Agreement of the Adjective):

Ils (elles) sont Allemand(e)s.	They are Germans.
La reine mère.	The queen mother.

THE ARTICLE

315. The Indefinite Article

Masc.	Fem.
un, a (an)	**une**, a (an)

316. The Definite Article

Sing.		Pl.
Masc.	**le (l')**	Masc. or Fem. **les**, the
Fem.	**la (l')**	

Obs.: For the forms in parenthesis, see § 19, 1.

317. Contractions. The prepositions **de** and **à** + **le** and **les**, are always contracted as follows:

de + le = **du**	à + le = **au**
de + les = **des**	à + les = **aux**

NOTES. — 1. No contraction takes place with **la, l'**. 2. Formerly **en** + **les** was contracted to **ès**, a form still used in academical titles, *e.g.*, **Bachelier ès lettres**, *Bachelor of Arts*.

318. Agreement and Repetition. The article agrees in gender and number with its noun, and is regularly repeated (as also **de, à**) before each noun or adjective denoting a distinctive object:

Une maison et un jardin.	A house and garden.
Le flux et le reflux.	High and low tide.
Au bon et au mauvais côté.	On the good and bad side.
Les bons et les mauvais.	The good and the bad.
Des hommes ou des femmes.	Men or women.
But: **Le bon et pieux prêtre.**	The kind and pious priest.
Le delta ou basse Égypte.	The Delta or Lower Egypt.

a. The definite article is not repeated when a single adjective precedes nouns joined by **et**:

Les principales villes et provinces de la France.	The principal towns and provinces of France.

b. Singular adjectives in apposition to a plural noun omit the article:

Les langues française et anglaise.	The French and English languages.
Or: **La langue française et la langue anglaise.**	
La langue française et l'anglaise.	

c. A few expressions of collective force, like the following, are permissible, but are either not obligatory or are confined to set expressions:

Les père et mère.	The parents.
Les lundi et mardi.	(On) Mondays and Tuesdays.
Les trois et quatre avril.	The third and fourth of April.
Les officiers et soldats.	The officers and soldiers.
École des ponts et chaussées.	School of bridges and roads.

d. For the repetition of **le, la, les** with the superlative, see Comparison of Adjectives.

USE OF THE ARTICLE WITH NOUNS

319. Use in General. French and English agree to a considerable extent in the use of the article; differences are noted below.

320. The Indefinite Article. 1. Its use corresponds in general with that of English *a, an;* its plural is the partitive **des** (§ 323):

Un homme; une femme; *des* gens.	A man; a woman; people.

2. Contrary to English usage, the indefinite article also commonly stands before an abstract noun used partitively with an adjective or an adjectival adjunct:

Il montra un soin extrême.	He showed extreme care.
Il a une patience à toute épreuve.	He has patience equal to anything.
Elle jouit d'une bonne santé.	She enjoys good health.
C'est une triste nouvelle.	It is sad news.

a. The adjective or complementary clause depending on such a noun may be understood:

Voilà une patience!	There is patience for you!
J'étais d'une humeur . . .	I was in a temper . . .
Un garçon d'une raison . . .	A young fellow of (splendid) intellect!

NOTE. — For several cases in which the English indefinite article is replaced by the French definite article, or *vice versa*, or is omitted, see below.

321. The General Noun. A noun used in a general sense, *i.e.*, 'in general,' 'all,' 'every,' etc., being implied with it, regularly has the definite article in French, though not usually in English:

La vie est courte.	Life is short.
Le fer et le cuivre sont utiles.	Iron and copper are useful.
J'étudie la musique.	I am studying music.
Les Français aiment la gloire.	The French love glory.
***Le* cheval est *l'*ami de l'homme.**	*The* horse is *the* friend of man.
Le noir vous sied bien.	Black becomes you.
J'aime les pommes et les poires.	I like apples and pears.
***Le* beau et *l'*utile.**	*The* beautiful and *the* useful.
Le boire et le manger.	Eating and drinking.

a. So also, names of languages, except after **en**; but not, however, after **parler**:

Sait-il le français ?	Does he know French ?
Il parle bien (le) français.	He speaks French well.
But: **Dites cela en français.**	Say that in French.
Parlez-vous français ?	Do you speak French ?

322. The Partitive Noun. A noun implying 'an undetermined quantity or number of' is said to be used partitively or in a partitive sense.

323. Partitive with Article. The partitive sense, expressed in English by the noun simply, or else the noun preceded by 'some' or 'any,' is regularly expressed in French by the noun preceded by **de** + the definite article:

Du pain trempé dans du vin.	(Some) bread dipped in wine.
A-t-il des amis ?	Has he (any) friends ?
Des enfants poussaient des cris désespérés.	Some children were uttering terrible cries.
Il est des gens qui le croient.	There are people who believe it.
C'est du Carlyle pur.	That is pure Carlyleism.

NOTE. — This use of **de** + the definite article, or even of **de** alone (see next section), is often called the 'partitive article'; it is entirely identical in form with **de** + the article in other senses, *e.g.*, **Je vends *du* blé,** *I sell wheat;* **Quel est le prix *du* blé?** *What is the price of the wheat?*

324. Omission of Article. The partitive sense is expressed by **de** alone + the noun as follows:

1. When an adjective precedes the noun; so also, when a noun is understood after an adjective:

Avez-vous *de* bon papier ?	Have you any good paper ?
Donnez-moi *de* ces plumes-là.	Give me some of those pens.
J'ai *de* vos livres.	I have some of your books.
***De* bon vin et *de* mauvais** (*sc.* **vin**).	Good wine and bad.
***De* gros livres et *de* petits** (*sc.* **livres**).	Big books and little ones.
But: ***Des* soldats français.**	French soldiers.
J'ai *du* pain blanc.	I have white bread.

a. The article is not omitted when the noun has a distinctive adjunct:

***Du* bon papier qu'il a acheté.**	Some of the good paper he bought.

b. The article is not omitted when adjective and noun are indivisible in sense, *i.e.*, when forming a real or a virtual compound:

Des grands-pères; des petits-fils.	Grandfathers; grandsons.
Des petits pois; du bon sens.	Green peas; common sense.
Des jeunes gens; de la bonne foi.	Young men; honesty.

c. Familiarly, the article is often used contrary to the rule:

***Du* bon vin; *du* vrai bonheur.**	Good wine; true happiness.

2. After a general negation, implying non-existence of the object in question:

Il n'a pas de montre.	He has no (not any) watch.
Je n'ai point de livres.	I have no (not any) books.
Sans avoir d'argent.	Without having (any) money.
Il ne fit pas de remarques.	He made no remarks.
Pas d'argent et pas d'amis.	No money and no friends.

3. But the article is not omitted, the negation being no longer general:

a. When the noun has a distinctive adjunct:

Je n'ai plus *du* vin de cette année.	I have no more of this year's wine.
Je n'ai pas *de l'*argent pour le gaspiller.	I have no money to waste (= I have money, but not to waste).

b. In contrasts:

Pas *du* lait, mais *du* thé.	Not milk, but tea.

c. In negative interrogation implying affirmative answer:

N'avez-vous pas *des* amis, *de la* santé, *de l'*influence?	Have you not friends, health, influence?

325. Omission of the Partitive Sign. The partitive sense is expressed by the noun simply, when the preposition **de** forms an essential part of the governing expression, thus:

1. In expressions of quantity or number:

Une livre de thé (noix).	A pound of tea (nuts).
Un morceau de papier.	A piece of paper.
Une foule de gens.	A crowd of people.
Peu de temps; beaucoup d'amis.	Little time; many friends.
Assez de livres.	Enough books (*or* books enough).

Trop de peine.	Too much trouble.
Que de gens assemblés!	What a number of people assembled!

a. Analogous to the above are expressions like the following:

Trois jours de marche.	Three days' march.
Cent soldats de tués.	A hundred soldiers killed.
Quelque chose (rien) de bon.	Something (nothing) good.

b. **Bien** = **beaucoup** regularly has **de** + the definite article:

Bien *de l'*argent; bien *du* monde.	Much money; many people.
Bien *des* gens le croient.	Many people think so.
But: **Bien *d'*autres.**	Many others.

NOTE. — **Bien** in other senses does not take **de**: **J'ai bien faim,** *I am very hungry.*

c. **La plupart** = *most, the greater part,* etc., has **de** + the def. art.:

La plupart *des* hommes.	Most men.
La plupart *du* temps.	Most of the time.

d. Expressions of quantity or number with a distinctive adjunct have **de** + the definite article; so also, **beaucoup, peu,** etc., absolutely:

Une livre *du* thé de ce marchand.	A pound of this tradesman's tea.
Beaucoup *des* gens de ce pays.	Many of the men of that country.

2. After a verb requiring **de** before its complement, and in phrases, adjectival or adverbial, formed from **de** + a noun:

Il vit de pain (not **de du pain**).	He lives on bread.
Il manquait d'argent.	He lacked money.
J'ai besoin d'argent.	I need money.
Il se passe de vin.	He does without wine.
Un vase rempli d'eau.	A vessel filled with water.
Il était couvert de plaies.	He was covered with wounds (sores).
Une robe de soie.	A silk dress.
Un homme de génie.	A man of genius.
Une bourse pleine d'or.	A purse full of gold.

326. General and Partitive Sense. The general sense of a noun (§ 321) is to be carefully distinguished from the partitive sense (§ 322):

***Les* oiseaux ont *des* ailes.**	Birds have wings.
***Les* hommes sont *des* animaux.**	Men are animals.

327. Article with Titles. A title of dignity or profession, preceding a proper name, regularly takes the definite article, except in direct address:

La reine Victoria fut aimée.	Queen Victoria was beloved.
Le docteur Ribot est arrivé.	Doctor Ribot has come.
Qu'est-ce que le père Daru dit?	What does Father Daru say?
But: **Bonjour, docteur Ribot.**	Good morning, Doctor Ribot.

a. So also, when such title is preceded by a title of courtesy (**monsieur, madame,** etc.), whether in speaking to or in speaking of the person:

Bonjour, monsieur le docteur.	Good morning, doctor.
Monsieur le président l'a dit.	The president said so.

b. A preceding attributive adjective may have the force of a title:

La petite Claire; le gros Robert.	Little Clara; big Robert.

328. Article for Possessive. The definite article is commonly used with the force of a possessive adjective, when no ambiguity arises from its use:

Donnez-moi la main.	Give me your hand.
Il a perdu la vie.	He has lost his life.
Il avait le chapeau sur la tête.	He had his hat on his head.

a. The use of an indirect pronoun object + the definite article often avoids ambiguity:

Le courage *lui* manqua.	His courage failed (him).
Elle *lui* a arraché *les* yeux.	She tore out his eyes.
Il *s'*est fait mal à la tête.	He hurt his head.

b. Possessive force appears also in **avoir mal (froid, chaud,** etc.) **à** + the definite article followed by a noun denoting part of the person; similarly, in phrases of personal description made up of **avoir** + the definite article + a noun + an adjective:

J'ai mal à la tête.	I have a headache (my head aches).
Il a mal aux yeux.	He has sore eyes (his eyes, etc.).
Il a froid aux pieds.	He has cold feet (his feet, etc.).
Il a la tête grosse (*or* **une grosse tête**).	He has a large head.
Il a les bras longs (*or* **de longs bras**).	He has long arms.
Le chêne a l'écorce rude.	The oak has (a) rough bark.

329. Article Distributively. 1. The definite article with distributive force replaces English *a* of weight, measure, number, when indicating price:

Deux francs *la* livre (*le* mètre).	Two francs a pound (a meter).
Des œufs (à) dix sous *la* douzaine.	Eggs at ten cents a dozen.
Des poires (à) un sou *la* pièce.	Pears at a cent apiece.

a. Otherwise **par** is generally used with price:

Cinq francs par jour.	Five francs a (per) day.
Cent francs par tête.	A hundred francs a (per) head.
Trois francs par leçon.	Three francs a (per) lesson.

2. The definite article is also used distributively with names of days:

Il vient *le* dimanche.	He comes (on) Sundays.
Le bateau part tous *les* lundis.	The boat goes every Monday.

330. Omission of the Article. The article, whether definite, indefinite, or partitive, is frequently omitted. This takes place:

1. In a large number of expressions made up of a verb + a noun:

J'ai sommeil; il a honte.	I am sleepy; he is ashamed.
Je vous demande pardon.	I beg your pardon.

Further examples are:

avoir besoin, *need*
avoir faim, *be hungry*
avoir bonne mine, *look well*
avoir peur, *be afraid*
avoir tort, *be (in the) wrong*
courir risque, *run the risk*
demander conseil, *ask advice*
donner avis, *notify*
donner ordre, *give orders*
faire attention, *pay attention*
faire cadeau, *make a present*
faire faillite, *fail (in business)*
faire place, *make room*
prendre congé, *take leave*
prendre garde, *take care*
rendre visite, *pay a visit*
trouver moyen, *find means*
etc., etc.

2. In many adjectival and adverbial phrases made up of a preposition + a noun:

D'après nature; devant témoins.	After nature; before witnesses.
Sans cause; à travers champs.	Without cause; across the fields.

Further examples are:

à bord, *on board*
à cheval, *on horseback*
à dessein, *intentionally*
à genoux, *on one's knees*
à pied, *on foot*
pot à fleurs, *flowerpot*
moulin à vent, *windmill*
après dîner, *after dinner*
avec intérêt, *with interest*
avec plaisir, *with pleasure*
sortir de table, *leave the table*
chien de berger, *shepherd's dog*
homme de cœur, *man of feeling*
homme de génie, *man of genius*
en bateau, *in a boat*
en été, *in summer*
en voiture, *in a carriage*
par an, *by the year*
par chemin de fer, *by railway*
par exemple, *for example*
par expérience, *by experience*
par terre, *by land*
sans crainte, *without fear*
sans raison, *without reason*
sous condition, *on condition*
sous presse, *in the press*
sur papier, *on paper*
etc., etc.

3. Before a predicate noun which qualifies in a general way the personal subject, or object, of certain verbs (cf. § 295):

Ils sont Russes.	They are Russians.
Elle est modiste.	She is a milliner.
Nous sommes médecins.	We are doctors.
Il paraît honnête homme.	He seems an honest man.
Son frère se fit soldat.	His brother became a soldier.
On l'a ordonné prêtre.	He was ordained a priest.
Soyons amis.	Let us be friends.

NOTE. — Nouns so used are commonly those of nationality, profession, title, etc., and their function is adjectival. Whenever a predicate noun denotes an individual or a species, it must have the article: **La rose est *une* fleur,** *The rose is a flower;* **Les rois sont *des* hommes,** *Kings are men.*

a. The article is not omitted when the predicate noun has a distinctive adjunct:

Son frère est *un* artiste de mérite.	His brother is an artist of merit.
Ils sont devenus *des* généraux distingués.	They became distinguished generals.

b. Observe the predicative force of a noun after **traiter** + **de, qualifier** + **de:**

Il m'a traité de sot.	He called me a fool.
Je qualifie cela de fraude.	I call that fraud.

c. After **c'est, ce sont,** the noun is logical subject, not predicate, and hence the article or some other determinative word must be used with it:

C'est *une* Allemande.	She is (a) German.
Ce sont *les* (*mes*) gants.	Those are the (my) gloves.

4. Before such an appositive noun as serves merely the purpose of a parenthetical explanation:

L'Avare, comédie de Molière.	*L'Avare*, a comedy by Molière.
Pâris, fils de Priam, ravit Hélène, femme de Ménélas.	Paris, the son of Priam, carried off Helen, (the) wife of Menelaus.

a. Thus is explained the omission of the article in numerical titles:

Jacques premier (deux).	James the First (the Second).

b. An apposition which distinguishes, contrasts, compares, regularly has the article, as in English:

Pierre le Grand.	Peter the Great.
Racine le fils et non Racine le père.	Racine the son and not Racine the father.
Montréal, la plus grande ville du Canada.	Montreal, the largest city in Canada.
M. Cook, un ami de mon père.	Mr. Cook, a friend of my father.

c. Colloquially, the article is often omitted in contrasts:

Dumas *père* et Dumas *fils*.	Dumas the elder and Dumas the younger.

NOTE. — Pseudo-apposition (really ellipsis of **de** or of a **de** clause) is found in many cases like **L'église** (*sc.* **de**) **Saint-Pierre,** *St. Peter's Church,* **des meubles** (*sc.* **du temps de**) **Louis XV,** *Louis XV furniture;* **La rue** (*sc* **de**) **Mirabeau,** *Mirabeau Street.*

5. In condensed sentences, such as titles of books, enumerations, addresses, advertisements, proverbs, antithetical expressions, etc., and usually after **ni . . . ni, sans . . . ni, soit . . . soit, tant . . . que, jamais:**

Causes de la perte de Rome.	Causes of the fall of Rome.
Portrait de Napoléon III.	(A) portrait of Napoleon III.
Soldats, officiers, citoyens, tous accoururent.	Soldiers, officers, citizens, all hastened up.
Beauté, talent, esprit, tout s'use à la longue.	Beauty, talent, wit, everything wears out in the long run.
Il loge rue Richelieu.	He lives in Richelieu street.
Maison à vendre.	(A) house for sale.
Chapeaux pour hommes.	Men's hats.
Corps et âme; nuit et jour.	Body and soul; night and day.
Soit peur, soit prudence, il évita le combat.	Whether from fear or prudence, he avoided the combat.

Il n'a ni père ni mère.	He has neither father nor mother.
Sans amis ni argent.	Without friends or money.
Tant hommes que femmes.	As well men as women.
Jamais père n'a tant aimé.	Never did a father love so much.

331. Unclassified Examples. The following examples show idiomatic distinctions in the use of the article which, from the point of view of English, cannot conveniently be brought under general rules:

Vous êtes *le* bienvenu.	You are welcome.
Demander (faire) *l'*aumône.	Ask (give) alms.
Avoir *le* temps.	To have time.
Aller à *l'*école (*l'*église).	To go to school (church).
Commander *le* respect.	To command respect.
***Le* feu s'est déclaré.**	Fire broke out.
Faire *la* guerre.	To make war.
Jeter (lever) *l'*ancre.	To cast (weigh) anchor.
Garder *le* silence.	To keep silence.
Mettre *le* feu à.	To set fire to.
Sur (vers) *les* trois heures.	Towards three o'clock.
***Au* revoir!**	Good-bye!
***L'*année dernière (prochaine).**	Last (next) year.
***La* semaine (*l'*année) passée.**	Last week (year).
***Le* vendredi saint.**	Good Friday.
***Le* mercredi *des* cendres.**	Ash Wednesday.
***Le* printemps, *l'*été, etc.**	Spring, summer, etc.
***Au* printemps, en été, etc.**	In spring, in summer, etc.
***La* (*sc.* fête de) Saint-Michel.**	Michaelmas.
***La* (*sc.* fête de) mi-juin.**	Mid-June.
***La* moitié de l'année.**	(The) half (of) the year.
***Les* deux tiers du temps.**	Two-thirds of the time.
Tous (*les*) deux; tous (*les*) trois.	Both; all three.
Tous *les* mois.	Every month.
Le ministre de *la* guerre.	The minister of war.
Le meilleur *des* amis.	The best of friends.
Il cria *à l'*assassin.	He cried murder.
Je l'ai dit *au* hasard.	I said it at random.
Prendre *le* deuil de quelqu'un.	To go into mourning for somebody.
Sentir *la* fumée.	To smell of smoke.
Je vous souhaite *la* bonne année.	I wish you a happy new year.
Il n'a pas *le* sou.	He is wretchedly poor.

Il est plus grand que vous de *la* tête.	He is taller than you by a head.
Un homme à *la* barbe noire.	A man with a black beard.
La belle question!	What a (fine) question!
À *la* (*sc.* mode) française.	In the French style.
S'en aller à *l'*anglaise.	To take French leave.
À *la* (*sc.* mode de) Henri IV.	In the style of Henry IV.
Cent (mille) ans.	*A* hundred (*a* thousand) years.
Les amis, où allez-vous?	(My) friends, where are you going?

THE ARTICLE WITH PROPER NOUNS

332. Names of Persons. 1. As in English, names of persons usually take no article:

Corneille; George Fox.	Corneille; George Fox.

a. The definite article is a constituent part of some surnames:

Les romans de *Le*sage.	The novels of Lesage.
Les fables de *La* Fontaine.	The fables of La Fontaine.

2. The definite article is used according to Italian analogy in the French form of a few famous Italian surnames; so also sometimes in a very few names which are not Italian:

Le Corrège; le poème du Tasse.	Correggio; the poem of Tasso.
Le Poussin; le Camoëns.	Poussin; Camoens.

3. The article is used when the name has a distinctive adjunct, when it is plural, or when used as a common noun:

Le Christ.	Christ (= the 'Anointed').
Le Satan de Milton; le grand Condé.	Milton's Satan; the Great Condé.
Les Corneille et les Racine.	A Corneille, a Racine (= Corneille, Racine and others like them).
C'est un Alexandre.	He is an Alexander.
C'est du Cicéron tout pur.	It is pure Ciceronian.
J'ai lu le Télémaque.	I have read *Télémaque*.

4. Familiarly, often in a depreciatory sense, the definite article is not uncommon, especially with names of females:

Sans attendre la Barbette.	Without waiting for Barbara.
Le Duval me l'a dit.	Duval told me so.

333. Names of Countries. 1. Names of continents, countries, provinces, large European islands, take the definite article, especially when standing as subject or object of a verb:

***L'*Asie est un grand continent.**	Asia is a large continent.
Nous aimons *la* France.	We love France.
***La* Normandie produit des céréales.**	Normandy produces cereals.
***La* Corse est une île française.**	Corsica is a French island.

But non-European islands often do not take the article:

Madagascar est une grande île.	Madagascar is a large island.
Cabot découvrit Terre-Neuve.	Cabot discovered Newfoundland.

Note also such forms as: ***L'île* de Cuba, *les îles* Bahama.**

2. Before names of continents, European countries and islands singular, and feminine countries singular outside of Europe, **en** without the article denotes 'where,' 'where to'; so also, after **de** denoting 'point of departure from' and after **de** in most adjectival phrases:

Il est en (va en) Europe.	He is in (is going to) Europe.
Il voyage en France (Portugal).	He travels in France (Portugal).
Il vient d'Espagne (Danemark).	He comes from Spain (Denmark).
Le roi de Portugal (Espagne).	The King of Portugal (Spain).
Le fer de Suède.	Swedish iron.
Il va en Corse.	He is going to Corsica.

a. Exceptions are rare, *e.g.*, ***au* Maine, Le duc *du* Maine,** etc.

Note. — In an adjectival phrase, **de** denoting titular distinction, origin, description, or mere apposition usually omits the article, *e.g.*, **le pays *de* France, Le Royaume Uni *de* Grande-Bretagne et *d'*Irlande.**

3. But the definite article is not omitted, in answer to 'where?' 'where to?' or after **de** as above, when the name is plural, or has a distinctive adjunct, or denotes a masculine name of a country outside of Europe:

Il est aux Indes.	He is in India.
Il va aux États-Unis.	He goes to the United States.
Aux Pays-Bas.	In (to) the Netherlands.
L'impératrice des Indes.	The Empress of India.
Venir des Indes (de l'Inde).	To come from India.
Dans la France méridionale. / **Dans *le* Midi de la France.**	In Southern France.

Dans l'Amérique du Nord.	In North America.
La reine de la Grande-Bretagne.	The Queen of Great Britain.
Il revient de l'Afrique australe.	He returns from South Africa.
Au Mexique (Japon).	In (to) Mexico (Japan).
Le Dominion du Canada. / **La Puissance du Canada.**	The Dominion of Canada.
Chassé de la Chine.	Expelled from China.
Le consul du Pérou.	The consul of Peru.
Le fer du Canada.	Canadian iron.

But note such as: **Son père est à Madagascar.**

a. In a few names like **Asie Mineure, basse Bretagne,** the adjective is no longer felt to be distinctive:

En Asie mineure.	In Asia Minor.

4. Omission of the article in the predicate, in enumerations, titles, etc., sometimes occurs (cf. § 330, 5):

La Gaule est devenue France.	Gaul became France.
Espagne, Italie, Belgique, tout eût pris feu.	Spain, Italy, Belgium, all would have caught fire.

334. Names of Cities. Names of cities and towns usually have no article, unless used with a distinctive adjunct:

Londres, Paris, Québec.	London, Paris, Quebec.
À Boston (Montréal).	To *or* in Boston (Montreal).
But: ***La* Rome de ce siècle.**	(The) Rome of this century.
***La* Nouvelle-Orléans.**	New Orleans.

a. The definite article is an essential part of several names of cities:

***Le* Caire; *le* Havre; *la* Havane.**	Cairo; Havre; Havana.

335. Names of Mountains and Rivers. Names of mountains always, and names of rivers regularly, have the definite article:

Les Alpes; le Nil; le mont Blanc.	The Alps; the Nile; Mt. Blanc.

a. For rivers, the usage after **en, de,** is parallel with that described in § 333, 2:

De l'eau de Seine.	Seine water.
Un abordage a eu lieu en Seine.	A collision occurred on the Seine.

THE ADJECTIVE

THE FEMININE OF ADJECTIVES

336. General Rule. The feminine of an adjective is regularly formed by adding **-e** to the masculine singular, but adjectives ending in **-e** remain unchanged:

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
grand,	grande, *tall*	facile,	facile, *easy*
joli,	jolie, *pretty*	jeune,	jeune, *young*
rusé,	rusée, *cunning*	sincère,	sincère, *sincere*
mort,	morte, *dead*	célèbre,	célèbre, *celebrated*

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination (but see § 306, 2):

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
marquis, *marquis*,	marquise	artiste, *artist*,	artiste
ami, *friend*,	amie	camarade, *comrade*,	camarade
cousin, *cousin*,	cousine	concierge, *porter*,	concierge
lapin, *rabbit*,	lapine	malade, *patient*,	malade

b. Adjectives in **-gu** are regular, but require the diæresis to indicate that **u** is sounded, *e.g.*, **aigu**, *sharp*, **aiguë**.

c. The circumflex in **dû** (f. due) distinguishes it from **du** = *of the*, and disappears in the fem. (§ 214); observe also **mû** (f. mue, § 219).

d. Besides adjectives in **-e**, a very few others are invariable for the feminine, *e.g.*, **capot**, in **être capot** = *have come to grief*, **grognon**, *grumbling*, **rococo**, *rococo*, **sterling**, *sterling*, and rarer ones.

Note. — Here also properly belongs **grand** in **grand'mère**, etc. In O. F. **grand** was masculine or feminine, but grammarians at a later date gave it the apostrophe to denote the supposed elision of **e**.

337. Special Rules. 1. Irregularities consist chiefly of changes in the stem on adding the feminine sign **-e**; thus, when **-e** is added:

(1) Final **f** = **v**, **x** = **s**, **c** = **ch** in some, and **qu** in others, **g** = **gu**:

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
actif, *active*,	active	* blanc, *white*,	blanche
bref, *brief*,	brève	† public, *public*,	publique
heureux, *happy*,	heureuse	long, *long*,	longue

* So also: franc, *frank*, franche; sec, *dry*, sèche.

† So also: ammoniac (-que), *ammoniac;* turc (-que), *Turkish.*

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination:

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
veuf, *widower,*	veuve	époux, *spouse,*	épouse	turc, *Turk,*	turque

Note. — Here also belongs **bailli**, *bailiff* (O. F. baillif), baillive.

b. The adjectives doux, douce, *sweet,* faux, fausse, *false,* roux, rousse, *red* (of hair, etc.), retain the [s] sound in the feminine, denoted by c and ss respectively; grec, *Greek,* has feminine grecque; préfix, *prefixed,* is regular.

(2) Final **-el, -eil, -ien, -on,** and usually **-s, -t,** double the final consonant:

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
cruel, *cruel,*	cruelle	gros, *big,*	grosse
pareil, *like,*	pareille	épais, *thick,*	épaisse
ancien, *old,*	ancienne	exprès, *express,*	expresse
bon, *good,*	bonne	muet, *dumb,*	muette
bas, *low,*	basse	sot, *foolish,*	sotte

But: ras, rase, *flat;* gris, grise, *gray;* mat, mate, *dead, dull;* prêt, prête, *ready;* dévot, dévote, *devout;* bigot, bigote, *bigoted;* cagot, cagote, *hypocritical;* idiot, idiote, *idiotic,* and a few rarer ones.

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination, but see § 306:

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
mortel, *mortal,*	mortelle	lion, *lion,*	lionne	poulet, *chicken,*	poulette
chien, *dog,*	chienne	chat, *cat,*	chatte	linot, *linnet,*	linotte

b. A very few adjectives and nouns of other endings follow this analogy:

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
paysan, *peasant,*	paysanne	gentil, *nice,*	gentille
rouan, *roan,*	rouanne	nul, *null,*	nulle

(3) The following have two masculine forms, one of which doubles l for the feminine, like the above:

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
beau *or* bel, *fine,*	belle	mou *or* mol, *soft,*	molle
fou *or* fol, *mad,*	folle	nouveau *or* nouvel, *new,*	nouvelle
jumeau *or* (O. F. jumel), *twin,*	jumelle	vieux *or* vieil, *old,*	vieille

Obs.: The -l form is regularly used only before a vowel or h mute; **vieux** before a vowel is permissible, *e.g.,* **un *vieux* ami** (better: **un *vieil* ami**).

a. Analogous are a few nouns:

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
chameau, *camel,*	chamelle	jouvenceau, *young fellow,*	jouvencelle, etc.

(4) Before final **-r** and **-et** of a few adjectives **e** becomes **è** (cf. § 12, 1); so also in **bref,** brève, **sec,** sèche:

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
cher, *dear,*	chère	complet, *complete,*	complète
léger, *light,*	légère	etc.	etc.

a. Similarly, nouns in **-er.**

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
berger, *shepherd.*	bergère	étranger, *stranger,*	étrangère, etc.

b. The complete list of adjectives in **-et** with fem. in **-ète** is:

(in)complet, *(in)complete*	(in)discret, *(in)discreet*	replet, *over-stout*
concret, *concrete*	inquiet, *uneasy*	secret, *secret*

(5) The following feminine stems show etymological elements which have disappeared in the masculine:

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
coi (L. *quietus*), *quiet,*	coite	frais (L. L. *frescus*), *cool,*	fraîche
bénin (L. *benignus*), *benign,*	bénigne	tiers (L. *tertius*), *third,*	tierce
favori (It. *favorito*), *favorite,*	favorite		

2. Adjectives in **-eur** form their feminine as follows:

(1) **Majeur, mineur, meilleur** and those in **-érieur** are regular:

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
majeur, *major,*	majeure	extérieur, *exterior,*	extérieure
meilleur, *better,*	meilleure	supérieur, *superior,*	supérieure

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination:

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
mineur, *minor,*	mineure;	prieur, *prior,*	prieure;	inférieur, *inferior,*	inférieure

(2) Those in **-eur** with a cognate present participle in **-ant** change **-r** to **-s** and add **-e:**

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
causeur, *talkative,*	causeuse	rêveur, *dreamy,*	rêveuse
flatteur, *flattering,*	flatteuse	trompeur, *deceitful,*	trompeuse
menteur, *lying,*	menteuse	etc.	etc.

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination, but see also § 306, 1, *a*, 2, *a*:

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
danseur, *dancer*,	danseuse	buveur, *drinker*	buveuse
chanteur, *singer*,	chanteuse	vendeur, *seller*	vendeuse
flatteur, *flatterer*,	flatteuse	etc.	etc.

(3) Those in **-teur,** with no cognate present participle in **-ant,** have the feminine in **-trice:**

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
accusateur, *accusing*,	accusatrice	directeur, *directive*,	directrice
créateur, *creative*,	créatrice	etc.	etc.

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination, but see § 306, 1, *a*, 2, *a*:

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
accusateur, *accuser*,	accusatrice	créateur, *creator*,	créatrice,
acteur, *actor*,	actrice	etc.	etc.

THE PLURAL OF ADJECTIVES

338. General Rule. Most masculine adjectives and all feminines form their plural by adding **s** to the singular (cf. § 307):

grand(s),	grande(s)	jeune(s),	jeune(s)	bas,	basse(s)
joli(s),	jolie(s)	aigu(s),	aiguë(s)	doux,	douce(s)
rusé(s),	rusée(s)	complet(s),	complète(s)	etc.	etc.

339. Special Rules. The following rules are parallel with those for the irregular plural of nouns (cf. § 308):

1. Masculine adjectives in **-s, -x** (none in **-z**) remain unchanged:

Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.
bas	bas	gris	gris	faux	faux
épais	épais	soumis	soumis	vieux	vieux
frais	frais, etc.	doux	doux, etc.	heureux	heureux, etc

2. Masculine adjectives in **-eau,** and one in **-eu** take **x:**

Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.
beau	beaux	jumeau	jumeaux
nouveau	nouveaux	hébreu	hébreux

But: bleu, bleus; feu, feus

3. Masculine adjectives in **-al** regularly have the plural in **-aux**:

Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.
amical	amicaux	général	généraux	moral	moraux
brutal	brutaux	légal	légaux	principal	principaux
capital	capitaux	libéral	libéraux	rural	ruraux
cardinal	cardinaux	local	locaux	spécial	spéciaux
égal	égaux	loyal	loyaux	trivial	triviaux

a. **Fatal** makes **fatals**; Littré gives also **final**(*s*).

b. According to the *Dictionnaire de l'Académie*, the following have no masculine plural:

* automnal	frugal	* jovial	naval	† pascal
* colossal	glacial	natal	* partial	

* Littré gives a plural in **-aux**.

† Littré admits a plural in **-aux**, and quotes authority for a plural in **-s**.

Notes. — 1. There are upwards of a hundred and fifty adjectives in **-al**. The *Dictionnaire de l'Académie* is silent regarding the masculine plural of some sixty of these, to nearly fifty of which, however, Littré gives a plural in **-aux**. The following have not been pronounced upon by either authority: Brumal, déloyal, diagonal, instrumental, labial, médicinal, mental, monacal, paradoxal, quadragésimal, total, virginal.

2. Regular plurals in **-als** were formerly much commoner, and usage is still unsettled for some words. When the plural is wanting or doubtful it is often avoided, *e.g.*, **Un repas frugal**; **des repas *simples***. Plurals commonly so avoided are: Final, frugal, glacial, initial, matinal, natal, naval, théâtral.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

340. General Rule. An adjective, whether attributive or predicative, regularly agrees in gender and number with its substantive:

Les saisons froid*es* sont sain*es*.	Cold seasons are healthful.
Elles sont content*es*.	They are pleased.
Ils se disaient malad*es*.	They said they were ill.
Je les crois sincèr*es*.	I believe them sincere.

a. When the substantive has a **de** clause, the agreement is parallel with that explained for subject and verb (cf. § 232, 2).

b. The agreement with **vous** is according to the sense:

Madame, vous êtes bien bon*ne*.	Madam, you are very kind.

341. Manifold Substantive. 1. One adjective qualifying two or more substantives is made plural, and agrees in gender with both, if of the same gender; if of different gender, the adjective is masculine.

De la viande et des pommes de terre froides.	Cold meat and potatoes.
Sa sœur et lui sont contents.	His sister and he are pleased.

a. When substantives are joined by **ou, ni . . . ni,** or are synonymous, or form a climax, etc., the principles stated for agreement of subject and verb apply (cf. § 233).

b. When nouns differ in gender, the masculine one is usually placed nearest the adjective, especially when the feminine form is distinct from the masculine.

La mer et le ciel bleus.	The blue sea and sky.

2. When the noun is followed by a preposition + a noun, the agreement is, of course, according to the meaning:

Une table de bois *dur*.	A table of hard wood.
Une table de bois *carrée*.	A square wooden table.

342. Manifold Adjective. When two or more adjectives, denoting different objects singular, refer to one noun, the noun is made plural, and the adjectives follow it in the singular, or the noun is made singular, and the article repeated with each adjective.

Les nations grecque et romaine.	The Greek and Roman nations.
La nation grecque et la romaine.	The Greek nation and the Roman.

Or: **La nation grecque et la nation romaine.**

a. The agreement for a preceding ordinal is parallel to this:

Les sixième et septième rangs.	The sixth and seventh ranks.
Le sixième rang et le septième.	The sixth rank and the seventh.
Le sixième et le septième rang.	The sixth and the seventh rank.

343. Special Cases. 1. Adjectives used as adverbs are regularly invariable:

Cette rose sent bon.	That rose smells sweet.
Les livres coûtent cher ici.	Books cost dear here.

a. **Possible,** replacing a clause, and **fort,** in **se faire fort** = *to pledge oneself,* are considered as adverbs:

J'ai fait le moins de fautes possible.	I have made as few mistakes as possible.
Elle se fait fort de le payer.	She pledges herself to pay it.

2. Compound adjectives, with or without hyphen, are treated as follows:

(1) Both components are variable when coördinate, except first components in **-o:**

Des sourd(*e*)*s*-muet(*te*)*s*.	Deaf-mutes.
Des oranges aigres-dou*ces*.	Sourish oranges.
But: **Les lettres gréco-romai*nes*.**	Græco-Roman literature.

(2) A subordinate component is usually invariable, being regarded as adverbial, but the principle is not fully carried out:

Des mots grecs-moderne.	Modern Greek words.
Des enfants court-vêtus.	Short-coated children.
Une dame haut placée.	A lady of high rank.
Des enfants nouveau-nés.	New-born infants.

a. But the subordinated component is variable in **frais cueilli** = *freshly gathered,* in **ivre mort** = *dead drunk,* in **grand ouvert** = *wide open,* and in **premier, dernier, nouveau** + a past participle (except **nouveau-né,** see above):

Des fleurs fra*îches* cueillie*s*.	Freshly gathered flowers.
La porte est grand*e* ouverte.	The door is wide open.
Les nouveau*x* marié*s*.	The bridegroom and bride.

3. Nouns serving as adjectives of color are regularly invariable:

Des robes lilas (citron).	Purple (lemon-colored) dresses.

a. **Rose, cramoisi, pourpre,** are exceptions, and vary:

Des robes rose*s* (cramoisie*s*).	Pink (crimson) dresses.

b. Modified adjectives of color are also usually invariable, the modifier being also invariable by rule, 2 (2), above:

Des cheveux blond ardent.	Reddish blond hair.

NOTE. — These constructions are explained by supplying the ellipsis: **Des robes (couleur de) lilas; Des cheveux (couleur de) blond ardent.**

4. A few adjectives are variable or invariable according to position or context:

a. **Demi** = *half*, **nu** = *naked*, **plein** = *full of*, are invariable before and variable after the noun; so also, **excepté** and others (§ 289, *a*, *b*), **franc de port** = *postpaid* (also **franco**, adverb) is invariable before, and usually variable after:

Une demi-heure; une heure et demie.	Half an hour; an hour and a half.
Il a de l'or plein ses poches.	He has his pockets full of gold.
Il est nu-tête; il a les bras nus.	He is bareheaded; his arms are bare.
Il a les yeux pleins de larmes.	His eyes are full of tears.
Recevoir franc de port une lettre.	To receive a letter postpaid.
Des lettres franches de port.	Postpaid letters.

Obs.: **demi, nu,** when preceding, form a compound with hyphen.

b. **Feu** = *late, **deceased,*** is invariable when preceding the definite article, or determinative, and variable after it:

Feu la reine (la feue reine).	The late queen.

c. After **avoir l'air** = *have an air* (*appearance*) the adjective agrees with **air**; but it agrees with the subject of the verb when the expression means *seem, appear:*

Cette dame a l'air hautain.	That lady has a haughty air.
Elle a l'air malheureuse.	She seems unhappy.
Cette soupe a l'air bonne.	This soup looks good.

5. A very few adjectives are always invariable:

Nous avons été capot.	We had come to grief.
Vingt livres sterling.	Twenty pounds sterling.

344. Nouns as Adjectives. By a sort of apposition, nouns are frequently used as adjectives; when so used, they usually agree like adjectives:

Une maîtresse cheminée.	A main chimney.
Des philosophes poètes.	Poet philosophers.

But: **La race nègre,** etc.

a. **Témoin** = *witness*, at the head of a phrase, is adverbial and invariable:

J'ai bien combattu, témoin les blessures que j'ai reçues.	I have fought well, witness the wounds I received.

b. For nouns as adjectives of color, see § 343, 3.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

345. The Comparative. It is regularly denoted by placing **plus** = *more*, **moins** = *less*, for inequality, and **aussi** = *as*, for equality, before each adjective compared; *than* or *as* = **que**:

Il est plus grand que Jean.	He is taller than John.
Il est moins grand que Jean.	He is less tall than (not so tall as) John.
Il est aussi grand que Jean.	He is as tall as John.
Il est plus diligent et plus attentif que Jean.	He is more diligent and (more) attentive than John.
Il est plus faible que malade.	He is more weak than ill.

a. **Aussi,** used negatively, may be replaced by **si:**

Il n'est pas aussi (*si*) **grand que J.**	He is not so tall as John.

b. When **aussi** or **si** is omitted, **comme** (*not* **que**) is used:

Un roi riche comme Crésus.	A king as rich as Crœsus.

c. After **plus, moins,** affirmatively, *than* = **que . . . ne** when coming before a finite verb:

Il est plus grand *qu'***il** *ne* **(le) paraît.**	He is taller than he seems.

d. More and more (or *-er and -er*) = **de plus en plus**; *less and less* (or *-er and -er*) = **de moins en moins**; *the more . . . the more* = **plus . . .** (et) **plus**; *the less . . . the less* = **moins . . .** (et) **moins**; *the more . . .* = **d'autant plus . . .:**

L'air devint de plus en plus froid.	The air became colder and colder.
Il devint de moins en moins actif.	He became less and less active.
Plus il devient riche (et) **moins il est généreux.**	The richer he becomes the less generous is he.
Il en sera d'autant plus riche.	He will be the richer for it.

346. Irregular Comparison. The adjectives **bon, mauvais, petit,** have a special comparative form:

Pos.	Comp.	Pos.	Comp.
bon, *good,*	**meilleur**	*or* **bon,**	**plus bon** (rare)
mauvais, *bad,*	**pire**	*or* **mauvais,**	**plus mauvais**
petit, *small,*	**moindre**	*or* **petit,**	**plus petit**

a. **Bon** is hardly ever compared regularly:

À bon marché, à meilleur marché.	Cheap, cheaper.
Cela sent bon (meilleur).	That smells good (better).

But: **Ce n'est ni *plus bon* ni *plus mauvais*.**

NOTES. — 1. In expressions like **Ce vin est plus ou moins bon, bon** is not really comparative. 2. Some grammarians admit **plus bon** = *more good-natured.*

b. **Pire** is, in general, stronger than **plus mauvais,** and may serve also as a comparative to **méchant** = *bad, evil, wicked:*

Cet homme est méchant (pire).	That man is bad (worse).

c. In general, **moindre** = *less, lesser, less* (*in importance*) and **plus petit** = *smaller, less* (*in size*):

Votre douleur en sera moindre.	Your sorrow will hence be less.
Une plus petite pomme.	A smaller apple.

347. The Superlative Relative. 1. It is denoted by placing the definite article (variable) or a possessive adjective (variable) before the comparative of inequality:

Elle est la moins aimable.	She is the least amiable.
Mes meilleurs amis.	My best friends.
La moindre difficulté.	The slightest difficulty.

a. When the superlative follows the noun, the definite article is not omitted:

C'est l'enfant *le* plus diligent et *le* plus attentif de tous.	He is the most diligent and attentive boy of all.
Mes amis *les* plus fidèles.	My most faithful friends.

2. After a superlative, *in* = **de** (not **à, dans,** etc.); *among* = **entre** or **d'entre:**

L'homme le plus riche *de* la ville.	The richest man in the city.
Le meilleur écrivain *des* États-Unis.	The best writer in the United States.
Le plus brave (*d'*)*entre* les Grecs.	The bravest among the Greeks.

348. The Superlative Absolute. It is expressed by **le** (invariable) + **plus** or **moins** before the adjective, or else by an adverb, such as **très, bien, fort, extrêmement,** etc., or some other modifying expression:

Elle est le plus heureuse (moins heureuse) quand elle est seule.	She is happiest (least happy) when she is alone.

Vous êtes très aimable.	You are very (most) kind.
C'est tout ce qu'il y a de plus beau.	It is most beautiful.
Un brave des braves.	One of the bravest.
Un homme des plus dignes.	A most worthy man.
Une dame on ne peut plus digne.	A most worthy woman.
Des tribus sauvages au possible.	Most savage tribes.

a. Occasionally it is denoted in familiar style by repetition of the adjective, or by **-issime**:

Cet homme est rusé, rusé.	That man is very, very cunning.
Il est richissime.	He is very wealthy.

349. Remarks. 1. Comparative and superlative are indistinguishable in constructions requiring in English a definite article before the comparative:

Le plus fort de mes deux frères.	The stronger of my two brothers.

2. **De** denotes *by how much* after a comparative or superlative:

Plus âgé *de* trois ans.	Older by three years.
Il est *de* beaucoup le plus grand.	He is the tallest by far.
But: **Il est beaucoup plus grand.**	He is much taller.

3. Observe the following:

Les basses classes.	The lower classes.
J'ai fait mon possible.	I did my utmost.

POSITION OF ADJECTIVES

350. Predicative Adjectives. They are placed, in general, as in English:

Elles sont contentes.	They are pleased.
Elle parut fatiguée.	She seemed tired.
Brave, savant, vertueux, il se fit aimer de tous.	Brave, learned, virtuous, he made himself beloved by all.

a. Observe the position after **assez**, after **plus . . . plus, moins . . . moins**, and in exclamations with **combien! comme! que! tant!** as compared with the order of words in English:

Il est assez sot pour le croire.	He is silly enough to believe it.

Plus il devint riche moins il fut généreux.	The richer he became the less generous was he.
Que vous êtes aimable de venir!	How kind you are to come!

351. Attributive Adjectives. When used literally, to define, distinguish, specify, emphasize, etc., they usually follow; but when used figuratively, or as a merely ornamental epithet, or denoting a quality viewed as essential to the object, or when forming, as it were, one idea with the noun, they usually precede:

Une rue étroite; une étroite amitié.	A narrow street; an intimate friendship.
Un roi savant; le savant auteur.	A learned king; the learned author.
Le fameux Pitt; un rusé coquin.	The famous Pitt; a cunning rogue.

a. The following, of very common use, generally precede:

beau	grand	joli	meilleur	pire	vilain
bon	gros	long	moindre	sot	
court	jeune	mauvais	petit	vieux	

352. Special Rules for Attributives. 1. Certain adjectives serve regularly to define, distinguish, etc., and hence regularly follow; such are:

(1) Adjectives of physical quality:

Une table carrée; une pierre dure; de l'eau froide (chaude); de l'encre noire; une sauce piquante.	A square table; a hard stone; cold (hot) water; black ink; a piquant sauce.

a. By the general rule (§ 351) they sometimes precede:

De noirs chagrins; une verte vieillesse; le bleu ciel d'Italie.	Dark sorrows; a green old age; the blue sky of Italy.

(2) Adjectives of nationality, religion, profession, title, and those from proper names:

Le droit anglais; un prêtre catholique; une splendeur royale; le latin cicéronien.	English law; a Catholic priest; royal splendor; Ciceronian Latin.

(3) Participles used as adjectives:

Une étoile filante; un homme instruit; une porte ouverte.	A shooting star; an educated man; an open door.

a. By the general rule (§ 351) they sometimes precede:

Une éclatante victoire.	A signal victory.

b. Past participial forms which have become real adjectives, *e.g.*, **prétendu, absolu, parfait, dissolu, feint, rusé,** etc., very often precede (**prétendu** nearly always):

Une feinte modestie.	Feigned modesty.
Le prétendu comte.	The would-be count.

2. Adjectives sometimes follow the noun on account of their adjuncts or their function; thus:

(1) When modified by an adverb, other than **aussi, si, très, bien, fort, plus, moins, assez:**

Un discours extrêmement long.	An extremely long speech.
But: **Un très long discours.**	A very long speech.

(2) When modified by an adverbial phrase, or in comparisons:

Une contrée riche en vins.	A district rich in wines.
Un guerrier brave comme un lion.	A warrior as brave as a lion.

(3) Nouns used appositively as adjectives:

Une puissance amie.	A friendly power.

3. Two or more adjectives, with one noun, follow, in general, the rules stated, but, if joined by a conjunction, they all follow, in case one is such as must follow:

Une jolie petite fille.	A pretty little girl.
Une belle maison blanche.	A beautiful white house.
Un objet blanc et étincelant.	A white and dazzling object.
Une dame belle et savante.	A beautiful and learned lady.

a. The more specific of two or more adjectives which follow comes last, contrary to English usage:

Des écrivains français habiles.	Clever French writers.

4. A considerable number of adjectives differ more or less widely in meaning, according as they precede or follow:

Mon cher enfant; une robe chère.	My dear child; a costly dress.
Le moyen âge; un homme d'âge moyen.	The Middle Ages; a middle-aged man.

Such adjectives are:

ancien	dernier	fort	jeune	parfait	sage
bon	différent	furieux	maigre	pauvre	seul
brave	digne	galant	malhonnête	petit	simple
certain	divers	grand	mauvais	plaisant	triste
cher	fameux	gros	méchant	premier	véritable
commun	faux	haut	mort	propre	vrai
cruel	fier	honnête	nouveau	pur	etc.

NOTE. — Distinctions of this kind depend, in the main, upon the general principles laid down above, but they are too numerous and too subtle to be given in detail here. Observation, and the use of a good dictionary will, in time, make the learner familiar with the most important of them.

353. Determinatives. Such adjectives, including numerals, possessives, demonstratives, indefinites, precede:

Trois plumes; mes plumes.	Three pens; my pens.
Ces plumes-ci; d'autres plumes.	These pens; other pens.

PREPOSITIONAL COMPLEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

354. An adjective is often followed by a complement connected with it by a preposition, such as **à, de, en, envers,** etc. The preposition to be used is determined by the meaning of the adjective, as explained in the following sections.

355. Adjective + *à*. The preposition **à** = *to, at, for,* etc., is required after most adjectives denoting tendency, fitness, and their opposites, comparison, etc.

Cet homme est adonné *à* la boisson.	That man is addicted to drink.
Il est favorable *à* mes projets.	He is favorable to my projects.
Il est bien habile *aux* affaires.	He is very clever in business.
Un homme supérieur *à* tous.	A man superior to all.
Ce n'est bon *à* rien.	That is good for nothing.

Such adjectives are:

accoutumé, *accustomed (to)*	cher, *dear (to)*	hardi, *bold (in)*
adroit, *clever (at)*	convenable, *suitable (to)*	impropre, *unfit (for)*
agréable, *pleasant (to)*	égal, *equal (to)*	inférieur, *inferior (to)*
antérieur, *anterior (to)*	exact, *exact (in)*	infidèle, *unfaithful (to)*
ardent, *ardent (in)*	fidèle, *faithful (in)*	inutile, *useless (to)*
bon, *good, fit (for)*	fort, *clever (at)*	lent, *slow (in)*

nuisible, *hurtful* (*to*)
opposé, *opposed* (*to*)
pareil, *similar* (*to*)
porté, *inclined* (*to*)
prêt, *ready* (*to*)
prompt, *prompt* (*in*)
propice, *propitious* (*to*)
propre, *fit* (*for*)
semblable, *similar* (*to*)
utile, *useful* (*to*)
etc.

a. **Bon *pour*** = *good for, beneficial to, kind to.*

356. Adjective + *de*. The preposition **de** = *of, from, with*, etc., is required after most adjectives denoting source or origin (hence also, feeling, sentiment, abundance), separation (hence also, absence, distance, want, etc.), and after most past participles to denote the agent (cf. § 240):

Êtes-vous natif *de* Paris?	Are you a native of Paris?
Ils sont contents *de* mon succès.	They are pleased at my success.
Elle est pleine *de* vanité.	She is full of vanity.
Je suis libre *de* soucis.	I am free from care.
Il est inconnu *de* tous.	He is unknown to all.

Such adjectives are:

absent, *absent* (*from*)
affligé, *grieved* (*at*)
aise, *glad* (*of*)
alarmé, *alarmed* (*at*)
ambitieux, *ambitious* (*of*)
avide, *greedy* (*of*)
béni, *blessed* (*by*)
capable, *capable* (*of*)
charmé, *delighted* (*with*)
chéri, *beloved* (*by*)
confus, *confused* (*at*)
contrarié, *vexed* (*with*)
dénué, *destitute* (*of*)
dépourvu, *devoid* (*of*)
désireux, *desirous* (*of*)
différent, *different* (*from*)
digne, *worthy* (*of*)
éloigné, *distant* (*from*)
enchanté, *delighted* (*with*)
ennuyé, *weary* (*of*)
étonné, *astonished* (*at*)
exempt, *free* (*from*)
fâché, *sorry* (*for*)
fier, *proud* (*of*)
glorieux, *proud* (*of*)
hérissé, *bristling* (*with*)
heureux, *glad* (*of*)
honteux, *ashamed* (*of*)
ignorant, *ignorant* (*of*)
indigne, *unworthy* (*of*)
inquiet, *uneasy* (*about*)
ivre, *intoxicated* (*with*)
jaloux, *jealous* (*of*)
lourd, *heavy* (*with*)
offensé, *offended* (*at*)
pauvre, *poor* (*in*)
plein, *full* (*of*)
ravi, *delighted* (*with*)
satisfait, *satisfied* (*with*)
soucieux, *anxious* (*about*)
souillé, *soiled* (*with*)
sûr, *sure* (*of*)
surpris, *surprised* (*at*)
triste, *sad* (*at*)
vain, *vain* (*of*)
vexé, *vexed* (*at*)
vide, *empty* (*of*)
etc.

a. **Fâché *contre*** = *angry at* or *with* (*a person*).

357. Adjective + *en*. **En** is required after a few adjectives denoting abundance, skill, etc.:

Le Canada est fertile *en* blé.	Canada is fertile in wheat.
Il est expert *en* chirurgie.	He is expert in surgery.

Such adjectives are:

abondant, *abounding* (*in*)
fécond, *fruitful* (*in*)
fort, *strong* (*in*), *learned* (*in*)
ignorant, *ignorant* (*in*)
riche, *rich* (*in*)
savant, *learned* (*in*)

a. **fort** and **ignorant** sometimes have **sur**:

Il est fort *sur* l'histoire.	He is well versed (good) in history.
Ignorant *sur* ces matières-là.	Ignorant about those matters.

358. Adjective + *envers*. **Envers** is used after most adjectives denoting disposition or feeling towards:

Il est libéral *envers* tous.	He is liberal towards all.

Such adjectives are:

affable, *affable*	honnête, *polite*	poli, *polite*
bon, *kind*	indulgent, *indulgent*	prodigue, *lavish*
charitable, *charitable*	ingrat, *ungrateful*	reconnaissant, *grateful*
civil, *civil*	insolent, *insolent*	respectueux, *respectful*
cruel, *cruel*	juste, *just*	responsable, *responsible*
dur, *hard, harsh*	méchant, *malicious*	rigoureux, *stern*
généreux, *generous*	miséricordieux, *merciful*	sévère, *severe, stern*
grossier, *rude*	officieux, *obliging*	etc.

a. **Bon, dur,** very frequently take **pour**; **indulgent** may take **pour** or **à**:

Il est bon (dur) pour moi.	He is kind (harsh) to me.
Indulgent pour (à) ses enfants.	Indulgent to his children.

b. Observe that **bien** and **mal** are sometimes used adjectivally, as in: **il est bien,** *he is good-looking;* **elle n'est pas mal,** *she is not bad-looking;* **nous sommes bien ici,** *we are comfortable here,* etc.

THE PRONOUN

THE PERSONAL PRONOUN

359. Personal Pronouns

1. Conjunctive forms:

		1ST PER.	2ND PER.	3RD PER. (m.)	3RD PER. (f.)	3RD REF. (m.f.)
(SING.)	N.	**je** I	**tu** thou	**il** he, it	**elle** she, it	
	D.	**me** (to) me	**te** (to) thee	**lui** (to) him	**lui** (to) her	**se** (to) -self
	A.	**me** me	**te** thee	**le** him, it	**la** her, it	**se** -self
(PL.)	N.	**nous** we	**vous** you	**ils** they	**elles** they	
	D.	**nous** (to) us	**vous** (to) you	**leur** (to) them	**leur** (to) them	**se** (to) -selves
	A.	**nous** us	**vous** you	**les** them	**les** them	**se** -selves

2. Disjunctive forms:

	1st. Per.	2nd Per.	3rd Per. (m.)	3rd Per. (f.)	3rd Ref. (m.f.)
(Sing.) N. A. P.	**moi** I, me	**toi** thou, thee	**lui** he, him	**elle** she, her	**soi** oneself, etc.
(Pl.) N. A. P.	**nous** we, us	**vous** you	**eux** they, them	**elles** they, them	

[N. = nominative; D. = dative; A. = accusative; P. = object of a preposition.]

Note. — A more scientific terminology would be 'unstressed' and 'stressed' instead of 'conjunctive' and 'disjunctive,' as indicating the real distinction between the two sets of forms, *e.g.*, *Je* (unstressed) **parle**; Qui **parle** ? — ***Moi*** (stressed). As a matter of fact, the unstressed forms usually stand in immediate connection with the verb (as subject or object), hence the term 'conjunctive,' while the stressed forms are usually employed otherwise, hence the term 'disjunctive.'

360. Pronominal Adverbs

y = *to* (*at, on, in, into,* etc.) *it* or *them; there, thither.*

en = *of* (*from,* etc.) *it* or *them; some, any, some of it, some of them; thence, from there.*

Note. — **Y** and **en** were originally adverbs (**y** from L. *ibi* = *there,* and **en** from L. *inde* = *thence*), but they are now usually pronominal in function, and are used precisely like the conjunctive forms.

361. Agreement. The personal pronoun regularly agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person:

Nous les avons frappé(e)s.	We have struck them.
Elle lit la lettre; elle la lit.	She reads the letter; she reads it.

a. The first person plural for the first person singular is used by sovereigns and authorities, and by writers, as in English:

Nous (le roi) avons ordonné et ordonnons ce qui suit.	We (the king) have ordained and ordain as follows.
Comme nous avons dit déjà.	As we have said already.

b. **Vous** = *you* (singular or plural) has a plural verb; its other agreements, as also those of **nous** above, are according to the sense:

Nous (la reine) sommes contente.	We (the queen) are satisfied.
Madame, vous êtes bien bonne.	Madam, you are very kind.

c. For imperative first plural instead of first singular, see § 267, *a*.

d. Il and le are used as invariable neutral forms, when the antecedent is one to which gender cannot be ascribed:

Y en a-t-*il*? — Je *le* crois.	Is there any (of it)? I think so.

362. Case Relations of Conjunctives. 1. The nominative forms stand as subject and the accusative forms as direct object to a verb; their use is obvious:

Il nous a vus.	He saw us.

a. The conjunctive is optional when there are two accusatives:

Je (les) blâme *lui* et *elle*.	I blame him and her.

2. The dative forms denote the person or thing for whose 'advantage' or 'disadvantage' the action is done, denoted by **à** = *to, for, from*, with nouns:

Je *leur* prêterai les livres.	I shall lend them the books.
On *lui* a volé son argent.	His money has been stolen from him.

But **à** + a disjunctive form is used in the following cases:

(1) When two datives are joined by a conjunction, or when in emphasis a second dative is implied:

J'en ai parlé à lui et à elle.	I spoke of it to him and to her.
Je donne le livre à elle (pas à lui).	I give the book to her (not to him).

(2) When the conjunctive direct object is any other pronoun than **le, la, les**:

Je vous présente à elle.	I introduce you to her.
Il se présenta à moi.	He introduced himself to me.

But: **Je le (la, les) leur présente,** etc.

(3) After verbs of motion and some others, to denote the 'object towards which the action tends,' the relation, though expressed by **à**, not being really dative:

Je courus à lui.	I ran to him.
Cette maison est à moi.	That house belongs to me.
Il pense (songe, rêve) à eux.	He thinks (muses, dreams) of them.

Such verbs are:

accoutumer, *accustom*
aller, *go*
appeler, *call*
en appeler, *appeal*
aspirer, *aspire*
attirer, *attract*
avoir affaire, *have to do*
avoir recours, *have recourse*
comparer, *compare*
courir, *run*
être (à), *belong (to)*
faire attention, *pay attention*
habituer, *accustom*
marcher, *march*
penser, *think*
prendre garde, *take heed*
prendre intérêt, *take interest*
prétendre, *aspire*
recourir, *have recourse*
renoncer, *renounce*
revenir, *come back*
rêver, *dream*
songer, *muse*
venir, *come*

a. Certain verbs of this class, when not literal, take the conjunctive dative:

Il lui vint une idée. There occurred to him an idea.
Vous nous reviendrez. You will come to see us again.

NOTE. — The ethical dative, denoting the person 'interested in' or 'affected by' an action, rare in English, is common in French: **Goûtez-*moi* ce vin-là,** *Just taste that wine.*

363. Impersonal *il*. For invariable il as the subject of an impersonal verb, see §§ 248–253.

364. Predicative *le, la, les*. As predicate the third person is either variable or invariable:

1. **Le** agrees when referring to a determinate noun or to an adjective used as such:

Êtes-vous sa mère? — Je *la* suis. Are you his mother? — I am.
Êtes-vous la mariée? — Je *la* suis. Are you the bride? — I am.

2. **Le,** invariable, is used when referring to an adjective, or to a noun as adjective:

Êtes-vous fatiguée? — Je *le* suis. Are you tired? — I am.
Êtes-vous mère? — Je *le* suis. Are you a mother? — I am.

365. Pleonastic *le*. The neutral form **le** (§ 361, *d*) is often pleonastic, as compared with English usage:

Êtes-vous mère? — Je *le* suis. Are you a mother? — I am.
Qu'ils soient venus, je *le* sais. That they have come, I know.
Fais du bien, quand tu *le* peux. Do good when you can.
Ce qu'il voulait, il *le* veut encore. What he wished, he still wishes.

Je suis prête, s'il *le* faut.	I am ready if need be.
Je m'en irai, si vous *le* désirez.	I shall go if you wish (it).
Ils sont comme je (*le*) désireraient.	They are as I should like.
Il est plus âgé que je ne (*le*) suis.	He is older than I am.

Obs.: This **le** is optional in comparative clauses.

a. **Le** is also used in a number of fixed expressions:

Il ne *le* cède à personne.	He yields to nobody.
Nous *l'*avons emporté.	We have carried the day.
Il *l'*a échappé belle.	He had a narrow escape.

b. **Le** may sometimes be translated by *one* or *so:*

Il est soldat; je *le* suis aussi.	He is a soldier; I am one too.
Sois brave, et je *le* serai aussi.	Be brave and I shall be so too.

366. Reflexives. 1. A special conjunctive reflexive form, **se** for dative or accusative of either gender or number, is required in the third person only; for the first and second person the ordinary forms are used (cf. § 242):

Il (elle) *se* loue.	He (she) praises him (her) -self.
Ils (elles) *se* le sont dit.	They said so to each other.

But: **Je *me* loue; tu *te* loues; nous *nous* louons; vous *vous* louez.**

2. The disjunctive **soi** is hardly used beyond the third singular in an indefinite or general sense:

Chacun travaille pour soi.	Every one works for himself.
On doit parler rarement de soi.	One should rarely speak of oneself.
De soi le vice est odieux.	In itself vice is hateful.

But: **Elle est contente d'*elle-même;* ils ne songent qu'à *eux-mêmes*.**

a. The use of **soi** is rarer for the feminine than for the masculine:

Un bienfait porte sa récompense avec *soi* (*lui*).	A good deed brings its reward with it.
La guerre entraîne après *elle* (*soi*) des maux sans nombre.	War brings after it countless evils.

NOTE. — **Soi** is no longer used of persons denoted by a general noun, *e.g.*, **L'avare ne vit que pour *lui-même*** (not **pour soi**), nor is it used, as formerly, of persons to avoid ambiguity, *e.g.*, **Quoique son frère soit dans la misère, il ne pense qu'à *lui-même*** (not **à soi**).

367. Uses of *en*. 1. **En** is in function an equivalent of **de** + a pronoun of the third person of either gender or number; it is used of things, and less commonly of persons:

Je parle des plumes; j'en parle.	I speak of the pens; I speak of them.
Donnez-les-moi; j'en ai besoin.	Give me them; I need them.
Il est mon ami; j'en réponds.	He is my friend; I answer for him.
Il aime ses fils, et il en est aimé.	He loves his sons, and is loved by them.
Vous voilà; j'en suis content.	There you are; I am glad of it.
Vient-il de Chicago? — Il en vient.	Does he come from C.? He does.

a. The antecedent is often understood or indefinite:

Voyons! où en étions-nous?	Let me see, how far on were we?
Ils en sont venus aux mains.	They came to blows.
Il m'en veut.	He has a grudge against me.
Tant s'en faut.	Far from it.
C'en est fait de lui.	It is all up with him.
À vous en croire.	If one is to believe you.
Quoi qu'il en soit.	However it (that) may be.
Je n'en peux plus.	I am worn out.
Il y en a qui le croient.	There are some who think so.

2. Through a somewhat special application of the general principle, it is further used:

(1) In a partitive sense:

Voici du papier; en voulez-vous? — Merci, j'en ai.	Here is some paper; do you wish any? — Thank you, I have some.
Avez-vous une plume? — J'en ai une (j'en ai plusieurs).	Have you a pen? — I have one (I have several).
Il me faut en acheter d'autres.	I must buy others.

(2) **En** = *thereof* + the definite article replaces a possessive adjective referring to a possessor in the preceding clause, but only when the thing possessed is a direct object, a subject of **être**, or a predicate noun:

J'aime ce pays; j'en admire les institutions.	I like this country; I admire its institutions.
Blâmez les péchés de ces gens, mais n'en blâmez pas les malheurs.	Blame the sins of those people, but do not blame their misfortunes.
Cette affaire est délicate; le succès en est douteux.	That affair is delicate; its success is doubtful.
Ceci est la gloire du pays; cela en est la honte.	This is the country's glory; that is its disgrace.

But: Cette maison a *ses* défauts (the possessor not being in the pre-

vious sentence); **J'aime ces vers; *leur* harmonie me ravit** (the thing possessed being subject of another verb than **être**); **J'admire ce pays; il est fameux par *ses* bonnes lois** (the thing possessed being governed by a preposition).

368. Use of *y*. **Y** is in function equivalent to **à** (**en, dans,** etc.) + a pronoun of the third person of either gender or number; it is used of things, and rarely of persons:

Je pense à mes péchés; j'y pense.	I think of my sins; I think of them.
Il est en Europe; il y est, et moi j'y vais aussi.	He is in Europe; he is there, and I am going there too.
Il se connaît en ces choses, mais moi je ne m'y connais pas.	He is an expert in those things, but I am not.
Il aspire à cela; il y aspire.	He aspires to that; he aspires to it.
Vous fiez-vous à lui? — Je m'y fie.	Do you trust him? — I trust him.

a. The antecedent is often understood or indefinite:

Il *y* va de votre vie.	Your life is at stake.
J'*y* suis! Qu'*y* a-t-il?	I have it! What is the matter?
Il s'*y* prend adroitement.	He goes about it cleverly.
Est-ce que Monsieur B. *y* est?	Is Mr. B. at home?
***Y* pensez-vous?**	You don't mean it?

369. Position of Conjunctive Objects. 1. They stand immediately before their governing verb, except the imperative affirmative:

Je leur en parlerai.	I shall speak to them of it.
Je l'y ai envoyé pour le leur dire.	I sent him there to tell them it.
Il lui faut parler; il faut lui parler.	He must speak; one must speak to him.

a. With negative infinitive, the object may stand between **ne** and **pas** (**point, rien,** etc.); similarly adverb + infinitive:

Je suis étonné de ne point *le* voir (*or* **ne *le* point voir**).	I am astonished not to see him.
Pour *les* bien considérer.	To consider them well.

b. The objects of an infinitive governed by **faire, laisser** (cf. § 230, 6, 7) or a verb of perceiving (**entendre,** etc.), accompany the finite verb:

Je le lui ferai dire.	I shall make him say it.
Il se le voit refuser.	He sees himself being refused it.
Faites-vous-la raconter.	Have it related to you.

c. A similar arrangement is permissible with **aller, venir, envoyer,** etc. + an infinitive:

Je vais *le* chercher.	I'll fetch it (*or* him).
J'enverrai *le* chercher *or* **Je *l'*enverrai chercher.**	I shall send for him.

NOTE. — In the older language, objects of an infinitive often stood before the so-called modal auxiliaries, *e.g.*, **Je *vous* dois dire,** but usage hardly permits this now, except for **en, y,** *e.g.*, **Ce qu'on *en* doit attendre.**

2. Conjunctive objects stand immediately after an imperative affirmative:

Regardez-les; écoutez-nous.	Look at them; listen to us.
Donnez-le-lui; allons-nous-en.	Give it to him; let us go away.
But: **Ne les regardez pas.**	Do not look at them.
Ne les écoutez point.	Do not listen to them.
Ne le lui donnez pas.	Do not give it to him.

a. The rule does not apply to the subjunctive as impve. (§ 272, 1, *a*):

Qu'il les écoute.	Let him listen to them.

NOTES. — 1. Formerly, but rarely now, an imperative affirmative when joined to another by **et (ou, mais)** might have an object before it: **Achetez-les et *les* payez,** etc.

2. **Voici** and **voilà,** which are imperatives by derivation, are always preceded by their conjunctive object: ***Les* voici, *en* voilà,** etc.

370. Relative Position of Objects. Personal pronoun objects and pronominal adverbs are arranged with reference to each other, as follows:

1. When coming before the verb:

me, te, se, nous, vous before **le, la, les** before **lui, leur** before **y** — before **en**

Il *me les* donne.	He gives them to me.
Il *les lui* donne.	He gives them to him.
Il *nous en* donne.	He gives us some of it.
Je *leur en* parlerai.	I shall speak to them of it.
Ne *leur en* parlez pas.	Do not speak of it to them.
Je l'y ai envoyé pour *le leur* dire.	I sent him there to tell them it.

a. When there are two direct or two indirect objects, they become disjunctive and follow the verb:

J'ai vu *lui* et *elle*.	I have seen him and her.
J'en ai parlé *à lui* et *à elle*.	I spoke of it to him and to her.

2. When coming after the verb:

le (la les)	before **moi** (toi, lui, nous, vous, leur)
me (te, lui, nous, vous, leur)	before **y** (en)
y	before **en**

Donnez-*les-moi*.	Give them to me.
Donnez-*leur-en*.	Give them some of it.
Donnez-*m'en*; va-*t'en*.	Give me some; begone.
Conduisez-*nous-y*.	Take us there.
Allez-*vous-en*.	Go away.

a. After an imperative, the indirect objects **nous, vous,** may precede the direct **le, la, les** in familiar language:

Conservez-*vous-le*.	Keep it for yourselves.
Tenez-*vous-le* pour dit.	Consider it as final.

3. Reference table showing possible combinations of two pronouns:

(Before the Verb)					(After the Verb)		
me le	te le	se le	le	lui	-le -moi	-le -toi	-le -lui
me la	te la	se la	la	lui	-la -moi	-la -toi	-la -lui
me les	te les	se les	les	lui	-les-moi	-les-toi	-les-lui
nous le	vous le	se le	le	leur	-le -nous	-le -vous	-le -leur
nous la	vous la	se la	la	leur	-la -nous	-la -vous	-la -leur
nous les	vous les	se les	les	leur	-les-nous	-les-vous	-les-leur
m'en	t'en	s'en	lui	en	-m'en	-t'en	-lui-en
m'en	t'en	s'en	l'	en	-m'en	-t'en	-l'en
nous en	vous en	s'en	leur	en	-nous-en	-vous-en	-leur-en
nous en	vous en	s'en	les	en	-nous-en	-vous-en	-les -en
m'y	t'y	s'y	[lui	y]	[-m'y]	[-t'y]	[-lui-y]
m'y	t'y	s'y	l'	y	[-m'y]	[-t'y]	-l'y
nous y	vous y	s'y	leur	y	-nous-y	-vous-y	-leur-y
nous y	vous y	s'y	les	y	-nous-y	-vous-y	-les -y
	y en					y-en	

Obs.: 1. The disjunctive forms **moi, toi** are used instead of **me, te** after the verb, except before **en.**

2. After the verb, the forms are joined to it and to each other by hyphens, apostrophe instead of hyphen being used according to § 19.

3. Combinations of three forms are rare, *e.g.*, ***Il nous y en*** **a donné;** they are usually avoided, *e.g.*, **Donnes-*y-en à moi*** for **Donne-*m'y-en.***

4. The forms in [ ] are almost always avoided, either by transposition or by some other form of expression, *e.g.*, **Mènes-*y-moi*** or **Mène-*moi là*** for **Mène-*m'y,*** etc. See § 159, 4.

371. Omission of Object. The object of the second of two verbs in a compound tense joined by **et** or **ou** may be omitted along with the auxiliary and the subject:

Il *l'*a pris et tué.	He caught and killed it.
Or: **Il *l'*a pris et *l'*a tué.**	He caught it and killed it.
Il *l'*a pris et il *l'*a tué.	He has caught it and has killed it.
But: **Il *l'*a pris, *l'*a tué.**	He has caught it, has killed it.
Il *le* prend, et *le* tue.	He catches it, and kills it.

Note. — The verbs must be alike in government, must have the same auxiliary, must both be affirmative or negative, otherwise no omission is allowed.

372. Disjunctives. When, for any reason, the pronoun is stressed (§ 7), the disjunctive form is usually employed (see § 359, note); thus, the disjunctives are used:

1. Absolutely, a verb being implied, but not expressed:

Qui est là? — Moi (eux, elle).	Who is there? — I (they, she).
Qui as-tu vu? — Lui (eux).	Whom did you see? — Him (them).
Toi absent, que ferai-je?	You absent, what shall I do?

a. So also, in comparisons, and analogously, after **ne . . . que:**

Je suis plus grand que toi.	I am taller than you.
Faites comme eux.	Do as they do.
Je n'ai vu que lui.	I have seen him only.

2. In appositions, often emphatic:

Moi, je l'ai vu (moi-même).	(Why) I saw it myself.
Toi qui l'as vu, tu me crois.	You who saw it (you) believe me
Lui aussi (il) le sait.	He too knows it.
Cela vous est facile à vous.	That is easy for you.

a. With **lui** so used, and sometimes also with **eux,** the conjunctive subject may be omitted:

Lui seul (il) ne le voulait pas.	He alone did not wish it.
Lui travaillait; eux jouaient.	He worked; they played.

NOTE. — **Je soussigné** = *I the undersigned* is a relic of the earlier language.

3. As logical subject after **ce + être:**

C'est moi (toi, vous); ce sont eux.	It is I (thou, you); it is they.

4. With an infinitive:

Moi t'oublier ! jamais.	I forget thee ! Never.
Et eux de s'enfuir.	And they made off.

5. When the subject or object is composite, see also § 362, 1, *a* and 2, (1):

Son frère et lui sont venus.	His brother and he have come.

a. A composite subject or object is usually summed up by a pleonastic appositive conjunctive, especially when the components are unlike in person:

Vous et lui (vous) l'avez vu.	You and he saw it.
Je vous envoie, toi et ton frère.	I send you and your brother.

6. After a preposition:

Je parle de toi et d'eux.	I speak of you and of them.
Ils sont chez eux.	They are at home.
Il se moque de nous.	He makes sport of us.

a. Observe the peculiar use of a preposition + a disjunctive pronoun as a sort of emphatic appositive of possession.

J'ai une maison à moi.	I have a house of my own.
Mon idée à moi, c'est, etc.	My (own) idea is, etc.

NOTE. — A disjunctive for things after a preposition is usually avoided, either by means of **en, y,** or else by an adverb, such as **dedans, dehors, dessus, devant, derrière,** etc.: **Je ne vois rien *là dedans* (*in it*); Voyez sur la table, cherchez *dessus* (*on it*) et *dessous* (*under it*).**

7. For **moi** and **toi** after imperative, see § 370, 3, *obs.* 1.

373. Pronouns in Address. In addressing one person **vous** is, in general, the pronoun of formality and respect, whilst **tu** denotes familiarity, affection, solemnity, etc., as follows:

1. **Tu** = *you*, of one person, is generally used between members of the same family (husband and wife, parents and children, brothers and sisters), between very intimate friends, between children, by grown persons to children and sometimes to servants, by everybody to animals and inanimate objects:

Où es-tu, mon cher père?	Where are you, my dear father?
Est-ce toi, mon enfant?	Is that you, my child?
Pauvre chien, tu as faim.	Poor dog, you are hungry.

2. **Tu** = *thou* is used in poetry and elevated prose, and by Protestants in addressing God, Roman Catholics using **vous**:

Nous te (vous) louons, ô Dieu!	We praise thee, O God!

3. **Vous,** with the above limitations, is used, both in the singular and plural, as 'you' is in English.

THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUN

374. Possessives

1. Adjectival Forms:

Sing.	Pl.	
m. **mon** / f. **ma (mon)**	**mes,** my	
m. **ton** / f. **ta (ton)**	**tes,** thy, your	
m. **son** / f. **sa (son)**	**ses**	his, her, its, one's
m. / f. **notre**	**nos,** our	
m. / f. **votre**	**vos,** your	
m. / f. **leur**	**leurs,** their	

Obs.: 1. The forms in parenthesis, **mon, ton, son,** are used instead

2. Pronominal Forms:

Sing.	Pl.	
m. **le mien** / f. **la mienne**	**les miens** / **les miennes**	mine
m. **le tien** / f. **la tienne**	**les tiens** / **les tiennes**	thine, yours
m. **le sien** / f. **la sienne**	**les siens** / **les siennes**	his, hers, its, one's own
m. **le nôtre** / f. **la nôtre**	**les nôtres,** ours	
m. **le vôtre** / f. **la vôtre**	**les vôtres,** yours	
m. **le leur** / f. **la leur**	**les leurs,** theirs	

Obs.: 1. The feminine, except for **leur,** is formed as for adjectives of

of **ma, ta, sa,** before a vowel or h mute: ***Mon amie,*** *my friend* (f.); ***ton histoire*** (f.), *your story;* ***son aimable tante,*** *his amiable aunt.* 2. Since **son** (**sa, ses**) = *his, her, its, one's,* the context determines which sense is intended.

like ending. 2. **De, à + le, les,** contract as usual; thus, ***du*** **mien** (= ***de*** + ***le*** **mien**), ***aux*** **miennes** (= ***à*** + ***les*** **miennes**), etc. 3. Note the accent mark in **nôtre, vôtre,** absent in **notre, votre.** 4. Since **le sien** (**la sienne,** etc.) = *his, hers, its, one's,* the context determines which sense is intended.

NOTE. — The regular feminine forms, **ma, ta, sa,** were at one time used before a vowel sound; a trace of this usage survives in **ma mie** (for **m'amie**).

375. Agreement. The possessives agree in gender and number with the noun denoting the object possessed, and in person with the possessor:

Elle a son crayon et les miens.	She has her pencil and mine.
Il a sa plume et les vôtres.	He has his pen and yours.

a. The possessive adjective must be repeated precisely like the definite article (cf. § 318):

Mes parents et mes amis.	My relatives and friends.

b. When the possessor is indefinite, **son** (**sa,** etc.) and **le sien** (**la sienne,** etc.), are used:

On doit tenir sa parole.	One must keep one's word.
Se charger des affaires d'autrui et négliger les siennes.	To undertake the business of others and neglect one's own.

376. Use of Adjectival Forms. They are used, in general, like the corresponding English forms; idiomatic distinctions and special rules are:

1. The possessive adjective is commonly replaced by the definite article (cf. § 328) when no ambiguity arises from its use:

Il s'est cassé la jambe.	He broke his leg.
Donnez-moi la main.	Give me your hand.
Il m'a déchiré le visage.	He has scratched my face.
But: **Il a déchiré son habit.**	He has torn his coat.

a. If the sense is specific, emphatic, or distinctive, the possessive is used:

Mon bras me fait mal.	My arm pains me.
Voilà ma migraine encore !	There is my sick-headache again !

Je l'ai vu de mes propres yeux.	I saw it with my own eyes.
Elle lui a donné sa main.	She has given him her hand (*sc.* in marriage).

2. **En** + the definite article serves in certain cases as a substitute for **son, leur,** see § 367, 2, (2):

a. This construction is more usual for things than for persons; for things personified, for names of places, or to avoid ambiguity, **son, leur** are not uncommon:

La nécessité parle; il faut suivre *sa* loi.	Necessity speaks; we must follow her law.
Vous rappelez-vous cette ville? *Ses* promenades sont très belles.	Do you remember that city? Its promenades are very fine.
La source de toutes les passions est la sensibilité, l'imagination détermine *leur* pente.	Sensation is the source of all the passions, imagination determines their tendency.

3. The emphatic *own* is denoted by **propre** or by an apposition with **à:**

Je l'ai écrit de ma propre main.	I wrote it with my own hand.
C'est mon opinion à moi.	That is my own opinion.
Cf. also: **J'ai un cheval à moi.**	I have a horse of my own.

a. Along with **son** the **à** construction often avoids ambiguity:

Son père *à lui*.	*His* (*i.e.*, not her) father.
Sa mère *à elle*.	*Her* mother.

4. **Mon (ma)** is commonly used, in direct address, before the name of a relative (not before **papa, maman**) or the title of a superior officer:

Bonjour *mon* père (*mon* colonel).	Good morning, father (colonel).
But: **Est-ce toi papa (maman)?**	Is that you, papa (mamma)?

NOTE. — This usage explains the origin of **monsieur** (= **mon** + **sieur**), **madame** (= **ma** + **dame**), etc.

5. In speaking to a person of his or her relatives, **votre (vos)** is often preceded by **monsieur,** etc., for politeness:

Madame votre mère y est-elle?	Is your mother in?

6. When there is plurality of possessor, the object possessed usually remains singular, if it is singular as regards the individual possessor:

Les hommes songent moins à leur *âme* qu'à leur *corps*.	Men think less of their *souls* than of their *bodies*.
Ils ont perdu la *vie*.	They lost their *lives*.

a. Sometimes the sense demands a plural:

Leurs têtes se ressemblent.	Their heads are alike.

377. Use of Pronominal Forms. They are used, in general, like the corresponding English forms; idiomatic distinctions and special rules are the following:

1. *Mine*, etc., after **être** is regularly expressed by **à** + **moi**, etc., when denoting ownership simply, while **le mien,** etc. denotes a distinction of ownership:

Cette montre est *à moi*.	That watch is mine.
Cette montre est *la mienne*.	That watch is mine (*not* yours).

2. The pronominal form sometimes stands without article in the predicate after certain verbs:

Ces opinions sont vôtres.	Those opinions are yours.
Elle deviendra mienne.	She shall become mine.
Je les ai fait miens.	I made them mine.

Such verbs are:

être **devenir** **dire** **faire** **regarder comme,** etc.

3. The idiom *a friend of mine*, etc., is not literally translated:

Un de mes amis.	A friend of mine.
Un médecin de mes amis.	One of my friends, (who is) a doctor. / A doctor, a friend of mine.
Un ami à moi.	A friend of mine.
Mon ami que voici.	This friend of mine.
Cf.: **Un tour de sa façon.**	One of his tricks.

a. The use of **mien** (**tien, sien**) attributively in this sense is familiar:

Un mien parent.	A relative of mine.
Une sienne cousine.	A cousin of his.

4. Emphatic *own* is rendered by **propre,** or is, more usually, untranslated:

Son avis et le mien (**propre**). His opinion and my own.

5. When used absolutely, *i.e.*, without antecedent, the singular denotes *property, what is mine,* etc., and the plural *relatives, friends, allies,* etc.:

Je ne demande que le mien. I ask only for what is mine.
Les nôtres se sont bien battus. Our soldiers (etc.) fought well.

a. Familiarly, the feminine means *pranks,* etc.:

Il fait encore des siennes. He is at his pranks again.

NOTE. — Other absolute uses are not permissible, *e.g.*, **Votre lettre** (not **la vôtre**) **de la semaine dernière.**

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN

378. Demonstratives

1. Adjectival forms:

SING.		PL.
m. **ce** (**cet**) / f. **cette**	this, that	**ces**
m. **ce** (**cet**) . . . **-ci** / f. **cette** . . . **-ci**	this	**ces** . . . **-ci**
m. **ce** (**cet**) . . . **-là** / f. **cette** . . . **-là**	that	**ces** . . . **-là**

Obs.: The form **cet** is used before a vowel or **h** mute: ***cet arbre; cet homme; cet autre dé;*** but: ***ce chêne; ce hêtre.***

2. Pronominal forms:

SING.		PL.
m. **celui** / f. **celle**	that (one), etc.	**ceux** / **celles**
m. **celui-ci** / f. **celle-ci**	this (one), etc.	**ceux-ci** / **celles-ci**
m. **celui-là** / f. **celle-là**	that (one), etc.	**ceux-là** / **celles-là**

(Invar.) **ce,** this (these), that (those), he (she, it, they)
ceci, this
cela, that

Obs.: The **e** of **ce** is elided before a vowel or **h** mute (§ 19); **c'** becomes **ç'** before **a** (§ 5, 4): **ç'a été.**

379. Agreement. The adjectival form agrees in gender and number with the noun before which it stands; the pronominal form agrees in gender and number with the noun instead of which it stands:

Cette plume et celle de Jean. This pen and that of John.
J'aime ces livres-ci, mais je n'aime pas ceux-là. I like these books, but I do not like those.

a. The demonstrative adjective must be repeated like the definite article (cf. § 318).

380. Use of Adjectival *ce*. **Ce** (**cette**, etc.) = *this* or *that;* to distinguish *this* from *that* **-ci** and **-là** are respectively added to the noun:

Lis *ce* livre-*ci;* lis *ce* livre-*là*.	Read this book; read that book.
J'aime *ces* tableaux-*là*.	I like those pictures.

a. **Ce** (**cette**, etc.), referring to what has already been mentioned, sometimes has the force of *that:*

Le télégraphe, cette grande découverte de notre siècle.	The telegraph, that great discovery of our century.

b. The definite article replaces the demonstrative adjective in a few idioms:

Ne parlez pas de *la* sorte.	Do not speak in that way.
Je reviens à *l'*instant.	I shall be back in a moment.

381. Celui. The pronoun **celui** (**celle**, etc.) = *that, that one, the one, he,* is regularly used only along with a relative clause or a **de** clause:

Ceux qui rient pleureront.	Those who laugh will weep.
Celle dont je parle est venue.	She of whom I speak has come.
Le devoir d'aimer Dieu et celui d'aimer son prochain.	The duty of loving God and that of loving one's neighbor.
Cette robe et celle que j'ai vue.	This dress and the one I saw.
Mes plumes et celles de mon frère.	My pens and my brother's.

Obs.: Note the use of **celui** = English possessive noun.

a. The relative sentence is sometimes elliptically expressed by the past participle:

Les découvertes énumérées sont celles faites par Edison.	The discoveries enumerated are those made by Edison.

b. **Celui-là** replaces **celui** when the predicate comes before the relative:

***Celui-là* est riche qui est toujours content.**	He (that man) is rich who is always happy.

382. Celui-ci, celui-là. The pronouns **celui-ci** (**celle-ci**, etc.) = *this, this one, he, the latter* and **celui-là** (**celle-là**,

etc.) = *that, that one, the former,* are used to contrast the nearer with the more remote:

Voici les deux chaînes; gardez celle-ci, et renvoyez celle-là.	Here are the two chains; keep this (one), and send back that (one).
Veut-il ceux-ci ou ceux-là?	Does he wish these or those?
Cicéron et Virgile étaient Romains; celui-ci était poète, et celui-là orateur.	Cicero and Virgil were Romans; the former was an orator, and the latter a poet.

Obs.: The idiom in the last example is literally *the latter . . ., the former.*

a. This or *that* for emphasis, not contrast, is **celui-là**:

C'est une bonne loi (que) celle-là.	This (that) is a good law.

383. *Ce* as Representative Subject. **Ce** = *this, that, these, those, he, she, it, they,* according to the context, is used with **être,** or with **devoir, pouvoir, savoir + être,** as representative subject, when the logical subject is:

1. A proper noun, or a determinate noun, including adjectives as such:

***C'*est Marie et sa mère.**	It is Mary and her mother.
***Ce* sera un beau spectacle.**	That (it) will be a fine sight.
***Ce* sont nos plumes.**	These (those) are our pens.
Était-*ce* le meilleur?	Was it the best?
***Ce* sont des Allemands.**	They (those) are Germans.
***C'*est mon ami(e).**	He (she) is my friend.
***Ce* peut être Jean.**	That may be John.

a. Before **être** + an indeterminate noun **il (ils, elles)** is the regular construction:

***Il* est temps de s'en aller.**	It is time to go.
***Ils* sont amis (Français).**	They are friends (French).
***Elle* est couturière.**	She is a seamstress.

NOTE. — For a few expressions like **c'est dommage,** etc., in which **c'est** stands with an indeterminate noun, see 384, 1, note 3.

b. **Il est** is always used to indicate hours of the day:

***Il* est midi (trois heures).**	It is noon (three o'clock).
But: **Quelle heure est-*ce* qui vient de sonner? — *C'*est cinq heures.**	What hour has just struck? — It is five.

c. Observe the use of **ce** in the following date idioms:

C'est aujourd'hui lundi.	To-day is Monday.
Ce sera demain le quatre.	To-morrow will be the fourth.

2. A pronoun:

Qui est-*ce*? — *Ce* sont eux.	Who is it? — It is they.
***Ce* sont les leurs.**	Those are theirs.
C'est ceci; *c'*est cela.	It is this; it is that.
C'étaient les mêmes.	They (those) were the same.
***Ce* doivent être les miens.**	Those must be mine.

3. An infinitive, or an infinitive with **de**:

***Ce* serait tout perdre.**	That would be losing everything.
Voir *c'*est croire.	Seeing is believing.
Ce que je crains *c'*est de *l'*offenser.	What I fear is to offend him.

4. A noun sentence:

Est-*ce* que vous ne le ferez pas?	Will you not do it?
Où est-*ce* qu'il est?	Where is it that he is?
***Ce* n'est pas qu'il ait peur.**	It is not that he is afraid.

a. The noun sentence may be understood:

Vous partirez, n'est-*ce* pas? (= n'est-*ce* pas que vous partirez?)	You will go, will you not?

5. An adverb of quantity:

Combien est-*ce*? *Ç*'a été trop.	How much is it? It was too much.

NOTE. — For agreement of the verb, see § 232, 3.

384. *Ce* as Real Subject. **Ce** stands as real subject of **être**, or of **devoir, pouvoir, savoir** + **être**, when the complement of **être** is:

1. A masculine adjective, an adjective + **à** + an infinitive, an infinitive preceded by **à**, an adverb (in all these cases without further syntactical connection; see *a*, below):

C'est beau (vrai, bien).	That (it) is fine (true, well).
Ce doit être (ne saurait être) vrai.	That must be (cannot be) true.
Il est parti, *c'*est clair.	He is gone, that is clear.
C'est clair, il est parti.	It is clear, he is gone.
C'est à désirer.	That (it) is to be desired.
La vue est belle! — Oui, *c'*est beau!	The view is fine! — Yes, it is fine!

Où sera-*ce*?	Where will it (that) be?
***C'*était bien mal à vous.**	That was very wrong of you.

a. When followed by **de** + an infinitive or by a **que** clause, the regular construction for the above is impersonal **il** (not **ce**); so also the parenthetical **il est vrai** and **n'est-il pas vrai?** (= **n'est-ce pas?**), though without syntactical connection:

***Il* est facile de dire cela.**	It is easy to say that.
***Il* est triste de vous voir ainsi.**	It is sad to see you thus.
***Il* est clair que j'ai raison.**	It is clear that I am right.
***Il* est à désirer que la guerre finisse bientôt.**	It is to be desired that the war will soon end.
On rit, *il* est vrai, mais attendez.	They laugh, to be sure, but wait.
***Il* est bien mal à vous de parler ainsi.**	It is very wrong of you to speak so.

NOTE. — 1. Colloquially, **c'est** is pretty freely used instead of **il est** before **de** + infinitive or a **que** clause: ***C'*est facile *de* faire cela**; ***C'*est clair *que* j'ai raison**, etc.

2. This use of **ce** is permissible in the literary style only in expressions of emotion, *e.g.*, **C'est heureux (malheureux, beau, triste, étonnant,** etc.), **c'est à présumer (craindre, regretter,** etc.): ***C'*est triste *de* vous voir; *C'*est à craindre *qu'*il ne soit noyé.**

3. The **ce** construction is obligatory after a few noun phrases of like value, *e.g.*, **C'est dommage (pitié, plaisir, justice),** etc., ***C'*est pitié *de* l'entendre.**

2. A prepositional phrase, or a conjunction:

***C'*est pour vous.**	It (that) is for you.
***C'*est pourquoi je suis venu.**	That is why I came.
***C'*est comme vous (le) dites.**	It is as you say.

385. *Ce* + a Relative. As antecedent **ce** + a relative denotes *that which, what, which,* etc.:

***Ce qui* m'amuse.**	What (that which) amuses me.
***Ce que* je dis est vrai.**	What I say is true.
***Ce dont* nous parlions.**	What we were speaking of.
***Ce à quoi* je pense.**	What I am thinking of.
Il est âgé, *ce qui* est dommage.	He is old, which is a pity.

a. **Ce,** so used, either immediately precedes the relative, or is, for emphasis, divided from it by **être** + a predicate substantive:

***Ce qu'*il veut *c'*est la gloire.**	What he desires is glory.
***C'*est la gloire *qu'*il veut.**	It is glory that he desires.

NOTE. — This type of construction is widely used to render a predicate substantive emphatic, *e.g.*, ***C'*est ton frère *qui* le dit; *C'*est à vous *que* (= à qui) je parle; *C'*est mourir *que* de vivre ainsi; *C'*est une belle ville *que* Paris** (cf. 397, 2, note 1).

386. Other uses of *ce*. Apart from its use with **être** or with a relative, **ce** is found in a few phrases only, mostly archaic, familiar or jocular:

***Ce* devint un usage.**	This (that) became a custom.
Tu crains, *ce* lui dit-il.	"You fear," said he to him.
Sur *ce*, je vous quitte.	And now, I leave you.
De *ce* non content.	Not satisfied with this.

a. The parenthetical **ce semble** may be used only when unconnected (cf. § 384, **1**, *a*), otherwise **il semble**:

C'est lui, *ce* me semble, au moins.	It's he, it seems to me, at least.
But: ***Il* me semble *que* c'est lui.**	

387. Pleonastic *ce*. As compared with English, **ce** is often pleonastic; thus, it is used with **être** + a logical subject:

1. Regularly, after **celui qui** and **ce qui**:

Celle qui l'a dit *c'*est vous.	The one who said so is you.
Ce que je crains *ce* sont mes prétendus amis.	What I fear is my would-be friends.
Ce à quoi je pense *c'*est sa santé.	What I think of is his health.

2. Regularly, between infinitives when not negative:

Penser, *c'*est vivre.	To think is to live.
But: **Végéter (*ce*) n'est pas vivre.**	To vegetate is not to live.

3. Regularly, in inversion with **que**:

***C'*est une belle ville que Paris.**	Paris is a beautiful city. It is a fine city, (is) Paris.

4. Optionally, in other inversions for emphasis:

La guerre (*ce*) serait la ruine.	War would be ruin.

NOTE. — When the complement of **être** is an adjective or participle, pleonastic **ce** may not be used: **Ce qui est utile n'est pas toujours juste.**

388. *Ceci* and *cela*. **Ceci** = *this*, the nearer, and **cela** = *that*, the more remote, are used to denote something indicated, but not yet named:

Gardez ceci et donnez-moi cela.	Keep this and give me that.

Obs.: If the object has been already named, or if the name is fully implied by the context, **celui-ci (-là)**, etc. must be used.

a. **Ceci** also refers to what is about to be said, and **cela** to what has been said:

Réfléchissez bien à ceci.	Think well on this.
Je ne dis pas davantage, cela suffit.	I say no more, that is enough.

b. **Ceci** (*not* **cela**) may have a predicate noun:

***Ceci* est un secret.**	This is a secret.
Or: **C'est *ici* un secret** (rarer).	
But: **C'est *là* un secret.**	That is a secret.
***Cela* c'est un secret.**	

NOTE. — **Cela** is not so divided before **même, seul,** and its division in negations is optional: ***Cela* seul (même) en est la cause; Cela n'est pas** (*or* **ce n'est pas là**) **une faute.**

c. **Cela** (*not* **ceci**) = *this* before a **de** clause:

Paris a *cela* d'avantageux.	Paris has this advantage.

d. **Cela** may be replaced by **là** after **de** and **par:**

De *là* vient que, etc.	From that it comes that, etc.
Il faut commencer par *là*.	We must begin with that.

e. **Cela** is often contracted to **ça** colloquially:

***Ça* ne fait rien.**	That doesn't matter.

f. **Ça** is sometimes used familiarly or contemptuously of persons instead of a personal pronoun:

Regardez comme *ça* mange.	Look how they (etc.) eat.
***Ça* veut faire à sa tête.**	You (etc.) wish to do as you please.

NOTE. — Distinguish **ça** from **çà** (adverb) and **çà!** (interjection).

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

389. Interrogatives

1. Adjectival forms:

	SING.	PL.	
m.	**quel?**	**quels?**	which? what? etc.
f.	**quelle?**	**quelles?**	

2. Pronominal forms:

	SING.	PL.	
m.	**lequel?**	**lesquels?**	which? which or what one(s)?
f.	**laquelle?**	**lesquelles?**	

(Invar.) **qui?** who? whom?
que? what?
quoi? what?

Obs.: 1. For the feminine and plural of **quel,** cf. §§ 337, 1 (2), and 338.

2. **Lequel** = **le** + **quel,** both parts being inflected (§§ 316, 389, 1); **de, à** contract with **le, les** (***du*quel, *au*quel,** etc., cf. § 317).

3. **Que** = **qu'** before a vowel or **h** mute (§ 19).

390. Agreement. The adjectival forms agree like ordinary adjectives; the variable pronominal forms agree in gender, but not necessarily in number, with the nouns for which they stand; the invariable **qui?** assumes the number of the noun or pronoun referred to:

Quels livres avez-vous?	Which (what) books have you?
Quelle plume avez-vous prise?	Which pen did you take?
Quelles sont vos raisons?	What are your reasons?
Laquelle des dames est venue?	Which of the ladies has come?
Qui sonne? Qui sont-elles?	Who rings? Who are they?

391. Quel? Lequel? The adjective **quel?** = *which? what?* and the pronoun **lequel?** = *which (one)? what (one)?* refer either to persons or things, and stand both in direct and indirect questions:

Quels livres avez-vous?	Which (what) books have you?
Dites-moi quel livre il a.	Tell me which (what) book he has.
Desquels avez-vous besoin?	Which (ones) do you need?
Dites-moi lesquels vous avez.	Tell me which (ones) you have.
Quelle dame est arrivée?	Which (what) lady has come?
Je ne sais pas laquelle.	I do not know which (one).
Quelles sont vos raisons?	What are your reasons?
Quel homme est-ce là?	What (what kind of) man is that?
Auquel des hommes parle-t-il?	To which of the men does he speak?

a. **Quel!** in exclamations sometimes = *what a! what!:*

Quel héros! Quels héros!	What a hero! What heroes!
Quelle belle scène! — Oui, c'est beau!	What a beautiful scene! — Yes, it is fine.

b. **Quel?** as predicative adjective often replaces **qui?** = *who?*

Quels sont ces gens-là?	Who are those people? (*or* what kind of people are those?)
Sais-tu quelle est cette dame?	Do you know who that lady is?

NOTE. — A pleonastic **de** is commonly used before alternatives after **quel? lequel?** and other interrogatives, probably caused by case attraction with **des deux,** often present in such expressions: **Lequel (des deux) est le plus habile, *de* cet homme-ci ou *de* celui-là; Laquelle est la plus illustre, d'Athènes ou *de* Rome?**

392. Qui? 1. The pronoun **qui?** = *who? whom?* is regularly used of persons only, and stands in both direct and indirect questions:

Qui frappe? Qui est là?	Who is knocking? Who is there?
De qui (à qui) parle-t-il?	Of whom (to whom) is he speaking?
Qui avez-vous vu?	Whom did you see?
Qui êtes-vous?	Who are you?
Dites-moi qui est venu.	Tell me who has come.

a. **Qui?** is sometimes used, though rarely and not necessarily, as subject of a transitive verb in the sense of *what?*

Qui vous amène de si bonne heure? What brings you so early?

b. **Qui?** predicatively, is often replaced, especially when feminine or plural, by **quel?**

Quelle est cette dame?	Who is that lady? (What l. is that?)
Quels sont-ils?	Who are they?

2. *Whose?* denoting simply ownership = **à qui?** otherwise generally **de qui?** sometimes **quel?** but never **dont:**

À qui est cette maison-là?	Whose house is that?
De qui êtes-vous fils?	Whose son are you?
Quelle maison a été brûlée?	Whose (what) house was burnt?

Note. — Compare with this the idiom **c'est à qui: C'était à qui finirait le premier,** *It was a strife as to who would finish first.*

393. Que? Quoi? The form **que?** = *what?* is conjunctive, while **quoi?** = *what?* is disjunctive; their uses in detail are:

1. **Que?** stands regularly as direct object or as predicate, and in direct question only:

Que vous a-t-il dit?	What did he say to you?
Que cherchez-vous?	What are you looking for?
Que sont-ils devenus?	What has become of them?

a. **Que?** alternatively with **quoi?** may stand with an infinitive in indirect question:

Je ne sais que (quoi) dire.	I know not what to say.

b. **Que?** and **que!** sometimes have adverbial force:

Que ne m'avez-vous dit cela?	Why did you not tell me that?
Que vous êtes heureux!	How happy you are!
Que d'argent perdu!	What a quantity of money lost!

2. *What?* as subject of a verb is regularly **qu'est-ce qui?**

Qu'est-ce qui fait ce bruit?	What is making that noise?

a. The form **que?** may stand as subject of a few intransitive verbs, mostly such as may also be impersonal, but never as subject of a transitive verb:

Que sert de pleurer?	What is the use of crying?
Que vous en semble?	What do you think of it?
Qu'est-ce?	What is it?

3. **Quoi?** is used absolutely, *i.e.*, with ellipsis of the verb, and after a preposition:

Il y a du nouveau. — Quoi?	There is news. — What?
Quoi de plus beau que cela?	What finer than that?
Quoi! vous l'admirez!	What! You admire him!
À quoi pensez-vous?	What are you thinking of?
En quoi puis-je vous servir?	In what can I help you?

a. In cases of special emphasis **quoi?** may be direct object:

Je reçois quoi? — Des lettres.	I receive what? — Letters.

b. With an infinitive, **que?** or more emphatically, **quoi?** is used:

Que (quoi) faire?	What is one to do?
Je ne sais que (quoi) répondre.	I know not what to answer.

394. Interrogative Locutions. The use of interrogative phrases formed with **est-ce,** etc., instead of the simple forms is very frequent (cf. §§ 392–3):

Qui est-ce qui chante?	*for*	Qui chante?
Qui est-ce que vous demandez?	"	Qui demandez-vous?
À qui est-ce que vous parliez?	"	À qui parliez-vous?
Qu'est-ce que cela prouve?	"	Que prouve cela?
Qu'est-ce que c'est?	"	Qu'est-ce?
Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela?	"	Qu'est-ce que cela?
De quoi est-ce qu'il parle?	"	De quoi parle-t-il?

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

395. Relative Pronouns

qui, who, which, that; whom (*after a preposition*)
que, whom, which, that
dont, whose, of whom, of which, etc.
où, in which, into which, at which, to which, etc.
lequel, m. s. **lesquels**, m. pl. } who, whom, which, that
laquelle, f. s. **lesquelles**, f. pl. }
quoi, what, which

Obs.: For **qu'**, see § 19.

396. Agreement. A relative pronoun, whether variable or invariable in form, is of the gender, number, and person of its antecedent:

Moi qui étais (vous qui étiez) là.	I who was (you who were) there.
Les lettres que j'ai apportées.	The letters which I have brought.
Moi qui suis son ami(e).	I who am his friend (m. *or* f.).
Dieux (vous) qui m'exaucez !	(Ye) gods who hear me!
C'est nous qui l'avons dit.	It is we who have said it.
Je suis celui qui l'ai dit.	I am the one who has said it.

a. When the antecedent is a predicate noun, or an adjective as **such**, the relative may agree in person either with this noun or with the subject of the sentence:

Nous sommes deux moines qui voyageons (voyagent).	We are two monks who are traveling.
Je suis le seul qui l'aie (ait) dit.	I am the only one who has said it.

b. The relative after **un** + a plural is either singular or plural, usually according to the sense:

C'est un de mes (des) procès qui m'a (m'ont) ruiné.	It is one of my (of the) lawsuits which has (have) ruined me.

397. Qui, Que. Both **qui** and **que** refer to antecedents, of either gender or number, denoting persons or things; their uses in detail are:

1. **Qui** = *who, which, that,* serves as subject; **qui** = *whom,* of persons only, or things personified, may also be used after a preposition:

La dame qui a chanté.	The lady who (that) has sung.
Les amis qui sont arrivés.	The friends who (that) have come.
La vache qui beugle.	The cow which (that) lows.
Les livres qui ont été perdus.	The books which have been lost.
Les oiseaux qui volent.	The birds which (that) fly.
Ce qui m'amuse.	What (that which) amuses me.
Rien qui soit beau.	Nothing that is beautiful.
La tante chez qui je demeure.	The aunt with whom I live.
Les amis à (de) qui je parlais.	The friends to (of) whom I spoke.
Rochers à qui je me plains.	Rocks to whom I complain.

a. **Qui,** without antecedent, sometimes = **celui qui** (**ceux qui,** etc.), or, when repeated, = **les uns . . . les autres:**

Aimez qui vous aime.	Love him (the one) who loves you.
Jouera qui voudra.	Let those who will play.
Pour qui connaît.	For any one who knows.
Qui d'un côté, qui de l'autre.	Some on one side, some on the other.

b. Similarly, in a few phrases, mostly exclamatory or parenthetical, **qui** = **ce qui:**

Voilà qui est étrange!	That is strange!
Qui pis est (*or* **ce qui est pis**).	What is worse.

2. **Que** = *whom, which, that,* serves regularly as direct object:

Les ami(e)s que j'aime.	The friends whom (that) I love.
Le livre (cheval) que j'ai.	The book (horse) which I have.
Les plumes que j'ai achetées.	The pens which I have bought.
Ce que vous dites.	That which you say.
Rien de ce que vous dites.	Nothing that you say.

a. **Que** stands also as predicate nominative (cf. § 295, 1), and as logical subject of an impersonal verb:

Malheureuse que je suis!	Unhappy woman that I am!
Qu'est-ce qu'elle est devenue?	What has become of her?
À l'heure qu'il est.	At the present hour.
L'homme qu'il vous faut.	The man that you need.
Prenez ce qu'il vous faut.	Take what you need.

NOTES. — 1. The **que** of emphatic inversions (§ 385, *a*, n.) is best explained as predicative **que**: **C'est une belle ville** *que* **Paris** = **C'est une belle ville** *que* **Paris** (est) or **C'est une belle ville** (ce) *que* (c'est) **Paris; Erreur** *que* **tout cela** = (C'est) **erreur** *que* **tout cela** (est) or (C'est) **erreur** (ce) *que* **(c'est) tout cela.**

2. The form **que** is often a relative adverb, not to be confounded in function with the relative proper: **Dans le temps** *que* **cela arrivait; C'est à vous** *que* **je parle** (or **C'est vous à qui je parle**).

398. Dont. The form **dont** = *whose, of whom, of which*, etc., has the value of **de** + a relative; it refers to antecedents, of either gender or number, denoting persons or things (**dont** is never interrogative):

L'homme dont le fils est mort.	The man whose son is dead.
Les gens dont je parle.	The people of whom I speak.
Les plumes dont je me sers.	The pens which I make use of.
La gloire dont il est avide.	The fame for which he is eager.
Ce dont je me plains.	That of which I complain.

a. A noun after **dont** = *whose* does not omit the article as in English, and must follow its governing verb (cf. § 400, 2):

Le monsieur dont j'ai trouvé la bourse.	The gentleman whose purse I found.

b. As compared with **d'où** (cf. § 399, *a*), **dont** has figurative force in expressions referring to extraction, lineage, etc.:

La maison dont il sort.	The family from which he comes.

c. **Dont** was originally an adverb (L. *de* + *unde*), and is often best construed as such:

Le pays dont il est venu.	The country whence he came.

399. Où. The adverb **où** = *where* is also used as a relative with the value of **dans** (**à, sur, vers,** etc.) + a relative; if preceded by a preposition, **où** = *which, where:*

La maison où je loge.	The house in which I lodge.
Le siècle où nous vivons.	The age in which we live.
Le but où il tend.	The end towards which he tends.
Les villes par où je suis venu.	The cities through which I came.
L'endroit d'où il vient.	The place from which he comes.

a. **D'où** = *from which, whence,* is usually literal in force:

La maison d'où il sort.	The house out of which he comes.

400. Lequel. The form **lequel** = *who, whom, which, that,* refers to persons or things, and varies in form to agree with its antecedent; it is chiefly used where **qui, que,** etc., may not be employed:

1. **Lequel,** being inflected, stands where **qui, que,** from want of inflection, would be ambiguous, or it serves, owing to its stress, to denote the more remote of two possible antecedents:

La sœur de mon ami laquelle vient d'arriver.	The sister of my friend who has just come.
Le fils du rédacteur lequel je viens de voir.	The son of the editor whom (*i.e.*, the son) I have just seen.

a. **Lequel** may not be used of persons after **en,** and it must be used of persons after **parmi, entre:**

Un homme en qui je crois.	A man in whom I believe.
Les amis parmi (entre) lesquels.	The friends among whom.

2. When depending on a noun governed by a preposition, *whose* must be turned by **duquel,** etc., which must follow the noun (cf. § 398, *a*):

La dame au fils de laquelle (*or* **de qui) je donne des leçons.**	The lady to whose son I give lessons.

NOTE. — **Lequel** is used exceptionally as an adjective: **J'espère partir demain, *auquel* cas,** etc.; **Je viens de toucher mille francs, de *laquelle* somme je payerai mes dettes.**

401. Quoi. 1. The form **quoi** = *what, which,* is used without definite antecedent, and stands after a preposition, rarely otherwise:

Voilà de quoi je parlais.	That is what I was speaking of.
Sur quoi il est parti.	Whereupon he went away.
C'est à quoi je pensais.	That is what I was thinking of.
Il m'a payé, ce à quoi je ne m'attendais guère.	He paid me, which I hardly expected.

a. **De quoi** + an infinitive, expressed or implied, denotes the means or cause of the action of the infinitive:

Il a de quoi vivre.	He has enough to live on.
Il a de quoi (*sc.* **vivre**, etc.).	He has means (is well off).
Donnez-moi de quoi écrire.	Give me something to write with.
Il n'y a pas de quoi.	There is no occasion (don't mention it, etc.).

b. **Quoi** stands without a preposition in a few expressions:

Quoi faisant.	(By) doing which.
Un je ne sais quoi de cruel.	A certain indefinable cruelty.

2. *What = that which* is expressed by **ce** + a relative (cf. § 385):

Je vois ce qui se passe.	I see what is going on.
Je sais ce que je sais.	I know what I know.
Ce dont je me plains.	That of which I complain.
Ce à quoi je me fiais.	What I was trusting to.
Il est sourd, ce qui est bien dommage.	He is deaf, which is a great pity.

402. Remarks. 1. The relative pronoun, often omitted in English, is never omitted in French:

Le tableau que j'ai vu là.	The picture (which) I saw there.
Le livre dont je parle est à moi.	The book (which) I speak of is mine.

2. Relative and antecedent should stand as near together as possible:

Il y a de ce livre une édition qui se vend, etc.	There is an edition of that book which is sold, etc.

Not: **Une édition de ce livre qui,** etc.

3. A preposition never ends the relative sentence, as sometimes in English:

Ce à quoi je me fiais.	What I was trusting to.

4. For English forms in **-ing** = relative clause, see § 287, 3.

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN

403. Indefinites

1. Adjectival forms:

1. **certain,** a certain; pl. certain
2. **chaque,** each, every
3. **différent(e)s,** pl., various, etc.
4. **divers,** m. pl. / **diverses,** f. pl. } various, etc.
5. **maint,** many a
6. **quelque,** some; pl., some, (few)

Obs.: Except for **divers,** the feminine and plural are formed like those of ordinary adjectives.

2. Pronominal forms:

1. **autrui,** others, other people, etc.
2. **chacun,** m. / **chacune,** f. } each (one), every (one)
3. **on (l'on),** one, people, etc.
4. **personne . . . ne,** nobody, etc.
5. **quelqu'un,** m. s. / **quelqu'une,** f. s. } somebody, etc.
   quelques-uns, m. pl. / **quelques-unes,** f. pl. } some (people), etc.
6. **quelque chose,** something
7. **rien . . . ne,** nothing

Obs.: 1. **On** often becomes **l'on** after a vowel sound to avoid hiatus, especially after **et, ou, où, que, lorsque,** etc., **qui, quoi, pourquoi, si, ainsi, aussi,** but not usually when a closely following word has initial l; **qu'on** almost always becomes **que l'on** when a closely following word has initial [k] sound.

2. For **quelqu'un(e),** see § 19.

3. Note the hyphen of the plural of **quelqu'un.**

3. Forms serving either as adjective or as pronoun:

1. **aucun . . . ne,** no; nobody, etc.
2. **autre,** other
3. **même,** same, etc.
4. **nul . . . ne,** m. / **nulle . . . ne,** f. } no; nobody, etc.
5. **pas un . . . ne,** no; nobody, etc.
6. **plusieurs,** m. *or* f. pl., several
7. **tel,** m. / **telle,** f. } such, etc.
8. **tout,** m. **tous,** m. pl. / **toute,** f. **toutes,** f. pl. } all, every, etc.
9. **un,** a; one, etc.

Obs.: The feminine and plural are like those of adjectives of like ending, except the feminine of **nul** and the plural of **tout.**

404. Use of Adjectival Forms. 1. **Certain** = (*a*) *certain,* pl. *certain, some,* precedes its noun; the use of **un** in the singular, and of partitive **de** in the plural, is optional:

(Un) certain roi de France.	A certain French king.
(De) certaines gens.	Certain (some) people.

a. **Certains** is exceptionally used as a pronoun:

Certains prétendent, etc.	Some assert, etc.

NOTE. — **Certain,** placed after the noun, is an ordinary adjective = *sure, trustworthy, positive,* etc. (cf. § 352, 4).

2. **Chaque** = *each, every,* is distributive and singular only:

Chaque homme (femme).	Each *or* every man (woman).

a. Distinguish **chaque** = *every, each,* which individualizes, from **tout** = *every, all,* which generalizes:

Chaque homme a des passions.	Every (each) man has passions.
Tout homme a une passion dominante.	Every man has (all men have) a ruling passion.
Chaque année; tous les ans.	Each year; every year.

3. **Différents, Divers** = *various, several, sundry, divers,* are indefinite adjectives only when plural and standing before nouns:

Différentes choses m'ont retenu.	Various things detained me.
On a essayé divers moyens.	Several methods have been tried.

NOTE. — With the sense of *different, diverse,* they are used as ordinary adjectives.

4. **Maint,** whether singular or plural, = *many a;* it is often repeated:

Maint(s) danger(s).	Many a danger.
Mainte(s) fois.	Many a time.
En mainte et mainte occasion.	On many an occasion.

5. **Quelque** = *some;* when used of quantity or number, **quelque** = *some, but not much or many, a little, a few,* and is of more limited force than the partitive *some* (§ 322):

Quelques amis sont pires que des ennemis.	Some friends are worse than enemies.
J'ai eu quelque difficulté.	I have had some (a little) difficulty.
Il a quelques amis ici.	He has some (a few) friends here.
Voici les quelques francs qui nous restent.	Here are the few francs we have left.

a. **Quelque** has adverbial force, and is invariable, before numerals (not nouns of number) = *about, some:*

A quelque dix milles d'ici.	About (some) ten miles from here.
But: **Quelques centaines de pas.**	A few hundred paces.
À cent et quelques pas.	At a little more than 100 paces.

b. Similarly before adjectives or adverbs = *however* (cf. § 271, 4, *b*):

Quelque riches qu'ils soient.	However rich they may be.
Quelque bien que vous parliez.	However well you may speak.

NOTE. — *However* + adjective is also expressed by **tout . . . que** (usually with the indicative), **si . . . (que)** (with the subjunctive), **pour . . . que** (with the subjunctive), *e.g.*, ***Toutes* bonnes *qu'*elles sont,** *However good they are;* ***Si* bonnes *qu'*elles soient,** *However good they are;* ***Si* bonnes vos raisons soient-elles,** *However good your reasons are;* ***Pour* bonnes *qu'*elles soient,** *However good they are.*

c. For the use of **quelque(s) . . . que** = *whatever*, see § 407.

405. Use of Pronominal Forms. 1. **Autrui** = *others, other people, our neighbor* (in general), is rarely used except after a preposition:

Il ne faut pas convoiter les biens d'autrui.	We must not covet the goods of others.
La rigueur envers autrui.	Severity towards others.

NOTE. — *Others* is more usually **les autres, d'autres** (§406, 2, *b*); regularly so, as subject or direct object.

2. **Chacun** = *each, each one, every one* is the pronoun corresponding to the adjective **chaque** (§ 404, 2):

Chacun d'eux a refusé.	Each (every) one of them refused.
Donnez à chacun(e) sa part.	Give to each his (her) share.
Des poires à deux sous chacune (chaque).	Pears at two cents each.

a. The possessive form to **chacun** is regularly **son:**

Mettez-les chacun(e) à sa place.	Put them each in his (her, its) place.

b. **Chacun,** in apposition to **nous, vous,** takes, as its possessive, **notre, votre:**

Parlez chacun(e) à votre tour.	Speak each in your turn.

c. **Chacun,** in apposition to **ils, elles,** takes the possessive **leur** before the direct object; otherwise **son** *or* **leur:**

Elles récitent chacune leur verset (chacune à son *or* leur tour).	They each recite their verse (each in turn).

d. The reflexive to **chacun** = *every one* is **se (soi)**:

Chacun pour soi.	Every one for himself.

3. **On** = *one, some one, we, you, they, people,* etc., is used as subject of a verb in the third singular, without specifying any person in particular:

On dit que la reine est malade.	They (people) say the queen is ill.
A-t-on allumé mon feu?	Has any one lighted my fire?
On ne peut pas mêler l'huile avec l'eau.	One (we, you) cannot mix oil with water.

a The **on** construction often corresponds to an English passive, especially when the agent is not specified:

On a attrapé le larron.	The thief has been caught.
On croit que la guerre est finie.	It is thought the war is over.
On vous demande.	You are wanted.

b. **On** may not be replaced by a personal pronoun subject:

On est triste quand on est sans argent.	A man is sad when he is without money.

c. Since **on** is subject only, the corresponding direct and indirect objects, when required, are borrowed from **vous**:

Lorsqu'on presse trop un poisson il vous échappe.	When you squeeze a fish too much it escapes you.

d. The reflexive to **on** is **se (soi)**, and the corresponding possessive is **son**, whatever be the English equivalent:

On se demande.	People ask themselves (wonder).
On perdrait son temps.	You would lose your time.

e. Although **on** is invariable, a feminine or plural noun or adjective may relate to it, when the sense is clearly feminine or plural:

On est plus jolie à présent.	She is prettier now.
On est si proches voisins.	We are such near neighbors.

f. **On** may replace a personal pronoun, often with depreciatory force:

On y pensera.	I (we) shall see about it.
On se croit bien fin.	You (he, etc.) think yourself very cunning.

4. **Personne** and **rien** along with **ne** + a verb, or when alone, a verb being understood, = *nobody, no one, not anybody*, etc., and *nothing, not anything*, respectively:

Personne n'est venu.	Nobody (no one) has come.
Je n'ai parlé à personne.	I have spoken to nobody (not spoken to anybody).
Ne dites rien.	Say nothing (do not say anything).
Personne ici ! — Personne.	No one here ! — No one.
Qu'a-t-il dit ? — Rien.	What did he say? — Nothing.

a. If the context contains or implies negation, **personne, rien,** assume affirmative force (= **quelqu'un, quelque chose**):

Il n'a rien dit à personne.	He said nothing to any one.
Personne n'a jamais rien dit.	Nobody has ever said anything.
Je vous défends de rien dire.	I forbid you to say anything.
Je crains de parler à personne.	I fear to speak to anybody.
Impossible de rien faire !	Impossible to do anything !
Il cessa de rien donner.	He ceased giving anything.
Où trouverai-je rien de pareil?	Where shall I find anything like it?
Sans parler à personne.	Without speaking to anybody.

b. The above rule does not apply to pleonastic **ne,** nor to double negations:

Je crains qu'il ne fasse mal à quelqu'un.	I fear he will hurt somebody.
Ne revenez pas sans voir quelqu'un.	Do not come back without seeing somebody.

Note. — The pronoun **personne** is masculine (sometimes sylleptically feminine like **on,** 3, *e*, above); the noun **personne** is always feminine (cf. § 303, 1, *c*).

5. **Quelqu'un**(**e**) = *somebody, some one, any one*, etc., with its plural **quelques-un**(**e**)**s** = *some, some people, any, a few*, etc., is the pronoun corresponding to the adjective **quelque** (§ 404, 5):

Il y a quelqu'un là.	There is somebody there.
Y a-t-il quelqu'un là?	Is there any one there?
A-t-il quelques-unes des fleurs?	Has he some (any) of the flowers?
Il en reste quelques-unes.	A few of them remain.
Quelqu'une des dames viendra.	Some one of the ladies will come.
Quelques-uns le croient.	Some (people) believe it.

6. **Quelque chose** = *something, anything,* and is masculine, though formed from the feminine noun **chose**:

Quelque chose est promis.	Something is promised.
A-t-il dit quelque chose?	Did he say anything?
A-t-il quelque chose de bon?	Has he anything good?

406. Adjectival or Pronominal Forms. 1. **Aucun, nul, pas un,** along with **ne** + a verb, or when alone, a verb being understood, = *no, not any, not one,* as adjective, and *none, nobody, no one, not one,* as pronoun:

Aucun / Nul / Pas un écrivain ne le dit.	No writer says so.
Aucun ne le croit.	No one believes it.
Je n'en ai vu aucun(e).	I saw none of them.
Pas un de ses amis ne reste.	Not one of his friends remains.
A-t-il de l'espoir? — Aucun.	Has he any hope? — None.

a. **Aucun,** but not **nul** or **pas un,** becomes affirmative (= **quelque** or **quelqu'un**) when the context is negative (cf. § 405, 4, *a*):

Sans aucune cause.	Without any cause.
Rien pour aucun de nous.	Nothing for any of us.
Gardez-vous de faire aucune faute.	Take care not to make any mistake.

b. The plural adjective **aucun**(e)s may be used, especially before nouns with no singular, or before such as are preferably plural; (**d'**)**aucuns** = **quelques-uns** is sometimes found:

Il ne me rend aucuns soins.	He gives me no care.
(D')aucuns le croiraient.	Some would believe it.

2. **Autre** = *other,* is usually preceded in the singular by **un** or **l'**:

Une autre fois; d'autres livres.	Another time; other books.
En avez-vous un(e) autre?	Have you another?
Un autre dit le contraire.	Another says the contrary.
Les autres m'aideront.	The others will help me.
Entre autres choses.	Among other things.

a. Distinguish **un autre** = *another* (*a different*) from **encore un** = *another* (*an additional*):

Donnez-moi une autre plume. / Donnez-moi encore une plume.	Give me another pen.

b. Others, other people, = **les autres** *or* **d'autres**, sometimes **autrui** (cf. § 405, 1):

Il se méfie toujours des autres.	He always suspects others.
D'autres pensent autrement.	Others think otherwise.
Bien d'autres.	Many others.

Obs.: The **d'** of **d'autres** is a partitive sign (cf. § 325, 1, *b*).

c. **Autres** is often added familiarly to **nous, vous:**

Nous autres peintres.	We painters.
Vous autres Français parlez très vite.	You Frenchmen speak very fast.

d. Observe the following expressions with **autre:**

Autre part; de part et d'autre.	Elsewhere; reciprocally.
C'est un (tout) autre homme.	He is a very different man.
Parler de choses et d'autres.	To speak of this and that.
L'autre jour.	The other day.
Autre est promettre, autre est donner.	It is one thing to promise, and another to give.
Tout autre que lui.	Any one but him.
De temps à autre.	From time to time.
À d'autres (familiar).	Tell that to the marines (*familiar*).

e. For **l'un . . . l'autre, les uns . . . les autres,** see § 406, 7, (2).

3. **Même** varies in meaning and form according to its position and function:

(1) Preceding its noun or as a pronoun, **même** = *same*, and nearly always has the article:

La (les) même(s) chose(s).	The same thing(s).
Les miens sont les mêmes.	Mine are the same.
Donnez-moi des mêmes.	Give me some of the same.
Une même affaire.	One and the same business.
Des plantes de la même espèce.	Plants of the same species.

(2) Following the noun or pronoun qualified, **même** = *self, very, even*, and agrees, but has no article:

Dieu est la bonté même.	God is goodness itself.
Moi-même; elles-mêmes.	I myself; they themselves.
Cela même; celui-là même.	That itself; that man himself.
Les enfants mêmes.	The very (even the) children.

a. **Même** is also used as an adverb (invariable):

Il nous a même insultés.	He even insulted us.
Quand même il le dirait.	Even if he should say so.

b. **Même** forms a number of highly idiomatic locutions:

Cela revient au même.	That amounts to the same thing.
Êtes-vous à même de faire cela?	Are you in a position to do that?
Il en est de même de . . .	It is the same with . . .

4. **Plusieurs** = *several;* it is sometimes used in the sense of **beaucoup** = *many:*

Plusieurs hommes (femmes).	Several men (women).
Apporte plusieurs des plumes.	Bring several of the pens.
J'en ai plusieurs.	I have several of them.
Plusieurs l'ont cru.	Many (people) believed it.

5. **Tel,** as adjective, = *such, like;* **un tel** = *such a;* **tel,** as pronoun, = *many a one, he, some,* etc.:

Ne crois pas une telle histoire.	Do not believe such a story.
Tels sont mes malheurs.	Such are my misfortunes.
Il n'y a pas de tels animaux.	There are no such animals.
À telles et telles conditions.	On such and such conditions.
Telle qu'une tigresse.	Like (as) a tigress.
Tel qui rit vendredi dimanche pleurera (proverb).	Some (many a one, he) who laugh(s) on Friday will weep on Sunday.

a. Examples of more idiomatic uses are:

Tel père, tel fils.	Like father, like son.
Tel rit, tel pleure.	One laughs, another weeps.
Monsieur un tel (Mme une telle).	Mr. So-and-so (Mrs. So-and-so).
De la musique telle quelle.	Music such as it is.
Votre argent tel quel.	Your money intact.

NOTE. — *Such,* as adverb, is **si** or **tellement** (not **tel**): ***Une si*** **belle étoile;** ***Un*** **homme** ***tellement*** **cruel.**

6. **Tout** (singular) = *all, every, any, whole,* etc.; **tous** (plural) = *all:*

Toute ma vie; tous les hommes.	All my (my whole) life; all (the) men.
Tout homme; toute créature.	Every (any) man; every creature.
Tous (toutes) sont venu(e)s.	All have come.

C'est tout; de tous côtés.	That is all; on all sides.
Tout m'effraie.	Everything frightens me

a. **Tout** is often adverb = *quite, wholly, very, very much*, etc., and agrees like an adjective, when immediately preceding a feminine adjective with initial consonant or **h** aspirate, but is elsewhere invariable:

Elles étaient toutes pâles et tout agitées.	They were quite pale and very much excited.

But: **Ils étaient *tout* pâles et *tout* agités,** etc.

NOTE. — So also, in the compound **tout-puissant,** *e.g.*, **Elle est *toute*-puissante.**

b. Observe the following idiomatic expressions:

Tout le monde (cf. **le monde entier**).	Everybody (*cf.* the whole world).
Tous les mois; pas du tout.	Every month; not at all.
Tous les deux jours.	Every other (alternate) day.
Tous (les*) deux *or* **les deux.**	Both.
Tout à l'heure.	Presently (*or* a little while ago)
Tout beau; tout doux.	Gently (slowly); softly.
(Pour) tout de bon.	Seriously.

* **Tous deux** (**trois,** etc.) — without **les** — usually denotes 'simultaneousness' (= *both together*, etc.); **les** is obligatory above ten, and usual from five to ten.

c. For the distinction between **tout** and **chaque** see § 404, 2, *a*; for **tout . . . que** = *however*, see § 404, 5, *b*, note.

7. **Un** is used either alone or as correlative to **autre:**

(1) **Un,** as adjective, = *a, an* (cf. § 320), *one, a certain;* **un,** as pronoun, = *one:*

La maison est d'un côté.	The house is on one side.
Un monsieur A. l'a dit.	A (certain) Mr. A. said so.
Une des dames l'a dit.	One of the ladies said so.
Voici un crayon. — J'en ai un.	Here is a pencil. — I have one.
Les uns sont de cet avis, les autres n'en sont pas.	Some are of this opinion, (the) others are not.

a. **Un** as a pronoun is often preceded by **l',** especially with a **de** clause:

L'un des consuls est arrivé.	One of the consuls has come.

(2) **L'un l'autre,** so also the feminine and plural, are combined into various correlative phrases, as follows:

l'un l'autre = *each other, one another;* pl. ditto
l'un et l'autre = *both;* pl., *both, all*
l'un ou l'autre = *either;* pl., ditto
ni l'un ni l'autre (. . . **ne**) = *neither;* pl., *neither, none*

Elles se flattent l'une l'autre.	They flatter each other.
Ils parlent les uns des autres.	They speak of one another
Ils se parlent l'un à l'autre.	They speak to one another.
L'une et l'autre occasion.	Both occasions.
Les uns et les autres parlent.	All of them speak.
Dites ceci aux uns et aux autres.	Say this to all.
Je prends l'un(e) ou l'autre.	I take either.
Parle à l'une ou à l'autre.	Speak to either.
Ni les un(e)s ni les autres ne sont pour vous.	Neither (none of them) is for you.
Ni pour l'un(e) ni pour l'autre.	For neither.

407. Indefinite Relatives

1. Adjectival:	2. Pronominal:
Quelconque, any (whatever, at all)	**Quiconque,** whoever
Quel que (+ subjunctive of **être**), whatever	**Qui que . . .** (+ subjunctive of **être**), whoever
Quelque . . . que (+ subjunctive), whatever	**Quoi que . . .** (+ subjunctive), whatever

a. **Quelconque** takes **-s** for the plural, and always follows its noun; **quiconque** is invariable; the other forms are made up from **quel, quelque, qui, quoi,** + **que:**

Un (deux) point(s) quelconque(s).	Any (two) point(s) whatever.
Une raison quelconque.	Any reason whatever (at all).
Quiconque parle sera puni(e).	Whoever speaks will be punished.
Quels que soient (puissent être) vos desseins.	Whatever be (may be) your designs.
Quelle que fût la loi.	Whatever the law was.
Quelques efforts qu'il fasse.	Whatever efforts he makes.
Qui que tu sois (puisses être).	Whoever you be (may be).
Quoi que vous fassiez.	Whatever you do.

Obs.: For the use of the subjunctive, see § 270, 4:

b. **Qui que** and **quoi que** are also used with **ce** before **soit:**

Qui que ce soit qui le dise.	Whosoever says it.
Quoi que ce soit qu'il dise.	Whatsoever he says.

THE ADVERB

408. Simple Adverbs. The following list contains the commoner simple adverbs:

ailleurs, *elsewhere*
ainsi, *thus, so*
alors, *then*
après, *afterwards*
assez, *enough, rather*
aujourd'hui, *to-day*
auparavant, *before*
aussi, *also, too, as*
aussitôt, *directly*
autant, *as much*
autrefois, *formerly*
beaucoup, *much*
bien, *well, very, much*
bientôt, *soon*
cependant, *however*
certes, *indeed*
combien(?) *how much(?)*
comme, *as, like*
comment(?) *how(?)*
davantage, *more*
dedans, *inside*
dehors, *outside*
déjà, *already*
demain, *to-morrow*
derrière, *behind*
désormais, *henceforth*
dessous, *under*
dessus, *above*
devant, *before*
dorénavant, *henceforth*
encore, *still*
enfin, *at last*
ensemble, *together*
ensuite, *then*
environ, *about*
exprès, *on purpose*
fort, *very*
hier, *yesterday*
ici, *here*
jadis, *formerly*
jamais, *ever, never*
là, *there*
loin, *far (off), a long way*
longtemps, *(a) long (while)*
lors, *then*
maintenant, *now*
mal, *badly*
même, *even*
mieux, *better*
moins, *less*
ne . . ., *not*
néanmoins, *nevertheless*
non, *no*
où(?) *where(?)*
oui, *yes*
parfois, *sometimes*
partout, *everywhere*
pas, *not*
peu, *little*
pis, *worse*
plus, *more*
plutôt, *rather*
point, *not*
pourquoi(?) *why(?)*
pourtant, *however*
près, *near (by)*
presque, *almost*
proche, *near (by)*
puis, *then, thereupon*
quand(?) *when(?)*
que ! *how(!)*
quelquefois, *sometimes*
si, *so; yes*
souvent, *often*
surtout, *especially*
tant, *so much*
tantôt, *soon, recently*
tard, *late*
tôt, *soon*
toujours, *always, still*
tout, *quite, entirely*
toutefois, *however*
très, *very*
trop, *too (much)*
vite, *quickly*
volontiers, *willingly*

409. Adverbs from Adjectives. Most adjectives become adverbs by the addition of **-ment** to the feminine singular:

Adj.	Adv.	Adj.	Adv.
pur,	pure**ment,** *purely*	doux,	douce**ment,** *sweetly*
strict,	stricte**ment,** *strictly*	fou,	folle**ment,** *madly*
actif,	active**ment,** *actively*	facile,	facile**ment,** *easily*
sec,	sè**chement,** *dryly*	autre,	autre**ment,** *otherwise*

a. Adjectives ending in a vowel, other than **-e,** drop the **-e** of the feminine on adding **-ment:**

Adj.	Adv.	Adj.	Adv.
poli(**e**),	poli**ment,** *politely*	décidé(**e**),	décidé**ment,** *decidedly*
absolu(**e**),	absolu**ment,** *absolutely*	etc.	etc.

Note.—The omitted **e** is denoted by a circumflex accent in **assidûment, continûment, crûment, (in)dûment, gaîment** (better, **gaiement**), **nûment.**

b. The following adjectives in **-e** change **e** to **é** on adding **-ment:**

Adj.	Adv.	Adj.	Adv.
aveugle,	aveuglément	immense,	immensément
commode,	commodément	incommode,	incommodément
conforme,	conformément	opiniâtre,	opiniâtrément
énorme,	énormément	uniforme,	uniformément

c. The following adjectives change the added **-e** of the feminine to **é:**

Adj.	Adv.	Adj.	Adv.
commun(**e**),	communément	obscur(**e**),	obscurément
confus(**e**),	confusément	opportun(**e**),	opportunément
diffus(**e**),	diffusément	précis(**e**),	précisément
expresse(**e**),	expressément	profond(**e**),	profondément
importun(**e**),	importunément	profus(**e**),	profusément

d. Adjectives in **-ant, -ent** (except **lent, présent, véhément**) assimilate **-nt** to **m** and add **-ment** to the masculine form:

Adj.	Adv.	Adj.	Adv.
constant,	constamment, *constantly*	prudent,	prudemment, *prudently*
élégant,	élégamment, *elegantly*	etc.	etc.

But: Lentement, *slowly;* présentement, *presently;* véhémentement, *vehemently.*

e. **Gentil** gives **gentiment,** *nicely;* the adverb to **bref** is **brièvement** (from a parallel form), *briefly;* the adverb to **impuni** is **impunément** (probably from L. *impune*, cf. *b*, above), *with impunity.*

f. The adverbs corresponding to **bon,** *good,* and **mauvais,** *bad,* are **bien,** *well,* and **mal,** *badly.* From **bon** comes regularly **bonnement** = *simply.*

410. Adjectives as Adverbs. Adjectival forms are not uncommonly used as adverbs, and, as such, are regularly invariable:

1. A number of adjectives serve as adverbs in certain fixed expressions:

Cette sottise lui coûte ***cher***.	That folly is costing him dear.
Elles parlent ***bas*** (***haut***).	They speak low (loud).

Such expressions are:

coûter bon, *cost dear*	arrêter court, *stop short*	coûter gros, *cost dear*
sentir bon, *smell good*	filer doux, '*sing small*'	viser haut, *aim high*
tenir bon, *stand firm*	aller droit, *go straight*	chanter juste, *sing in tune*
acheter cher, *buy dear*	viser droit, *aim straight*	frapper juste, *strike straight*
coûter cher, *cost dear*	chanter faux, *sing out of tune*	sentir mauvais, *smell bad*
vendre cher, *sell dear*	frapper ferme, *strike hard*	écrire serré, *write small*
voir clair, *see clearly*	parler ferme, *speak firmly*	(à) vrai dire, *speak truly*
prouver clair, *prove clearly*		etc. etc.

2. An adjective sometimes modifies another adjective:

Des dames ***haut*** placées.	Ladies of high rank.
Un ***véritable*** grand homme.	A truly great man.

3. Besides the above, a few adjectival forms serve also as adverbs:

Je l'ai dit exprès.	I said it purposely.
Soudain nous vîmes l'ennemi.	Suddenly we saw the enemy.

Such forms are:

bref, *in short*	même, *even*	**tout beau**, *not so fast*
exprès, *purposely*	proche, *near* (*by*)	**tout doux**, *gently*
fort, *very, hard, loud*, etc.	soudain, *suddenly*	† vite, *quickly*
juste, *exactly*, etc.	* tout, *quite, very*, etc.	

* For the inflection of **tout** as adverb, see § 406, 6, *a*.

† The adverb **vitement** = *quickly*, is familiar.

a. For certain adverbs used adjectivally, see § 358, *b*.

411. Adverbial Locutions. Phrases with adverbial function are numerous:

Je viendrai tout à l'heure.	I shall come presently.
Venez de bonne heure.	Come early.

Further examples are:

à bon marché, *cheap*	d'ailleurs, *besides*	nulle part, *nowhere*
à côté, *near, near by*	dès lors, *since*	plus tôt, *sooner*
à droite, *to the right*	d'ordinaire, *usually*	quelque part, *somewhere*
à jamais, *forever*	d'où, *whence*	tant mieux, *so much the better*
à la fois, *at once*	d'où? *whence?*	tôt ou tard, *sooner or later*
à l'avenir, *in future*	du moins, *at least*	tour à tour, *in turn*
à peine, *hardly*	en avant, *forward*	tout à coup, *suddenly*
à peu près, *nearly*	en bas, *below, down stairs*	tout de suite, *at once*
au juste, *exactly*	en effet, *in fact*	tout d'un coup, *all at once*
au moins, *at least*	en haut, *above, up stairs*	
autre part, *elsewhere*	là-bas, *yonder*	
d'abord, *at first*	là-dessus, *thereupon*	

412. Comparison of Adverbs. 1. Adverbs are regularly compared like adjectives (cf. § 345) by the use of **plus, moins, aussi; que** = *than, as:*

Plus, moins **facilement** ***que*** **Jean.**	More, less easily than John.
Aussi **facilement** ***que*** **Jean.**	As easily as John.

a. Further examples, illustrating § 345, *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, as applied to adverbs:

Il ne marche pas aussi (si) vite.	He does not walk as (so) fast.
Vite comme un éclair.	As quick as lightning.
Il marche plus vite que je ne pensais.	He walks faster than I thought.
De plus en plus vite.	Faster and faster.
Plus je le connais (et) moins je l'estime.	The more I know him the less I esteem him.

b. More than, less than, as adverbs of quantity = **plus de, moins de,** respectively; they must be carefully distinguished from **plus (moins) que** = *more (less) than* in an elliptical sentence:

J'ai plus (moins) de dix francs.	I have more (less) than ten francs.
En moins d'une demi-heure.	In less than half an hour.
But: **Un éléphant mange plus que six chevaux (ne mangent).**	An elephant eats more than six horses (eat).

2. The following are irregularly compared:

bien, well	**mieux,** better	**beaucoup,** much	**plus,** more
mal, badly, ill	**pis,** worse / **plus mal,** worse	**peu,** little	**moins,** less

a. **Beaucoup** = *much* (*many*) or *very much* (*many*), and is never modified by another adverb, except **pas.**

3. The superlative is formed by placing **le,** which is invariable, before the comparative of inequality:

Le **plus souvent (moins souvent).**	(The) most frequently (least f.).
Elle parle *le* plus (mieux, moins).	She speaks (the) most (best, least).

413. Position. 1. An adverb regularly stands immediately after its verb, rarely between the subject and the verb:

Charles porte souvent ma canne.	Charles often carries my cane.
On devrait lire lentement.	One should read slowly.
Se levant tard, se couchant tôt.	Rising late, going to bed early.
Ils l'ont bien reçu.	They have received him well.

Obs.: Hence the adverb regularly comes between the auxiliary and the participle in compound tenses, except when it is in a stressed position:
Je l'avais rencontré déjà = *I had met him already.*

a. The adverbs **aujourd'hui, hier, demain, autrefois, tôt, tard, ici, là, ailleurs, partout,** never come between the auxiliary and the participle:

Il est parti hier.	He went away yesterday.
Je l'ai cherché partout.	I looked for it everywhere.

b. Long adverbs in **-ment** not uncommonly stand after the past participle:

Il a parlé éloquemment.	He has spoken eloquently.

c. Most adverbs of quantity, such as **peu, beaucoup, trop,** etc., and a few short adverbs like **bien, mal, mieux,** etc., as also adverbs of negation, regularly precede the infinitive:

Tu ne devrais pas trop lire.	You should not read too much.
Il ne saurait mieux faire.	He cannot do better.
Il parle de ne pas y aller.	He speaks of not going (there).

d. Interrogative adverbs head the phrase, as in English; other adverbs are not uncommonly placed first for emphasis (cf. § 237, 3):

Quand allez-vous revenir?	When are you going to come back?
Aujourd'hui je vais me reposer.	To-day I am going to rest.
Malheureusement tout est perdu.	Unfortunately all is lost.

2. Adverbs usually precede the nouns, adjectives, adverbs, and phrases modified by them:

Assez de livres, et assez chers.	Books enough, and dear enough.
Bien mal à propos.	Very unseasonably.

a. For **combien ! comme ! que ! tant !** and **plus . . . plus, moins . . . moins,** with adjectives or adverbs, cf. § 350, *a*.

3. Adverbial phrases follow the same rules as adverbs, except that only the shorter ones may usually come between the auxiliary and the verb:

Nous étions à peine partis.	Hardly had we gone.

NEGATION

414. Negation without Verb. Non = *no, not,* apart from a verb; it is often emphasized by **pas, point:**

L'avez-vous dit? — Non.	Did you say it? — No.
Vous viendrez? — Non pas (point).	You will come? — Certainly not.
Non, non, je n'irai pas.	No, no, I shall not go.
Non content de dire cela.	Not satisfied with saying that.
Riche ou non, il ne l'aura pas.	Rich or not, he shall not have it.
A-t-il, oui ou non, du talent?	Has he talent, yes or no?
Des idées non moins vastes.	Ideas not less vast.
Une maison non meublée.	A house not furnished.
Non seulement . . . mais encore.	Not only . . . but also.

a. For the use of **que non,** see § 420, 1, *a*.

415. Negation with Verb. 1. Along with a verb, a negation consists regularly of two parts, **ne** (**n'**, see § 19) together with some other word or words; the principal correlative expressions of this kind are:

ne . . . pas, *not*	ne . . . aucunement	*not at all*	ne . . . rien, *nothing*
ne . . . point, *not*	ne . . . nullement		ne . . . ni(. . . ni) *neither . . . nor*
ne . . . guère, *hardly*	ne . . . aucun	*no, none*	
ne . . . jamais, *never*	ne . . . nul		
ne . . . plus, *no more*	ne . . . pas un		
ne . . . que, *only*	ne . . . personne, *nobody*		

Notes. — 1. **Point** is usually more emphatic than **pas,** and is less common in ordinary language.

2. Negation is often denoted by **pas,** without **ne,** in familiar language: **Ai-je *pas* dit cela? (= *N'*ai-je *pas* dit cela?)**

2. Other forms of less frequent use are:

a. **Ne . . . quelconque** = *no . . . whatsoever (at all)*, **ne . . . qui que ce soit** = *nobody whatsoever (at all)*, **ne . . . quoi que ce soit** = *nothing whatsoever (at all)*.

Je n'ai dit quoi que ce soit.	I said nothing at all.

b. **Ne . . . brin** (lit. *blade*), or **mie** (lit. *crumb*), or **goutte** (lit. *drop*), or **mot** (lit. *word*) = **ne . . . rien**, in certain phrases:

Il n'y en a brin.	There is none of it.
Je n'y entends goutte.	I understand nothing of it.

c. **Ne . . . âme vivante**, or **homme qui vive**, or **âme qui vive**, etc. = **ne . . . personne**:

Il n'y avait âme vivante dans la maison.	There was not a living soul in the house.

d. **Ne . . . de** + an expression of time, *e.g.*, **la (ma) vie, de huit jours**, etc.

Je ne l'oublierai de ma vie.	I shall not forget it while I live.

416. Position. **Ne** always precedes the verb, and its conjunctive objects, if any; **pas, point** and other adverbs immediately follow the verb, and its conjunctive pronouns, if any; indefinites have their usual place.

Je ne le leur ai pas (point) dit.	I did not tell them it.
Je n'en ai guère.	I have hardly any of it.
Ne les a-t-il jamais vus?	Did he never see them?
Je n'y resterai plus.	I shall stay there no longer.
Il ne le veut nullement.	He does not wish it at all.
Il ne prend aucun soin.	He takes no care.
Personne ne peut le dire.	Nobody can say (it).
Il n'a pas mal du tout.	He has no pain at all.
Je ne l'ai dit à qui que ce soit.	I have told it to nobody at all.

a. **Pas, point**, usually, and **plus**, often, precede the simple infinitive, and its conjunctive objects; they may precede or follow **avoir, être**, either when alone or in a compound infinitive:

Il parle de ne pas vous voir.	He speaks of not seeing you.
Être ou ne pas être.	To be or not to be.
J'étais fâché de ne vous avoir pas vu (*or* **de ne pas vous avoir vu, or de ne vous pas avoir vu**).	I was sorry not to have seen you.

b. **Rien** as object is treated as an adverb; it may also precede an infinitive like an adverb:

Il promet de ne rien dire.	He promises to say nothing.

c. The **que** of **ne . . . que** immediately precedes the word it modifies:

Je n'en ai vu *que* trois.	I saw only three of them.
Il n'y a pas *qu'*eux qui en aient.	It is not they only who have some.

d. To denote *neither . . . nor*, **ni** is placed before each coördinate word, and, when verbs are expressed, **ne** stands before the auxiliary or other leading verb. When principal verbs are coördinated, **ne** stands before each of them, while **ni** also must stand with the last, but may not stand with the first, and is optional with others:

Qui le sait? — Ni lui ni moi.	Who knows it? — Neither he nor I.
Il n'a ni parents ni amis.	He has neither relatives nor friends.
Je ne l'ai ni vu ni entendu.	I neither saw nor heard it.
Il ne sait ni lire ni écrire.	He can neither read nor write.
Je ne veux ni qu'il lise ni qu'il écrive.	I neither wish him to read nor to write.
Il ne le blâme ni ne le loue.	He neither blames nor praises it.
Je ne pouvais, (ni) ne devais, ni ne voulais céder.	I neither could, nor should, nor would yield.

417. Ellipsis of the Verb. If the verb be omitted, but understood, **ne** is also omitted, and the correlative itself denotes negation:

Est-il venu? — Pas encore (= Il n'est pas encore venu).	Has he come? — Not yet (= He has not yet come).
Qui est là? — Personne.	Who is there? — Nobody.
Plus de larmes; plus de soucis.	No more tears; no more cares.

a. **Pas**, when so used, may not stand alone:

Non (pas); pas encore; pas lui; pas du tout; pas ce soir, etc.	No; not yet; not he (him); not at all; not this evening, etc.

418. *Ne* alone as Negative. Negation with verbs is expressed by **ne** alone in certain cases, as follows:

1. After **que = pourquoi?** and usually after **que, qui** in rhetorical question or exclamation:

Que ne le disiez-vous plus tôt?	Why did you not say so sooner?
Que ne ferais-je pour lui?	What would I not do for him?
Qui ne voit cela?	Who does not see that?

2. After condition expressed by inversion:

N'eût été la pluie.	Had it not been for the rain.

a. Sometimes also in conditions regularly expressed with **si**:

Si je ne me trompe (m'abuse).	If I am not mistaken.
Qui, si ce n'est vous?	Who, if not you?

3. In dependent sentences after negation, either fully expressed or implied:

Je n'ai pas (j'ai peu) d'amis qui ne soient les vôtres.	I have no (I have few) friends who are not yours.
Il n'y a rien qu'il ne sache.	There is nothing he does not know.
Non que je ne le craigne.	Not that I do not fear him.
Impossible qu'il ne vienne!	Impossible that he will not come!
Ai-je un ami qui ne soit fidèle? — Non.	Have I one friend who is not faithful? — No.

a. More obscure cases of implied negation are **prendre garde que** = *take care that not*, etc., and such expressions as **il tient** = *it depends on*, used interrogatively:

Prenez garde qu'il ne tombe.	Take care he does not fall.
Gardez qu'il ne sorte.	Take care he does not go out.
À quoi tient-il qu'on ne fasse cela?	What is the cause of that not being done?

4. Sometimes with **savoir, bouger,** and with **pouvoir, oser, cesser** + an infinitive, expressed or implied:

Je ne sais (pas).	I do not know.
Ne bougez (pas) de là.	Do not stir from there.
Je ne puis (pas) répondre.	I cannot answer.
Il n'oserait (pas) le dire.	He would not dare to say so.
Elle ne cesse (pas) de pleurer.	She does not cease weeping.

a. Always **ne** alone in **je ne saurais** and **je ne sais quoi**:

Je ne saurais vous le dire.	I *cannot* tell you.
Ne sauriez-vous m'aider?	*Can* you not help me?
Un je ne sais quoi de terrible.	Something indefinably terrible.

5. In a few set expressions, such as:

N'importe; n'avoir garde.	It does not matter; not to care.
Ne vous en déplaise.	By your leave.
N'avoir que faire de.	To have no use (whatever) for.
Il n'est pire eau que l'eau qui dort (proverb).	Still waters run deep.

419. Pleonastic *ne*. In a **que** clause **ne** is often pleonastic, as compared with English; thus, **ne** stands:

1. After **empêcher** = *prevent*, **éviter** = *avoid*, **à moins que** = *unless*, or **que** so used:

Empêchez qu'il *ne* sorte.	Prevent him from going out.
J'évite qu'on *ne* me voie.	I avoid being seen.
À moins que je *ne* sois retenu.	Unless I be detained.

a. This **ne** is often omitted after **empêcher** and **éviter**, after **empêcher** mostly when negative or interrogative.

b. **Ne** may also stand after **avant que**:

Avant qu'il (*ne*) parte.	Before he goes away.

2. After expressions of fearing, such as **craindre, redouter,** etc., **avoir peur,** etc., when not negative, or when negation is not implied by interrogation expecting negative answer, or by condition:

Je crains qu'il *ne* vienne.	I fear he will come.
Craignez-vous qu'il *ne* vienne?	Do you fear he will come?

But: **Je ne crains pas qu'il vienne. Sans craindre qu'il vienne. Craignez-vous qu'il vienne? — Non. Si je craignais qu'il vînt.**

a. What it is, or is not, feared will not happen, has the full negation **ne . . . pas** in the **que** clause:

Je crains qu'il *ne* vienne *pas*.	I fear he will not come.
Je ne crains pas qu'il *ne* vienne *pas*.	I do not fear he will not come.

b. Negation and interrogation or condition neutralize each other, and **ne** stands:

Ne craignez-vous pas qu'il *ne* vienne?	Do you not fear he will come?
Si je ne craignais (pas) qu'il *ne* vînt.	If I did not fear he would come.
Quand même je ne craindrais pas qu'il *ne* vînt.	Even though I did not fear he would come.

3. With a finite verb in the second member of a compari-

son of inequality, when the first member is not negative, or does not imply negation as above:

Il est plus riche qu'il *ne* l'était.	He is richer than he was.
Est-il plus riche qu'il *ne* l'était?	Is he richer than he was?
Il gagne moins qu'il *n*'espérait.	He earns less than he hoped.

But: **Il n'est pas plus riche qu'il l'était; est-il plus riche qu'il l'était? — Non.**

a. A negative interrogation implies affirmation, and **ne** stands:

N'est-il pas plus riche qu'il *ne* l'était?	Is he not richer than he was?

NOTE. — **Autre, autrement, plutôt, plus tôt,** similarly take **ne**: **Il est tout autre que je *ne* pensais.**

4. Usually after expressions of doubt, denial, such as **douter, nier, disconvenir,** etc., often **désespérer,** when negative, or when negation is implied as above:

Je ne doute pas qu'il *ne* vienne.	I do not doubt that he will come.
Doutez-vous qu'il *ne* vienne? — Non.	Do you doubt whether he will come? — No.

But: **Je doute qu'il vienne; doutez-vous qu'il vienne?** (— question for information).

5. After **il s'en faut** negatively, interrogatively, or with **peu, guère,** etc.:

Il ne s'en fallut pas (de) beaucoup qu'il *ne* fût tué.	He came very near being killed.
Il s'en faut de peu que ce vase *ne* soit plein.	This vessel is nearly full.
Peu s'en est fallu que je *ne* vinsse.	I came very near coming.

6. With compound tenses after **il y a, voilà, depuis:**

Il y a (voilà) trois jours que je *ne* l'ai vu.	It is three days since I saw him (I have not seen him for, etc.).
Il avait grandi depuis que je *ne* l'avais vu.	He had grown since I saw him.
Depuis que je *ne* vous ai vu.	Since I saw you.

a. In a simple tense (§§ 257, 2; 258, 4) negatively, **ne . . . pas,** etc., must be used:

Voilà un an qu'il ne buvait plus.	He had drunk none for a year.

USE OF CERTAIN ADVERBS

420. Distinctions. The following are especially liable to be confounded in use:

1. **Oui, Si.** *Yes* in affirmation or assent is **oui**; *yes* is usually **si** in contradiction, in correction, in dissent:

L'avez-vous dit? — Oui, monsieur.	Did you say it? — Yes, sir.
Venez. — Oui, oui, j'y vais.	Come. — Yes, yes, I shall go.
Il ne s'en va pas. — Si, monsieur, il s'en va.	He is not going. — Yes, (sir), he is (going).
Il ne s'en va pas? — Mais si.	He is not going? — Yes, certainly.
Je n'irai pas. — Si, si, venez.	I shall not go. — Yes, yes, come.

NOTE. — The use of **si**, as also of the intensive **si fait**, etc., though very common, is classed as familiar by the *Académie;* it is often avoided by **pardon**, etc., or other expressions: **Il ne va pas. — *Pardon,* monsieur (il va).**

a. **Oui, si,** and **non** are often preceded by **que,** really with ellipsis of a whole **que** clause, and are then variously translated by *yes, so, no, not,* etc., or by a clause:

Je dis que oui (non).	I say yes (no).
Je crois que oui (non).	I think so (not).
Vous ne l'avez pas? — Oh ! que si.	You haven't it? — Oh yes !
Le fera-t-il? — Je crois que oui.	Will he do it? — I think he will.
Je dis que non.	I say it is not so.
Peut-être que non.	Perhaps not.

2. **Autant, Tant.** *As much (many)* = **autant**; *so much (many)* = **tant**:

Je gagne autant que vous.	I earn as much as you.
Il but tant qu'il en mourut.	He drank so much that he died from it.
J'ai tant d'amis; j'en ai autant que vous.	I have so many friends; I have as many as you.

3. **Plus, Davantage.** **Plus** is used in all senses of *more, most* (see below); **davantage** (strengthened sometimes by **bien** = *much*, **encore** = *still*) = *more*, is regularly used only absolutely, and usually stands at the end of its clause:

N'en parle pas davantage. / **N'en parle plus.**	Say no more about it.

Ne restez pas davantage. / **Ne restez plus.**	Do not remain any longer.
Cela me plaît encore davantage (plus).	That pleases me still more.
Je suis riche; il l'est bien davantage (plus).	I am rich; he is much more so.

But only: **J'en ai plus que lui; il est plus habile; plus de dix francs; c'est ce qui le flatte le plus,** etc.

4. **Ne . . . que, Seulement.** **Seulement** must be used, (1) when no verb is present, (2) when *only* refers to the subject, (3) or to the verb, (4) or to a **que** clause, and (5) it may be used to strengthen a **ne . . . que**; otherwise *only* = **ne . . . que** or **seulement:**

Seulement les braves.	Only the brave.
Seulement mon frère le sait.	Only my brother knows it.
Écoutez seulement.	Only listen.
Il dit seulement qu'il viendrait.	He only said he should come.
Il n'a (seulement) qu'à venir.	He has only to come.

But: **Nous ne serons que trois** (*or* **trois seulement**); **je ne veux que voir son père** (*or* **je veux seulement voir son père**), etc.

a. Only, referring to the subject, may be turned also by **il n'y a que, il n'y a pas que:**

Il n'y a que les morts qui ne reviennent pas.	The dead only do not come back.
Il n'y a pas qu'elles qui le sachent.	It is not only they who know.

THE NUMERAL

421. Cardinal Numerals

1	un, une [œ̃, yn]	8	huit [ɥit]
2	deux [dø]	9	neuf [nœf]
3	trois [trwɑ]	10	dix [dis]
4	quatre [katr]	11	onze [ɔ̃:z]
5	cinq [sɛ̃:k]	12	douze [du:z]
6	six [sis]	13	treize [trɛ:z]
7	sept [sɛt]	14	quatorze [katɔrz]

15 quinze	[kɛ̃:z]	70 soixante-dix	[swasɑ̃:tdis]
16 seize	[sɛ:z]	71 soixante et onze	[swasɑ̃:teɔ̃:z]
17 dix-sept	[dissɛt]	80 quatre-vingts	[katrəvɛ̃]
18 dix-huit	[dizɥit]	81 quatre-vingt-un	[katrəvɛ̃œ̃]
19 dix-neuf	[diznœf]	90 quatre-vingt-dix	[katrəvɛ̃dis]
20 vingt	[vɛ̃]	91 quatre-vingt-onze	[katrəvɛ̃ɔ̃:z]
21 vingt et un	[vɛ̃teœ̃]	100 cent	[sɑ̃]
22 vingt-deux	[vɛ̃tdø]	101 cent un	[sɑ̃œ̃]
30 trente	[trɑ̃:t]	200 deux cents	[døsɑ̃]
31 trente et un	[trɑ̃:teœ̃]	201 deux cent un	[døsɑ̃œ̃]
40 quarante	[karɑ̃:t]	1000 mille	[mil]
50 cinquante	[sɛ̃kɑ̃:t]	1001 mille un	[milœ̃]
60 soixante	[swasɑ̃:t]	2000 deux mille	[dømil]

Nouns of Number: 1,000,000 = **un million** [œ̃ miljɔ̃]; 2,000,000 = **deux millions** [dø miljɔ̃]; 1,000,000,000 = **un milliard** [œ̃ miljaːr].

Observe: 1. The hyphen unites together compound numerals under 100, except where **et** occurs. 2. **Et** stands regularly in 21, 31, 41, 51, 61, 71, omitted in 81, and elsewhere.

Notes on Pronunciation: 1. The final consonant of 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 17, 18, 19, is silent before initial consonant or **h** aspirate of a word multiplied by them, not elsewhere: **Cinq livres** [sɛ̃ liːvr], but **le cinq mai** [lə sɛ̃:k mɛ]. 2. No elision or liaison occurs before **huit, onze: Le huit** [lə ɥit]; **les huit livres** [le ɥi liːvr]; **le onze** [lə ɔ̃:z]; **les onze francs** [le ɔ̃:z frɑ̃]. 3. The **t** is sounded in **vingt,** in 21, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, is sounded with the **d** in 22, is silent from 81 to 99, is silent in **cent un, deux cent un,** etc.

a. **Un** (f. **une**) is the only cardinal which varies for gender:

Une **(deux, trois,** etc.**) plume(s).**	One (two, three, etc.) pen(s).
Vingt et *une* vaches.	Twenty-one cows.

b. Cardinals are invariable for number, except that **-s** is added to **quatre-vingt** and the multiples of **cent,** but only when immediately preceding a noun, or an adjective + a noun, or when they themselves serve as nouns of number:

Quatre-vingt*s* francs.	Eighty francs.
Trois cent*s* (bonnes) plumes.	Three hundred (good) pens.
Deux cent*s* millions de francs.	Two hundred million francs.
Trois cent*s* hommes.	Three hundred men.
Les cinq cent*s*.	The five hundreds.

But: **Trois *cent* un francs**; **les *cent* hommes engagés**; **quatre-*vingt*-une plumes**; **deux *cent* mille**; **trois *mille* milles** (miles), etc.

N.B. — They are not nouns of number in dates (*c.* below) or when used as ordinals (§ 427): **L'an quatre *cent*; page deux *cent*; page quatre-*vingt*.**

c. The form **mil** (not **mille**) is used in dates of the Christian era from 1001 to 1999:

En mil huit cent quatre-vingt-onze.	In eighteen hundred and ninety-one.
(En) l'an mil six.	(In) the year 1006.

But: **L'an mille** (sometimes **mil**); **l'an deux mille trois cent**; **l'an mille cent du monde**, etc.

d. From 1100 onward dates are often expressed by hundreds, as so frequently in English:

Onze cent(s); **treize cent**(s).	Eleven hundred; thirteen hundred.
Quinze cent cinquante.	Fifteen hundred and fifty.

e. *A* (or *one*) *hundred* = **cent**; *a* (or *one*) *thousand* = **mille**:

Mille soldats.	A (one) thousand soldiers.

NOTE. — **Septante** = 70, **octante** = 80, **nonante** = 90, **six-vingt**(s) = 120, and **quinze-vingt**(s) = 300, are now obsolete in the literary language, although sometimes heard in certain French-speaking regions.

422. Ordinal Numerals. The ordinal numerals denote order or place in a series relatively to the first; they are formed, from 'third' up, by adding **-ième** to the last consonant of the corresponding cardinal, **cinq** adding **u**, and **f** of **neuf** becoming **v** before **-ième**:

1st	premier	[prəmje]	7th	septième	[sɛtjɛm]
2nd	second	[səgɔ̃]	8th	huitième	[ɥitjɛm]
	deuxième	[døzjɛm]	9th	neuvième	[nœvjɛm]
3rd	**troisième**	[trwazjɛm]	10th	dixième	[dizjɛm]
4th	quatrième	[katriɛm]	11th	onzième	[ɔ̃zjɛm]
5th	cinquième	[sɛ̃kjɛm]	21st	vingt et unième	[vɛ̃teynjɛm]
6th	sixième	[sizjɛm]	22nd	vingt-deuxième	[vɛ̃tdøzjɛm]

NOTES. — 1. Besides the ordinary forms, **tiers** (f. **tierce**) = *third*, **quart**(**e**) = *fourth*, are used in a few expressions and in fractions: **Le *tiers* état,** *The commoners;* **En maison *tierce,*** *In the house of a third party;* **Une fièvre *quarte,*** *A quartan ague.*

2. **Quint** = *fifth* is used only in **Charles-*Quint,*** *Charles V (the Emperor)*; **Sixte-*Quint,*** *Sixtus V (the Pope).*

a. Ordinals are like ordinary adjectives in inflection and agreement, and regularly precede the noun:

La (les) **première**(s) **maison**(s).	The first house(s).
Nous sommes arrivés les premiers.	We arrived first.

b. **Deuxième** instead of **second** is more usually employed in a series of more than two, and always in compounds:

Le second volume.	The second volume (of two).
Le deuxième volume.	The second volume (of three, etc.).
La cent deuxième fois.	The hundred and second time.

423. Collectives. The following nouns are used with collective force:

un(e) couple, *a couple (two)*
une paire, *a pair*
une huitaine, *about eight*
une dixaine, *about ten*
une douzaine, *a dozen*
une quinzaine, *about fifteen, a fortnight*
une vingtaine, *about twenty, a score*
une trentaine, *about thirty*
une quarantaine, *about forty, quarantine*
une cinquantaine, *about fifty*
une soixantaine, *about sixty*
une centaine, *about a hundred*
un cent, *a hundred*
un millier, (*about*) *a thousand*
un million, *a million*
un milliard, *a billion*, etc.

a. They take **-s** in the plural, and have the construction of ordinary nouns:

Il y a une centaine d'élèves.	There are about 100 pupils.
Il y en a deux cent*s*.	There are two hundred of them.
Des milliers de gens.	Thousands of people.
Deux million*s* de francs.	Two million(s of) francs.

424. Fractions. The numerator is regularly denoted by a cardinal and the denominator by an ordinal; *half* = **moitié**, f., as a noun, and **demi** as an adjective or a noun:

$\frac{1}{2}$	un demi une moitié	$\frac{1}{4}$	un quart	$\frac{3}{16}$	trois seizièmes
		$\frac{3}{4}$	trois quarts	$\frac{7}{100}$	sept centièmes
$\frac{2}{2}$	deux demis	$\frac{1}{5}$	un cinquième	$\frac{10}{101}$	dix cent unièmes
$\frac{1}{3}$	un tiers	$\frac{1}{7}$	un septième	$\frac{11}{1000}$	onze millièmes
$\frac{2}{3}$	deux tiers	$\frac{1}{11}$	un onzième		etc.

a. **Demi,** before its noun, is invariable and joined by a hyphen, but agrees elsewhere; as a noun, **demi** is hardly used, except in arithmetical calculations; see also § 429:

Une demi-heure; une heure et demie.	Half an hour; an hour and a half *or* half past one.
Trois quarts d'heure.	Three quarters of an hour.
Quatre demis = deux.	Four halves = two.
La moitié de la somme.	Half the sum.

b. The definite article is required before fractions followed by **de** + a noun when the noun is determined by the definite article, a possessive, or a demonstrative, and similarly for pronominal substitutes for such constructions:

La moitié du temps.	Half the time.
Les trois quarts de ces (ses) biens.	Three-fourths of those (his) goods.
J'en prends les cinq sixièmes.	I take five-sixths of them.

425. Multiplicatives. 1. The following are used as adjectives, or absolutely as nouns:

double, *double*	septuple, *sevenfold*
triple, *triple*	octuple, *eightfold*
quadruple, *quadruple*	nonuple, *ninefold*
quintuple, *fivefold*	décuple, *tenfold*
sextuple, *sixfold*	centuple, *hundredfold*

As nouns, **le double,** *the double*, etc.:

La triple alliance.	The triple alliance.
Payer le double.	To pay twice as much.

a. **Double** is sometimes adverb:

Il voit double.	He sees double.

2. *Once, twice, three times*, etc. = **une fois, deux fois, trois fois,** etc.:

Dix fois dix font cent.	Ten times ten make a hundred.
Deux fois autant (plus).	Twice as much.

426. Numeral Adverbs. They are formed from the ordinals by **-ment,** according to rule (cf. § 409):

premièr**ement,** *first, firstly*
second**ement** } *secondly*
deuxièm**ement** }
troisièm**ement,** *thirdly*
etc. etc.

a. Substitutes for them, of very frequent use, are: **d'abord** = *at first*, **puis** = *then, after that*, **ensuite** = *then, next*, **en premier lieu** = *in the first place*, **en second lieu**, etc. = *in the second place*, etc.; or the Latin adverb forms **primo, secundo, tertio,** etc., abbreviated to 1°, 2°, 3°. are used.

REMARKS ON THE USE OF NUMERALS

427. Cardinals and Ordinals. 1. **Premier** = *first* is the only ordinal used to denote the day of the month or the numerical title of a ruler; otherwise, cardinals are employed:

Le premier (deux, dix) mai.	The first (second, tenth) of May.
Le onze de ce mois.	The eleventh of this month.
Napoléon (Grégoire) premier.	Napoleon (Gregory) the First.
Henri (Catherine) deux.	Henry (Catherine) the Second

2. Observe the following date idioms:

Quel jour du mois est-ce aujourd'hui? **Quel jour du mois sommes-nous aujourd'hui?** **Quel quantième du mois est-ce aujourd'hui?**	What day of the month is this?
C'est aujourd'hui le quinze.	To-day is the fifteenth.
Ce sera demain le seize.	To-morrow will be the sixteenth.
Le six janvier.	*On* the sixth of January.
Ils sont arrivés lundi.	They came *on* Monday.
D'aujourd'hui en huit.	A week from to-day (*future*).
Il y a quinze jours.	A fortnight ago.

3. Other numerical titles, book, chapter, scene, page, etc., are expressed as in English, ordinals being used before nouns, and either cardinals or ordinals after nouns:

Tome troisième (trois).	Volume third (three).
La dixième scène du second acte.	The tenth scene of the second act.

a. The first of two ordinals joined by **et** or **ou** is not uncommonly replaced by a cardinal:

La quatre ou cinquième page.	The fourth or fifth page.

b. Cardinals must precede ordinals in French:

Les deux premières scènes.	The first two scenes.

428. Dimension. The various methods of indicating dimension may be seen from the following:

(1) **Une table longue de deux mètres.** (2) **Une table de 2 m. de longueur.** (3) **Une table de 2 m. de long.** (4) **Une table d'une longueur de 2 m.**	A table two meters long.
(5) **La table est longue de 2 m.** (6) **La table a 2 m. de longueur.** (7) **La table a 2 m. de long.** (8) **La table a une longueur de 2 m.**	The table is two meters long.

Obs.: 1. Dimension after an adjective is denoted by **de,** cf. (1), (5).

2. Substitutes for the adjectival construction of (1) are seen in (2), (3), (4).

3. The verb *to be* is **être,** as in (5), or **avoir,** as in (6), (7), (8).

4. **Haut, large, long** (but not **épais, profond**) may be used as nouns instead of **hauteur, largeur, longueur,** cf. (3), (7).

a. By, of relative dimension = **sur**; *by,* after a comparative = **de**:

Cette table a deux mètres de longueur sur un de largeur.	This table is two meters long by one wide.
Plus grand de cinq centimètres.	Taller by 5 cm. (= 2 inches).

429. Time of Day. The method of indicating the time of day may be seen from the following:

Quelle heure est-il?	What time (o'clock) is it?
Il est une (deux) heure(s).	It is one (two) o'clock.
Il est trois heures et demie.	It is half-past three.
Trois heures (et) un quart.	A quarter past three.
Quatre heures moins un (le) quart.	A quarter to four.
Trois heures trois quarts.	A quarter to four.
Trois heures dix (minutes).	Ten minutes past three.
Six heures moins cinq (minutes).	Five minutes to six.
Cinq heures cinquante-cinq.	Five fifty-five.
Il est midi et demi.	It is half-past twelve (noon).
Il est minuit (et) un quart.	It is a quarter past twelve (night).
À huit heures du soir.	At eight o'clock in the evening.
À quelle heure?	At what o'clock?
À trois heures précises.	At three o'clock precisely.
Vers (les) trois heures.	Towards (at about) three o'clock.

Obs.: 1. *It is* (*was,* etc.) = **il est** (**était,** etc.).

2. **Heure**(**s**) is never omitted.

3. **Et** is essential only at the half hour.

4. **Demi**(e) agrees with **heure** (f.) or with **midi** (m.), **minuit** (m.).
5. **Minutes** is often omitted.
6. *A quarter to, minutes to* is **moins** before the following hour.
7. Twelve o'clock is never **douze heures.**

430. Age. Idiomatic expressions denoting age are:

Quel âge avez-vous?	How old are you?
J'ai vingt ans.	I am twenty (years old).
Je suis âgé de vingt ans.	I am twenty (years old).
Une fillette de six ans.	A little girl of six.
Plus âgé de deux ans.	Older by two years.

Obs.: 1. The construction with **avoir** is the more common.
2. **An**(s) may be omitted in specifying age.
3. *By* = **de,** after a comparison.

THE PREPOSITION

431. Simple Prepositions. The following list contains the commoner simple prepositions:

à, *to, at, in, on,* etc.
après, *after, next to*
avant, *before*
avec, *with*
chez, *with, at —'s*
contre, *against*
dans, *in*(*to*)
de, *of, from, with,* etc.
depuis, *since, from*
derrière, *behind*
dès, *from, as early as*
devant, *before*
durant, *during*
en, *in, to*
entre, *between, among*
envers, *towards*
hormis, *except*
jusque, *till, until*
malgré, *in spite of*
moyennant, *by means of*
nonobstant, *notwithstanding*
outre, *besides*
par, *by, through*
parmi, *among*
pendant, *during*
pour, *for*
sans, *without*
sauf, *save, except*
selon, *according to*
sous, *under*
suivant, *according to*
sur, *on, upon*
vers, *towards*
voici, *here is* (*are*)
voilà, *there is* (*are*)

432. Prepositional Locutions. Phrases with prepositional function, mostly ending in **de** or **à,** are numerous:

À côté de l'église.	Beside the church.
Jusqu'à la semaine prochaine.	Until next week.
À travers la forêt.	Through the forest.

Such locutions are:

à cause de, *on account of*	au-dessus de, *above*	faute de, *for want of*
à côté de, *by the side of*	au lieu de, *instead of*	jusqu'à, *as far as, until*
à force de, *by dint of*	autour de, *around*	par delà, *beyond*
à l'égard de, *with regard to*	au moyen de, *by means of*	par-dessous, *under*
à l'exception de, *except*	auprès de, *near by*	par-dessus, *over*
à l'insu de, *unknown to*	au travers de, *across, through*	près de, *near*
à travers, *across, through*	d'après, *according to*	quant à, *as for*
au delà de, *beyond*	en deçà de, *on this side (of)*	vis-à-vis de, *opposite*
au-dessous de, *under*	en dépit de, *in spite of*	etc., etc.

433. Position. Prepositions regularly precede the governed word, as in English:

Je parle de Jean (de lui).	I speak of John (of him).

a. Conjunctive personal pronouns governed by **voici, voilà,** precede:

Me voici; les voilà.	Here I am; there they are.
En voici quelques-uns.	Here are some of them.

b. **Durant** is sometimes placed after its noun:

Durant sa vie (*or* **sa vie durant**).	During his life.

434. Repetition. The prepositions **à, de, en,** are regularly repeated before each governed substantive; the repetition of other prepositions is regular in contrasts, but is elsewhere optional, as in English:

Il aime à lire et à écrire.	He likes to read and write.
Le père de Jean et de Marie.	The father of John and Mary.
En France ou en Italie.	In France or Italy.
Sur terre et sur mer.	By land and sea.
Par la persuasion ou par la force.	By persuasion or force.

But: **Pour lui et (pour) son frère,** etc.

IDIOMATIC DISTINCTIONS

435. Prepositions vary greatly as to idiomatic force in different languages. In the following sections are given some of the various French equivalents of the commoner English prepositions.

436. About

1. In the sense of *around* = **autour de:**

Regardez autour de vous.	Look about you.
Autour de la place.	About the square.

2. In the sense of *concerning, of* = **de, à:**

De quoi parlez-vous?	What are you talking about?
À quoi pensez-vous?	What are you thinking about?

3. In the sense of *with, about* (*the person*) = **sur:**

Avez-vous de l'argent sur vous?	Have you any money about you?

4. Denoting approximation = **environ, près de, à peu près, vers:**

Environ (près de, à peu près) deux mille francs; vers (sur les) dix heures; vers 1830.	About two thousand francs; about ten o'clock; about 1830.

437. After

1. Denoting time, rank, order, position = **après:**

Après dîner; le premier après le roi; on met l'adjectif après le nom; courez après lui.	After dinner; the first after the king; the adjective is placed after the noun; run after him.

2. In the sense of *at the end of* = **au bout de:**

Au bout de trois siècles.	After three centuries.

3. Unclassified:

De jour en jour; dessiné d'après Raphaël; le lendemain de son retour; il tient de sa mère.	Day after day; drawn after Raphael; the day after his return; he takes after his mother.

438. Among

1. In the sense of *in the midst of, surrounded by* = **parmi,** sometimes **entre:**

Une brebis parmi les loups.	A sheep among wolves.
Il fut trouvé entre les morts.	He was found among the dead.

2. *Among* (distributively or reciprocally) = **entre:**

Il le partagea entre ses amis.	He divided it among his friends.
Ils parlaient entre eux.	They spoke among themselves.

3. Unclassified:

C'était ainsi chez les Grecs.	It was so among the Greeks.

439. At

1. Denoting place, time, = **à**, sometimes **en:**

À l'école; à Douvres; à table; à cinq heures; à l'âge de; en tête de; en (au) même temps; à la fin (enfin).	At school; at Dover; at table; at five o'clock; at the age of; at the head of; at the same time; at last.

2. In the sense of *at the house*, etc., *of*, *at —'s* = **chez:**

J'ai été chez vous; il est chez Monsieur Ribot.	I was at your house; he is at Mr. Ribot's.

3. Unclassified:

À mes dépens; à tout prix; d'abord; sous la main; entrer par la fenêtre; en haut (bas); au moins; sur mer; en guerre.	At my expense; at any price; at first; at hand; come (go) in at the window; at the top (bottom); at least; at sea; at war.

440. Before

1. Denoting place, in the sense of *in front of*, *in the presence of* = **devant:**

Mettez cela devant le feu; le jardin est devant la maison; il prêcha devant le roi.	Put that before the fire; the garden is before the house; he preached before the king.

2. Denoting time, order = **avant:**

Avant midi; je l'ai vu avant vous; mettez l'article avant le nom.	Before noon; I saw him before you; put the article before the noun.

3. Unclassified:

Sous mes yeux; la veille de la bataille; comparaître par-devant le juge.	Before my eyes; the day before the battle; to appear before the judge.

441. By

1. Denoting the agent after the passive = **par, de** (cf. § 240):

Elle fut saisie par le voleur; ils sont aimés de tous.	She was seized by the robber; they are loved by all.

2. Denoting means, way, etc. = **par** (usually):

Par la poste; par chemin de fer; par ce moyen; par un ami.	By post; by railway; by this means; by a friend.

3. Denoting measure = de; relative dimension = sur:

Plus grand de la tête; plus âgé de dix ans (de beaucoup); plus lourd d'une livre; moindre de la moitié; dix mètres sur six.	Taller by a head; older by ten years (by far); heavier by a pound; less by half; ten meters by six.

4. Unclassified:

De jour (nuit); à l'année; goutte à goutte; il est midi à ma montre; connaître de vue; de vive voix; un tailleur de son état; vendre au poids; fait à la main.	By day (night); by the year; drop by drop; it is noon by my watch; to know by sight; by word of mouth; a tailor by trade; to sell by weight; made by hand.

442. For

1. In the sense of *for the sake of, instead of, (in exchange) for* = pour:

Mourir pour la patrie; je le fais pour vous; donnez-moi ceci pour cela.	To die for one's country; I do it for you; give me this for that.

2. Denoting destination:

Je pars pour la France; une lettre pour vous.	I leave for France; a letter for you.

3. Denoting a period of time (future) = pour:

Je resterai (pour) huit jours; j'en ai pour dix ans.	I shall stay (for) a week; I have enough of it for ten years.

NOTE — *For*, of time not future, is variously rendered: **J'étais huit jours absent** *or* **J'étais absent** *pendant* **huit jours,** *I was absent* **for** *a week;* **Il y a (voici, voilà) deux heures que je lis** *or* **Je lis depuis deux heures,** *I have been reading* **for** *two hours.*

4. Unclassified:

Mot à mot *or* **mot pour mot; un remède contre (pour); trembler de crainte; par exemple; quant à moi; vendre dix francs** *or* **laisser (donner) pour dix francs; remercier (punir) de; changer pour (contre); c'est à vous de dire; malgré tout cela.**	Word for word; a remedy for; to tremble for fear; for example; as for me; to sell for ten francs *or* to give for ten francs; to thank (punish) for; to change for; it is for you to say; for all that.

443. From

1. Usually = **de:**

Il vient de Paris; de trois à quatre heures; je l'ai appris de lui.	He comes from Paris; from three to four o'clock; I heard it from him.

2. In the sense of *because of, out of, through* = **par:**

Cela arriva par négligence; par expérience (amitié).	That happened from carelessness; from experience (friendship).

3. In the sense of *dating from* = **dès, depuis, à partir de:**

Dès (depuis, à partir de) ce jour; à partir de 1820.	From that day; from 1820 (on).

4. Unclassified:

D'aujourd'hui en huit; dessiné d'après nature; boire dans un verre; ôtez cela à l'enfant.	A week from to-day; drawn from nature; to drink from a glass; take that from the child.

444. In, into

1. Denoting place or time specifically, *i.e.*, in the sense of *within, inside of, in(to) the interior of* = **dans** (cf. § 333, 3):

Dans ce paquet (champ); dans la maison; dans l'Afrique australe; dans toute la ville; dans la même année.	In this parcel (field); in(to) the house; in South Africa; in the whole city; in the same year.

NOTE. — The governed noun usually has the definite article.

2. Denoting place or time generally = **en, à** (cf. § 333, 2, 3):

En Afrique; à la maison; aux champs; au Canada; à Londres; à la campagne (ville); en hiver; au printemps; en paix.	In Africa; in the house (at home); in the fields; in Canada; in London; in the country (city); in winter; in spring; in peace.

NOTE. — The governed word after **en** has but rarely the definite article (mostly in fixed expressions before initial vowel sound): **En *l'*air; En *l'*honneur de,** etc.

3. In the sense of *at the end of* (*time*) = **dans;** *in the course of* (*time*) = **en:**

Le train part dans une heure; on peut aller à L. en une heure.	The train leaves in an hour; one can go to L. in an hour.

4. Denoting place, after a superlative = **de**:

La plus grande ville du monde.	The largest city in the world.

5. Unclassified:

Par la pluie; le matin; de nos jours; par le passé; à l'avenir; d'avance; entre les mains de; à mon avis; sous le règne de; sous presse; de cette manière; un sur dix.	In the rain; in the morning; in our day(s); in the past; in the future; in advance; in the hands of; in my opinion; in the reign of; in (the) press; in this way; one in ten.

445. Of

1. Usually = **de**:

Le toit de la maison; la ville de Paris; un homme d'influence; une livre de thé; digne d'honneur; il parle d'aller à Paris.	The roof of the house; the city of Paris; a man of influence; a pound of tea; worthy of honor; he speaks of going to Paris

2. Denoting material = **en**:

Un pont en bois (fer); les pièces de dix francs sont en or.	A bridge of wood (iron); ten-franc pieces are (made) of gold.

3. Unclassified:

C'est aimable à vous; sur 100 personnes 50 sont échappées; docteur en médecine; un de mes amis; majeur.	It is kind of you; of 100 persons 50 escaped; doctor of medicine: one of my friends; of age.

446. On, upon

1. Usually = **sur**:

Le livre est (je mets le livre) sur la table.	The book is (I put the book) on the table.

2. Is omitted in dates before specified days:

Le dix mai; je viendrai mardi; il arriva le lendemain.	On the tenth of May; I shall come on Tuesday; he arrived on the morrow.

3. Unclassified:

Par une belle journée d'été; mettre au feu; pendre contre le mur; dans la rue; dans l'île; dans l'escalier; en (dans un) voyage; en visite (congé); en chemin (route); d'un côté; tomber par terre; à genoux; dans cette occasion; à cheval (pied); à droite (gauche); à son arrivée; au contraire; pour affaires.	On a fine summer day; to put on the fire; to hang on the wall; on the street; on the island; on the stairs; on a journey; on a visit (a holiday); on the way (the road); on one side; to fall on the ground; on one's knees; on that occasion; on horseback (foot); on the right (the left); on his arrival; on the contrary; on business.

447. Out of

1. Unclassified:

Boire dans un verre; copier dans un livre; regarder par la fenêtre; un sur dix.	To drink out of a glass; to copy out of a book; to look out of the window; one out of ten.

448. Over

1. In the sense of *above* = **au-dessus de:**

Au-dessus de la porte étaient écrits ces mots; les nombres au-dessus de mille.	Over the door were written these words; the numbers over one thousand.

2. Denoting motion above = **sur, par, par-dessus:**

Passez la main sur ce drap; par monts et par vaux; il sauta par-dessus la haie.	Pass your hand over this cloth; over hill and dale; he leaped over the hedge.

3. Unclassified:

Au delà de la rivière; l'emporter sur (triompher de); se réjouir de; veiller sur.	Over the river; to triumph over; to rejoice over; to watch over.

449. Through

1. Denoting motion across = **à travers (au travers de), par:**

Je passai à travers (au travers de) la forêt; passer par Paris.	I passed through the forest; to pass through Paris.

2. In the sense of *because of, owing to* = **par**:

Par négligence.	Through carelessness.

450. Till, until

1. Unclassified:

Jusqu'à demain; pas avant l'année prochaine; jusqu'ici; du matin au soir.	Till to-morrow; not till next year; till now; from morning till night.

451. To

1. Denoting the indirect object = **à** (cf. § 362, 2):

Je l'ai donné à un ami.	I gave it to a friend.

2. Denoting motion to = **à, en** (cf. § 333, 2, 3); in the sense of *to the house,* etc., *of, to* ——*'s* = **chez**:

Il va à Paris (à l'école; au Japon; à un bal; en France; en Portugal; chez eux; chez mon ami).	He goes to Paris (to school; to Japan; to a ball; to France; to Portugal; to their house, etc.; to my friend's).

3. In the sense of *towards* = **vers** (physical tendency), **envers** (moral tendency):

Levez les yeux vers le ciel; il est juste envers tous.	Raise your eyes to heaven; he is just to all.

4. In the sense of *as far as* = **jusqu'à**:

Venez jusqu'au bout de la rue.	Come to the end of the street.

5. Unclassified:

Le voyage (train) de Montréal; écrire sous dictée; dans ce but.	The journey (train) to Montreal; to write to dictation; to this end.

452. Towards

See § 451, 3.

453. Under, underneath

1. Usually = **sous**:

Sous la table; sous la loi; sous peine de mort.	Under the table; under the law; under (on) pain of death.

2. Denoting *lower than, less than* = **au-dessous de:**

Au-dessous du coude; vendre une chose au-dessous de sa valeur.	Under the elbow; to sell a thing under its value.

3. Unclassified:

Fouler aux pieds; à cette condition; dans les circonstances; dans la nécessité de; mineur.	To tread under foot; under this condition; under the circumstances; under the necessity of; under age.

454. With

1. In the sense of *along with, in company with* = **avec:**

Dînez avec moi à l'hôtel; un officier avec des soldats.	Dine with me at the hotel; an officer with some soldiers.

2. In the sense of *at the house,* etc., *of* = **chez:**

Il demeure chez nous.	He lives with us.

3. Denoting instrument, manner = **avec** (usually):

Frapper avec un marteau; écrire avec une plume; avec courage (force).	To strike with a hammer; to write with a pen; with courage (force).

4. Denoting a characteristic = **à:**

Un homme à la barbe noire.	A man with a black beard.

5. *With* of accessory circumstance is usually turned by an absolute construction:

Il parla les yeux baissés.	He spoke with downcast eyes.

6. In the sense of *from, on account of,* and after many verbs and adjectives = **de:**

Elle pleura de colère; couvrir de; content de.	She wept with anger; to cover with; satisfied with.

7. Unclassified:

À l'exception de; à haute voix; à bras ouverts; de bon appétit; à l'œil nu; de tout mon cœur.	With the exception of; with a loud voice; with open arms; with a good appetite; with the naked eye; with all my heart.

THE CONJUNCTION

455. Conjunctions. The following table contains most of the conjunctions and conjunctive locutions in use:

†à (la) condition que,[3] *on condition that*
*afin que,[2] *in order that, so that*
ainsi, *therefore, hence*
ainsi que, *as well as, as*
alors que, *when*
à mesure que, *as, just as*
*à moins que . . . ne,[3] *unless*
après que, *after*
à proportion que, *in proportion as*
attendu que, *considering that*
†au cas où,[3] *in case (that)*
*au cas que,[3] *in case (that)*
aussi, *hence, therefore*
aussitôt que, *as soon as*
*avant que,[1] *before*
*bien que,[4] *though, although*
car, *for*
*ce n'est pas que,[5] *not that*
cependant, *however, yet*
comme, *as*
†dans le cas où,[3] *in case (that)*
*de crainte que . . . ne,[2] *for fear that*
†de façon que,[2] *so that*
†de manière que,[2] *so that*
de même que, *as well as*
*de peur que . . . ne,[2] *for fear that*
depuis que, *since*
†de (telle) sorte que,[2] *so that*
dès que, *as soon as, when, since*
donc, *now, then, therefore*
*en attendant que,[1] *until*
*en cas que,[3] *in case (that)*
encore, *yet, still*
*encore que,[4] *though, although*
†en sorte que,[2] *so that*
*en supposant que,[3] *supposing that*
et, *and*
et . . . et, *both . . . and*
excepté que, *except that*
†jusqu'à ce que,[1] *until*
*loin que,[5] *far from*
lorsque, *when*
mais, *but*
*malgré que,[4] *though, although*
néanmoins, *nevertheless*
ni, *nor*
ni . . . ni . . . (. . . ne), *neither . . . nor*
*nonobstant que,[4] *notwithstanding that*
*non (pas) que,[5] *not that*
non seulement . . . mais encore, *not only . . . but also*
or, *now*
ou, *or*
ou . . . ou, *either . . . or*
outre que, *besides that*
parce que, *because*
partant, *therefore, hence*
pendant que, *while, whilst*
*pour peu que,[4] *if ever so little*
*pour que,[2] *in order that*
pourtant, *yet, however*
*pourvu que,[3] *provided that*
puisque, *since*
quand, *when*
†quand même,[4] *though, even if*
†que,[6] *that, than, as*
*quoique,[4] *though, although*
*sans que,[5] *without*

selon que, *according as*
†si,[3] *if* (§ 271, 3, *a*)
†si bien que,[2] *so that*
†si peu que,[4] *however little*
sinon, *if not, or else*
sitôt que, *as soon as*
soit . . . soit, *whether . . . or*
soit . . . ou, *whether . . . or*
*soit que . . . soit que,[4] *whether . . . or*
*soit que . . . ou que,[4] *whether . . . or*
suivant que, *according as*
*supposé que,[3] *suppose that*
tandis que, *whilst, whereas*
tant . . . que, *both . . . and*
tant que, *as long as*
†tellement . . . que,[2] *so . . . that*
toutefois, *yet, nevertheless*
une fois que, *as soon as*
vu que, *seeing that*

* Followed by the subjunctive.

† Followed by the indicative or subjunctive.

N.B. — Conjunctions without * or † in the table are followed by the indicative.

[1] See § 271, 1 (time before which or up to which).
[2] See § 271, 2 (purpose or result).
[3] See § 271, 3 (condition).
[4] See § 271, 4 (concession).
[5] See § 271, 5 (negation).
[6] See § 269, § 271, 6, and § 458.

USE OF CERTAIN CONJUNCTIONS

456. Et. 1. When repeated, **et** usually denotes *both . . . and;* otherwise it stands with the last only of two or more clauses:

Je connais et le père et le fils.	I know both the father and son.
Les femmes pleuraient, criaient et gesticulaient.	The women wept, (and) screamed, and gesticulated.

2. *And* after a verb of motion is usually untranslated:

Allez leur parler.	Go and speak to them.

457. Ni. 1. A finite verb with **ni** *or* **ni . . . ni** must be preceded by **ne:**

Il *n'*a *ni* or *ni* argent.	He has neither gold nor silver.
Il *ne* mange *ni ne* boit.	He neither eats nor drinks.

a. For the position of **ni . . . ni . . . ne,** see § 416, *d.*

2. In sentences of negative force, *and, or,* are rendered by **ni**:

Honneurs ni richesses ne font le bonheur.	Honors and wealth do not constitute happiness.

3. Observe the following equivalents of *neither, not either, nor either, nor,* when not correlative:

Je ne le ferai pas. — (Ni) moi non plus.	I shall not do it. — Nor I either (*or* Neither shall I).
Il ne le fera pas non plus.	He will not do it either.
Il ne l'a pas fait, et il ne le fera pas.	He has not done it, nor will he (do it).

458. Que. 1. **Que** = *that* is followed by the indicative or subjunctive according to the context:

Je dis que vous avez raison.	I say that you are right.
Je suis fâché que vous ayez raison.	I am sorry that you are right.

2. **Que** often replaces another conjunction; when so used, it takes the same construction as the conjunction for which it stands, except that **que** instead of **si** = *if* always requires the subjunctive:

Quand vous aurez fini, et que vous aurez le temps.	When you have finished, and (when you) have time.
Venez que (= afin que, pour que) je vous voie.	Come that I may see you.
Si vous venez demain, et que vous ayez le temps.	If you come to-morrow, and (if you) have time.

3. **Que** may not be omitted before a finite verb, as *that* often is in English:

Je crois qu'il viendra et qu'il restera.	I think (that) he will come and (that he will) stay.

459. Distinctions. The following conjunctions are especially liable to be confounded in use:

1. **Quand, Lorsque.** They are equivalents in the sense of *when,* but **quand** (*not* **lorsque**) serves also as an interrogative adverb in direct or indirect questions:

Quand est-il arrivé?	When did he come?
Dis-moi quand il est arrivé.	Tell me when he came.
Quand (*or* **lorsque**) **je l'ai vu.**	When I saw him.
Nous partirons lorsque (*or* **quand**) **la lettre arrivera.**	We shall leave when the letter comes.

2. **Pendant que, Tandis que.** **Pendant que** = *while, whilst, during the time that;* **tandis que** = *while, whilst, during the time that,* and also, *whilst, on the contrary, whereas:*

Lisez le journal pendant que j'écris ce billet.	Read the newspaper while I write this note.
Pendant (Tandis) que vous êtes ici.	Whilst you are here.
Le père travaille, tandis que le fils ne fait rien.	The father works, while the son does nothing.

3. **Depuis que, Puisque.** **Depuis que** denotes time; **puisque** denotes cause assigned:

Je suis bien seul depuis que mon frère est parti.	I am very lonely since my brother went away.
Il me faut rester, puisqu'il n'y a pas de train ce soir.	I must remain, since there is no train this evening.

THE INTERJECTION

460. Interjections. The commoner interjections and expressions used as such are:

1. Joy, admiration, approval:

ah! *ah!*
ha, ha! *or* hi, hi! (*to denote laughter*)
bon! *good!*
bien! *good!*
à merveille! *capital!*
à la bonne heure! *well done! that's right!*
bis! *encore!*
bravo! *or* bravissimo! *well done! bravo!*
hourra! *or* vivat! *hurrah!*

2. Disgust, disapproval, indifference:

fi! *fie!*
fi donc! *for shame!*
fie de! *fie on!*
foin de! *a plague upon!*
pouah! *disgusting! faugh!*
oh! *oh!*

bah! *or* ah! bah! *nonsense! pooh-pooh!*
baste! *enough! pooh! nonsense!*
par exemple! *dear me!*
zest! *pshaw!*
zut! *pshaw!*

3. Grief, fear, pain:

ah! *ah!*
oh! *oh!*
hélas! *alas!*
aïe! *oh! oh dear!*
miséricorde! *mercy!*
ouf! (*to express suffocation, or relief and exhaustion*)

4. Surprise:

ah! *ah!*
oh! *oh!*
eh! *ah!*
ha! *ha!*
comment! *what!*
quoi! *what!*
vraiment! *indeed!*
tiens! *indeed! hallo!*
par exemple! *you don't say so!*
miséricorde! *mercy!*

5. Encouragement, reproof:

allons! *come!*
courage! *cheer up!*
voyons! *come now!*
çà! *or* or çà! *or* sus! *or* or sus! *now then!*
en avant! *forward!*
ferme! *steady!*
preste! *quick!*

6. Warning:

gare! *look out! take care!*
attention! *look out! take care!*

7. Calling:

hé! *or* ohé! *or* holà! *ho! hoy! halloo!*
hem! *ahem!*
st! *hi there!*
qui vive! *who goes there!*

8. Calling for aid:

à moi! *or* au secours! *help!*
à l'assassin *or* au meurtre! *murder!*
au voleur! *stop thief!*
au feu! *fire!*

9. Silencing, stopping:

chut! *or* st! *hush!*
silence! *silence!*
motus! [mɔty:s] *not a word!*
tout doux *or* tout beau! *gently! not so fast!*
halte-là! *stop there!*

Note. — Akin to interjections are imitations of sounds: **Cric crac !** *breaking;* **drelin, drelin !** *or* **drelin, din, din !** *ringing;* **pan pan !** *bang;* **pif paf !** *gunshots;* **boum !** *cannonading;* **rataplan !** *drum;* **dare dare !** *quick movement;* **cahin-caha,** *jogging along;* **clopin-clopant,** *hobbling;* **tic tac,** *ticking,* etc.

ABBREVIATIONS

461. French Abbreviations. The following are the commoner abbreviations used in French:

c.-à.-d. = c'est-à-dire, *that is*
Cie *or* C^e = compagnie, *company*
etc. = et cætera
fr. *or* f. = francs, *francs*
h. = heure, *hour*
in-f° = in-folio, *folio*
J.-C. = Jésus-Christ, *Jesus Christ*
M. = Monsieur, *Mr.*
MM. = Messieurs, *Messrs.*
M. R. *or* M. R . . . = Monsieur R. *or* Monsieur R***, *Mr.* R. or *Mr.* R—.
M^d = marchand, *merchant*
M^e (pl. M^es) = maître, *is used with names of lawyers instead of* monsieur
Mgr (pl. NNSS.) = monseigneur, *my lord*
Mlle (pl. Mlles) = Mademoiselle, *Miss*
Mme (pl. Mmes) = Madame, *Mrs.*
M^n = maison, *house, firm*
ms. (pl. mss.) = manuscrit, *manuscript*
N.-D. = Notre-Dame, *Our Lady*
N.-S. = Notre-Seigneur, *Our Lord*
n° = numéro, *number*
R.S.V.P. = Répondez s'il vous plaît, *an answer is requested*
S. A. R. = Son Altesse Royale, *His Royal Highness*
s.-ent. = sous-entendu, *understood*
S. Exc. = Son Excellence, *His Excellency*
S. M. (pl. LL. MM.) = Sa Majesté, *His (Her) Majesty*
S. S. = Sa Sainteté, *His Holiness*
s. v. p. = s'il vous plaît, *if you please*
V^e = veuve, *widow*

Ier (in titles) = premier, *the First*
II (in titles) = deux, *the Second*
Le XVe siècle, etc. = le quinzième siècle, *the 15th century*
1er (fem. 1re) = premier, *first*
2e = deuxième, *second*
1° = primo, *firstly*
7bre = septembre, *September*. Etc.

EXERCISES

[The references at the head of the exercises are to the sections in the Grammar on which they are based.]

I a (§§ 156–161)

Complete the following: appelle-les, je l'envoie, je l'amène.

1. What are you eating? 2. We are eating apples. 3. It was necessary that they should eat. 4. Who is calling? 5. We are calling. 6. The general leads his army. 7. We shall lead the horses. 8. Who is throwing stones? 9. It will freeze. 10. He is buying a coat. 11. We never yield. 12. They will never yield. 13. The servant is peeling apples. 14. When will he pay? 15. They never pay. 16. The servant is cleaning the kitchen. 17. We shall clean our gun. 18. The little girl wipes the dishes. 19. The farmer sows the seed. 20. It is freezing. 21. We are going to school. 22. We went home. 23. They used to go to market on Saturdays. 24. He will send it.

I b

1. The servant is bringing the horses. 2. I send him there. 3. I shall go to school. 4. Let them go to the city. 5. It was necessary that you should go there. 6. They will buy a box. 7. Let us bring the children. 8. Bring the children. 9. Let him not throw stones. 10. We have led the horses to the stable. 11. Let us trace a line. 12. We are advancing. 13. They were eating. 14. We ate. 15. They will eat. 16. Let us advance. 17. Let us never yield. 18. Let us call the children. 19. Let us not go there. 20. The queen has been reigning a long time. 21. The children were throwing stones. 22. He led the horse to the stable. 23. He paid the money. 24. The servant wiped the dishes. 25. The child traced a line.

II a (§§ 162–166)

Complete the following: je les accueille, je pars, je courrai.

1. He is running. 2. Shall we run? 3. Run fast, my little boy. 4. He is acquiring a fortune. 5. It was necessary that

we should run. 6. They will conquer that city. 7. The general has acquired glory. 8. He gives him consecrated bread. 9. They acquire knowledge. 10. We shall acquire property. 11. There is holy water. 12. Let us not run. 13. Let them acquire it. 14. We are gathering apples. 15. It was necessary that they should gather flowers. 16. He welcomed me. 17. We shall gather them. 18. Let us not start with (*de*) fear. 19. He will assail his enemy. 20. He is sleeping. 21. Let us not sleep. 22. He must sleep. 23. We shall soon sleep. 24. They fall asleep.

II b

1. He is leaving for France. 2. He left yesterday. 3. If he were asleep, I should call him. 4. He will go out. 5. Let him not go out. 6. The water boils. 7. The water was boiling. 8. When he speaks, he lies. 9. He makes use of it. 10. He will feel it. 11. If he were here, we should not sleep. 12. The water will soon boil. 13. He has run. 14. It was necessary that we should sleep. 15. I have not slept. 16. He never lies. 17. The horses would run if they were not tired. 18. They ran. 19. We acquired it. 20. The horses run over the field. 21. He does not consent to it. 22. He will never consent to it. 23. Let him not make use of it. 24. We were running. 25. We fell asleep.

III a (§§ 167–179)

Give principal parts of: fuir, mourir, tenir.

1. He failed on (*en*) that occasion. 2. It is a prosperous country. 3. He flees. 4. Let us not flee. 5. They fled. 6. He will not flee. 7. Here lies a hero. 8. Here lie the remains of the great Napoleon. 9. I hate evil. 10. Men hate their enemies. 11. Let us not hate our enemies. 12. He hates his father. 13. Let him not hate his father. 14. Was it necessary that he should hate his father? 15. She dies. 16. They will die. 17. Let us not die. 18. It was necessary that he should die. 19. He died. 20. She will die. 21. Let him not die. 22. If they died, we should be sorry for it. 23. That tree is dying away. 24. Open the door.

III b

1. We have opened the box. 2. He offers me his book. 3. She used to suffer a great deal. 4. If we had any, we should offer you some. 5. Columbus discovered America. 6. We held it. 7. Let him not hold it. 8. I hold it. 9. Let us hold it. 10. We are coming. 11. We shall come. 12. We should come if you would come. 13. If I should come, I should find it. 14. They are coming back. 15. It is necessary that he come. 16. It was necessary that he should come. 17. Hold it. 18. He has held it. 19. The purse contains money. 20. If he comes, we shall be glad (of it). 21. They will come back. 22. He is ill clad. 23. He clothes himself well. 24. He will clothe his child. 25. It is necessary that he clothe his child.

IV a (§§ 180–188)

Give principal parts of: reproduire, méconnaître.

1. We beat the horse. 2. He fells the tree. 3. It is necessary that he fight the enemy. 4. We drink water. 5. They drink milk. 6. They were drinking wine. 7. We shall drink water. 8. Let him drink milk. 9. He has drunk the wine. 10. It was necessary that we should drink wine. 11. We shall not drink wine. 12. He incloses his garden. 13. He will close the bargain. 14. Those flowers will soon open. 15. He is concluding his argument. 16. Let us conclude the bargain. 17. The bread is baking well. 18. If he were there, he would conclude the affair. 19. He drives the cows to the field. 20. They destroyed their books. 21. They will construct houses. 22. Let us translate this phrase. 23. It was necessary that we should translate that book. 24. He led his horse to the stable.

IV b

1. We were translating our exercise. 2. We constructed a house. 3. Let him translate his lesson. 4. I have translated a book. 5. I translated a book. 6. She was preserving plums. 7. We are preserving cherries. 8. That suffices.

9. That will be sufficient. 10. Let that suffice. 11. Five francs a day are sufficient for him. 12. I know that gentleman. 13. It is necessary that we should know him. 14. Let him appear. 15. The cows eat the grass. 16. It was necessary that we should know him. 17. It was necessary that he should appear. 18. He will not disappear. 19. We used to know him. 20. When he appears, we shall conclude the affair. 21. Let him recognize them. 22. You know him, do you not? 23. You will know him. 24. He reappeared

V a (§§ 189–193)

Complete the following: je l'ai cousu, n'y crois pas.

1. The little girl is sewing. 2. We were sewing. 3. They will sew. 4. She sewed. 5. They had sewed. 6. Let us sew. 7. Let her not sew. 8. Let us not fear. 9. They fear. 10. Let him not be afraid. 11. We shall not fear. 12. Men fear death. 13. They pity us. 14. He was painting a picture. 15. Put out the fire. 16. Let him put out the lamp. 17. It was necessary that we should rejoin our friends. 18. I feared the rain. 19. I believe you. 20. We shall not believe it. 21. Let us believe it. 22. I used to believe it. 23. It is necessary that he should believe it. 24. He did not believe it.

V b

1. It was necessary that he should believe it. 2. We did not believe it. 3. Do not believe it. 4. The flowers are growing. 5. The tree grows. 6. That tree will grow fast. 7. We grew. 8. It was necessary that we should grow. 9. The trees were growing fast. 10. Let it grow. 11. He has believed. 12. The tree has grown. 13. Do not say so (*le*). 14. We say so. 15. We should not say so if we did not believe it. 16. Is it necessary that he should say so? 17. They used to say so. 18. Let him not say so. 19. Was it necessary that we should say so? 20. Do not say so again. 21. Do not slander. 22. They do not say so. 23. Cain was cursed by (*de*) God. 24. We do not curse our enemies. 25. If I should say so, would you believe me?

VI a (§§ 194–200)

Complete the following: je ne l'admets pas, je le décris.

1. I was writing when he came. 2. Let us write our exercise. 3. We wrote a letter. 4. Write your lesson. 5. Let him write. 6. We shall write our letter. 7. It was necessary that you should write. 8. He has described his travels. 9. They are writing. 10. Would you write if I should write? 11. Do what I say. 12. He did not do it. 13. He has not done his work. 14. Let us do our work. 15. Let him do what I said. 16. It was necessary that you should do so. 17. I shall do so when you come. 18. If you do that, we shall do this. 19. If you should say so, we should do it. 20. I was doing my work when he came. 21. It is necessary that we do that. 22. If I do this, will you do that? 23. I was reading when he came. 24. He will never read that book.

VI b

1. Read that letter. 2. They are reading their book. 3. Did you not read the newspaper? 4. If I should read this book, would you read that one? 5. Is he reading the newspaper? 6. Let him not read that book. 7. Did they not read this book? 8. I placed the book on the table. 9. Do not commit that crime. 10. It is necessary that he put on his coat. 11. We shall put on our clothes. 12. They have placed their books on the table. 13. We shall not permit it. 14. Does he permit it? 15. It was necessary that he should not permit it. 16. What would you say if we should permit it? 17. The miller grinds the wheat. 18. We are grinding wheat. 19. We ground the wheat. 20. Let him grind the wheat. 21. The prophet said that a child would be born. 22. We are born weak. 23. We were born [on] the same day. 24. Let a young nation arise! 25. Was it necessary that hatred should arise between them?

VII a (§§ 201–211)

Complete the following: je l'apprends, je le suivais.

1. That does not please him (*lui*). 2. You please me. 3. Come when it pleases you. 4. Do so if you please. 5. May

it please you. 6. Take your places. 7. He takes his hat from (*sur*) the table. 8. If I should take it, what would you do? 9. Let him take his book. 10. It is necessary that I should please him. 11. We took our places. 12. Have you learnt your lesson? 13. He will not undertake that. 14. Fire resolves wood into (*en*) smoke. 15. We have resolved to (*de*) do it. 16. He solved the difficulty. 17. He will solve the difficulty. 18. Let us not laugh at (*de*) him. 19. Why is he laughing? 20. If I should laugh, what would you say? 21. Was it necessary that he should laugh? 22. We laugh at them. 23. Follow me. 24. The dog follows his master.

VII b

1. Let him follow us. 2. It is necessary that we should follow you. 3. We followed him. 4. If I should follow him, it would please him. 5. We shall never follow him. 6. Is he not milking the cow? 7. When we were in the country, we used to milk the cows. 8. Let him milk the cow. 9. That distracts him from his work. 10. The general conquers his enemies. 11. We conquer our passions. 12. If you were to conquer your passions, you would be happy. 13. Our army will conquer. 14. We have conquered our enemies. 15. Let him conquer his passions. 16. He is not selling his house. 17. He will never sell it. 18. Horses live on (*de*) hay. 19. He lives only for himself. 20. Let us live in (*en*) peace. 21. He will live yet [a] long time. 22. Louis XIV lived in the 17th century. 23. Long live the King! 24. Hurrah for liberty!

VIII a (§§ 212–222)

Give principal parts of: recevoir, mouvoir, pouvoir.

1. We receive our friends. 2. He has received the letter. 3. Let us not receive the money. 4. If they should receive us, we should be glad. 5. We owe him (*lui*) money. 6. We shall owe him something. 7. If they receive it, we shall tell (it to) you. 8. Let him not receive it. 9. We received the money. 10. Sit down. 11. He sits down. 12. They will

sit down. 13. Let us sit down. 14. It was necessary that we should sit down. 15. If we should sit down, would you tell (*raconter*) us a story? 16. Let them not sit down. 17. That does not become him (*lui*). 18. That will not become us. 19. We sit down. 20. The payment falls due. 21. It will be necessary to do it. 22. It is necessary to be there. 23. Passion moves men. 24. Steam and water drive (*mouvoir*) machines.

VIII b

1. His story moved (*émouvoir*) the audience. 2. Such a story must move men. 3. We shall go out if it does not rain. 4. It was raining when we came. 5. It will rain. 6. I did not think it would rain. 7. It has rained. 8. I shall come if I can. 9. I shall come when I can. 10. They cannot go away. 11. I should do so if I could. 12. I wish that he may not be able to do so. 13. I could do that if I were rich. 14. You may do so if you desire. 15. Could (condl.) you not give me some? 16. We know our lesson. 17. Do you know how to do that? 18. That child cannot write; he is too young. 19. I cannot write; I have a sore finger. 20. Do you know that gentleman? 21. I used to know how to swim. 22. Your father must not know that. 23. We knew it. 24. We shall know it to-morrow.

IX a (§§ 223–225)

1. That horse is worth one hundred dollars. 2. Virtue is worth more (*mieux*) than riches. 3. Those houses are worth more (*plus*) than these. 4. That was worth more last year. 5. That will be worth more next year. 6. If that were worth more, I should take it. 7. He has nothing (which is) of value (subj.). 8. We shall not see him again. 9. Do you see him? 10. I saw him. 11. We saw him. 12. If we should see him, we should tell (it to) him. 13. When we see him, we shall speak to him about it. 14. We must see our parents. 15. It was necessary that we should see our children. 16. I have seen him. 17. If we wished to do it, we could do it. 18. You may come when you wish. 19. He will be willing to do

that when he can. 20. Be so good as to sit down. 21. If you will sell your house, I shall buy it. 22. Will you be so kind as to give me some? 23. We do not wish to do that. 24. Should you like to see him? 25. I should like to see him if I could. 26. I could do this if I wished. 27. If it rains, we cannot go out. 28. If they were willing, they could do it. 29. If they are not willing to tell (it to) you, you will not know how to do it.

X a (§§ 227–229)

Qu'est devenu son frère?	What has become of his brother?
Je sais ce qu'il est devenu.	I know what has become of him.
Elle est née.	She was born.
Elle est morte.	She died.
Elle est montée.	She has gone up (*or* up stairs).

1. Your mother has come, has she not? 2. No, madam, she has not yet come; she will come to-morrow. 3. Our friends have gone to church; let us go (there) too. 4. The old gentleman who lived in that house died last night. 5. (The) Queen Victoria was born (past def.) on the twenty-fourth of May. 6. My little sister was born (past indef.) [on] the tenth of March. 7. How old is your father? 8. He is seventy; he was born before the death of Napoleon. 9. What has become of your brother? 10. He has gone to (*partir pour*) France. 11. When did he go? 12. He went yesterday morning. 13. Is your father out? 14. No, sir, he is in. 15. When did your father return? 16. He has not yet returned; he will return next week. 17. The servant has brought down the trunk. 18. Where is your sister? 19. She has gone down for (art.) breakfast. 20. Where are the children? 21. They have gone up stairs. 22. Why did they not come down when I was there? 23. What is the matter, my child? 24. It was slippery, and I fell. 25. My father has gone into the house. 26. Although he was born rich, he is now poor. 27. He died poor, although he was once rich. 28. I have not seen him to-day; what has become of him? 29. I don't know what has become of him. 30. Have you taken up the gentleman's trunks? 31. Not yet, but I shall take them up immediately.

32. At what time did your sister go out this morning? 33. She went out at half-past nine. 34. Where is my sister? 35. She has gone up stairs; she has gone to get her books.

XI a (§ 230)

Si vous vouliez bien me le dire. If you would kindly tell me.
Faites-les entrer. Show them in.

1. We do not wish to leave this country; we should like to remain here, but if we cannot, we shall go away. 2. You ought to go home, (my) children; it is late. 3. We cannot go home; it is dark, and our father told us to (*de*) wait for him. 4. We cannot go away before six o'clock; we are to wait here till our friends come. 5. We could have written the letter if we had known that you desired it. 6. That beggar could have had work if he had wanted it, but he was too lazy; he would not work, and now he must beg. 7. Those children cannot read yet; they are too young. 8. If they had been able to read, they would not have believed all that was said to them. 9. You ought to let them go away, for their father told them that they were to leave before (the) night. 10. You might have seen them if you had been willing to come with me. 11. Our teacher told us that we were to write this exercise. 12. We are to have a house built next year. 13. Their teacher made them write their exercise. 14. We should have a house built if we were rich enough. 15. We said to the innkeeper, "Will you be so kind as to have our horses saddled? We are going to start." 16. Opium makes [us] sleep. 17. It is very warm; if this great heat continues, it will kill the crops.

XII a (§ 230 *continued*)

1. Those children make a great deal of noise; they talk too much; make them be silent. 2. That (little) girl could write if she wished (it). 3. If you would kindly tell me where the doctor lives, I should send for him. 4. Do you know Daudet's *La Belle-Nivernaise?* 5. Oh, yes, it is a charming book; I liked it so much that I had my pupils read it. 6. That is a beautiful picture. 7. Yes, I have just been showing it to your

mother and sister. 8. When did you see my father? 9. I had just been speaking with him when you came. 10. What are you going to do to-morrow? 11. To-morrow we are going to see the *Invalides* and the *Arc de Triomphe*, and the day after to-morrow we are to see *Notre-Dame* and the *Louvre* (m.). 12. We ought to have visited the *Louvre* when you were with us; you could have shown us the fine pictures. 13. May I go with you when you visit (fut.) the *Louvre* next time? I should like to have explained to me some of the beauties of the finest pictures. 14. That gentleman must have been in Paris, for he speaks French like a Parisian. 15. Why did you not make those ladies sit down (§ 245, 2) when they were here? 16. They said they would not stay, because you were out. 17. There are ladies at the door. 18. Very well, show them in. 19. Your son ought to write his exercises. 20. Very well, make him write them. 21. If I had made him study his lessons when he was at school, he would have become a better man.

XIII a (§§ 231–234)

L'un et l'autre viendront. Both will come.

1. The French people are brave and gay; they (*il*) have their (*ses*) defects, but also their good qualities. 2. Few people believe that the earth is not round. 3. Most people believe that the earth will be destroyed. 4. The greater part of his friends abandoned him. 5. Many think that our friends will not succeed. 6. A great number of men were killed. 7. The Swiss people are brave, they (*il*) will always be free. 8. More than one house was burnt. 9. Is it your friends who live in the house on the hill? 10. Yes, it is they; they have lived (§ 257, 2) there for two years. 11. You and he were there, were you not? 12. Yes, he and I were there, and your brother too. 13. Will you and your brother come and see us when you are in London? 14. We shall be very happy to (*de*) visit you. 15. Do you see those two children? Both were born [on] the same day. 16. You or I (add: *nous*) shall speak. 17. There happen many misfortunes here below. 18. There arose a great quarrel between them. 19. Who went

for the doctor? 20. It was (pres.) I who went for him. 21. Do you see those two gentlemen? Both have had houses built this year. 22. Religion, truth, honor, all was abandoned. 23. Many think that you will never be able to build your house. 24. If there happened such misfortunes to me, I should leave the country. 25. Were it only a few lines, I should like you to write to me. 26. If you and I were young, fine things would be done (reflex. impers.). 27. Who can have done that, if not our friends? 28. Neither he nor his brother can go away; both must stay.

XIV a (§§ 235–238)

Je voudrais qu'il fût (soit) ici. I wish he were here.

1. Is that book yours (*à vous*) or your brother's? 2. How much did these books cost? 3. I do not know how much they cost. 4. Does that merchant provide you cheap with what you need? 5. What is the matter with that boy this morning? 6. I do not know what is the matter with him. 7. Do I say, or can I say, the half of what he has done? 8. Whatever (§ 407, 1, *a*) men may do, they cannot escape (*à*) death. 9. What books did your father buy when he was in the city? 10. Your father told me what your brother had done. 11. Your brother told me what he had done. 12. Will you tell me where those men were when you saw them? 13. I cannot tell you where they were. 14. We have more books than that gentleman has. 15. We have more books than you have. 16. Virtue is a beautiful thing, hence we love it. 17. My father is here; perhaps he will come to see you. 18. However good men may be, they are sometimes poor. 19. Such are my reasons for doing so. 20. You have told me that my friend has gone; I did not know (impf.) it, but perhaps you are right. 21. I wish you were here, were it only to encourage us. 22. That man does not respect himself, hence he cannot be good. 23. "Come and see us," said he, "as soon as you can" (fut.). 24. "If I do this," thought he, "I shall be punished; hence I shall not do it." 25. I do not know where that man died. 26. To whom did your friend give his gold watch? 27. I do not

know; perhaps he gave it to his brother. 28. I cannot do (*de*) such things; am I not [an] Englishman? 29. Do I not tell you that I shall be there, and that I shall see you?

XV a (§§ 239–241)

On lui obéit. / **Il est obéi.** — He is obeyed.

On me l'a pardonné. — I have been pardoned (for) it.

1. America was discovered by Christopher Columbus. 2. The first steamboat was built by Fulton. 3. We have been deceived by that scoundrel. 4. We have been deceived. 5. That gentleman has been mistaken in that affair. 6. Where is that said? 7. Oh, that is said everywhere. 8. Who committed that crime? 9. It was our neighbor's brother. 10. Will he not be punished? 11. No, he has been pardoned for it. 12. I have often seen it done. 13. I have been told that you had it done. 14. Is that not done everywhere? 15. Oh, no, that is never done amongst respectable people. 16. How unfortunate he is! He is a good fellow, but he is deceived and suspected everywhere. 17. How little it is! It can hardly be seen. 18. That man is not a good teacher; he is not obeyed by his pupils. 19. There is a house to be sold. 20. There is an exercise to be done. 21. That beggar was given bread and milk. 22. We were made to read our lesson. 23. That is a man to be feared. 24. They were told that you were not here. 25. Why were we not told that our friends had gone away?

XVI a (§§ 242–247)

***Elle s'est rappelé ce que j'ai dit.** / ***Elle s'est souvenue de ce que j'ai dit.** — She remembered what I said.

Je me le rappelle. / **Je m'en souviens.** — I remember it.

Je me le rappelle. / **Je me souviens de lui.** — I remember him.

Ils se souviennent de moi. — They remember me.

Je m'en sers. — I use it (I make use of it).

* In *se rappeler*, *se* is indirect, in *se souvenir*, *se* is direct.

Je me passe de vin.	I do without wine.
Il s'en passe.	He does without it.
Elle s'est fait mal à la main.	She (has) hurt her hand.
Elle s'est cassé le bras.	She has broken her arm.
Elle s'est tue.	She became silent.

1. They have not yet gone away; they will remain here till to-morrow. 2. When you are (fut.) in front of Mr. Jackson's (house), be good enough to stop. 3. How have you been this long time? 4. I am always well. 5. How has your mother been since she has been living in Boston? 6. "How unfortunate I am!" she exclaimed, "my friends remember me no longer." 7. When the door opens, we can go in. 8. Where is my book? I cannot do without it. 9. Why do you not make use of that pen? 10. It is not a good pen; I cannot use it. 11. There are some ladies in the parlor; very well, have them sit down, and ask them to wait a little. 12. Why are you crying, my little girl? 13. I have fallen and hurt myself. 14. Did you hurt yourself? 15. I hurt my hand. 16. Why did those ladies not sit down? 17. They would not sit down, because they could not stay. 18. If you wish to use ink and paper, I shall give you some.

XVI b

1. It was very slippery this morning, and my mother, in going down the street, fell and broke her arm. 2. If you cannot do without this book, I shall lend it to you. 3. I can do without it now, but I shall need it next week. 4. Do you remember what was told you last evening? 5. No, I do not remember (it). 6. Did that little girl hurt herself badly when she fell? 7. Yes, she hurt herself very badly; she broke her arm. 8. Have those young ladies written letters to each other? 9. They have written many; they have been writing to each other for two years. 10. I am not well this morning; I hurt my head. 11. Are you using your pen now? 12. No, I am not using it; you may have it if you need it. 13. Do you remember the gentleman who lived in that large house on the hill? 14. Yes, I remember him very well. 15. One cannot

do without money; it is useful everywhere. 16. I remembered what he had said, as soon as I saw him. 17. Be silent, (my) children, you are speaking too loud. 18. As soon as I came, he became silent.

XVII a (§§ 242–247 *continued*)

Comment vous appelez-vous?	What are you called? / What is your name?
Je m'appelle Jean.	I am called John (my name is John).
Se promener à pied (à cheval).	To take a walk (a ride).
Se promener en voiture (automobile).	To take a drive.
Se promener en bateau (canot).	To take a row *or* sail.
Elle s'est couchée à dix heures.	She went to bed at ten.
Elle s'est levée à six heures.	She rose at six.
Attendez-moi.	Wait for me.
Elle ne s'y est pas attendue.	She did not expect it.
Le prêtre les a mariés.	The priest (has) married them.
Elle a épousé mon cousin. / **Elle s'est mariée à (*or* avec) mon cousin.**	She (has) married my cousin.
Elle s'est mariée hier.	She was married yesterday.
Il est allé se promener en bateau.	He has gone for a row (*or* sail).
Allons nous promener.	Let us go for a walk.
Elle s'est endormie.	She fell asleep.
Se connaît-il en tableaux?	Is he a good judge of pictures?
Il s'y connaît assez bien.	He is a pretty good judge of them.
Vous ennuyez-vous ici?	Are you tired of being here?

1. What is that little boy's name? 2. His name is Henry. 3. What are you going to do to-day? 4. We are going to go for a drive. 5. We are not going for a drive; we prefer to go for a walk. 6. Let us go to bed now, and then we shall get up early. 7. Is your brother out? 8. Yes, he has gone for a drive. 9. While we were out for a drive, we met your brother on horseback. 10. While they were out for a ride, they met us on foot. 11. Let us go for a walk in that beautiful forest. 12. Has he gone for a ride or a walk? 13. He has gone for a sail. 14. The children went to bed at eight o'clock, and they will get up at six. 15. We shall wait for

him here; he has gone for a walk. 16. That does not surprise me; I was expecting it. 17. I was not expecting to see him there.

XVII b

1. M. Jonnart has married his eldest daughter to a very rich man. 2. Who married them? 3. It was the priest who lived in the little village. 4. My cousin was married yesterday. 5. To whom was she married? 6. She was married to the gentleman who lived here last year. 7. When are you going to get married? 8. I shall never get married. 9. What is the name of the gentleman who married your cousin? 10. If the children had not gone early to bed last night, they would not be able to rise early this morning. 11. That surprises my mother; she was not expecting it. 12. We went to bed, and (we) fell asleep immediately. 13. Are you not a pretty good judge of books? 14. Yes, I am a pretty good judge of them. 15. Is your mother not tired of being here? 16. I think so; I shall ask her to go for a walk with us. 17. Do you ever get tired (of being) in the country? 18. No, I never tire of being there; I love the fields and trees.

XVIII a (§§ 248–253)

Il fait obscur. **Il fait noir.**	It is dark.
Il fait nuit.	It is night.
Il se fait tard.	It is getting late.
Il fait jour.	It is day (daylight).
Il fait du soleil.	The sun is shining.
Il fait du brouillard.	It is foggy.
Il fait bon. **On est bien.**	It is comfortable (pleasant)
Il tombe de la neige.	It is snowing.
Il fait doux.	It is mild.

1. If the weather is fine, we shall go for a row this afternoon. 2. It was raining this morning, but now the sun is shining. 3. It is not comfortable here; let us go out for a walk. 4. It is getting late; let us go home. 5. It was raining last evening, then it froze, and now it is (*faire* or *être*)

slippery. 6. It is not comfortable in those countries where it is very (*faire beaucoup de*) foggy. 7. It is too windy; we shall not go for a row. 8. It is getting late; the children will have to go to bed. 9. What time is it? 10. I do not know, but it is already daylight. 11. Is it? Well then, we shall have to get up immediately. 12. It had been snowing (§ 258, 4) for two days, and we couldn't go for a drive. 13. It has been raining since yesterday morning, and it will be better to remain here. 14. My sister is very ill; her life is at stake (§ 368, *a*).

XVIII b

1. We did not enjoy ourselves at all; it was raining all day. 2. If it is very dark this evening, we shall not go to see our friends. 3. Yes, it will be better to stay at home; we can easily amuse ourselves. 4. How long have you been in this city? 5. I came here three years ago. 6. What sort of weather will it be to-morrow? 7. I do not know; I am not a good judge of such things. 8. It has been raining for two days; we are tired of being here. 9. In winter it is generally mild in Italy, but it is often cold in the United States. 10. Those two men are disputing; what is the matter? 11. It is about (*s'agir de*) the price of a horse which one sold to the other. 12. It was very warm yesterday, but it rained in the night, and now it is very comfortable. 13. I think (that) it will rain, but it may be that I am mistaken. 14. We need another house; this one is too small. 15. Their number is far from being complete (§ 251, 5). 16. Letters have come which tell us that there has been a great storm in Canada. 17. How far is it from Paris to Marseilles? 18. People say that it is 863 kilometers.

XIX a (§§ 254–267)

C'est à peine s'il sort à présent.	He hardly ever goes out now.
À peine le soleil fut-il (était-il) levé, qu'on aperçut l'ennemi.	Hardly was the sun up, when the enemy was seen.
Il fait bon marcher.	The walking is good. It is good walking.

1. When that man is working, he will often stop to (*pour*) speak with his companions. 2. How long have you been reading? 3. I have been reading for an hour. 4. It was at your house that we met those gentlemen. 5. We shall be glad if you are there. 6. We shall be glad when you are there. 7. We often used to go for a walk when we lived at your house, but here it is not good walking, so we hardly ever go out now. 8. When we were young, our mother would often tell us fairy stories which interested us very much. 9. We remember them yet, and we hope (that) we shall never forget them. 10. I had been there ten days when he came. 11. He had been reading an hour before his sister rose. 12. He asked me where I came from, and where I was going. 13. I answered him that I came from Montreal, and (that I) was going to Boston. 14. He wrote me a letter saying that he wished to see me. 15. He said in his letter that he had been ill, but that he was better now. 16. When he lived with us, we would often go out for a walk before (art.) breakfast. 17. The eldest of the miller's sons received (§ 260, *a*) the mill, but the youngest received only the cat.

XIX b

1. As soon as he learned that I was to go out for a walk, he wished to go also. 2. If he had seen it, he would have told me (it). 3. When I had finished my lessons, I would always go out for a walk. 4. When he had finished his dinner to-day, he went out. 5. Hardly had he finished his work when his friend came. 6. We do not know whether our friends will come. 7. Our father did not know whether he would come. 8. Why is that work not done? 9. I told my brother to (*de*) do it, but he will not do it. 10. Will you buy my horse? 11. No, I shall not buy him; I do not need him. 12. Good morning, gentlemen, will you walk in? 13. No thank you, we shall not go in. 14. As long as we live, we shall not forget your kindness. 15. As soon as he comes, I shall tell him. 16. We shall do as we please. 17. You may start when you will. 18. He may come when he likes.

XX a (§§ 254–267 *continued*)

1. We shall soon have finished our work. 2. When you have finished your lesson, you may go out for a walk. 3. Everybody should learn the ten commandments. 4. They tell us: Thou shalt not (*point*) have any other gods. 5. Thou shalt not take the name of thy God in vain. 6. Thou shalt not steal (*dérober*). 7. That poor child is very weak; it can hardly walk; it must have been ill. 8. My brother told me that you were not well. 9. You must have made a mistake, for I am very well; I never was better in (*de*) my life. 10. We should be sorry if you should do so. 11. You should be virtuous if you wish to be happy. 12. I told him (that) he ought to obey his teacher, but he would not listen to me. 13. Men should love their enemies, but generally they do not. 14. The little boy must have broken that stick; I saw him there. 15. I often used to go to see him when he lived in our city. 16. He says (that) it will rain. 17. He said (that) it would rain. 18. We cannot go away; it is raining. 19. No matter; I do not fear the rain. 20. How did you enjoy yourself yesterday?

XX b

1. Can it be possible that my father's watch is stolen (use: *on*)? 2. I could do that if I wished. 3. I could do that when I was young. 4. Could you tell me where *le Boulevard des Italiens* is? 5. I could not tell you (it); I have not been long in Paris. 6. Can it be true that he has done that? 7. One would say that you are [a] Parisian, you speak French so well. 8. Even if that were true, I should not go. 9. Even if it should not rain, I shall not go for a drive. 10. According to the newspapers, a great quantity of money was stolen (use: *on*). 11. By what he says, his neighbors are poor. 12. When I was in Europe, I saw a horse as big as an elephant. 13. Nonsense! You are joking. 14. Come! Come! (my) children, you are making too much noise. 15. Let us go away. 16. Go away. 17. I did not think he would know it. 18. If you will not do it, we shall not do it.

XXI a (§§ 254–267 *continued*)

The two kings *met* (each other) on the 13th of July in a vast plain between Warsaw (*Varsovie*) and Cracow (*Cracovie*). Augustus *had* nearly twenty-four thousand men; Charles *had* only ten thousand. At the first volley, the Duke of Holstein, who *commanded* the Swedish cavalry, *received* a cannon-shot in the back. The king *asked* if he *was* dead; he *was told* (use *on*) that he was (*que oui*); he *made* no reply; (some) tears *fell* from his eyes; he (*se*) *hid* his (*le*) face [for] a moment with his (*les*) hands; then he *rushed* into the midst of the enemy at the head of his guards.

The king of Poland *did* all that one *should* expect from a prince who *was fighting* for his crown; he himself *brought back* his troops three times to the charge; but he *fought* with his Saxons only; the Poles, who *formed* his right wing, *fled* at the beginning of the battle. Charles *won* a complete victory. He *did* not *stay* on the field of battle, but (*et*) *marched* direct to Cracow, pursuing the king of Poland, who *kept fleeing* before him.

XXII a (§§ 268–273*)

Je tiens à ce que vous appreniez le latin.	I am (most) anxious that you shall learn Latin.
Nous n'aimerions pas qu'on se moquât de nous.	We should not like to be made sport of.
Il me tarde que cela soit fait.	I am longing for that to be done.
Je voudrais bien que vous le fassiez.	I wish you would do it. I should like you to do it.

1. Our teacher said that he wished us to write our exercise. 2. If you wish to go to the city, you may (*pouvoir*) go (there), but if you wish us to go (there), we tell you plainly that we cannot. 3. I wish you to do your work before (the) breakfast. 4. Our friends wish us to stay with them this week. 5. My father is most anxious that I should learn Latin, but I don't like it. 6. Would you prefer that I should go to church this morning? 7. We should not like our friends to be made sport

* The impf. subj. is of limited use in the language of everyday life.

of. 8. You say that you are going to buy a house from (*à*) that man; take care lest he deceive you. 9. I am longing for my house to be finished. 10. I am anxious that he should come to see us when he visits Boston. 11. My teacher told me that I should write my exercise. 12. My father told me that he had seen you. 13. The law forbids that to be done. 14. These children must stay in; their parents have forbidden them to go out. 15. I shall give orders not to admit them (use *on*). 16. I did not ask that I should be answered (use *on*) before the others. 17. I shall avoid her speaking to me about it.

XXII b

1. The doctor ordered that he should be given no wine. 2. We do not ask that you should pay the money. 3. The rain hinders people (*on*) from going out to-day. 4. I wish you to know that he is my friend. 5. You approve of my coming back, do you not? 6. Yes, I did not wish you to go away. 7. It is better for the children to go to school. 8. What shall I say to that man? He has insulted me. 9. That makes no difference, he is not worthy of being answered (use *on*). 10. The doctor gave orders that my father should go out for a drive every day. 11. He has torn his book; he deserves to be punished (use *on*). 12. I should like you to go for a walk with me. 13. Weakness often hinders good intentions from being fulfilled. 14. I long for his return. 15. There is no more bread; I should like you to go and get some. 16. That man is most anxious that his children should go to school, but he is too poor to (*pour*) buy them books. 17. Take care that the dog does not bite you; he is very cross. 18. That young man is not very amiable; we should not like him to treat us as he has treated his father.

XXIII a (§§ 268–273 *continued*)

1. It is fitting that children should obey their parents. 2. It is good that men should sometimes undergo misfortunes. 3. It may be that he has returned, but I have not seen him. 4. It is natural that we should hate our enemies. 5. It is

getting late; it is time that we should go home. 6. He had to learn French, for he lived in France. 7. We are very glad that you have come. 8. We are very sorry that you did not come. 9. I am surprised that he said so, because he told me that he would not say so. 10. It is a pity that we cannot always be happy. 11. It is a shame for those young men to be so ignorant. 12. It is sad that a man like him should be so poor. 13. I fear he will commit some crime. 14. I am glad you are so well. 15. I am afraid my father is not well enough to (*pour*) go with us. 16. I wonder he did not come last night. 17. I know why he did not come; he was afraid it would rain.

XXIII b

1. He was not afraid it would rain; he was afraid a certain person would be there whom he did not wish to see. 2. I do not fear he will not go. 3. Are you not afraid he will be able to prevent your intentions from being fulfilled? 4. I doubt whether he will be able to come. 5. I do not deny that I am glad of your ill-fortune. 6. Do you doubt that he is an honest man? 7. Not at all; I know that he is an honest man; I have known him for twenty years. 8. I do not doubt that you will be able to fulfill all your intentions. 9. It seems he has not received [any] of my letters. 10. It cannot be that you are ignorant of his intentions. 11. How is your father? 12. He is very well; he is rarely ill. 13. It seems to me it will be dangerous if we do not follow his advice. 14. That child is afraid you will hurt him. 15. I am glad you did not hurt yourself when you fell. 16. We regret very much that we did not see you when you were in Paris. 17. Are you not afraid that you will tire of being in the country? 18. I am not afraid that I shall tire of being in the country.

XXIV a (§§ 268–273 *continued*)

1. Our neighbor is an honest man; I hope he will succeed. 2. I do not think he will succeed; he has not much ability. 3. We thought he would come to-day. 4. You told me that

you did not think he would go away, did you not? 5. Do you think we must believe what he says? 6. It is probable that we shall go away to-morrow. 7. It is not certain that our friends will come to-morrow. 8. Is it probable that you will go away to-day? 9. We are sure that we saw them yesterday. 10. Are you not sure that you saw them yesterday? 11. Do you think your father will go to France this summer? 12. It is probable he will go there. 13. It is certain that all men will die. 14. Is it certain that our friends will be there this evening? 15. Is it not certain that your neighbor will buy your house? 16. Does he imagine we shall do that merely to (*pour*) please him? 17. We are not sure that will please him.

XXIV b

1. Do you think you will go for a walk this evening? 2. Yes, I think I shall go out with my brother. 3. Give me the book which contains that beautiful story of which you were speaking. 4. Give me a book which contains some beautiful stories. 5. I should like to buy a house which would suit me better than this one. 6. I am looking for a grammar in which I can find better exercises. 7. I have a grammar which has better exercises. 8. Send me some clothes which I can wear in the house. 9. Has he a single friend who is true to him? 10. He has not a single friend who is true to him. 11. There is nobody here who can speak French. 12. I have nothing which is of value. 13. There are no houses here which are as large as those in the city. 14. There are few people here who have learned French. 15. It is the finest thing one can see. 16. That is the largest ship I have ever seen. 17. Whatever you do, you will not be able to persuade me that you are right. 18. Whoever you are, you will have to obey the law, as long as you are in this country.

XXV a (§§ 268–273 *continued*)

Que veut-il dire?	What does he **mean**?
On se fie à lui.	Men trust him. He is trusted.

Faites-moi savoir.	Send me word (let me know).
Je ne reçois plus de ses nouvelles.	I never hear from him now.
Il est très occupé.	He is very busy.
Il s'occupe de cela.	He takes an interest in that.

1. I have told him nothing which could influence him. 2. I know no book which pleases me better. 3. I want a house which will suit me better. 4. M. Jonnart is the richest man I know. 5. However good men may be, they do not escape (*à*) misfortune. 6. Let us go out for a walk before your father returns. 7. We rose this morning before the sun rose. 8. Will you not stay here until the weather is warm? 9. Oh, no; we must leave before it begins to be warm. 10. We are going to work until we go to bed. 11. You must always act so that men may respect you. 12. Tell the truth always, so that men may trust you. 13. He insulted me so that I put him out of doors. 14. That gentleman made a speech, but he spoke in such a way that one could not understand him. 15. I did not trust him, for fear that he might deceive me. 16. He passed our house before we had finished our breakfast. 17. I explained it to him, for fear he might not know what you meant.

XXV b

1. I cannot trust you, unless you explain to me what you mean. 2. In case you cannot come, will you be kind enough to send me word. 3. We shall send you our carriage, in case you need it. 4. In case what he says is true, we shall send you word. 5. Although the children have gone to bed, they have not yet gone to sleep. 6. Although you may not like that man, you must confess that he is an honest man. 7. Although we used to be good friends, I never hear from him now. 8. Not that he has forgotten me, but he is so much occupied with his business. 9. Far from his saying that he hates you, I assure you that he will say he loves you. 10. He gave her the money without my knowing it. 11. Even if he had told me that he liked me, I should not have believed it. 12. I cannot go out, without my dog following me. 13. If we are there and see him, we shall tell him what you say. 14. Although he is far

away, I hear from him occasionally. 15. Not that we take no interest in your enterprise, but we are so busy with our own work that we can't think of anything else. 16. We are at the wrong door; would you be kind enough to tell us where we are, so that we can find where our friends live? 17. We shall rise early to-morrow morning, so as to be at the station before our friends start.

XXVI a (§§ 268–273 *continued*)

1. Would to God he were here! 2. Let her be silent if she cannot explain what she wishes. 3. The Frenchmen shout "Hurrah for France!" 4. He doubted whether there is a God. 5. I should like you to write me a letter when you are absent. 6. If his father should say so, he would have to do it. 7. I was most anxious that he should succeed in his enterprise. 8. We were not willing that you should go away without our seeing you. 9. His father gave orders that he should be taken to school. 10. The doctor forbade that the patient should go for a walk. 11. I was longing for that to be done. 12. He would not permit it to be done. 13. The rain hindered us all day from going out. 14. It was necessary that we should go away before the others came. 15. It was better that we should be here without their knowing it. 16. I was afraid that he had said too much. 17. I doubted whether he would be able to pay that price. 18. I was very sorry that we had not been able to go for a walk together; I am sure we should have enjoyed ourselves.

XXVI b

1. Our friends were glad that you had visited them before they left for France. 2. He told me he would go away unless he succeeded better. 3. We did not say you should write the letter; you may do as you wish. 4. Did you fear he would go away without coming to see you? 5. My father thought you would come, but my mother thought you would not come. 6. It was impossible that he should not be mistaken; he trusts those who are not worthy of confidence. 7. We are not sure

they will come. 8. We waited until they came. 9. We have taken care that they should not see us. 10. No man has ever lived who could equal him in prudence. 11. He was the noblest man I have ever known. 12. I left Russia when I was a boy; I sought a country where I might be more free. 13. Did he ever have a friend who was faithful to him? 14. Show me a house which will suit me better than this one. 15. I have never seen anything which suited me better. 16. Why did your father come? 17. He came in case I should be ill. 18. Although he was very ill, he would not go home.

XXVII a (§§ 274–275)

Je lui ai dit son fait.	I (have) told him what I thought of him.
Nous nous plaisons à la ville.	We like it (like to be) in the city.
Il se plaît à la campagne.	He likes it (likes to be) in the country.
Qu'il fasse beau, ou qu'il pleuve. **S'il fait beau, ou qu'il pleuve.**	Whether it is fine, or whether it rains.
Quand même ce serait vrai.	Even if it were true. Even were it true.
Il s'en plaint.	He complains of it.

1. If it does not rain, will you go for a walk to-morrow morning? 2. No, even if it should not rain, I must go down town to-morrow morning on business. 3. If it were to rain to-day, we should not go down town. 4. If I had known that you were in town, I should have gone to see you. 5. Had it not been so warm to-day, I should have gone away. 6. If the Germans had not taken Alsace, the French would not have hated them so much. 7. If I come here next year, I shall bring my brother with me. 8. If I were you, I should tell him what I think of him. 9. If I am present when he arrives, I shall tell him what I told you. 10. If it is cold in winter, we go to (*en*) Florida; if it is mild, we remain in (*dans*) the north. 11. If my father likes it in the country, he will stay there till (the) autumn. 12. If I should like it in the city, I shall stay there always. 13. I can never trust that boy; if he should tell me anything, I should not believe him.

14. Whether it rains or is fine, we shall come. 15. He is a good (*brave*) man, if there ever was one. 16. If that man were as rich as Crœsus, he would not be satisfied. 17. See what that man has done to me! He is a scoundrel, if there ever was one.

XXVII b

1. If I should go to sleep before you come, be good enough to wake me. 2. Will you not go down town with me? 3. I cannot go, I am not well; if I were better, I should go willingly. 4. If he had risen at six o'clock, he would not have missed the train. 5. Yes, he would (*si! si!*). He would have been late, even if he had risen at half-past five, for the train left at a quarter past five. 6. I have been told that your friend has offended you; is it true? 7. No, but even if it were true, I should pardon (it to) him. 8. Did our friend tell you last evening whether he was coming to-morrow? 9. Yes, he told me that he would come. 10. That man told me that he had a thousand dollars. 11. Were he to swear it on his honor, I should not believe it. 12. If you meet him, and he should ask you where I am, do not tell (it to) him. 13. Whether he comes or not, (that) makes no difference to me. 14. If I were he, I should tell that scoundrel what I thought of him. 15. If we liked it in the country, we should stay there. 16. If he had insulted me like that, I should have kicked him out. 17. Even were you to hate me, I should not complain (of it). 18. I should have liked it in the country if it had not rained without cease (*sans cesse*).

XXVIII a (§§ 276–285)

Je vais faire { **une promenade.** / **un tour de promenade.** }	I am going for a walk.
Je voudrais le faire.	I should like to do it.
Je voudrais qu'il le fasse (**fit**).	I should like him to do it. / I wish him to do it.
Il fait beau marcher (**se promener**).	The walking is good. / It is good walking.
Vous avez beau dire (**parler**).	It is useless for you to speak. / You may say what you like.

J'ai cru voir passer quelqu'un.	I thought I saw some one go by.
Je les ai écoutés chanter.	I listened to them sing(ing).
Il a pensé mourir.	He was near dying.
Je pense (songe) à le faire.	I am thinking about doing it.
Il ne fait que de venir (arriver).	He has just come.
Il veut faire à sa tête.	He will have his own way.
J'aimerais autant m'en aller.	I would as soon go.
Faites-le monter.	Send (show) him up (stairs).

1. Let us go for a walk this morning; the walking is good, and it is cool. 2. Living is always dear in Paris. 3. Are the children coming? 4. Yes, I saw them coming when I was on the hill. 5. I should like to speak to the doctor when he comes. 6. I should like you to speak to my father when you see him. 7. When do you expect to be there? 8. I expect to be there in a fortnight. 9. He might say what he liked, nobody would believe him. 10. It was useless for us to speak, nobody would listen to us. 11. I like better to live in the country than in the city. 12. My friends have left me, and I know not what to do. 13. I think it is going to be warm to-day. 14. My father thought he heard some one go by, but I think he was mistaken. 15 My father was very ill last year; he was near dying. 16. My brother's little boy fell into the water, and was near being drowned. 17. I was thinking about going to see you.

XXVIII b

1. I hope I shall see you when you come. 2. I hope he will come to see me when he is here. 3. Did you see my sister at the ball? 4. I thought I saw her, but I am not sure (of it). 5. I am thinking about writing him a letter, but I do not like writing letters, and so I delay (it) from week to week. 6. I should like better to go than to stay. 7. It would be better to go than to stay. 8. Come and see us whenever you wish. 9. My master has just come; after he has dined I shall tell him that you are here. 10. I hope I shall be able to go for a walk with you to-morrow. 11. I hope you will not go away before I have seen you. 12. We ought to go and see your father before he leaves. 13. It is useless for you to say any-

thing; he will have his own way. 14. You may say what you like; young people will have their own way. 15. I would as soon go as stay. 16. I am not very well this morning; I am going to send for the doctor. 17. The doctor has just come; shall I send him up? 18. We thought we heard some one go by, but we must have been mistaken.

XXIX a (§§ 276–285 *continued*)

Il est à travailler.	He is busy working.
J'y suis accoutumé.	I am used to it.
Il finira mal.	He will come to a bad end.
Se plaire à mal faire.	To delight in evil- (wrong-) doing.
Il tarde à venir.	He is long in coming.
Tenez-vous (beaucoup) à y aller?	Are you (very) anxious to go there?
Je n'y tiens pas.	I am not anxious (for it).

1. Continue reading until you are called. 2. We are busy writing our exercises. 3. I have my work to do. 4. Our teacher taught us to do that. 5. Will you help me to do my work? 6. I should like to help you, but I have work to do also. 7. I have difficulty in believing that he has done that. 8. How old is that child? 9. He is two years old; he is beginning to talk. 10. The servant is busy washing dishes in the kitchen. 11. We are occupied to-day in writing to our friends. 12. He spends his time in reading novels. 13. He is not lazy; he sets about writing his lesson as soon as his teacher tells (it to) him. 14. Do you not get tired (in) reading those difficult works? 15. A little, but I am rather used to it. 16. He lost a great deal in selling his house. 17. That boy persists in reading bad books; he will come to a bad end. 18. The wicked delight in evil-doing.

XXIX b

1. Our friends invited us to stay with them. 2. I should like to know where my mother is; she is long in coming. 3. I wish she would come; I long to see her. 4. Are you anxious to have it to-day? 5. Oh no, I am not anxious for that; but I must have it to-morrow. 6. Are those apples good to eat?

7. We are looking for a maid of all work. 8. That young lady sings and dances charmingly. 9. There are five bedrooms in that house. 10. That poor little girl has hurt her hand; she is crying pitifully. 11. Our neighbor has died; his family is to be pitied. 12. That young man seems to delight in wrong-doing. 13. Are you not very anxious to see your friends? 14. Yes, I should like to see them; I have not seen them for a long time. 15. That is very difficult to do; I should like you to help me. 16. I am always ready to help you. 17. I am glad to know that you are not the only one to say so. 18. That scoundrel did not succeed in deceiving us.

XXX a (§§ 276–285 *continued*)

Il fait semblant de dormir.	He pretends to be asleep.
Bien faire, mal faire. / **Faire le bien, faire le mal.**	To do well, to do evil (wrong).
Attention!	Look out! Be careful!

1. Our teacher tells us that it is easy to read that book. 2. I am ashamed to say that we are mistaken. 3. He pretends to be asleep. 4. She pretends to be reading. 5. It is difficult to say whether we are right or wrong. 6. He is wrong to believe that we are his enemies. 7. Will you permit me to go to bed? 8. Promise us not to go away without telling us (it). 9. I am very glad to say that I shall be able to come and see you at once. 10. We are sorry to tell you that we cannot come. 11. Cease to do evil; learn to do well. 12. Hasten to finish your work before leaving. 13. Let us hasten to leave, or we shall be late. 14. I am afraid to speak, although I know it is my place to tell them that they have done wrong. 15. He commenced by telling me that he was a rich man's son, and he finished by asking me to lend him five dollars. 16. Be careful! Don't fall! 17. If you should happen to see him, tell him that I shall not go away before seeing him. 18. I have just seen him, and he told me to tell you that he would come to-morrow. 19. Although he promised me to stop reading such books, he only deceived me. 20. He pretends to be good, but he knows (that) he is not (it).

XXX b

1. We (*on*) should not live to eat. 2. It is too cold to go for a walk. 3. It is not cool enough to go for a walk. 4. I rose early this morning in order to be able to do my work before going down town. 5. We learn French in order to be able to read French books. 6. After writing our exercises we went for a walk. 7. That little boy was punished for having lied. 8. That young girl is much to be pitied; her father and mother are dead. 9. Before going we should like to see you. 10. We should like to see you before you go. 11. We saw those houses being built. 12. He did that without telling us (it). 13. We went away without his seeing us. 14. It was very windy, and we would not go out for a sail for fear of being drowned. 15. Although he made me many compliments at first, he finally insulted me. 16. Your father has just come; shall I tell him to wait here, or should you like to see him at once? 17. I have not time to see him now; I shall try to see him to-morrow. 18. We cannot hinder him from doing so.

XXXI a (§§ 286–287)

Cette femme me fait pitié.	I am sorry for that woman.
Il s'est fâché contre moi.	He got angry with me.
Être bien portant.	To be well.

1. Knowing so many things, those gentlemen must be very learned. 2. The field of battle was covered with the dead and dying. 3. I am sorry for that poor woman; she is always ill. 4. In neglecting her duties, she shows herself careless. 5. Their misfortunes went on increasing from day to day. 6. Don't you see them coming? 7. Yes; there they come! 8. Man is the only speaking creature. 9. Frenchmen will say (pres.) that, generally speaking, Frenchmen are better than Englishmen. 10. How happy those peasants are! They are always singing their beautiful songs as they work. 11. One's appetite comes while eating; "but," said the Gascon, "I have been eating two hours, and it has not come yet." 12. I like reading, but I prefer hunting and fishing. 13. Where are the children?

14. There they are, playing under the trees. 15. Our neighbor's son has made astonishing progress at (the) college. 16. The sewing-machine is an American invention, but there are many of them in Europe now. 17. Our friends were very much astonished at our coming; they thought we were in Europe.

XXXI b

1. As we were taking a walk this morning, we met the old gentleman who used to live next door. 2. Our neighbors are speaking of going away, but I do not think they will. 3. That young man went away without saying good-bye; he must have got angry with me. 4. That prince has powerful enemies. 5. That lady, being ill, has not come to-day. 6. Those children, having finished their work, have gone out. 7. Those so-called learned men, who really know nothing, are very tiresome. 8. Who is that man going past? 9. That is the would-be nobleman. 10. That country has the most powerful fleet in the world. 11. That little girl, having been ill, cannot go to school. 12. Our friends, being tired, have gone to bed. 13. Seriously speaking, that young man is not worthy of being respected. 14. Those children appear to be well. 15. If the population of the towns goes on increasing, and that of the country diminishing, we shall probably have great misfortunes. 16. I saw him coming down the street before I met you. 17. While traveling, I saw many astonishing things. 18. Did you not see my brothers going out?

XXXII a (§§ 288–292)

Elle s'y est plu.	She liked it there.
Vous êtes-vous bien amusé?	Did you have a good time?
Elles se sont donné la main.	They have shaken hands.
Elles se sont brouillées.	They have fallen out.
Les grandes chaleurs qu'il a fait.	The great heat that there has been.

1. That is the old lady whom I saw fall in the street yesterday. 2. She fell in front of Mr. Simon's, but she did not hurt herself much. 3. Our friends have gone away, but they will

come back to-morrow. 4. Your mother has been in the country; did she like it there? 5. She enjoyed herself (there) very much; she intends to go back again soon. 6. Your sister and mother have come. 7. You will find inclosed [a] copy of the contract which we have signed. 8. The ten hours that he has slept have not been enough to rest him. 9. The children had a good time to-day at the picnic. 10. Where is the servant? 11. I have let her go to see her friends. 12. Those are the three miles that I ran to (*pour*) fetch the doctor. 13. Those are the dangers we have incurred to save our country. 14. She remembered the dangers I had incurred. 15. Did those two ladies shake hands? 16. No; they did not even look at each other. 17. Those ladies have written each other many letters. 18. There are the letters I wrote.

XXXII b

1. Those young ladies have fallen out, and have burnt the letters they wrote to each other. 2. They have said good-bye to each other. 3. They have lost what they have given each other. 4. The great heat that there has been has killed the crops. 5. The person I asked (*prier*) to sing will not sing. 6. What difficulty we have had to remember what you told us! 7. The crops are poor this year; the great heat has killed them. 8. That is the house which we had built. 9. How many houses they have built! 10. How many beautiful houses they have had built! 11. That is the lady we heard sing at the concert last evening. 12. Those are the children we saw playing this morning. 13. Those are the beautiful songs we heard sung at the concert. 14. Do you remember the houses we saw being built last year? 15. There is a letter which I forgot to put in the post. 16. He has read all the books he could. 17. There are the books we sent for. 18. We have told them to go out. 19. Those are the books which I thought he would read. 20. The doors were kept closed while the festivities were held. 21. What a fine day it was! 22. The more people arrived, the better the king enjoyed himself. 23. The generals (that) he sent for were all there.

XXXIII a (§§ 293–299)

Il se croit honnête homme.	He thinks he is an honest man.
Il ne s'en est pas aperçu.	He did not notice it.
Ce chapeau ne lui va pas.	That hat does not fit him.
Il n' (ne nous) est pas permis de . . .	We are not permitted to . . .
Je le lui ai payé.	I paid him for it.
Je l'en ai remercié.	I thanked him for it.
Je pense à vous.	I am thinking of you.
Que pensez-vous de cela?	What do you think of that?

1. We shall make them do their work. 2. They (*on*) have made her suffer great ills. 3. Show them upstairs when they come. 4. I have seen the children play. 5. We have seen him play that part. 6. He was born [a] poet. 7. He has become [a] soldier. 8. What will become of us! 9. I believe he is an honest man. 10. He thinks he is [a] scholar. 11. I know he is [a] scholar. 12. We should not slander our neighbors. 13. I perceived their dejection as soon as I came in. 14. I did not notice it. 15. We cannot do without our books; we are going to use them to-morrow. 16. I remember the sorrows you made me undergo. 17. These gloves do not fit me. 18. That young lady's gloves do not fit her. 19. I shall look for a house which suits me better (see § 270, 1). 20. That house does not suit our friends. 21. I cannot trust him; he often lies. 22. The son resembles his father. 23. We are not permitted to leave the city. 24. The law does not permit children to marry. 25. The king pardons him his crime.

XXXIII b

1. Did you pay the tailor for your coat? 2. I have not paid him for it yet. 3. What are you looking at? 4. I am looking at those men working in the field. 5. Wait for me till I come. 6. I think of my friends who have gone away. 7. Do you think of the money you have lost? 8. I do not. 9. Shall you be at the ball this evening? 10. I do not know; that depends on you. 11. Did you thank him for having lent you his book? 12. I did. 13. He stole that watch from his father; what do you think of that? 14. He is laughing at us.

15. Those men were playing cards. 16. Those young ladies play on the violin. 17. You believe me, do you not? 18. Yes, I believe you. 19. That old lady believes in ghosts. 20. He loves and obeys his parents. 21. He missed the train, did he not? 22. I am short of money this morning; I cannot pay you. 23. He fails in his duty when he does not pay his debts. 24. Have you asked your father for money? 25. I have not asked him for any.

XXXIV a (§§ 300–306)

1. Tell the servant to put the frying-pan on the stove. 2. That man is a regular dupe. 3. He is not a friend; he is a mere acquaintance. 4. He was received with all the honors. 5. That poet is always singing of his first love. 6. The errors of men are numerous. 7. The old man has (*faire*) a nap after dinner. 8. He paid me a large sum of money. 9. My memory is not good; give me a memorandum of that affair. 10. Steam makes the steamer go. 11. That man and his wife make a happy couple. 12. I have Hugo's works at home. 13. The works of the sculptor Barye were exhibited in Paris in 1889. 14. Old people are generally less thoughtless than young people. 15. Those people are not all good. 16. All those people were present. 17. All good people are worthy of respect. 18. All the clever people in (*de*) the town were present at the ball. 19. Happy [are] the people who do not love vice. 20. All the young men of the village were present at the celebration.

XXXV a (§§ 307–314)

Tomber à genoux.	To fall on one's knees.
Cela ne vaut rien.	That is useless.
Le petit bonhomme.	The brave little fellow.

1. That man has broken his two arms. 2. The 'ifs' and the 'buts' are often convenient words. 3. The criminal fell on his knees before the king. 4. That little boy likes to pick up pebbles. 5. The generals have good horses. 6. We read the newspapers before going down town [in] the morning.

7. Frenchmen like carnivals and balls. 8. Our neighbor has some beautiful corals at home. 9. The Minister of Public Works ordered railways to be constructed. 10. His grandfathers are dead. 11. Our ancestors were great men who left [behind them] many noble works. 12. The poor boy had tears in his (*aux*) eyes when he was told that his bird was dead. 13. That painter makes beautiful skies. 14. Several Te Deums were sung this year in that church. 15. Give me two postage stamps, if you please. 16. We had some delightful private interviews. 17. Those corkscrews are useless. 18. Those lamp shades are very pretty. 19. Give me a toothpick, if you please. 20. Do not condemn me on rumors. 21. The two Corneilles were dramatic authors. 22. All the Ribots were present. 23. I have two Molières at home. 24. The Bourbons have been very unfortunate; I pity them. 25. I saw the school-boys marching yesterday; the brave little fellows were really fine-looking. 26. The noblemen of France have suffered much during this century. 27. There are two gentlemen and two ladies waiting for you. 28. Good morning, ladies; how do you do? 29. I have visited all the county towns of that part of France. 30. Many of Molière's works are masterpieces.

XXXVI a (§§ 315–335)

1. He showed remarkable courage in struggling with his difficulties. 2. We used to enjoy good health when we lived in France. 3. Do you not like music? 4. I do, when it is good. 5. Gold and silver are abundant in that country. 6. The rich have much gold and silver. 7. Does that young lady know Greek? 8. She does not, but she knows French and German well. 9. Does your mother speak French? 10. Yes, she speaks French and German well. 11. We have French and German books in our library. 12. Have you any good sugar for sale, sir? 13. Have you any of my books in your library? 14. Have you any of the good wine you bought last year? 15. We have no pens and no paper. 16. They have no more money, and so they must stay at home. 17. That is not wine; it is water. 18. It is not

money I ask you for, but friendship. 19. Why do you complain; have you not friends? 20. I should like to buy a pound of tea; have you any of the good tea which you ordered from China?

XXXVI b

1. I shall give you something good if you come to see me. 2. He promised me something very beautiful, but he never gave it to me. 3. Many people believe that he will come to a bad end. 4. Many others believe that he will succeed well. 5. Most people are ignorant of their true interests. 6. We were absent most of the time. 7. Silk dresses and gold watches are not always necessary. 8. Horses are animals which are useful to men. 9. Queen Victoria had then been reigning a long time. 10. The President of the French Republic has signed the treaty. 11. King Louis XIV is often called the Great. 12. That old man has a long beard. 13. Give me your hand, and I shall help you to rise. 14. We shook hands before we parted. 15. She has not taken off her hat and gloves; she says she cannot stay. 16. I have toothache and earache, so I cannot go out. 17. That little girl has blue eyes and blond hair. 18. I had my hair cut before starting. 19. What is the matter with you, my little boy? 20. My hands and feet are cold.

XXXVII a (§§ 315–335 *continued*)

Combien les avez-vous payés?	How much did you pay for them?
Je les ai payés dix francs la douzaine.	I paid ten francs a dozen for them.
Il part pour la France.	He is starting for France.
Dans le nord de la France.	In the north of France.

1. You have some very fine pears; how much did you pay for them? 2. I paid two cents apiece for them. 3. That is not dear; I thought that pears would not sell so cheap this year. 4. Carpenters are earning fifteen francs a day at present. 5. We do not go to school on Thursdays. 6. He will come on Saturday. 7. You were wrong to come on Wednesday; you

should always come on Thursday. 8. Did I step on your toe? I ask your pardon. 9. Are you going on horseback or on foot? 10. How we love spring! 11. In spring nature awakes from its long repose. 12. In winter there is sometimes much snow in France. 13. Those gentlemen are Frenchmen. 14. Our neighbor is a carpenter. 15. His son has become a distinguished physician. 16. Charles the First, King of England, was beheaded. 17. She was born at Marseilles, a city of Southern France.

XXXVII b

1. We were without friends and money. 2. Those children have neither father nor mother. 3. He will come home at Michaelmas. 4. Those ladies dress in French style. 5. Have you ever read Tasso's great poem? 6. Yes, and Ariosto's also. 7. We are to start for Europe to-morrow. 8. Normandy is a province of France. 9. Did you ever live in Paris? 10. Yes, I lived a long time in France, and in England too. 11. My brother has lived in China, but he is living now in Japan. 12. The United States is the most important country in North America. 13. Havre is an important seaport of the north of France. 14. New Orleans is a large city of the United States. 15. French wines are celebrated in all parts of the world. 16. That traveler comes from Africa, and is going to South America. 17. My cousin is in (*à*) Madagascar. 18. Ladies, you are welcome; we are always glad to receive you. 19. Our neighbor goes to the city every other day.

XXXVIII a (§§ 336–358)

1. That little boy's grandmother has given him a knife. 2. That little girl is very foolish. 3. I know those old ladies well; they are our old neighbors. 4. What a fine-looking man! Do you know him? 5. There are some beautiful trees! 6. The prince addressed him most flattering words. 7. That statesman is celebrated for (*par*) his liberal principles. 8. There are, according to Catholic doctrine, seven capital sins. 9. The man and his wife were both old. 10. The

French and Italian nations are often called Latin nations. 11. Those flowers smell sweet, do they not? 12. That large building is the school for (*de*) deaf-mutes. 13. He left the door wide open when he went out this morning. 14. The newly married couple had just left the church. 15. My mother had blue eyes and light auburn hair. 16. When I was young, I used to go barefoot to school.

XXXVIII b

1. That lady looks kind. 2. A pound sterling is worth twenty-five francs. 3. He is getting richer and richer. 4. He is richer than people (*on*) believe. 5. The older one is, the wiser one should be. 6. My brother is older than I by (*de*) four years. 7. The richer one part of the population becomes, the poorer the rest often become. 8. Your house is small, but ours is smaller still. 9. That man is bad, but his brother is still worse. 10. The dearer those articles are, the less of them we shall be able to buy. 11. Our house is good, but yours is better. 12. His most intimate friends knew nothing of his good fortune. 13. Men are often the most unhappy when they ought to be the most happy. 14. Is that not a splendid sight? 15. Yes, it is most beautiful! 16. The richest men in the world are not always the happiest. 17. She is shorter than I by three inches.

XXXIX a (§§ 336–358 *continued*)

1. You are all welcome, ladies; how kind you are to (*de*) come to see me! 2. What a pretty little girl! What is her name? 3. There were black horses and white ones in the procession. 4. Will you give me some cold water to (*pour*) drink? 5. Whose is that broken cane? 6. Our neighbor is not an educated man. 7. Our friends live in a beautiful white house behind the town. 8. The English language is spoken in all parts of the world. 9. I have just seen that pretended nobleman go by. 10. We have just been at a political meeting, where we listened to a very long speech. 11. My dear child, you are too young to (§ 282, 2) wear dear

dresses! 12. I love that gentleman; he is so kind to children. 13. Are you not ready to start? You are very slow in dressing. 14. I am very glad to see you; when are you coming to see me? 15. I am very sorry to say that I have no time to visit you before I go away. 16. We are charmed with the beautiful present you gave (*faire*) us. 17. You are not angry with me, are you? 18. I do not like that man; he is too severe with his children. 19. That is a nice little girl; she is so polite to everybody. 20. That little boy is very clever at history and arithmetic. 21. That army is weak in numbers (*en nombre*). 22. We must be charitable to everybody. 23. Living languages are more useful than dead languages. 24. We must not confound the verbal adjectives with the present participles. 25. That young man is the living image of his father. 26. The more learned that man becomes, the less generous he becomes.

XL a (§§ 359–373)

1. Are there any good pens in the box? 2. There are none. 3. Do you know that old man? 4. I know him and his brother. 5. Do you know that man and his wife? 6. We know both him and her. 7. We know him only. 8. Did you see my father and mother? 9. We saw her only. 10. Are you going to give them some money? 11. I have already given them some. 12. Will you give me some apples? 13. I shall give you and him some. 14. Have you spoken to my cousin of your plan? 15. I have spoken of it to her and her mother. 16. Will you have the goodness to introduce us to your mother? 17. I shall have great pleasure in introducing you to her. 18. I was thinking of you when you came in. 19. Do you think of me when I am far away? 20. Yes, I always think of you. 21. Whose is that house? 22. It is mine. 23. As soon as the child saw his mother, he ran to her. 24. Are you that young man's sister? 25. I am.

XL b

1. Are you satisfied, madam? 2. I am. 3. Are you an American, sir? 4. I am. 5. Are you the gentlemen we met

yesterday? 6. We are. 7. I shall go for the doctor if you wish. 8. I shall do the work if it is necessary. 9. That man is richer than we are. 10. Why do you tell me to be brave? I am so already. 11. He carried the day over all his rivals. 12. Tell me where he lives, if you know. 13. He is a Frenchman, and I am one (*le*) too. 14. Do you know the Robinsons? 15. Yes, they are very fastidious people, and I do not like to have [anything] to do with them. 16. There is the box; put the pens into it. 17. Go there, my child; do not stay here. 18. Do not go there, my daughter; you will hurt yourself. 19. Give them some, my little boy. 20. He is a bad man; I cannot trust him. 21. The earth about those flowers is dry; throw some water there, my daughter. 22. Let us not go away; let them laugh at us, if they will. 23. The children wish to go to the celebration; let us take them there. 24. That boy has apples and pears; let us ask him for some. 25. The boy has your knife; take it away from him.

XLI a (§§ 359–373 *continued*)

1. My father did not hurt himself, but he had a narrow escape. 2. Every one for himself is too often the maxim of men. 3. One should not always be thinking of oneself. 4. The selfish live only for themselves. 5. Do you need money? 6. I do. 7. Do you come from London? 8. We do. 9. I cannot understand why he has a grudge against me. 10. However that may be, it is all over with him. 11. Have you any money? 12. I have, but I should like to have more. 13. How many apples have you? 14. I have six. 15. Here are some fine pears; do you wish any? 16. Yes, I should like some, for I have none. 17. Switzerland is my country; I love its blue sky and free institutions. 18. I planted this apple tree; I hope I shall eat its fruit. 19. Do you ever think of your country when you are in foreign countries? 20. When I am far away, I always think of it. 21. My brother has gone home, and I am going too. 22. I see a crowd of people in the street; what is the matter? 23. Were you ever in Europe? 24. I never was.

XLI b

1. The doctor is at home; shall I send for him? 2. There they are; go and get them. 3. There is some water; give us some, for we are thirsty. 4. Do not give them any; they do not need any. 5. Where are the children? 6. They are coming up the street. 7. Do not listen to them; they are making sport of you. 8. There is my hat; give it to me, if you please. 9. That is my hat; do not give it to him. 10. Let us go away; it is getting late. 11. If you have any money, give me some. 12. He gives himself some, but he will not give us any. 13. Take us there. 14. Give it to us; do not give it to them. 15. You bother me, naughty dog. Go away. 16. I saw him, and gave him the money. 17. They are worthy people; I love and admire them. 18. Our duty to our parents is to love and obey them. 19. It is I who was there. 20. My father and I were not there. 21. What were you and he doing? 22. He was writing, and I was reading. 23. He has a house of his own. 24. You and he were there, were you not? 25. There is the box; I should like to know whether there is anything in it.

XLII a (§§ 374–377)

On lui a coupé un bras.	They cut off one of his arms.
Se couper à la main.	To cut one's hand.
Elle lui a fermé la porte au nez.	She shut the door in his face.
Cela lui a fait venir l'eau à la bouche.	That made his mouth water.
Cette nuit; de toute la nuit.	Last night; all night.

1. My father and yours will soon be here. 2. I have your books and my own. 3. Our friends are coming by the railway; yours are coming by the steamer. 4. My brother and sister have gone away; they will not be back till (*avant*) Wednesday next. 5. One should not fail to (*de*) pay one's debts. 6. I had my hair cut this morning; I am afraid I shall catch a cold. 7. The duke was presented to the queen, and he kissed her hand. 8. She has cut her finger. 9. I shall love him as long as my heart beats. 10. It was so warm that I

could not close my eyes (*de*) all night. 11. Close your eyes, and open your mouth. 12. He shuts his eyes to the light. 13. He was walking [with] his eyes closed; he fell and broke his arm. 14. I have my hands full; I cannot help you. 15. I went to see him, but he shut the door in my face. 16. It is a very cold morning; will you not warm your hands? 17. Thank you; my hands are not cold. 18. That clumsy fellow stepped on my toe, and he hurt me very much.

XLII b

1. My head aches this morning; I did not close my eyes last night. 2. The sight of those beautiful apples made my mouth water. 3. He stood there [with] his arms folded, awaiting his fate like a brave soldier. 4. As long as my heart beats, I shall never forget you. 5. If they come here, we shall shut the door in their face. 6. Did you see those poor children? Those beautiful pears made their mouths water. 7. Let us hope that the law has not lost its force in this country. 8. He has a watch of his own. 9. Whom do you mean; his father or her father? 10. I mean *her* father. 11. This house is his, not yours. 12. They lost their lives fighting for their (*la*) country. 13. Negroes have dark skins and large mouths. 14. One of my friends who is a doctor told me the following story. 15. I am going to take away these books of yours. 16. The difference between mine and thine is not always easy to determine. 17. I love very much these books of mine. 18. They cut off my finger.

XLIII a (§§ 378–388)

1. I have never read that book, but I have read this one, and I like it very much. 2. These houses are not so fine as those. 3. You should not eat in that way. 4. Have patience, I shall be (pres.) there this moment. 5. Those who do wrong will be punished. 6. He of whom you were speaking yesterday has arrived. 7. Which (*Lequel*) of those horses do you like best? 8. I like the one you bought better than your brother's, but I like my own best. 9. This house and the one

in which our neighbors live will be sold to-morrow. 10. Our house and our neighbor's are both (*en*) brick [houses]. 11. These facts, and those discovered since that time, prove that, although he was a great scholar, he was wrong. 12. I saw the man (*celui*) last evening who wanted to buy my horse. 13. Who are those two gentlemen? 14. This is Mr. Perrichon, and that is Mr. Poirier. 15. You are looking for apples; very well, will you take these or those? 16. I will take these; those are too small. 17. How (*Combien*) is butter selling to-day?

XLIII b

1. That sells at two francs a pound, and this, which is finer, at two francs fifty centimes. 2. Gambetta and Hugo were distinguished men; the former was an orator, the latter a poet. 3. That is a fine horse! How much is he worth? 4. Why do these people not reply when we speak to them? 5. They are Russians; they do not understand you. 6. Who did that? 7. It was John who did it. 8. What time is it? 9. It is half-past ten. 10. What day of the month is it? 11. To-day is the tenth. 12. Is that the house of which you spoke to me? 13. No, it is the next one. 14. Who is that lady? 15. She is the lady who lives next door. 16. What I fear is that he will never come back. 17. It is not that he is losing (§ 271, 5) his money, but he is destroying his health also. 18. It is time to go home.

XLIV a (§§ 378–388 *continued*)

C'est une belle chose que de protéger les faibles.	It is a fine thing to protect the weak.
Ce sont des qualités nécessaires pour régner que la douceur et la fermeté.	Mildness and firmness are necessary qualities for ruling.
Il a cela de bon.	He has this good thing about him.

1. It is they who have done it. 2. It was kind of you to help (*secourir*) those poor people. 3. You can do it; it is easy. 4. That was not kind of you; you should have allowed me to do it. 5. You are rich; it is easy for you to say so.

6. It is a pity that we did not know it sooner. 7. It is unfortunate that he did not come yesterday. 8. My father told me you were here; that is why I came. 9. It is to be feared that the traveler has died of hunger. 10. It is to be desired that those misfortunes will never happen. 11. What we were speaking of has happened. 12. What I am thinking of is the way of preventing that misfortune. 13. What he says is true. 14. It's a fine thing, (is) money! 15. It is not to you that I speak. 16. He has lost all his money, which is sad.

XLIV b

1. What a beautiful thing is virtue! 2. It is money that he wishes. 3. He is a fine (*brave*) young man (is) John! 4. It would be a good thing to go away. 5. It is a fine thing to love virtue. 6. Health and good sense are qualities necessary for succeeding in the world. 7. You are the one who did that. 8. Love is the strongest of all passions. 9. This does not belong to me, but that does. 10. Give me this; keep that for yourself. 11. He has this good thing about him, that he always tells the truth. 12. What a lazy beast; and yet he thinks that he works! 13. Did he give you back your pencil? 14. No, but that does not matter; I have another here. 15. It is difficult to translate the word 'that' into French. 16. I am sure that that 'that' that that man uses is superfluous.

XLV a (§§ 389–402)

1. Whom did you see yesterday? 2. I saw him who was with you the day before yesterday. 3. I told you already what my reasons are. 4. What sort of weather is it this morning? 5. I think it will be fine. 6. I do not know to which of those men we were speaking. 7. What fine weather! I hope it will continue until we leave. 8. Who is that? 9. It is the man I sold my house to. 10. What was the matter this morning? I heard a great noise in the street. 11. What were you speaking of to that man you met? 12. I was speaking to him of what we were discussing yesterday. 13. Scoundrel

that you are, if I catch you, I'll give you what you deserve. 14. What I complain of is that you make no progress in your studies. 15. I do not understand you; will you explain to me clearly what you mean? 16. What has become of that young gentleman with whom I saw you? 17. I don't know what has become of him; I have not seen him lately. 18. Which of those ladies did you see? 19. I saw the one that was here yesterday. 20. What are you thinking of? 21. I am thinking of what we are going to do to-morrow. 22. What did your father ask you to do? 23. I have done what he asked me to do.

XLV b

1. The gentleman whose son was visiting us last year will come himself next year. 2. The lady whose daughter has just been married will spend some weeks with us next summer. 3. The people of whom I speak would never do such a thing. 4. I who am your friend tell you so, and you ought to believe it. 5. It was we who gave them their liberty, and yet to-day they are our enemies. 6. He has gone away and, what is worse, he has not paid his debts. 7. That is very strange! I sent him a letter, and yet he says he never received it. 8. To whom are you speaking, sir? 9. It is to you I am speaking, and I want (*voudrais*) you to pay attention to what I say. 10. The house they are coming out of belongs to my father. 11. The people of the village from which he came were very glad to be rid of him. 12. The gentleman for whose house I offered such a high price has bought another. 13. The cause for which those soldiers fought was the deliverance of their country. 14. The man in whom I trust will not deceive me. 15. That child is deaf and dumb, which is a great pity, for he seems very intelligent. 16. I thank you very much. 17. Don't mention it. 18. What I was expecting was that he would pay me. 19. That is not a poor man; he is well off. 20. Where is the pen I made use of yesterday? 21. Take what you need; there will be enough for all. 22. Which way did you come this morning? 23. I came the way you came yesterday.

XLVI a (§§ 403–407)

1. Certain people say the criminal has escaped. 2. Each day brings (*amener*) its labor. 3. We rise every morning at six o'clock. 4. I have seen him many a time. 5. I have no apples, but I have some pears and peaches. 6. However great and rich we may be, we must die. 7. Whatever your intentions were, your actions were not good. 8. However good your intentions were, you did not succeed in doing us good. 9. We should respect the rights of others. 10. Every one for himself is, happily, not a maxim which everybody practises. 11. If we do not love others, others will not love us. 12. Those children will receive, each one at his majority, their portion of their father's estate. 13. Mother, will you come down? You are wanted. 14. It is said that the robber has been caught. 15. It is not known whether the ship was wrecked or not. 16. When one is pretty (§ 405, 3, *e*), one is rarely ignorant of it. 17. People wonder why that young man associates with (*fréquenter*) those scoundrels. 18. When one sees a noble action, it (*cela*) always gives one pleasure. 19. I have never seen any one who had so many noble qualities. 20. I am afraid to say anything about it to any one. 21. No one has ever done anything like that. 22. What a beautiful view! Did you ever see anything like it? 23. He went away without visiting any one. 24. Did you find anything where you were looking yesterday? 25. I do not know any one of his friends. 26. I doubt whether any one of you will do so.

XLVI b

1. If I can do it without any expense, I shall do it willingly. 2. I do not like this book; give me another. 3. That little boy has had one apple, and now he wants another. 4. Frenchmen often laugh at us (others), because we are less gay than they. 5. This man I have seen elsewhere, but that one I never saw anywhere. 6. These are the same people that were here yesterday morning. 7. That lady is goodness itself. 8. Even if you were to say so, I should not believe it. 9. That is a young man in whom I have confidence; I shall put him in

a position to make his fortune. 10. Were there any children at the meeting? 11. Yes, there were several. 12. I shall never accept such conditions. 13. I never saw such a foolish man. 14. If he were to say such a thing to me, I should put him out of doors. 15. He spent his whole life in doing good. 16. Our neighbor's daughters have become quite tall. 17. He comes to town every other week. 18. Where are the children? Both were here a little while ago. 19. I found two apples in the basket, but neither is good. 20. Any line being given, draw a straight line which shall be equal to it. 21. There is no reason whatever which can persuade me. 22. Whoever has stolen that poor woman's money ought to be punished. 23. Whoever he is who told you that, he is mistaken. 24. Whatever that man may do, he will never succeed. 25. Whatever the reason may be, he never comes to see us.

XLVII a (§§ 408–420)

1. I will not sell it, cheap or dear. 2. You did it on purpose, did you not? 3. Not at all, it was quite accidental. 4. A Christian ought to love not only his friends, but even his enemies. 5. Those poor people had scarcely any bread to eat when we found them. 6. We have said nothing at all about it. 7. That is a very complicated affair; I can understand nothing of it. 8. We did not see a living soul in the street when we rose that morning. 9. Whom did you see? I saw nobody at all. 10. I shall be silent, so as not to hinder you from working. 11. He told me to do nothing until he returned. 12. I went away so as not to be punished. 13. What is the matter with that little boy? 14. I do not know, sir; I neither did nor said anything to him. 15. Would you not be glad to see our old friend? 16. No, I wish neither to see him nor to speak to him. 17. I have a headache this evening; I can neither sing nor play. 18. Neither he nor his father was there. 19. I saw neither him nor his brother. 20. I have neither friend nor money, but I have strong arms and courage. 21. No more regrets; take courage, and forget the past. 22. Why did he not tell me so before leading me

into this peril? 23. There is nobody here he does not know. 24. Take care that you are not deceived. 25. There is nothing which does not please me better than that.

XLVII b

1. Not one of those we invited has come. 2. Do you know where Dr. B. lives? 3. I cannot tell you. 4. If you have no use for this book, lend it to me. 5. Unless you do what you said, I shall not pay you. 6. Do you not fear he will go away? 7. I do not fear he will go away. 8. I am afraid our friends will not be there. 9. If I were afraid he would do it, I should do something to hinder him (from it). 10. If I were not afraid he would hurt himself with the knife, I should let him have it. 11. That man writes better than he speaks. 12. We do not wish more money than we have now. 13. I do not doubt that that is true. 14. Not much is lacking for the number to be complete. 15. We have not seen each other for three years. 16. It is more than three years since we were there. 17. I cannot go with you; I have no time. 18. Yes, you have, you are not so busy. 19. You have stolen my apples. 20. I tell you I have not. 21. But I say yes, for I saw you. 22. He has as much money as you have, but he has not as much as I have. 23. Let us say no more about it. 24. We are in a hurry; let us not stay any longer. 25. I have more than fifty francs, but he has more than I, and his brother has still more.

XLVIII a (§§ 421–430)

Il a une vingtaine d'années.	He is about twenty (years old).
Il a une trentaine de mille francs.	He has about thirty thousand francs.

1. Columbus discovered America in the year 1492. 2. The French national *fête* is celebrated on the fourteenth of July, because [on] that day the Bastille was taken. 3. My father left England on the first of May, 1824. 4. Napoleon the First was a greater man than Napoleon the Third. 5. Charles the First of England and Louis the Sixteenth of France were

both beheaded. 6. The first train leaves at a quarter to five in the morning, and the second at twenty minutes past two in the afternoon. 7. We went to bed last night at half-past twelve. 8. The first two houses in (*de*) the street belong to us. 9. We have only the last two chapters in the book to read. 10. The carriage arrived at half-past one in the morning. 11. The father gave his son a fifth of his property when the son was twenty-one. 12. How old would you say (What age would you give) that man is? 13. I should say he is about forty. 14. It is twenty years since I saw him. 15. That man is well off; he has an income of about twenty thousand francs a year. 16. The first volume of his works contains poetry, and the fourth two novels.

XLVIII b

1. This house cost three times as much as that one. 2. Ten times ten make a hundred. 3. We paid (Ex. XXXIII a) a hundred and twenty dollars for that horse. 4. That carriage cost one thousand one hundred dollars. 5. That old man is eighty-five years old. 6. [On] what day of the month did that happen? 7. It happened on the twelfth. 8. That table is two meters long by one meter wide. 9. We are going to have a house built twenty meters long by ten wide. 10. What time is it? 11. It is just noon. 12. A boy ten years old was killed last evening by a carriage in the *Boulevard des Italiens*. 13. That girl is older than her brother by two years. 14. I am taller than my brother by two inches. 15. Will you come at two o'clock or at three? 16. I shall be there precisely at three. 17. Is that boy ten years old or eleven? 18. He is eleven.

XLIX a (§§ 431–454)

1. I was thinking of what you were talking about this morning. 2. He paid about twenty francs for that hat. 3. He will be here about six o'clock in the evening. 4. The day after our arrival we went to see the museum. 5. That child has black eyes; he takes after his father. 6. The money was divided amongst the children. 7. Amongst all those people

there is not one sensible person. 8. Art arrived at (*la*) perfection among the Greeks. 9. He was at my house when I was at his. 10. They all laughed at my expense. 11. We all laughed at him. 12. The thief will have to appear before the court. 13. He will be here before a quarter past three. 14. That is greater by half than what we expected. 15. That box is six feet long by two wide. 16. It is a quarter to four by my watch. 17. I know that man by sight only. 18. He will leave for France in a week. 19. We lived in that city for twenty years. 20. I have been here for two years. 21. I traded my black horse for this white one. 22. I thanked him for his kindness. 23. From the fifteenth of May I shall live in that house. 24. They drank their wine from golden cups. 25. That picture is painted from nature.

XLIX b

1. In spring the weather is warm and the flowers open. 2. There is not so much misery in the United States as in Russia. 3. Let us live in peace with everybody. 4. There are several nations in North America. 5. Not one in a hundred was good. 6. Is your house (in) brick or stone? 7. It was kind of you to aid me in my misfortune. 8. In rainy weather we stay at home. 9. We shall go away on Saturday. 10. He is now on the road for England. 11. Our house is on this side of the street, and his is on that side. 12. When you come to the next street, turn to the right. 13. Instead of studying he is always looking out of the window. 14. His gun was hanging above the chimney. 15. The dog jumped over the fence. 16. He watched over my interests. 17. In passing through the forest we saw many rare plants. 18. We work from morning till night. 19. We are going to our friends' house. 20. The train for Paris will be here immediately. 21. They sold those goods under their value. 22. Wicked men tread God's laws under foot. 23. If you will live with us, we shall treat you well. 24. Do you remember the man with the big nose whom we saw yesterday? 25. She told us her story with tears in her eyes.

L a (§§ 455–459)

1. For fear it should rain, we shall not go away to-day. 2. He did his work so that all were pleased with him. 3. Unless you come to-morrow, we shall not wait for you. 4. Both he and his brother were there. 5. Go and get us some bread. 6. She neither laughs nor cries. 7. Those poor people are without bread or meat. 8. He does not believe what you say, nor I either. 9. We shall not be there, nor he either. 10. We have not gone away, nor shall we. 11. As soon as you are there and have the time, will you go and visit my brother? 12. If he is there and we see him, we shall tell him what you say. 13. When bread is dear and the weather is cold, the poor suffer. 14. I think we shall go away the day after to-morrow. 15. If your friend comes to the meeting and I am there, I shall speak to him. 16. Since you went away, I have been writing letters. 17. Since you cannot do it, you must let me try. 18. Since you went away yesterday, he has done nothing but play. 19. Since every action brings its recompense [with it], we must pay attention to what we do. 20. While I was doing my exercise, she was writing her letters. 21. The good shall be rewarded, whilst the bad shall be punished. 22. When I saw him, he was busy working in his field. 23. As long as the world lasts, justice shall prevail over injustice. 24. He did his work so that he was praised by all. 25. He was kind to the poor so that he might be praised by all.

LI a

The largest clock in the world will be the one [1] which soon [2] will adorn the city hall of P. The dial of this colossal clock will be [3] ten meters in diameter, and will be placed and illuminated so as to be visible night and day (*de*) everywhere in the city. The hands will be, one [4] four meters and the other three meters long; the bell of the striking part will weigh forty-six thousand pounds, and in order to wind the clock, a steam engine placed in the tower will be used daily (= one will use daily a steam-engine, etc.).

[1] § 381. [2] § 413. [3] § 428, *obs.* 3. [4] § 406, 7 (1), *a*.

LII a

Horses,[1] birds,[1] and animals [1] of all (the) sorts speak a language as well as men.[1] We cannot understand all (= all that which) they say, but we understand enough of it to [2] know that they have thoughts [3] and feelings.[3] They are sad when they lose a companion, or when they are driven away [4] from home. They are pleased when they are well treated,[4] and angry when they are ill treated.[4] They have, so to speak, a conscience; they feel ashamed when they do what displeases us, and are very glad when they merit our approbation. Kindness [1] on our part towards them is as reasonable as love [1] and kindness [1] between brothers.[3]

[1] § 321. [2] § 282, 2. [3] § 322. [4] § 241, 2, *a*.

LIII a

A rich [1] man, it is said,[2] once [3] asked [4] a learned man what was [5] the reason that scientific men were [5] so often [3] seen at the doors of the rich, while [6] the rich were [5] very rarely seen [2] at the doors of the learned. "It is," replied [4] the scholar, "because the man of science knows the value of riches,[7] but the rich man does not always know the value of science." [7]

[1] § 351. [2] § 241, 2, *a*. [3] § 413. [4] § 260. [5] § 258, 5. [6] § 459, 2. [7] § 321.

LIV a

Molière, the great French [1] author, was born [2] in Paris in the year one thousand six hundred and twenty-two.[3] His father was the king's upholsterer, and was probably a rather rich [4] man. The son received [5] a good education, but not much is known [6] of his youth. When he was about twenty years old,[7] he organized [5] a company of actors, which was [5] called *L'Illustre Théâtre*. But in this enterprise he did not succeed [5] very well. He soon [8] lost [5] all his money, and with his *troupe* was [5] forced to [9] leave Paris and (to) make a tour in [the] province[s]. This tour lasted [5] from sixteen hundred and forty-six to sixteen hundred and fifty-eight. During these years he traveled [5]

over nearly the whole of France, and played [5] in many of the large cities. After his return to Paris he became [5] the king's favorite, and produced [5] the masterpieces which have rendered him so celebrated. At last, after fifteen years of great success, he died [5] in sixteen hundred and seventy-three at the age of fifty-one.

[1] § 352, 1 (2). [2] Past Def. [3] § 421, *c*. [4] § 351. [5] § 260. [6] § 241, 2, *a*. [7] § 430. [8] § 413. [9] § 280, 6.

LV a

Speaking of the small world in which even the greatest live,[1] Lord Beaconsfield used to tell [2] that Napoleon I, a year after his accession to the throne, determined to [3] find out if there was [4] anybody in the world who had never heard of him. Within a fortnight the police of Paris had [5] discovered a wood-chopper at Montmartre, in Paris itself, who had never heard of the Revolution, nor of the death of Louis XVI, nor of the Emperor Napoleon.

[1] § 237, 6. [2] § 258, 2. [3] § 280, 6. [4] § 258, 5. [5] § 232, 1.

LVI a

Napoleon, the greatest general of modern times,[1] was born [2] at Ajaccio on the 15th of August, 1769. At the age of ten [3] he was sent to the military [4] school at Brienne, where he remained more than [5] five years. Then entering the French [4] army, he was, in 1796, appointed general of the army of Italy,[6] and soon succeeded in conquering [7] that country. He used so well the opportunities which were offered him by the weakness of the Republic that in less than ten years he was elected Emperor. The ten years' struggle, in which he engaged with the purpose of subduing [8] Europe,[9] ended with the battle of Waterloo in 1815. Banished to (*à*) St. Helena (no art.) he died [10] there on the 5th of May, 1821. Twenty years after his death, his remains were brought back to (*en*) France, and interred in the *Hôtel des Invalides*.

[1] § 321. [2] Past Def. [3] § 430, *obs*. 2. [4] § 352, 1 (2). [5] § 412, 1, *b*. [6] § 333, 2, note. [7] § 279, 2. [8] § 280, 2. [9] § 333, 1. [10] *mourut* or *est mort*.

LVII a

Great Britain [1] and Ireland [1] are two large islands in (*à*) the west of Europe.[1] Great Britain is the larger of the two and comprises England,[1] Scotland,[1] and Wales.[1] The monarch of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland [2] for (*pendant*) many years was Queen Victoria [3] who was born [4] on the 24th of May, 1819. She was the daughter of the Duke of Kent, son of George III. She ascended the throne on (*à*) the death of William IV in 1837. When she appeared before (*le*) parliament at Westminster for the first time, she declared that she would place her trust in the wisdom of her parliament and the love of her people, and she did not fail to (*de*) keep this promise. Having thus early won the hearts of all her subjects, she retained their affection during a long reign of more than sixty years. Queen Victoria married Prince [3] Albert in 1840. He died in 1861. She died forty years afterwards, on January 22nd, 1901. Her son Edward VII succeeded her (*lui*) and died in 1910. The present king, son [5] of Edward VII, is called George V.

[1] § 333, 1. [2] § 333, 2, *a*, note. [3] § 327. [4] § 260. [5] § 330, 4.

LVIII a

There was,[1] in the city of Mâcon, a parrot which had learned to [2] say continually: "Who is there? Who is there?" This parrot escaped one day from its cage in the garden, and soon [3] flew into a wood near by, where a peasant saw it, and began to [2] chase it. The peasant had never seen a parrot in (*de*) all his life. He approached [4] the tree where the bird was, and was going to [5] kill the poor bird with his gun. At that moment the parrot began to [2] repeat the usual question: "Who is there? Who is there?" The peasant, terrified at these words, let his gun fall [6] from his hands. Then taking his hat off, he said, very respectfully: "My dear sir, I pray you to [7] excuse me, I thought that it was a bird."

[1] § 250. [2] § 279, 6. [3] § 413. [4] § 296, 1. [5] § 278, 6. [6] § 230, 6, *a*, and 7. [7] § 280, 6.

LIX a

The unknown [1] author of *Beowulf* was not a [2] native of England, and so the first of the long line of English [3] poets is really Cædmon. Bæda tells us a pretty story of the way in which [4] Cædmon became a [2] poet. He was already almost an [2] old man before he knew anything [5] of the art of poetry. At the feasts, in those days, everybody used to sing [6] in turn to [7] amuse the company, but Cædmon used to leave [6] the table before the harp was given [8] to him. One evening, when he had done thus, he went to the stable and lay down, after having [9] cared for the cattle, because, you must know, he was only a farm servant in the monastery at Whitby. As he slept,[10] some one appeared to him, and said, "Cædmon, sing a song to me." "I cannot [11] sing," he replied, "and that is why I left the feast." "Nevertheless," was the answer, "you must sing to me." "Well, then," asked Cædmon, "what shall I sing?" The other replied, "Sing the beginning of created things."[12] Thereupon he made some verses, which he still remembered when he awoke. The Abbess Hilda, hearing of his dream, believed (that) the grace of God had been given him, and made him a [2] monk.

[1] § 352, 1 (3). [2] § 330, 3. [3] § 352, 1 (2). [4] § 398. [5] § 405, 4, *a*. [6] § 258, 2. [7] § 282, 2. [8] § 241, 2, *a*. [9] § 282, 4. [10] § 258, 1. [11] § 230, 4. [12] § 321.

LX a

A miser went [1] one day to market,[2] and bought [1] some [3] fine apples. He carried [1] them home, arranged [1] them carefully in his cupboard, and used to go [4] and look at them almost every day, but would [5] not eat any until they began to spoil. Every time he did eat one he regretted it. But he had a son, a young school-boy, who liked apples; and one day, with a comrade, he found the miser's treasure. I do not know how he found the key of the cupboard; but he did,[6] and you may imagine how many apples they ate. When they had [7] finished the apples, the old father came and caught them. How angry [8] he was! How he shouted at them! "Wretches! where are my beauti-

ful apples? You shall both be hanged! You have eaten them all!" His son replied: "Do not be angry, father![9] You only eat the bad apples; we have not touched (*à*) those; we have eaten the good ones, and left you yours."

[1] § 260. [2] § 331, ex. 4. [3] § 324, 1. [4] § 258, 2. [5] § 265, 1, *b*. [6] § 256. [7] § 262, 3. [8] § 350, *a*. [9] § 376, 4.

LXI a

A hungry [1] fox was one day looking for [2] a poultry yard. It was late in the afternoon, and, as he was passing [3] a farmhouse, he saw [4] a cock and some hens which had [5] gone up into a tree for the night. He drew near,[4] and invited [4] them to [6] come down and [7] rejoice with him on account of a new treaty of peace which had been formed between the animals. The cock said he was [8] very glad of it, but that he did not intend [8] to [9] come down before the next morning. "But," said he, "I see two dogs coming;[10] I have no doubt they will be [11] glad to [12] celebrate the peace with you." Just then the fox remembered that he had business [13] elsewhere, and, bidding the cock good-bye, began [4] to run. "Why do you run?" said the cock, "if the animals have made a peace, the dogs won't hurt you. I know them, they are good, loyal [14] dogs, and would not harm any one." "Ah," said the fox, "I am afraid they have [15] not yet heard the news."

[1] § 352, 1 (3). [2] § 258, 1; § 296, 3. [3] § 258, 1. [4] § 260. [5] § 229; § 262, 2. [6] § 279, 6. [7] § 456, 2. [8] § 258, 5. [9] § 280, 2, *a*. [10] § 287, 3. [11] § 269, 5. [12] § 356. [13] § 323. [14] § 352. [15] § 269, 4, *a*.

LXII a

A woodman, who was cutting [1] wood on the bank of a river, let [2] his ax fall [3] into the water. He at once [4] began [2] to [5] pray [to] the gods to [6] find it for him. Mercury appeared [2] and asked [2] him what was [7] the matter. "I have lost my ax," said [2] he. Having heard this, Mercury dived [2] into the water, and brought [2] up a golden ax. "Is this [8] yours?" "No," said the man. Next time Mercury brought up a silver one. "Is this one yours?" "No," said [2] the chopper again. The

third time Mercury brought up an iron one, which the man recognized, as soon as he saw [2] it. "It is yours," said the god, "and for your honesty I shall give you the other two also."

[1] § 258, 1. [2] § 260. [3] § 230, 6, *a*, and 7. [4] § 413. [5] § 279, 6. [6] § 280, 6. [7] § 258, 5. [8] § 236, 2

LXIII a

Two men were traveling [1] together, when they saw [2] a bear coming out [3] of the forest. The one climbed into a tree, and tried to [4] conceal himself in the branches. The other, when he saw that the bear would (= was going to) attack him, threw himself upon the ground, and, when the bear came up, he ceased to [4] breathe, for it is said [5] that a bear will not touch [6] a dead [7] body. When the bear had [8] gone, his companion came down, and asked: "What was it that the bear was saying to you?" His friend replied: "He advised me not [9] to travel with a friend who runs away at the approach of danger."[10]

[1] § 258, 1. [2] § 260. [3] § 287, 3. [4] § 280, 6. [5] § 241, 2, *a*. [6] § 296, 5. [7] § 352, 1 (3). [8] § 262, 3. [9] § 416, *a*. [10] § 321.

LXIV a

A well-known [1] English [2] actor, traveling to Birmingham by the Great Western [3] railway the other day, on approaching [4] Banbury, began to feel hungry, and determined to have one of the buns for (*par*) which the town is famous.

The train having stopped, he called a boy, gave him sixpence, and asked him to get "two Banburys," promising him one of the two for his trouble.

Just as the train was about to start, the boy rushed up to the carriage in which the impatient actor was seated, and offering him three pence, exclaimed:

"Here's your change, sir."

"Bother the change; where's the bun?" roared the hungry actor.

"There was only one left," replied the boy, "and I'm eating that!"

[1] § 352, 1 (3). [2] § 352, 1 (2). [3] § 330, 4, *c*, note. [4] § 296, 1.

LXV a

Under a magnificent walnut tree near the village, two little boys found a walnut. "It belongs to me," said the one, "for it was [1] I [2] who was the first to see it (= who have seen it the first)." "No, it belongs to me," exclaimed the other, "for it was [1] I [2] who picked it up." Thereupon there [3] arose between them a violent quarrel. "I am going to make peace [4] between you," said to them a third boy, who was passing at that moment. The latter placed himself between the two claimants, opened the walnut, and pronounced this sentence: "One of the shells belongs to him [5] who was the first to see the walnut; the other to him [5] who picked it up; as to the kernel, I keep it for the costs of the court. That's how lawsuits [4] generally end," added he, laughing.

[1] § 257, 3, *b*. [2] § 372, 3. [3] § 252, 2. [4] § 321. [5] § 381.

LXVI a

Many years ago [1] a celebrated [2] physician who was very fond of animals lived in the city of Paris. One day a friend of his [3] brought to his house a favorite [2] dog, whose leg had been broken, and asked him if he could do anything for the poor creature. The kind doctor examined the wounded [4] animal, and, prescribing a treatment for him, soon cured him, and received the warm thanks of his friend, who set a very high value upon his dog. Not very long afterwards, the doctor was in his room busy studying.[5] He thought [6] he heard a noise at the door, as if some animal was scratching in order to be let [7] in. For some time he paid no attention to the noise, but continued studying.[8] At last, however, he rose and opened the door. To his great astonishment he saw enter the dog which he had cured, and with him another dog. The latter also had a broken [4] leg, and was able to move only with much difficulty. The dog which the surgeon had cured had brought his friend to his benefactor, in order that he, too, might be [9] healed; and he made the doctor [10] understand that this was what he wanted.

[1] § 250, 4. [3] § 377, 3. [5] § 279, 2. [7] § 241, 2, *a*. [9] § 271, 2.
[2] § 351. [4] § 352, 1 (3). [6] § 283, 1. [8] § 279, 6. [10] § 230, 6, *b*.

LXVII a

There was once a cat who was a [1] great enemy of the rats. He had eaten a great many,[2] and they were much afraid of him. So the chiefs of the rats called a meeting to [3] discuss what they should do to [3] rid themselves of him. A great many plans were proposed, but after a little discussion they were all abandoned. At last a young rat, who thought himself very clever, rose and said: "Do not despair, my friends, I have not yet proposed a plan. A splendid idea occurs to me; I know what we can do. We can, if we are economical, soon save enough money to [3] buy a little bell. This we can attach to the neck of our old enemy, and, if he approaches, we can [4] flee to (*dans*) a place of safety."

The young rats all applauded the idea, but one of the old [ones], who up to this time had said nothing, gravely [5] asked the one who had made the speech if he would promise to put the bell on the cat. The young rat blushed, and said he would think of it.[6]

The meeting broke up shortly after, and the rats dispersed without doing anything.[7]

[1] § 330, 3. [2] § 367, 2 (1). [3] § 282, 2. [4] § 263, 2. [5] § 413. [6] § 368. [7] § 405, 4, *a*.

LXVIII a

Long ago [1] the frogs, tired of having [2] a republic, resolved to [3] ask Jupiter to send them a king. Jupiter did not receive their petition with much favor but, as they seemed really to [4] desire one, he thought (that) it would be better to please [5] them. So, one fine day, when they were all expecting [6] their king, a great log fell from the sky into the pond where they were.[6] They were very much afraid of the noise [7] it made, and they took refuge in holes and in the mud at the bottom of the pond. Little by little, however, they approached [8] their king to [9] get a good look at him, and, seeing that he was so quiet, they became more bold, and finally leaped on him, and treated him with great familiarity (= very familiarly). Then they complained again to Jupiter saying that the king he had

sent was not worthy of their respect, and that they desired another, who would show [10] more vigor. In order to please them, Jupiter sent them this time a stork, who immediately began to devour them with much avidity. They complained again, but Jupiter told them that, since [11] they had desired a king, they would be forced to submit quietly to the one [12] he had sent.

[1] § 250, 4. [2] § 280, 2. [3] § 280, 6. [4] § 278, 6. [5] § 296, 2. [6] § 258, 1. [7] § 402, 1. [8] § 296, 1. [9] § 282, 2. [10] § 270, 1. [11] § 459, 3. [12] § 381; 402, 1.

LXIX a

The two youngest of my children were already in bed and asleep, the third had [1] gone out, but at my return I found him sitting beside my gate, weeping [2] very sore. I asked him the reason. "Father," [3] said he, "I took this morning from [4] my mother, without her knowing [5] it, one of those three apples you brought her, and I kept [6] it a long while; but, as I was playing some time ago [7] with my little brother in the street, a slave that went [8] by snatched it out of my hands, and carried it off; I ran after him asking for it, and, besides, told him that it belonged to my mother, who was ill, and that you had taken a fortnight's journey to fetch it; but all in vain, he would [9] not give it back. And because I still followed him, crying out, he stopped and beat me, and then ran away as fast as he could, from one street to another, till at length I lost sight of him. I have since then been walking outside the town, expecting your return, to pray you, dear father, not to tell my mother [of] it, lest it (*cela*) should make her worse." And when he had [10] said these words, he began weeping again more bitterly than ever.

[1] § 229. [2] § 286, 2. [3] § 376, 4. [4] § 296, 4. [5] § 271, 5. [6] § 259, 2. [7] § 250, 4. [8] § 258, 1. [9] § 265, 1, *b*. [10] § 262, 3.

LXX a

A celebrated Italian [1] painter had told his pupils to [2] ask the name of any (*tout*) person who might come [3] to his house

during his absence in the city. One day three gentlemen came to [4] see the painter, and the latter was not at home. One of the pupils, whose name was John, opened the door for them,[5] said that his master was not in, and let them depart without asking their names. When the master returned and [6] heard of the three gentlemen, he asked [7] John who they were. John could say nothing but, "I do not know, sir." The painter got angry, but John, with a few strokes of his pencil, drew (*faire*) the portrait of the three, and gave it to his master, who immediately [8] recognized them. The artist admired the skill of the young man so much that he took the drawing, and kept it afterwards among his most precious possessions. It is needless to [9] add that he pardoned the pupil. (*Il est* may be omitted.)

[1] § 352, 1 (2). [3] § 270, 1. [5] § 362, 2. [7] § 296, 2. [9] § 384, 1, *a*.
[2] § 280, 6. [4] § 278, 6. [6] § 458, 2. [8] § 413.

LXXI a

A man (*celui*) who would [1] have friends must show himself friendly. A man (*homme*) was passing the night at (*dans*) an inn. He had just left a town where he had spent several years. The landlord asked [2] him why he had left the (*cet*) place. He replied, "Because my neighbors were so disagreeable and disobliging that one could not live with them." The landlord replied, "You will find exactly the same sort of neighbors where you are going." The following day, another traveler came from the same place. He told the landlord that he was obliged to leave the place where he had been living, and that it caused him great pain to part with his neighbors, who had been so kind and obliging. The landlord encouraged him by telling [3] him that he would find exactly the same sort of neighbors where he was going.

[1] § 230, 1. [2] § 296, 2. [3] § 286, 3.

LXXII a

When I was [1] at school, I was [1] often very idle. Even in [the] class I used to play [1] with boys as idle as myself. We

used to try [1] to hide this from [2] our master, but one day he caught [3] us cleverly.

"You must not be idle," said he. "You must not raise your [4] eyes from your books. You do not know what you lose by idleness.[5] Study while you are young; you will not be able to study when you are [6] old. If any one sees another boy who is not studying, let him tell me." [7]

"Now," said I to myself, "there is Fred Smith; I do not like him. If I see that he is not studying, I shall tell." [7]

Soon after, I saw Fred Smith looking [8] out of the window, and I told the master what I had seen. "Indeed!" said he, "how do you know he was idle?" "If you please, sir," said I, "I saw [9] him." "O you saw [9] him, and where were your eyes when you saw [9] him?"

I saw the other boys laugh,[3] and I was ashamed, for the master smiled, and said it was a good lesson for me.

[1] § 258. [3] § 260. [5] § 321. [7] § 365. [9] § 259, 2.
[2] § 296, 4. [4] § 328. [6] § 263, 2. [8] § 287, 3.

LXXIII a

The princes of Europe [1] have found out a manner of rewarding [2] their subjects who have behaved well, by presenting [3] them [with] about two yards of blue [4] ribbon, which is worn [5] on the shoulder. Those who are honored with this mark of distinction are called knights, and the king himself is always at the head of the order. This is a cheap method of recompensing [2] the most important services; and it is very fortunate for kings [6] that their subjects are [7] satisfied with such [8] trifling rewards. Should [9] a nobleman lose his leg in a battle, the king presents him with two yards of ribbon, and he is recompensed for the loss of his leg. Should [9] an ambassador spend all his fortune in [10] supporting the honor of his country abroad, the king presents him with two yards of ribbon, which is considered [5] the equivalent of his estate. In short, as long as a European king has a yard or two of blue or green ribbon, he will not lack statesmen, generals, and soldiers.

[1] § 333, 2. [3] § 286, 3. [5] § 241, 2. [7] § 269, 4. [9] § 275.
[2] § 280, 2. [4] § 352, 1 (1). [6] § 321. [8] § 406, 5, *a*, note. [10] § 279, 2.

LXXIV a

At a time when ancient art was attracting so much attention in Italy that modern art [1] was being neglected,[2] Michael Angelo had resort to a stratagem in order to teach the critics the folly of judging such things according to fashion [1] or reputation.[1] He made a statue which represented [3] a beautiful girl (*jeune fille*) asleep,[4] and, breaking off an arm, buried the statue in a place where excavations were being made.[2] It was soon found, and was lauded by critics [1] and by the public as a valuable relic of antiquity.[1] When Michael Angelo thought the time opportune, he produced the broken arm, and, to the great mortification of the critics, revealed himself as the sculptor.

[1] § 321. [2] § 241, 2. [3] § 258, 3. [4] § 352, 1 (3).

LXXV a

Had you seen us, Mr. Harley, when we were turned out of South-hill, I am sure you would have wept at that sight. You remember old Trusty, my dog; I shall never forget it while I live (fut.); the poor creature (*bête*) was old and almost blind, and could scarce crawl after us to the door; he went, however, as far as the gooseberry-bush, which, as you may remember, stood on the left side of the yard; he was wont to bask in the sun there; when he had reached that spot, he stopped; we went on (*continuer notre chemin*); I called him; he wagged his tail, but did not stir; I called again; he lay down; I whistled, and cried "Trusty"; he gave a howl, and died! I could have lain down and died (= should have liked to lie down and die) too; but God gave me [1] strength to (*de*) live for my children.

[1] § 321.

VOCABULARY

FRENCH–ENGLISH

A

a [a] *3 sg. pres. indic.* **avoir**

à [a] to, towards, at, for, in, into, around, by, with, from; — **votre montre** by your watch; — **demain** good-bye till tomorrow

abondant [abɔ̃dɑ̃] abundant

abord: d'— [dabɔːr] at first, first (of all), at the outset

abreuver [abrœve] to water, fill, soak

accent [aksɑ̃] *m.* accent, tone

accepter [aksɛpte] to accept

accident [aksidɑ̃] *m.* accident, incident

accompagner [akɔ̃paɲe] to accompany, go with

accord [akɔːr] *m.* agreement; **être d'—** to agree

accourir [akuriːr] § 164 to run *or* hasten up; run *or* hasten to one's aid

accourut [akury] *3 sg. past def.* **accourir**

accueil [akœːj] *m.* welcome

achat [aʃa] *m.* purchase

acheter [aʃte] § 158 to buy, purchase

acti-f [aktif] **–ve** active, energetic

action [aksjɔ̃] *f.* action

actuellement [aktɥɛlmɑ̃] now, at this very time

Adèle [adɛl] *f.* Adèle

adieu [adjø] *m.* good-bye, farewell

admettre [admɛtr] § 198 to admit

affectueu-x [afɛktɥø] **–se** affectionate, kindly

afin de [afɛ̃də] + *infin.* in order to

afin que [afɛ̃kə] in order that, that (*takes subjunctive*)

Afrique [afrik] *f.* Africa

âge [aːʒ] *m.* age, century, time; **en— de** of an age to; **quel — a-t-il?** how old is he?

âgé [aːʒe] aged, old

agent [aʒɑ̃] *m.* agent; — **de police** policeman

agir [aʒiːr] to act, operate, work, move, manage; **il s'agit de** it is a question of

agréable [agreabl] agreeable, pleasant

agricole [agrikɔl] agricultural

ai [e] *1 sg. pres. ind.* **avoir**

aider [ɛde] to aid, help, assist

aie [ɛ] *1 sg. pres. subj. and 2 sg. impve.* **avoir**

ailleurs [ajœːr] elsewhere; **d'—** moreover, besides, furthermore

aimable [ɛmabl] kind, amiable, nice

aimer [ɛme] to love, like; — **mieux** to prefer

ainsi [ɛ̃si] thus, so; — **que** as, just as; **pour — dire** so to say

air [ɛːr] *m.* air, atmosphere; air, look, appearance; **à l'—, en l'—** in the air; **le grand —** in the open air; **en plein —** in the open air; **avoir l'— de** to seem to

aise [ɛːz] *f.* gladness; ease, convenience; **à ton** — comfortably, at your ease, just as you like, suit yourself
aisément [ɛzemɑ̃] easily
ait [ɛ] *3 sg. pres. subj.* **avoir**
ajouter [aʒute] to add
algèbre [alʒɛːbr] *f.* algebra
Allah [allɑ] *m.* Allah
Allemagne [almaɲ] *f.* Germany
allemand [almɑ̃] *adj.* German; **l'**— *m.* German (language); **un Allemand** a German
aller [ale] § 160 to go, be (*of health*); — + *infin.* to go to, go and; **y** — **de bon cœur** to go at (a thing) with spirit; **s'en** — to go away, depart, set out; **allez-vous-en!** go away! **qu'elle s'en aille!** let her go (away)! **allons!** come! courage! up! arise! — **à la rencontre de** to go to meet; — **chercher** to go for, go and get; — **trouver** to go and find, go to (meet); — to fit (*of garments*)
alors [alɔːr] then, so
Alpes [alp] *f. pl.* Alps
Alsace [alzas] *f.* Alsace
ambition [ɑ̃bisjɔ̃] *f.* ambition
âme [ɑːm] *f.* soul, heart
amener [amne] § 158 to bring, lead
américain [amerikɛ̃] American; **un Américain** an American
Amérique [amerik] *f.* America
ami [ami] *m.* friend; **mon** — my good fellow, my boy
amie [ami] *f.* friend, loved one
amour [amuːr] *m. in sing. and f. in pl.* love, affection; **un** — **de petite chèvre** a dear little goat
amusant [amyzɑ̃] amusing
amuser [amyze] to amuse; **s'**— to amuse *or* enjoy oneself, play, have a good time
an [ɑ̃] *m.* year; **avoir quarante** —**s** to be forty years old *or* forty years of age; **le jour de l'an** New Year's day
ancien [ɑ̃sjɛ̃] ancient, old; former; **un** — an ancient
âne [ɑːn] *m.* ass, donkey
anecdote [anɛgdɔt] *f.* anecdote
anglais [ɑ̃glɛ] *adj.* English; **l'**— *m.* English (*language*); **un Anglais** an Englishman
Angleterre [ɑ̃gləteːr] *f.* England
animal [animal] *m.* animal, beast
année [ane] *f.* year, twelvemonth; **l'**— **dernière** last year
anniversaire [aniverseːr] *m.* anniversary, birthday
antichambre [ɑ̃tiʃɑ̃ːbr] *f.* antechamber
août [u] *m.* August
apercevoir [apɛrsəvwaːr] § 213 to perceive, see, observe, notice; **s'**— to perceive, observe
aperçoit [apɛrswa] *3 sg. pres. indic.* **apercevoir**
aperçu [apɛrsy] *p. part.* **apercevoir**
aperçut [apɛrsy] *3 sg. p. def.* **apercevoir**
appel [apɛl] *m.* call
appeler [aple] § 158 to call; call in, summon; name; **faire** — to send for; **s'**— to be called *or* named; **comment s'appelle-t-il?** what is his name? **il s'appelle Jean Bart** his name is Jean Bart
appétit [apeti] *m.* appetite; **bon** — I wish you a good appetite
apporter [apɔrte] to bring (to, à)
apprendre [aprɑ̃ːdr] § 202 to learn; teach
apprêter [aprɛte] to prepare; **s'**— to prepare, get ready
approche [aprɔʃ] *f.* approach
approcher [aprɔʃe] *tr. and intr.* to approach, draw near, bring up;

— **de** to approach, draw near; **s'**— to approach, draw near (to, **de**)

après [aprɛ] *prep.* after, next (to); *adv.* afterwards, after

après-demain [aprɛdmɛ̃] the day after to-morrow

après-midi [aprɛmidi] *m. or f.* afternoon

arabe [arab] Arabian; **un Arabe** (an) Arabian, Arab

Arabie [arabi] *f.* Arabia

arbre [arbr] *m.* tree

arc [ark] *m.* arch, bow

Arc de Triomphe [arkdetriɔ̃f] *name of an arch in Paris*

architecture [arʃitɛkty:r] *f.* architecture

argent [arʒɑ̃] *m.* silver, money

argument [argymɑ̃] *m.* argument

arithmétique [aritmetik] *f.* arithmetic

Arles [arl] *f. city in the south of France, famous for Roman remains*

arrêter [arɛte] to stop, delay, stay, check, arrest; **s'**— to stop, pause, give heed (to, **à**); **du monde arrêté** people standing

arrivée [arive] *f.* arrival

arriver [arive] to arrive (at, **à, dans, sur**); come, come to, come up; happen, occur; **les voilà qui arrivent** see them coming (there)

articuler [artikyle] to articulate, utter

as [a] *2 sg. pres. indic.* **avoir**

Asie [azi] *f.* Asia

assassiner [asasine] to assassinate, murder

asseoir [aswa:r] § 215 to seat; **s'**— to sit down, seat oneself, be seated

assez [ase] enough, sufficiently; pretty, rather, quite, very; — **bon** good enough

assiette [asjɛt] *f.* plate

assis [asi] *p. part.* **s'asseoir** seated, sitting

associé [asɔsje] *m.* partner

assurer [asyre] to assure

attendre [atɑ̃:dr] § 210 to wait; wait for, expect; **s'**— **à** to expect

attenti-f [atɑ̃tif] **-ve** attentive

attention [atɑ̃sjɔ̃] *f.* attention; **faire** — to pay attention

attentivement [atɑ̃tivmɑ̃] attentively

au [o] *contr. of* **à** + **le**

auberge [obɛrʒ] *f.* inn

aubergiste [obɛrʒist] *m.* innkeeper

aucun [okœ̃] any, no; **ne . . .** — no, none, no one

au-dessus [odsy] above; — **de** above

Auguste [ogyst] *m.* Augustus

aujourd'hui [oʒurdɥi] to-day, now; — **en huit** a week from to-day

auprès de [oprɛde] into the presence of, to

aurai [ore] *1 sg. fut.* **avoir**

auraient [orɛ] *3 pl. condl.* **avoir**

aussi [osi] too, also, likewise; as (*in comparison*); — **bien** besides; — **bien que** as well as

aussitôt [osito] immediately, forthwith, at once

autant [otɑ̃], — **de** as *or* so much, as *or* so many; **d'**— **plus** the more so; **bien** — quite as much

autobus [otobys] *m.* motor car, auto car (public)

automne [otɔn] *m.* autumn; **en** — in autumn

auto(mobile) [otɔmobil] *m. or f.* automobile, motor car, auto car

autour de [otuːrdə] *prep.* around, round
autre [otr] other; **les —s** others, the others, other people; **d'—s** others; **l'un et l'—** both; **les uns les —s** one another, both, all; **nous —s Français** we Frenchmen; **bien — chose** something very different
autrefois [otrəfwa] formerly, once
Autriche [otriʃ] *f.* Austria
aux [o] *contr. of* **à** + **les**
avancer [avɑ̃se] § 156 to advance, forward; **s'—** to advance, move forward; **avancé** advanced; proficient
avant [avɑ̃] before; **en —** forward; **la tête en —** head first, head foremost; **— de** before
avant-hier [avɑ̃(t)jɛːr] the day before yesterday
avant que [avɑ̃kə] *conj.* + *subj.* before
avec [avɛk] with; **— le temps qu'il fait** in such weather as this
avenue [avny] *f.* avenue
avez [ave] *2 pl. pres. indic.* **avoir**
Avignon [aviɲɔ̃] *m. city in the south of France, famous for medieval remains*
avis [avi] *m.* opinion, notice
avoir [avwaːr] § 154 to have; obtain, receive, get; **y —** *impers.*, **il y a** there is, there are; **il y avait** there was, *etc.;* **il y a huit jours** a week ago; **il y eut** there was, *etc.;* **il eut le moulin** he obtained *or* received the mill; **cet enfant a quelque chose** there is something the matter with that child; **qu'est-ce que vous avez?** what is the matter with you? **il a dix ans** he is ten years old *or* ten years of age; **vous n'avez qu'à parler** you have only to speak; **— raison** to be (in the) right; **en — à** to be angry with
avril [avril] *m.* April
ayez [ɛje] *2 pl. impve.* **avoir**
ayons [ɛjɔ̃] *1 pl. pres. subj.* **avoir**

B

bah! [bɑ] pooh! pshaw!
bain [bɛ̃] *m.* bath
baisser [bɛse] to lower, let down, hang (down); **— la tête** bow down, hang one's head; **se —** to stoop down, stoop
balle [bal] *f.* ball (*for playing*)
Balzac, Honoré de [ɔnɔre də balzak] *great French novelist b. 1799, d. 1850*
bander [bɑ̃de] to bind up
banque [bɑ̃ːk] *f.* bank (*fin.*)
banquier [bɑ̃kje] *m.* banker
Bart, Jean [ʒɑ̃ baːr] *famous French seaman, b. at Dunkirk 1651, d. 1702*
bas [bɑ] **–se** low; **là-— —** over there, yonder; **tout —** in an undertone, to oneself, softly, silently; **au —** at the bottom; **en —** below, at the bottom, down (below), downstairs; **d'en —** from down below
bas [bɑ] *m.* stocking
baseball [besbal] *m.* baseball
bassin [basɛ̃] *m.* basin, pool
Bastille [bastiːj] *f.* Bastille (*state prison in Paris, captured and destroyed by the populace, July 14, 1789*)
bataille [batɑːj] *f.* battle
bateau [bato] *m.* boat; **se promener en —** to go for a boat-ride, row, sail (*in a boat*)
bâtir [batiːr] to build

bâton [bɑtɔ̃] *m.* stick; stroke (*in learning to write*); **coup de** — blow with a stick

beau, bel, belle, *pl.* **beaux, belles** [bo, bɛl, bɛl, bo, bɛl] beautiful, handsome, fine; **au** — **milieu** in the very midst; **il fait** — (**temps**) it is fine; **avoir** — to be in vain

beaucoup (**de**) [bokudə] much, a great deal, very much, many, very many, a great many

Beaumarchais, Pierre [pjɛːr bomarʃɛ] *celebrated French playwright, b. 1732, d. 1799*

beauté [boːte] *f.* beauty

bêcher [bɛʃe] to dig, delve

bel, belle [bɛl] *see* **beau**

bénir [beniːr] § 163 to bless

berger [bɛrʒe] *m.* shepherd; **chien de** — shepherd's dog

besoin [bəzwɛ̃] *m.* need, necessity; **avoir** — **de** to need, be in need of; **vous avez** — **que je vous aide** you need my help; **aussi bien nous fera-t-il** — then besides we shall need him

bête [bɛːt] *f.* beast, brute, animal

bête [bɛːt] stupid

beurre [bœːr] *m.* butter

bibliothèque [bibliɔtɛːk] *f.* library

bicyclette [bisiklɛt] *f.* bicycle

bien [bjɛ̃] well, very, indeed, really, I am sure, surely, of course, quite; — **plus** much more; **j'ai** — **le temps** I have plenty of time; **être** — to be well, be well off, be comfortable, be happy; — **que** (+ *subj.*, though, although; **ou** — or indeed, or on the contrary; — **de (du, des)** much, a great deal of

bien [bjɛ̃] *m.* good

biens [bjɛ̃] *m. pl.* estate, property, goods, wealth, possessions; blessings

bientôt [bjɛ̃to] soon, shortly, presently

bijou [biʒu] *m.* jewel

billet [bijɛ] *m.* note, letter; promissory note; ticket; — **d'entrée** ticket (of admission); — **de banque,** bank bill, bank note

blanc [blɑ̃(ːʃ)] **blanche** white; **le** — *n. m.* the white

blanchir [blɑ̃ʃiːr] to become white, make white, wash, launder

blé [ble] *m.* wheat, wheat field

blesser [blɛse] to wound, hurt

blessure [blɛsyːr] *f.* wound, hurt

bleu [blø] blue

Blois [blwɑ] *m. town southwest of Paris, with famous castle*

bœuf [bœf] *m.* ox; beef

boire [bwaːr] § 181 to drink; **donner pour** — to give a gratuity *or* tip (*colloq.*)

bois [bwɑ] *m.* wood(s), forest

boîte [bwaːt] *f.* box

bon [bɔ̃] **–ne** good; kind; **moins** — worse, not so good; **sentir** — to smell sweet

bonbon [bɔ̃bɔ̃] *m.* bonbon, candy

bonjour [bɔ̃ʒuːr] *m.* good morning, good day

bonne [bɔn] *f.* maid, servant, nursery maid

bonté [bɔ̃te] *f.* goodness, kindness

bord [bɔːr] *m.* shore, bank, margin, edge; board (*nav.*); **à** — **de** on board of

Bordeaux [bɔrdo] *m. important seaport on the Garonne, and a centre of wine trade*

borner [bɔrne] to limit; **se** — to be limited

botte [bɔt] *f.* boot (*riding*)

bottine [bɔtin] *f.* high shoe (*for men or women, particularly the latter*)

bouche [buːʃ] *f.* mouth; **à la —** in one's mouth
boulangeı [bulãʒe] *m.* baker
bouquiniste [bukinist] *m.* second-hand book dealer
bourgeois [burʒwa] *m.* middle-class person
bout [bu] *m.* end, tip; edge, extremity; **au — de** at the end of
boutique [butik] *f.* shop, store
branche [brãːʃ] *f.* branch
bras [bra] *m.* arm
brave [braːv] brave, gallant; good, kind, honest, worthy
brigand [brigã] *m.* brigand, thief
brin [brɛ̃] *m.* blade, sprig
brosse [brɔs] *f.* brush
brosser [brɔse] to brush
bruit [brqi] *m.* noise, sound; fame, reputation; **faire tant de —** to attract so much attention
brûlant [brylã] burning hot
brûler [bryle] to burn
brusque [brysk] blunt
bureau [byro] *m.* office
but [byt *or* by] object, end, goal; **arriver à son —** to attain his object

C

ça [sa] (*for* **cela**) that
ç'a été [sa ete] *for* **ça** *or* **ce a été**
çà [sa] here; **— et là** here and there, up and down, hither and thither
cabinet [kabinɛ] *m.* cabinet; office, private office
cacher [kaʃe] to hide, conceal; **se —** to hide oneself
cadeau [kado] *m.* present, gift
café [kafe] *m.* coffee; coffee-house, restaurant, café
cahier [kaje] *m.* notebook, exercise book
caillou [kaju] *m.* pebble, stone
caissier [kɛsje] *m.* cashier
calmer [kalme] to calm
camarade [kamarad] *m. or f.* comrade, playmate, chum
campagne [kãpaɲ] *f.* country, fields; **à la —** in the country
Canada [kanada] *m.* Canada
canadien [kanadjɛ̃] Canadian
capitaine [kapitɛn] *m.* captain
car [kar] for (*conj.*)
caravane [karavan] *f.* caravan
caresse [karɛs] *f.* caress; **faire mille —s à** to overwhelm (one) with kindness
caresser [karɛse] to caress, stroke
carte [kart] *f.* card, ticket; map
cas [kɑ] *m.* case
casser [kɑːse] to break
cathédrale [katedral] *f.* cathedral
catholique [katɔlik] catholic
cause [koːz] *f.* cause; **à — de** because of
causer [koze] to cause; chat, talk; **— une impression** to make an impression
ce [sə] *pron.* it, this, that; **c'est pourquoi** that is why; **c'est nous** it is we; **ce sont eux** it is they; **ce qui, ce que** that which, which, what
ce, cet, cette, ces [sə, sɛt, sɛt, se] *adj.* this, that; **ce . . . -là** that (*emphatic*)
ceci [səsi] *pron.* this
cela [səla] *pron.* that; **— s'entend** that is evident; of course
célèbre [selɛbr] celebrated, famous
célébrer [selebre] § 158 to celebrate
celle [sɛl] *see* **celui**
celui, celle, ceux, celles [səlqi, sɛl, sø, sɛl] this *or* that, this *or* that one; the one, he, him; **— qui** the one who, he *or* him who

celui-ci [səlɥisi], **celle-ci, ceux-ci, celles-ci** *pron.* this, this man, this one, the latter, he (too)
celui-là, *etc.* [səlɥila] *pron.* that, that man, that one, the former, he
cent [sɑ̃] (a) hundred
centime [sɑ̃tim] *m. the hundredth part of a franc*
cependant [səpɑ̃dɑ̃] yet, nevertheless; still, however, in the meantime, meanwhile
cerise [səri:z] *f.* cherry
cerisier [sərizje] *m.* cherry tree
certain [sɛrtɛ̃] certain
cesser [sɛse] to cease, leave off (**de**)
ceux [sø] *see* **celui**
chacun [ʃakœ̃] *pron.* each, each one, every one
chaise [ʃɛ:z] *f.* chair
chaleur [ʃalœ:r] *f.* heat
chambre [ʃɑ̃:br] *f.* room, bedroom; **Chambre des députés** House of Parliament, Congress
chameau [ʃamo] *m.* camel
champ [ʃɑ̃] *m.* field, farm
Champs-Élysées [ʃɑ̃zelize] *m. pl. name of a celebrated promenade in Paris*
changement [ʃɑ̃ʒmɑ̃] *m.* change
changer [ʃɑ̃ʒe] § 156 to change, alter, transform; **se —** to change *or* transform oneself, change (*intr.*)
chanson [ʃɑ̃sɔ̃] *f.* song
chant [ʃɑ̃] *m.* singing, song; crowing (*of a cock*)
chanter [ʃɑ̃te] to sing; chant, intone, play
Chantilly [ʃɑ̃tiji] *town famous for its forests and magnificent château*
chapeau [ʃapo] *m.* hat
chaque [ʃak] each, every
Charlemagne [ʃarləmaɲ] Charlemagne, Charles the Great (*the great Emperor of the West, 742–814*)
charmant [ʃarmɑ̃] charming
charmer [ʃarme] to charm, delight; **charmé de** charmed with, delighted with
Chartres [ʃartr] *f. city southwest of Paris, with famous cathedral*
chasse [ʃas] *f.* chase, hunt, hunting, hunting party
chasser [ʃase] to chase, hunt, drive away
château [ʃɑto] *m.* castle, palace, country mansion
chaud [ʃo] warm, hot
chaud [ʃo] *m.* heat, warmth; **il fait —** it is warm, hot (*of weather, etc.*); **avoir —** to be warm, hot (*of living beings*)
chaussures [ʃosy:r] *f. pl.* shoes, boots
chef [ʃɛf] *m.* chief, commander; **— d'escadre** rear admiral
chemin [ʃəmɛ̃] *m.* way, road; **grand —** main road, highway; **— de fer** railway; **— faisant** on the way; **en —** on the way
chemise [ʃəmi:z] *f.* shirt
cher [ʃɛ:r] **chère** dear; beloved; **payer —** pay dear(ly) for, pay too much for
chercher [ʃɛrʃe] to seek, search, look for; **aller —** to go for, go and get; **— à** to seek to, try to
cheval [ʃəval] *m.* horse; **à —** on horseback; **monter à —** ride (on) horseback
cheveu [ʃəvø] *m.* (a) hair; **cheveux** *pl.* hair
chèvre [ʃɛ:vr] *f.* goat
chez [ʃe] to, at, in, into (the house, shop, office, *etc.*, of); with; **aller — le roi** to go to the king's (palace, court, *etc.*); **ils étaient — eux** they were at home; **— moi** at my house, at

home; — **vous** at your house, at home, with you
chien [ʃjɛ̃] *m.* dog; — **de berger** shepherd's dog
Chine [ʃin] *f.* China
choisir [ʃwaziːr] to choose
chose [ʃoːz] *f.* thing, affair, matter; **quelque** — *m. pron.* something; **quelque** — **d'extraordinaire** something extraordinary *or* unusual; **elle a quelque** — there is something the matter with her; **bien autre** — something very different
chou [ʃu] *m.* cabbage
-ci [si] *see* **celui**
ciel *pl.* **cieux** [sjɛl, sjø] *m.* heaven, heavens, sky
cigare [sigaːr] *m.* cigar
cigarette [sigarɛt] *f.* cigarette
cinq [sɛ̃ːk] five
cinquante [sɛ̃kɑ̃ːt] fifty
cinquième [sɛ̃kjɛm] fifth
cité [site] *f.* city, heart of city
civil [sivil] civil, civilian
clair [klɛːr] clear, bright, plain
classe [klɑːs] *f.* class, recitation, lesson, classroom; **manquer la** — to stay away from school, play truant; **faire la** — to give a lesson (*to a class*), teach (*a class*); **la** — **est terminée** class is over *or* dismissed
cloche [klɔʃ] *f.* bell
cœur [kœːr] *m.* heart, heartiness, courage, energy
coin [kwɛ̃] *m.* corner
colère [kɔlɛːr] *f.* anger; **se mettre en** — to get angry, be angry
combien [kɔ̃bjɛ̃] how much? how many? at what price? how much, how many; — **êtes-vous?** how many are there of you? — **avez-vous payé?** how much *or* what did you pay (for)?
comédie [kɔmedi] *f.* comedy, play
comme [kɔm] as, like, such as; as it were, as if; as well as; now; how! — **voici,** — **suit** as follows; — **il faut** in fine style, exactly right, as it should be
commencement [kɔmɑ̃smɑ̃] *m.* beginning, commencement
commencer [kɔmɑ̃se] § 156 to begin, commence (to, **à, de**)
comment [kɔmɑ̃] how; how? how! what! — **cela?** how is that?
commode [kɔmɔd] comfortable, convenient
compagne [kɔ̃paɲ] *f.* companion; wife, mate
compagnie [kɔ̃paɲi] *f.* company
compagnon [kɔ̃paɲɔ̃] *m.* companion; — **de voyage** traveling companion
comparaison [kɔ̃parɛzɔ̃] *f.* comparison
comparer [kɔ̃pare] to compare
compartiment [kɔ̃partimɑ̃] *m.* compartment
compassion [kɔ̃pɑsjɔ̃] *f.* compassion, pity
compatriote [kɔ̃patriɔt] *m., f.* fellow countryman *or* woman
complet [kɔ̃plɛ] *m.* suit (*of clothes*); complement; **être au** — to be full
compléter [kɔ̃plete] to complete
compliment [kɔ̃plimɑ̃] *m.* compliment
comprendre [kɔ̃prɑ̃ːdr] § 202 to understand, comprehend; include; **faire** — to explain
compter [kɔ̃te] to count, reckon; intend, think, hope; be of importance
concert [kɔ̃sɛːr] *m.* concert
concorde [kɔ̃kɔrd] *f.* concord; **place de la Concorde** *name of a square in Paris*

conducteur [kɔ̃dyktœːr] *m.* conductor
conduire [kɔ̃dɥiːr] § 185 to conduct, lead, guide, drive, take, convey
confiance [kɔ̃fjɑ̃ːs] *f.* confidence, trust
congé [kɔ̃ʒe] *m.* holiday; **donner — à** to give a holiday to
connaissance [kɔnɛsɑ̃ːs] *f.* acquaintance; **faire — avec** to become acquainted with
connaît [kɔnɛ] *3 sg. pres. indic.* **connaître**
connaître [kɔnɛːtr] § 188 to know, be acquainted with, understand
conseil [kɔ̃sɛːj] *m.* counsel, advice
conserver [kɔ̃sɛrve] to preserve, save, keep
conte [kɔ̃ːt] *m.* story, tale; **faire un —** to tell a story
contenir [kɔ̃tniːr] § 177 to contain
content [kɔ̃tɑ̃] *adj.* content, satisfied, pleased, gratified, happy
contentement [kɔ̃tɑ̃tmɑ̃] *m.* contentment, satisfaction
conter [kɔ̃te] to relate, tell
continuer [kɔ̃tinɥe] to continue (to, **de**), keep on, pursue
contraire [kɔ̃trɛːr] *m.* contrary; **au —** on the contrary
contre [kɔ̃tr] against, from, at
convenable [kɔ̃vənabl] suitable
convenir [kɔ̃vəniːr] § 178 to suit, become, be fitting *or* appropriate
copie [kɔpi] *f.* copy; exercise
corps [kɔːr] *m.* body, form
corriger [kɔriʒe] to correct
Corse [kɔrs] *f.* Corsica
côté [kote] *m.* side, way; **d'un —** on one side; **de l'autre —** on the other side; **de ce —** on this side; **de —** to one side, aside; **du — de** in the direction of, towards; **de son —** on his part, he too; **à — de** beside
coucher [kuʃe] *intr.* to lie, lie down; *tr.* to put to bed, lay down; **se —** to go to bed, retire (*to rest*); set (*of the sun*); **être couché** to be lying down
coucher [kuʃe] *m.* setting; **— du soleil** sunset
couloir [kulwaːr] *m.* passage, corridor
coup [ku] *m.* blow, stroke; drink; **— de poing** a blow with the fist; **— de pied** a kick; **d'un seul —** at a single stroke; **tout à —** all at once; **— de dent** bite; **— de bâton** blow with a stick
couper [kupe] to cut
cour [kuːr] *f.* court; courtiers; yard, courtyard; **faire la —** to pay court; **gens de la —** courtiers
couramment [kuramɑ̃] fluently
courber [kurbe] to bend, bow
courir [kuriːr] § 164 to run (about); hasten; hunt after
court [kuːr] short (*adj.*); short (*adv.*)
court [kuːr] *3 sg. pres. indic.* **courir**
courtisan [kurtizɑ̃] *m.* courtier
couru [kury] *p. part.* **courir**
cousin, -e [kuzɛ̃, kuzin] cousin
couteau [kuto] *m.* knife
coûter [kute] to cost
coutume [kutym] *f.* custom, habit
couturière [kutyrjɛːr] *f.* dressmaker
couvert [kuvɛːr] *p. part.* **couvrir** covered; cloudy, overcast; with one's hat on
couvrir [kuvriːr] § 176 to cover; **se —** to cover oneself, be covered

craie [krɛ] *f.* chalk
craindre [krɛ̃:dr] § 190 to fear, be afraid of
crainte [krɛ̃:t] *f.* fear
cravate [kravat] *f.* necktie
crayon [krɛjɔ̃] *m.* pencil
créature [kreaty:r] *f.* creature
crier [krie] to cry (out), shout, yell, scream, call (out), exclaim
croire [krwa:r] § 191 to believe; think; **se** — to believe *or* think oneself; **faire** — **à** to make (one) believe in; **je crois bien!** I should think so!
croupe [krup] *f.* back, rump
croyez [krwaje] *2 pl. pres. indic.* croire
cruel [kryɛl] –**le** cruel
crus [kry] *1 sg. past def.* croire
cuiller [kɥijɛ:r] *f.* spoon
cuir [kɥi:r] *m.* leather
cuisine [kɥizin] *f.* kitchen, cooking
cuisinière [kɥizinjɛ:r] *f.* cook
curiosité [kyrjozite] *f.* curiosity

D

dame [dam] *f.* lady
Danemark [danmark] *m.* Denmark
dangereu-x [dãʒrø] –**se** dangerous
dans [dã] in, within, to, into, at, on, among, between; — **le temps** at the time
danser [dãse] to dance
date [dat] *f.* date; **de longue** — long before
datte [dat] *f.* date (*fruit*)
Daudet, Alphonse [alfɔ̃z dodɛ] *French novelist, b. at Nîmes, 1840, d. 1897*
davantage [davãta:ʒ] more
de [də] of, from, out of, for, with, in, on, by, at, to; — + *infin.* to, at, for, in, *etc.*; — **ce que** because
debout [dəbu] *adv.* upright, standing
décembre [desã:br] *m.* December
décider [deside] to decide, determine; **se** — to decide, resolve, make up one's mind
découvrir [dekuvri:r] § 176 to discover; **se** — to uncover oneself, take off the hat
dehors [dəɔ:r] outside, outdoors
déjà [deʒa] already; **déjà!** so soon!
déjeuner [deʒœne] *m.* breakfast; lunch; — **du matin** *or* **premier** —, **petit** — breakfast (*i.e., the first meal of the day*)
demain [dəmɛ̃] *m.* to-morrow; **à** — I shall see you to-morrow until to-morrow
demander [dəmãde] to ask, ask for; — **à** to ask of *or* from (*indir. obj.*), ask; — **à** + *infin.* to ask to; **se** — to ask oneself, wonder
demeurer [dəmœre] to live, dwell, reside; remain, be
demi [dəmi] half; **à** — half
demi-heure [dəmiœ:r] *f.* half an hour
démontrer [demɔ̃tre] to show, prove
denier [dənje] *m.* denarius (*obs.*), penny; (*pl.*) money
dent [dã] *f.* tooth; **coup de** — bite
départ [depa:r] *m.* departure
dépêcher: **se** — [sə depɛʃe] to make haste, hurry
dépenser [depãse] to spend, expend
dépouiller [depuje] to strip, despoil, deprive
depuis [dəpɥi] since; from; — **deux ans** for two years back, for the last two years; — **que**

since; — **quand?** since when? how long?

député [depyte] *m.* deputy, member of parliament, congressman

déranger [derãʒe] § 156 to derange; **se** — to trouble oneself

derni-er [dɛrnje] **-ère** latter, last, final

derrière [dɛrjɛːr] behind (*prep.*); behind, at the back (*adv.*); **de** — hind (*adj.*)

des [de] *contr. of* **de** + **les**

dès [dɛ] from (dating from), not later than; — **demain** beginning to-morrow; — **que** as soon as, from the very moment that; — **le même jour** on the (very same) day; — **le point du jour** at daybreak

désagréable [dezagreabl] disagreeable, unpleasant

descendre [desãːdr] § 210 to descend, come *or* go down, alight, get off; go down (stairs), put up at

désert [dezɛːr] *m.* desert

désir [deziːr] *m.* desire, longing

désirer [deziːre] to desire, wish

dessert [desɛːr] *m.* dessert

destination [dɛstinɑsjõ] *f.* destination

destruction [dɛstryksjõ] *f.* destruction

deux [dø] two; **tous** (*or* **toutes**) — both (of them)

deuxième [døzjɛm] second

devant [dəvã] *prep.* before, in front of, ahead of; *adv.* before, ahead, in advance

devenir [dəvniːr] § 178 to become; become of

devint [dəvɛ̃] *3 sg. past def.* **devenir**

devoir [dəvwaːr] *m.* duty; exercise (*lesson*); **rendre leurs —s à** to pay their respects to

devoir [devwaːr] § 214 to owe; be one's duty to, ought, be to, have to, be obliged to, must; — + *infin.* to be one's duty to, ought, be to, have to, be obliged to, must

devrais [dəvrɛ] *see* **devoir** ought

dictée [dikte] *f.* dictation

Dieu [djø] *m.* God; **ah! mon —!** oh! dear me!

différence [diferãːs] *f.* difference

différent [diferã] different, divers, various

difficile [difisil] difficult, hard

difficulté [difikylte] *f.* difficulty

dimanche [dimãːʃ] *m.* Sunday; **tous les —s** every Sunday

dîner [dine] to dine

dîner [dine] *m.* dinner; **à** — to *or* at dinner

dire [diːr] § 193 to say, tell, recite; **c'est à** — that is (to say); **vouloir** — to mean

directement [dirɛkt(ə)mã] directly

disait [dizɛ] *3 sg. impf. indic.* **dire**

discuter [diskyte] to discuss

distinctement [distɛ̃kt(ə)mã] distinctly

distribuer [distribɥe] to distribute, deal out, portion out

dit [di] *3 sg. pres. indic., 3 sg. past def., and p. part.* **dire**

dix [dis] ten

dix-huit [dizɥit] eighteen

dix-neuf [diznœf] nineteen

dix-neuvième [diznœvjɛm] nineteenth

dix-sept [dissɛt] seventeen

doigt [dwa] *m.* finger; toe

dois [dwa] *1 and 2 sg. pres. indic.* **devoir**

dollar [dɔlaːr] *m.* dollar

domestique [dɔmɛstik] *m. or f.* servant

dommage [dɔmaːʒ] *m.* damage, pity
donc [dɔ̃(ːk)] then, therefore, consequently
donner [dɔne] to give; bear (*of trees*); — **à souper** to give a supper; **se** — to give to each other
dont [dɔ̃] of whom, of (from, *etc.*) which, whose, with which, *etc.*, whence
dormir [dɔrmiːr] § 166 to sleep
douloureusement [dulurøzmɑ̃] sadly
doute [dut] *m.* doubt; **sans** — no doubt, doubtless, of course
dou-x [du]**-ce** sweet; soft, gentle, kindly
douze [duːz] twelve
droit [drwɑ] straight, right; upright, erect
droite [drwɑt] *f.* right hand, right, right side; **à —, de** — to *or* on the right (hand)
du [dy] *contr. of* **de** + **le**
ducat [dyka] *m.* ducat (*a gold coin worth 10 or 12 francs*)
Dumas, Alexandre [alɛgzɑ̃dr dyma] *French dramatist and novelist, b. 1803, d. 1870*
duquel [dykɛl] *contr. of* **de** + **lequel**
durer [dyre] to last, continue, endure

E

eau [o] *f.* water
écarter [ekarte] to take away; **s'—** **de** to go away from, ramble, stray
échange [eʃɑ̃ːʒ] *m.* exchange; **en — de** in exchange for
échapper [eʃape] to escape; **s'—** to escape
éclat [ekla] *m.* burst, outburst
école [ekɔl] *f.* school; **maison d'—** schoolhouse
écolier [ekɔlje] *m.* schoolboy, pupil
écouter [ekute] to listen, listen to, hear
écrier: s'— [sekrie] to cry out, exclaim
écrire [ekriːr] § 194 to write
écrit [ekri] *p. part.* **écrire**
édifice [edifis] *m.* edifice, building
Édouard [edwaːr] Edward
éducation [edykɑsjɔ̃] *f.* education, training, upbringing
effet [efɛ] *m.* effect; **en** — in effect, indeed, in fact
effort [efɔːr] *m.* effort, endeavor; force, might; **tenter un dernier** — to make a final effort
égal [egal] equal
égarer: s'— [segare] to lose one's way
église [egliːz] *f.* church
Égypte [eʒipt] *f.* Egypt
eh! [e] ah! well! — **bien!** well! well then! well now!
élève [elɛːv] *m. or f.* pupil, scholar
élever [elve] § 158 to raise, raise up, lift up, exalt; rear, bring up; **s'—** to rise, exalt oneself, be lifted up, be exalted
elle [ɛl] she, it, her
éloigné [elwaɲe] distant
éloigner: s'— [selwaɲe] to go away
embarras [ɑ̃barɑ] *m.* embarrassment
embrasure [ɑ̃brɑzyːr] *f.* embrasure, recess (*of window, etc.*)
empêcher [ɑ̃pɛʃe] to hinder, prevent (from, **de**)
employé [ɑ̃plwaje] *m.* employee, official
employer [ɑ̃plwaje] to employ, use

emporter [ɑ̃pɔrte] to carry away, carry off, take away
empressement [ɑ̃prɛsmɑ̃] *m.* eagerness
en [ɑ̃] *prep.* in, into; at; of; as a, like a; **en** + *pres. part.* in, while, whilst, by (*or untranslated*); — **route** on the way; — **argent** made of silver; — **quoi?** of what (material)?
en [ɑ̃] *pron. and adv.* of (from, out of, for, by, *etc.*) it *or* them; of him, of her, some of it, some of them; some, any
enchanter [ɑ̃ʃɑ̃te] to enchant, charm, delight; **enchanté** delighted
encore [ɑ̃kɔːr] yet, still, again, more, still more, moreover, besides, also, now, only; — **un** another, one more; — **si** even if
encre [ɑ̃ːkr] *f.* ink; **à l'**— with ink
encrier [ɑ̃krie] *m.* inkstand
encyclopédie [ɑ̃sikləpedi] *f.* encyclopedia
endormir: s'— [sɑ̃dɔrmiːr] § 166 to go to sleep, fall asleep; **endormi** asleep
endroit [ɑ̃drwɑ] *m.* place, spot
enfant [ɑ̃fɑ̃] *m. or f.* child, son, daughter; boy, girl, offspring
enfin [ɑ̃fɛ̃] at last, finally, in fine, in short
ennuyeu-x [ɑ̃nɥijø] **-se** tiresome, annoying
enseigner [ɑ̃sɛɲe] to teach
ensemble [ɑ̃sɑ̃ːbl] together, all together
ensuite [ɑ̃sɥit] afterwards, then, thereupon, after that
entendre [ɑ̃tɑ̃ːdr] § 210 to hear; **cela s'entend** that is evident; of course
enti-er [ɑ̃tje] **-ère** entire, whole; **tout** — wholly
entre [ɑ̃ːtr] between, among, amongst
entrée [ɑ̃tre] *f.* entrance, beginning; entrée (*a term in cookery*); **billet (carte) d'**— ticket (of admission)
entrer [ɑ̃tre] to enter, go in, come in; — **dans** to enter
énumérer [enymere] § 158 to enumerate
envers [ɑ̃vɛːr] towards
envie [ɑ̃vi] *f.* envy, desire, inclination; **avoir** — **de** to feel like, wish *or* desire to
environ [ɑ̃virɔ̃] about, nearly
envoyer [ɑ̃vwaje] § 157 to send
épargner [epaɾɲe] to save, economize
épi [epi] *m.* ear (*of wheat*)
épingle [epɛ̃ːgl] *f.* pin
époque [epɔk] *f.* epoch, period, time
épouser [epuze] to marry (*trans.*), take in marriage, wed
escadre [ɛskadr] *f.* squadron, fleet; **chef d'**— rear-admiral
Espagne [ɛspaɲ] *f.* Spain
espagnol [ɛspaɲɔl] Spanish
espérance [ɛsperɑ̃ːs] *f.* hope
espérer [ɛspere] § 158 to hope, hope for, expect
esprit [ɛspri] *m.* spirit, mind, wit, intelligence; **Saint-Esprit** Holy Ghost
essayer [esɛje] § 157 to try, attempt; try on
est [ɛ] *3 sg. pres. indic.* **être**; — **-ce que?** is it (the case) that? (*a statement prefixed by* **est-ce que?** *becomes interrogative*); **n'est-ce pas?** *lit.* is it not (so)? (*variously rendered to suit the context*)
est [ɛst] *m.* east
et [e] and
état [eta] *m.* state; condition;

homme d'État statesman; **en — de** in a condition to
États-Unis [etazyni] *m. pl.* United States
été [ete] *m.* summer; **en —** in summer
êtes [ɛt] *2 pl. pres. indic.* **être**
étoile [etwal] *f.* star
étrang-er [etrɑ̃ʒe] **–ère** *m. or f.* stranger, foreigner; *adj.* foreign
être [ɛːtr] § 154 to be; **— à** to belong to; **— de** to belong; **en — à** to be at a point; be busy at; **nous sommes cinq** there are five of us
étudier [etydje] to study
eûmes [ym] *1 pl. past def.* **avoir**
Europe [œrɔp] *f.* Europe
européen [œrɔpeɛ̃] **–ne** European
eus [y] *1 sg. past def.* **avoir**
eût [y] *3 sg. impf. subj.* **avoir**
eux [ø] they, them
eux-mêmes [ø mɛːm] they themselves, themselves
événement [evɛnmɑ̃] *m.* event
évidemment [evidamɑ̃] evidently
excellent [ɛksɛlɑ̃] excellent
excepté [ɛksɛpte] except
exciter [eksite] to excite
excursion [ekskyrsjɔ̃] *f.* excursion, trip
excuser [ekskyze] to excuse
exemple [egzɑ̃pl] *m.* example, pattern; copy; **par —** for instance, for example; you don't say so! dear me!
exercice [egzɛrsis] *m.* exercise
expliquer [ɛksplike] to explain
exprimer [ɛksprime] to express

F

façade [fasad] *f.* front, façade
face [fas] *f.* face; **en —** opposite, on the other side; **en — de** opposite to, facing before, face to face with, in the presence of
fâcher [fɑːʃe] to vex, displease; **fâché** sorry, angry; **se —** to get angry
facile [fasil] easy
facilement [fasilmɑ̃] easily
façon [fasɔ̃] *f.* fashion, way, manner; outline, sketch; **de — à ce que** in such a way *or* manner that; **de la même —** in the same way
facteur [faktœːr] *m.* postman, letter carrier
faible [fɛːbl] weak, feeble
faiblesse [fɛblɛs] *f.* weakness
faim [fɛ̃] *f.* hunger; **avoir —** to be hungry
faire [fɛːr] § 195 to do, make, act, cause (+ *infin.* to do *or* be done), produce, occasion, give, form; say, reply, exclaim, cry, remark; **— —** to have made, cause to be made; **— vivre** to keep alive, support; **— le tour de** to go round; **— plaisir** to give pleasure; **— peur à** to frighten; **— attention** to pay attention; **— sortir** to put out, expel; **— la cour** to pay court; **— la classe** to give a lesson, teach; **cela ne fait rien** that makes no difference; **— fête à** to welcome, hail with joy; **— voir** to show; **— mal à** to pain, hurt; **— un pas** to take a step; **fais donc,** do (so) then, do (it your own way) then, all right; **— une question** to ask a question; **il fait beau (chaud,** *etc.*) it is fine (hot, *etc.*)
faire: se — [sə fɛːr] § 195 to make oneself, render oneself, make to *or* for oneself; be done; become; take place; be; **il se**

faisait un grand tapage there was a great uproar; **se —** à to adapt oneself to

fais [fɛ] *1 sg. pres. indic.* **faire**

faisons [fəzɔ̃] *1 pl. pres. indic.* faire

faites [fɛt] *2 pl. pres. indic. and impve.* **faire**

fallait [falɛ] *3 sg. impf. indic.* falloir

falloir [falwaːr] § 218 *impers. vb.* to be necessary, have to; **il faut** + *infin.* one (*etc.*) must, one has to; **il fallait que** it was necessary that (he, *etc.*), he was obliged to *or* had to; **il lui faut** he needs *or* must have; **il faut manger** one must eat; **il avait fallu** he had been obliged

fameu-x [famø] **–se** famous, celebrated

famille [famij] *f.* family

fatigant [fatigɑ̃] tiresome

fatigué [fatige] tired

fatiguer [fatige] to fatigue, weary, tire; **se —** to fatigue oneself, get tired

faudra [fodra] *3 sg. fut.* **falloir**

faut [fo] *3 sg. pres. indic.* **falloir**

faute [foːt] *f.* fault, mistake

fau-x [fo] **–sse** false, deceitful

faux-col [fo kɔl] *m.* collar

félicitation [felisitɑsjɔ̃] *f.* congratulation

féliciter [felisite] to congratulate

femme [fam] *f.* woman, wife

fenêtre [fənɛːtr] *f.* window

fer [fɛːr] *m.* iron; **en —** iron (*adj.*), of iron; **chemin de —** railway; **— à cheval** horseshoe

ferai [fəre] *1 sg. fut.* **faire.**

ferme [fɛrm] firm(ly), hard

fermer [fɛrme] to shut (up), close; lock

ferrant [fɛrɑ̃] that shoes horses; **maréchal —** blacksmith, horseshoer

fête [fɛːt] *f.* holiday, festival; festivity, feast, merrymaking; **être en —** to be in festivity, hold a celebration; **jour de —** holiday

feuille [fœːj] *f.* leaf, sheet (*of paper*)

février [fevrie] *m.* February

fi-er [fjɛːr] **–ère** proud

fier [fje]: **se —** [səfje] **à** to trust, have confidence in

fièrement [fjɛrmɑ̃] proudly

figure [figyːr] *f.* figure, face, countenance

fille [fiːj] *f.* girl, daughter; **jeune —** girl, young lady

fillette [fijɛt] *f.* little girl

fils [fis] *m.* son

fin [fɛ̃] *f.* end; **à la —** finally, at last

finir [finiːr] to finish, conclude, end; **il finit par lui demander** he asked him finally; **c'est fini** it's all over

fis [fi] *1 sg. p. def.* **faire**

flatter [flate] to flatter; **se —** to flatter oneself, hope

fleur [flœːr] *f.* flower; **en —** in flower, blooming

fleuve [flœːv] *m.* river (*flowing into the sea*)

foi [fwɑ] *f.* faith; **ma —!** faith!

fois [fwa] *f.* time (*repeated occasion*); **tant de —** so many times, so often; **une —, deux —** once, twice; **encore une —** once more

folle [fɔl] *f. of* **fou**

fond [fɔ̃] *m.* bottom, depth, abyss; crown (*of hat*); **au — de** at *or* in the bottom of, at the back of, in the depth(s) of

fonder [fɔ̃de] to found

font [fɔ̃] *3 pl. pres. indic.* **faire**

Fontainebleau [fɔ̃tɛnblo] *town near*

Melun, famous for its château and picturesque forests
football [futbal] *m.* football
forêt [fɔrɛ] *f.* forest
forme [fɔrm] *f.* form, shape
former [fɔrme] to form
fort [fɔːr] *adj.* strong, powerful; big, thick; clever
fort [fɔːr] *adv.* much, very, very much; loud, loudly; **m'a — servi** has been of great service to me
fortune [fɔrtyn] *f.* fortune, good luck; **chercher —** to seek one's fortune
fou, fol, folle [fu, fɔl, fɔl] mad, foolish, crazy
foule [fuːl] *f.* crowd
fourchette [furʃɛt] *f.* fork
fourmi [furmi] *f.* ant
foyer [fwaje] *m.* hearth
franc [frɑ̃] *m.* franc (*a coin worth normally about 20 cents*)
France [frɑ̃ːs] *f.* France
France, Anatole [anatɔlfrɑ̃ːs] *prominent French man of letters, b. 1844*
français [frɑ̃sɛ] *adj.* French; **un —** Frenchman; **le —** French (*the language*); **en —** in French; **parler —** to speak French
François [frɑ̃swa] *m.* Francis; **— Ier** [frɑ̃swa prəmje] Francis the First (*king of France, b. 1494, d. 1547*)
Franklin, Benjamin [bẽʒamẽ frɑ̃klẽ] *American statesman and philosopher, b. 1706, d. 1790*
frapper [frape] to strike, knock, rap
Frédéric le Grand [frederik le grɑ̃] Frederick the Great, (*king of Prussia, b. 1712, d. 1786*)
frère [frɛːr] *m.* brother
froid [frwa] *adj.* cold; — *m.* cold
frotter [frɔte] to rub
fruit [frqi] *m.* fruit
fruitier [frqitje] fruit-bearing; **arbre —** fruit tree
fumer [fyme] to smoke

G

gages [gaːʒ] *m. pl.* wages
gagner [gɑɲe], to gain, win, earn, obtain; reach; seize
galerie [galri] *f.* gallery
galop [galo] *m.* gallop
gant [gɑ̃] *m.* glove
garçon [garsɔ̃] *m.* boy, waiter
garde [gard] *m.* guard, keeper
garder [garde] to keep, guard, preserve, have in store
gare [gaːr] *f.* station
gauche [goːʃ] *adj.* left
gauche [goːʃ] *f.* left hand, left, left side; **à (la) —, de —** to *or* on the left (hand)
général [ʒeneral] general; *m.* general; **en —** in general, generally
gens [ʒɑ̃] *m. or f. pl.* people; **— de la cour** courtiers
gentil [ʒɑ̃ti] pretty, nice, well-behaved
gentilhomme [ʒɑ̃tijɔm] *m.* nobleman
Germaine [ʒɛrmɛn] *f.* Germaine
glace [glas] *f.* ice; ice cream; mirror
glisser [glise] to slip, slide
gloire [glwaːr] *f.* glory
gothique [gɔtik] gothic
grain [grɛ̃] *m.* grain, corn
grammaire [gramɛːr] *f.* grammar
grand [grɑ̃] great, large, tall, big, grand; long
grand'chose [grɑ̃ʃoːz] *f.* much
grandeur [grɑ̃dœːr] *f.* greatness, size
grand'mère [grɑ̃mɛːr] *f.* grandmother

grand-père [grɑ̃pɛːr] *m.* grandfather
gras [grɑ] **–se** fat
gravement [gravmɑ̃] gravely, seriously
grimper [grɛ̃pe] to climb
gris [gri] gray, dark-colored
gros [gro] **–se** large, big, great; heavy
guère [gɛːr] but little, not much; **ne . . . —** hardly . . . at all
guérir [geriːr] to cure
guerre [gɛːr] *f.* war

H

[h aspirate is indicated thus: 'h]

habile [abil] able, clever
habiller [abije] to dress; **s'—** to dress
habit [abi] *m.* garment, dress, apparel, garb; coat; *pl.* clothes, apparel, costume
habiter [abite] to inhabit, live in
habituer [abitɥe] to accustom; habituate; **s'—** to accustom oneself, get used (to, **à**)
'halles [al] *f. pl.* market
'haricot [ariko] *m.* kidney bean; **—s verts** string beans
'hasard [azaːr] *m.* chance; **par —** by chance, perchance
'hâter: se — [sə ate] to hasten, hurry
'haut [o] high, tall; loud
'haut [o] *m.* height; top, upper part, summit; **au —** at the top; **en —** upstairs
'haut [o] *adv.* loud
hélas! [elɑːs] alas!
Henri [ãri] *m.* Henry; **— IV** [ãrikatr] Henry the Fourth (*king of France, b. 1553, d. 1610*)
herbe [ɛrb] *f.* grass, herb(s)
heure [œːr] *f.* hour; time; **quelle — est-il?** what time is it? **à quelle —?** at what time? at what hour? **à neuf —s** at nine o'clock; **tout à l'—** not long ago, just now, a little while ago, directly; **de bonne —** early, in good time
heureusement [œrøːzmɑ̃] happily, luckily, fortunately
heureu-x [œrø] **–se** happy, fortunate
hier [jɛːr] yesterday; **— soir** yesterday evening
histoire [istwaːr] *f.* history, story
historique [istɔrik] historical
hiver [ivɛːr] *m.* winter; **en —** in winter
homme [ɔm] *m.* man; **— d'État** statesman
honneur [ɔnœːr] *m.* honor
'honte [ɔ̃ːt] *f.* shame; **avoir —** to be ashamed
hôpital [ɔpital] *m.* hospital
hôtel [ɔtɛl] *m.* hotel
hôtel de ville [ɔtɛldəvil] *m.* town hall
Hôtel-Dieu [ɔtɛldjø] *m.* hospital
Hugo, Victor [viktɔːr ygo] *French writer, b. 1802, d. 1885*
'huit [ɥit] eight; **— jours** a week

I

ici [isi] here; **ici-bas** here below
idée [ide] *f.* idea
ignorant [iɲɔrɑ̃] ignorant
ignorer [iɲɔre] to be ignorant of, not to know
il [il] he, it; **— en vint plusieurs** there came several
il y a [ilja] *see* **avoir** there is, there are, ago
île [iːl] *f.* island; **— de la Cité** *island in the Seine, in the heart of Paris*

ils [il] they
importance [ɛ̃pɔrtɑ̃ːs] *f.* importance
important [ɛ̃pɔrtɑ̃] important
importer [ɛ̃pɔrte] to be of consequence; **n'importe** no matter; **n'importe quel autre** any other
impossible [ɛ̃pɔsibl] impossible
impression [ɛ̃prɛsjɔ̃] *f.* impression
incendier [ɛ̃sɑ̃dje] to set on fire, burn
incliner [ɛ̃kline] to incline, bend; **s'—** to bow
Indes [ɛ̃ːd] *f. pl.* India
indiquer [ɛ̃dike] to indicate, point out
individu [ɛ̃dividy] *m.* individual, fellow
industriel [ɛ̃dystriɛl] **–le** industrial, manufacturing
influent [ɛ̃flyɑ̃] influential
insecte [ɛ̃sɛkt] *m.* insect
instant [ɛ̃stɑ̃] *m.* instant, moment; **à l'—** immediately
instrument [ɛ̃strymɑ̃] *m.* instrument
intelligent [ɛ̃teliʒɑ̃] intelligent
intention [ɛ̃tɑ̃sjɔ̃] *f.* intention; **avoir l'—** to intend
intéressant [ɛ̃terɛsɑ̃] interesting
intérieur [ɛ̃terjœːr] *m.* interior, inside
introduire [ɛ̃trɔdɥiːr] § 185 to introduce
inviter [ɛ̃vite] to invite, beg
irai [ire] *1 sg. fut.* **aller**
Italie [itali] *f.* Italy
italien [italjɛ̃] Italian

J

jamais [ʒamɛ] ever, never; **ne . . . —** never
jambe [ʒɑ̃ːb] *f.* leg
janvier [ʒɑ̃vje] *m.* January
Japon [ʒapɔ̃] *m.* Japan
japonais [ʒapɔnɛ] Japanese
jardin [ʒardɛ̃] *m.* garden
je [ʒə] I
Jean [ʒɑ̃] John
Jeanne [ʒɑːn] Joan, Jane
Jéricho [ʒeriko] Jericho
Jérusalem [ʒeryzalɛm] Jerusalem
Jésus-Christ [ʒezykri] Jesus Christ
jeter [ʒəte] § 158 to throw, cast, utter; **se —** to fall upon, rush
jeu [ʒø] *m.* play, game, motion
jeudi [ʒødi] *m.* Thursday
jeune [ʒœn] young
Joffre, Césaire-Joseph [sezɛːr ʒozɛf ʒɔfr] *Marshall of France, the victor of the Marne, b. 1852*
joli [ʒɔli] pretty, nice, fine
jouer [ʒwe] to play
jouet [ʒwɛ] *m.* toy
jouir [ʒwiːr] to enjoy; **— de** to enjoy
jour [ʒuːr] *m.* day, light; **— de fête** holiday; **le — de l'an** New Year's day; **faire —** to be daylight
journal [ʒurnal] *m.* newspaper
journée [ʒurne] *f.* day; **toute la —** all day long
joyeu-x [ʒwajø] **–se** joyous, glad, merry
juif [ʒɥif] *m.* Jew
juillet [ʒɥijɛ] *m.* July
juin [ʒɥɛ̃ *or* ʒwɛ̃] *m.* June
jusque (jusqu'à) [ʒysk(a)] to, even, as far as, until; **jusqu'à ce que** till; **jusqu'ici** till now; **—-là** till then
juste [ʒyst] just, exactly

K

kilo(gramme) [kilo(gram)] *m.* kilogram (*about* 2⅕ *lbs. avoirdupois*)

L

là [la] there; **celui-là** that one, the former
là-bas [laba] yonder, over there
labourer [labure] to plow, dig
laboureur [laburœːr] *m.* husbandman, plowman, farmer
lac [lak] *m.* lake
laisser [lɛse] to leave, bequeath, let, let have; — **tomber** to let fall, drop
lait [lɛ] *m.* milk
laitue [lɛty] *f.* lettuce
langue [lɑ̃ːg] *f.* tongue, language
lapin [lapɛ̃] *m.* rabbit
large [larʒ] wide, broad
latin [latɛ̃] Latin
laver [lave] to wash; **se** — to wash oneself
le, la, l', les [lə, la, l, le] the
le, la, l', les [lə, la, l, le] him, her, it, them
leçon [ləsɔ̃] *f.* lesson
lecture [lɛkty:r] *f.* reading
lég-er [leʒe] **-ère** light, slight
légume [legym] *m.* vegetable
lendemain [lɑ̃dmɛ̃] *m.* next day, day after, the morrow
lentement [lɑ̃təmɑ̃] slowly
lequel, laquelle [ləkɛl, lakɛl] who, whom, which
Lesage, Alain-René [alɛ̃rəne ləsaːʒ] *famous French novelist, author of 'Gil Blas,' b. 1668, d. 1747*
lettre [lɛtr] *f.* letter
leur [lœːr] *poss.* their; **le** — theirs
leur [lœːr] *pers.* to them, them
lever [ləve] § 158 to raise; **se** — to rise
lever [ləve] *m.* rising; — **du soleil** sunrise
lévite [levit] *m.* Levite
libre [libr] free
lieu [ljø] *m.* place; **au** — **de** instead of; **avoir** — to take place
ligne [liɲ] *f.* line
Lille [lil] *f. town in the northeast of France*
lire [liːr] § 197 to read
lit [li] *m.* bed
livre [liːvr] *m.* book
loi [lwɑ] *f.* law
loin [lwɛ̃] far, far off; **de** — in the distance; **plus** — farther off, farther on
Loire [lwaːr] *f. river flowing west through center of France*
long [lɔ̃] **-ue** long; **le** — **de** along; **tout au** — at full length
longtemps [lɔ̃tɑ̃] long, a long while
lorsque [lɔrskə] when
Louis-Philippe [lwi filip] *king of France from 1830 to 1848*
Louis XIV [lwi katɔrz] *king of France from 1643 to 1715*
Louis XV [lwi kɛ̃ːz] *king of France from 1715 to 1774*
Louis XVI [lwi sɛːz] *king of France from 1774 to 1793*
Louise [lwiːz] Louise, Louisa
loup [lu] *m.* wolf
lourdement [lurd(ə)mɑ̃] heavily
Louvre [luːvr] *m. great museum of works of art and antiquities in Paris*
lui [lɥi] him, to him, to her, it, himself; he; —**-même** himself; **à** — **seul** by himself, alone
lundi [lœ̃di] *m.* Monday
lune [lyn] *f.* moon; **clair de** — moonlight
lut [ly] *3 sg. p. def.* **lire**
lutter [lyte] to struggle, wrestle
Lyon [ljɔ̃] *m.* Lyons *city on the Rhône, a center of silk trade*

M

madame [madam] *f.* madam, Mrs.

Madeleine [madlɛːn] *f.* Magdalen (*also name of a church in Paris*)
mademoiselle [madmwazɛl] *f.* miss
magasin [magazɛ̃] *m.* shop, store
magnifique [maɲifik] magnificent, splendid
mai [mɛ] *m.* May
main [mɛ̃] *f.* hand; **à la** — in his (your, *etc.*) hand
maintenant [mɛ̃t(ə)nɑ̃] now
mais [mɛ] but, well; — **non** not at all
maison [mezɔ̃] *f.* house, home; **à la** — at home
maître [mɛːtr] *m.* master
mal [mal] *m.* evil, ill; **faire** — **à** to hurt, be sore, ache; — **aux dents** toothache
mal [mal] badly, ill, wrong
malade [malad] sick, ill, sore; **le** — the sick one, the patient
maladresse [maladrɛs] *f.* clumsiness
malgré [malgre] in spite of
malheur [malœːr] *m.* misfortune, unhappiness
malheureusement [malœrøːzmɑ̃] unhappily
malheureu-x [malœrø] **-se** unfortunate, unhappy; *m.* poor creature
manger [mɑ̃ːʒe] § 156 to eat, wear away; — **dans** to eat out of
marchand [marʃɑ̃] *m.* merchant, shopkeeper
marche [marʃ] *f.* march, walk, walking, progress, speed
marché [marʃe] *m.* market; **(à) bon** — cheap
marcher [marʃe] to march, walk, go
mardi [mardi] *m.* Tuesday
maréchal ferrant [mareʃal fɛrɑ̃] blacksmith, horseshoer
mari [mari] *m.* husband
Marie [mari] *f.* Mary
marin [marɛ̃] *m.* sailor, seaman
mars [mars] *m.* March
Marseille [marsɛːj] *f.* Marseilles (*important French seaport on the Mediterranean*)
matelot [matlo] *m.* sailor
mathématiques [matematik] *f. pl.* mathematics
matin [matɛ̃] *m.* morning; **le** — in the morning
matinée [matine] *f.* morning (*when duration is indicated*)
Maupassant, Guy de [gi də mopasɑ̃] *famous French writer of novels and short stories, b. 1850, d. 1893*
Maurice [mɔris] *m.* Maurice
mauvais [mɔvɛ] bad, ill, evil, poor; **faire** — **to be bad weather**
me [mə] me, to me, for me
mécontent [mekɔ̃tɑ̃] dissatisfied, displeased
mécontentement [mekɔ̃tɑ̃tmɑ̃] *m.* dissatisfaction
méfiance [mefjɑ̃ːs] *f.* mistrust, distrust
méfier: se — [səmefje] to mistrust, distrust
meilleur [mɛjœːr] better, best
membre [mɑ̃ːbr] *m.* member
même [mɛːm] same, even, self, very; **de** — the same; **de** — **que** as well as
menacer [mənase] § 156 to menace, threaten
mener [məne] § 158 to lead, conduct, take, drive
mer [mɛːr] *f.* sea; **en** — at sea
merci [mɛrsi] *m.* thanks, thank you
mercredi [mɛrkrədi] *m.* Wednesday
mère [mɛːr] *f.* mother

messieurs [mesjø] *pl. of* **monsieur**
mettre [mɛtr] § 198 to put, place, put on; **le — à la porte** to turn him out of doors; **— de côté** to lay aside; **se — à** to set oneself, begin; **se — à table** to sit down to dinner, *etc.*; **se — en colère** to get angry; **s'y —** to turn to, buckle to
meurs [mœːr] *1 sg. pres. indic.* **mourir**
Mexique [mɛksik] *m.* Mexico
midi [midi] *m.* noon; south
mien [mjɛ̃] mine; **le —** mine
miette [mjɛt] *f.* crumb
mieux [mjø] better
milieu [miljø] *m.* middle, midst; **au —** at the middle; **au beau —** in the very midst
militaire [militɛːr] military, soldier
mille [mil] a thousand
million [miljɔ̃] *m.* million
minuit [minɥi] *m.* midnight
minute [minyt] *f.* minute
misérable [mizerabl] miserable, wretched, unfortunate
misère [mizɛːr] *f.* misery, trouble, distress, poverty
mit [mi] *3 sg. p. def.* **mettre**
moderne [mɔdɛrn] modern
modeste [mɔdɛst] modest
modiste [mɔdist] *f.* milliner
moi [mwa] me, to me; I; **— -même** (I) myself
moins [mwɛ̃] less, least, fewer; **pour le —** at the least; **du —** at least
mois [mwa] *m.* month
moisson [mwasɔ̃] *f.* harvest
moitié [mwatje] *f.* half; **à —** half
Molière, Jean-Baptiste Poquelin [ʒɑ̃batist pɔklɛ̃ məljɛːr] *the greatest of French dramatists, b. 1622, d. 1673*
molle [mɔl] *f. of* **mou**
moment [mɔmɑ̃] *m.* moment, time; **du — où** since; **au — où** when, at the moment when
mon, ma, mes [mɔ̃, ma, me] my
monde [mɔ̃ːd] *m.* world, people; **tout le —** everybody
monnaie [mɔnɛ] *f.* coin, money, change
monsieur [məsjø] *m.* sir, gentleman, the gentleman, Mr.
montagne [mɔ̃taɲ] *f.* mountain
montagneu-x [mɔ̃taɲø] **-se** mountainous
Monte-Cristo [mɔ̃tə-kristo] *"le Comte de Monte-Cristo," famous novel of Alexandre Dumas*
monter [mɔ̃te] to mount, go up, ascend, rise, get into (*of vehicles*)
montre [mɔ̃ːtr] *f.* watch
Montréal [mɔ̃real] *m.* Montreal
montrer [mɔ̃tre] to show; **se —** to show oneself
monture [mɔ̃tyːr] *f.* beast (*for riding*)
monument [mɔnymɑ̃] *m.* monument, building (of interest)
morale [mɔral] *f.* moral
morceau [mɔrso] *m.* bit, piece
mort [mɔːr] *f.* death
mort [mɔːr] *p. part.* **mourir** dead; **le —** the dead one
mot [mo] *m.* word
mou, mol, molle [mu, mɔl, mɔl] soft
mouchoir [muʃwaːr] *m.* handkerchief
mourir [muriːr] § 174 to die, perish; **il est mort** he died; **— de faim** to die of hunger, starve (to death), be very hungry; **— de soif** to be very thirsty
mouton [mutɔ̃] *m.* sheep; mutton

moyen [mwajɛ̃] *m.* means, way; **le — de le faire?** how shall we do it?
muet [mɥɛ] **–te** mute, dumb
mur [myːr] *m.* wall
mûr [myːr] ripe
mûrir [myriːr] to ripen
musée [myze] *m.* museum
musique [myzik] *f.* music, band (*military*)

N

naissance [nɛsɑ̃ːs] *f.* birth
naître [nɛːtr] § 200 to be born; **il est né** he was born
Napoléon [napɔleɔ̃] Napoleon Bonaparte (*born 1769 in Corsica, became Emperor of the French 1804, died in St. Helena, 1821*)
narration [narɑsjɔ̃] *f.* narration, relating
national [nasjɔnal] national
nature [natyːr] *f.* nature
naturel [natyrɛl] **-le** natural
Navarre [navaːr] *f. ancient kingdom in the south of France*
ne [nə] no, not; **ne . . . pas** no, not; **— . . . ni . . . ni** neither . . . nor; **— . . . rien** nothing; **— . . . que** only (*untranslated after comparatives*)
né [ne] *p. part.* **naître**
nécessaire [necesɛːr] necessary
neige [nɛːʒ] *f.* snow
neiger [nɛːʒe] to snow
n'est-ce pas? [nɛspɑ] isn't it so? don't you? weren't you? shall we not? *etc., etc.*
nettoyer [nɛtwaje] § 157 to clean
neuf [nœf] nine
neu-f [nœf] **–ve** new
nez [ne] *m.* nose; **se rire au —** to laugh at oneself; **faire (envoyer) un pied de — à** to put one's fingers to one's nose, make grimaces at, laugh at
ni [ni], neither, nor; **ne . . . — . . . — . . .** neither . . . nor
nid [ni] *m.* nest
Nîmes [nim] *f.* Nîmes (*town in the south of France, famous for Roman remains*)
Noël [nɔɛl] *m. or f.* Christmas; **le jour de —** Christmas day
noir [nwaːr] black, dark; **faire —** to be dark
noisette [nwɑzɛt] *f.* hazelnut
nom [nɔ̃] *m.* name
nombre [nɔ̃ːbr] *m.* number
nombreu-x [nɔ̃brø] **–se** numerous
nommer [nɔme] to name, call, appoint; **se —** to be named *or* called
non [nɔ̃] no, not; **ni moi — plus** nor I either; **— pas que** not that
nord [nɔːr] *m.* north
Normandie [nɔrmɑ̃di] *f.* Normandy
nos [no] *pl. of* **notre**
notre, nos [nɔtr, no] our
nôtre: le — [lənoːtr] ours
Notre-Dame [nɔtrədam] *f. cathedral church of Paris*
nourrir [nuriːr] to nourish, feed, bring up
nous [nu] we, us, to us
nouve-au, –l, –lle [nuvo, nuvɛl, nuvɛl] new; **de —** again
Nouvelle-Orléans [nuvɛlɔrleɑ̃] *f.* New Orleans
nouvelles [nuvɛl] *f. pl.* news
novembre [nɔvɑ̃ːbr] *m.* November
nu [ny] naked, bare
nuage [nɥaːʒ] *m.* cloud
nuit [nɥi] *f.* night; **cette — last** night; **faire —** to be dark
nul [nyl] **–le** no, no one
numéro [nymero] *m.* number

O

obélisque [ɔbelisk] *m.* obelisk
objecter [ɔbʒɛkte] to object
objet [ɔbʒɛ] *m.* object, article, thing
obliger [ɔbliʒe] § 156 to force
obstacle [ɔpstakl] *m.* obstacle
obtenir [ɔptəni:r] § 177 to obtain
occuper [ɔkype] to occupy
octobre [ɔktɔbr] *m.* October
œil, *pl.* **yeux** [œ:j, jø] *m.* eye
oiseau [wazo] *m.* bird
on [ɔ̃] one, they, we, you, people, some one
oncle [ɔ̃:kl] *m.* uncle
ont [ɔ̃] *3 pl. pres. indic.* **avoir**
onze [ɔ̃:z] eleven; **le** — the eleventh; **les** — [le ɔ̃:z] the eleven
opinion [ɔpinjɔ̃] *f.* opinion
or [ɔ:r] *m.* gold; **d'**— gold(en)
or [ɔ:r] now, but; — **çà** come now
oralement [ɔralmɑ̃] orally
ordinaire [ɔrdinɛ:r] ordinary; **d'**— usually
ordinairement [ɔrdinɛrmɑ̃] ordinarily
ordonner [ɔrdɔne] to order, prescribe, command
ordre [ɔrdr] *m.* order
oreille [ɔrɛ:j] *f.* ear
origine [ɔriʒin] *f.* origin
orthographe [ɔrtɔgraf] *f.* orthography, spelling
ôter [ote] to take off, take out, remove
ou [u] or; — . . . — either . . . or; — **bien** or
où [u] where, when, in which, on which; **d'**— whence, from which, on which
oublier [ublije] to forget
ouest [wɛst] *m.* west
oui [wi] yes
outre [utr] beyond; **en** — in addition; **passer** — to pass by without noticing
ouvert [uvɛ:r] *p. part.* **ouvrir** open
ouvre [u:vr] *3 sg. pres. indic.* **ouvrir**
ouvrir [uvri:r] § 176 to open; **s'**— to open

P

page [pa:ʒ] *m.* page (*attendant*); *f.* page (*leaf*)
pain [pɛ̃] *m.* bread
paire [pɛ:r] *f.* pair
palais [palɛ] *m.* palace, building; — **de justice** courthouse
pâlir [pɑli:r] to grow pale
papier [papje] *m.* paper
par [par] by, through; — **où** by what place, by which, through which; — **exemple** for example, (*interj.*) dear me! — **delà** beyond; —**-là** by that place, over there
paragraphe [paragraf] *m.* paragraph
parc [park] *m.* park, grounds
parce que [parskə] because
par-ci par-là [parsiparla] here and there
par-dessus [pardəsy] above, higher than, over; — (le) **bord** overboard; (*as noun*) overcoat
pardon [pardɔ̃] *m.* pardon; excuse me, I beg your pardon
parent [parɑ̃] *m.* parent, relative
Paris [pari] *m. capital city of France, situated on the banks of the Seine*
parisien [parizjɛ̃] Parisian
parler [parle] to speak, talk; — **français** to speak French
parmi [parmi] amongst
part [pa:r] *f.* part, share; **de sa** — from him; **nulle** — nowhere

participe [partisip] *m.* participle
partie [parti] *f.* part, game, party
partir [partiːr] § 166 to leave, depart, go away, be off, start; **à —** de from, beginning with
partout [partu] everywhere
pas [pɑ] *m.* step, pace, footstep
pas [pɑ] no, not; **ne . . . —** no, not; **— un (ne)** not one; **— de** no, not, none; **non —** not; **n'est ce —?** shall we not? *etc.*
passage [pɑsaːʒ] *m.* passage
passé [pɑse] *m.* (the) past
passé [pɑse] past, gone, over, last
passer [pɑse] to pass, pass on, go, go by, put on; spend (*time*) **— devant** to pass, go past; **— chez** to call on; **se —** to take place, happen; **se — de** to do without
patiner [patine] to skate
patrie [patri] *f.* native land
patte [pat] *f.* paw, foot; **—s de derrière** hind feet; **—s de devant** fore feet
pauvre [poːvr] poor, paltry
payer [pɛje] § 157 to pay, pay for
pays [pei] *m.* country, locality
paysage [peizaːʒ] *m.* landscape
paysan [peizɑ̃] *m.* peasant
pêche [pɛːʃ] *f.* fishing
peigne [pɛɲ] *m.* comb
peine [pɛn] *f.* pain, difficulty, trouble, sorrow; **à —** hardly; **ce n'est pas la —** it is not worth while; **faire de la — à** to pain, hurt feelings
peinture [pɛ̃tyːr] *f.* paint, painting
pencher [pɑ̃ʃe] to incline, bend
pendant [pɑ̃dɑ̃] during; **— que** whilst
pendre [pɑ̃ːdr] § 210 to hang
penser [pɑ̃se] to think; **vous pensez si** imagine whether; **— à** to think of; **— de** to have an opinion of; **je pense bien** I should think so
perdre [pɛrdr] § 210 to lose, ruin
père [pɛːr] *m.* father
perle [pɛrl] *f.* pearl
permettre [pɛrmɛtr] § 198 to permit; **se —** to take the liberty; **permis** permitted
personnage [pɛrsonaːʒ] *m.* personage, character
personne [pɛrsɔn] *f.* person; *pl.* people
personne [pɛrsɔn] *m.* anybody, nobody; **ne . . . —** not any one, no one, nobody
petit [pəti] small, little, short; *m.* little one, young one
petit-fils [pətifis] *m.* grandson
petits pois [p(ə)tipwɑ] *m. pl.* green peas
peu [pø] *m.* little; (*also as adverb*) little; **— à —** little by little; **dis-moi un —** tell me now; **si — de chose** so little
peuple [pœpl] *m.* people, nation
peur [pœːr] *f.* fear; **lui faire —** to 'frighten him; **avoir —** to be afraid; **avoir grand' —** to be in great fear; **de — que . . . ne** for fear lest
peut [pø] *3 sg. pres. indic.* **pouvoir**
peut-être (que) [pøtɛːtr (kə)] perhaps
photographie [fɔtɔgrafi] *f.* photograph
phrase [fraːz] *f.* phrase, sentence
pièce [pjɛs] *f.* room; play (*theatrical*)
pied [pje] *m.* foot; **à —** on foot; **coup de —** kick
pierre [pjɛːr] *f.* stone
Pierre [pjɛːr] *m.* Peter
pipe [pip] *f.* pipe
pis [pi] worse
pitié [pitje] *f.* pity; **avoir — de** to have pity on

place [plas] *f.* place, post, square, seat, room, position
plafond [plafɔ̃] *m.* ceiling
plaie [plɛ] *f.* wound
plaindre [plɛ̃:dr] § 190 to pity; **se —** to complain
plaine [plɛ:n] *f.* plain
plaire [plɛ:r] § 201 to please; **s'il vous plaît** if you please; **plaît-il?** what did you say?
plaisanter [plɛzɑ̃te] to joke, jest
plaisir [plɛzi:r] *m.* pleasure; **faire —** to give pleasure
plancher [plɑ̃:ʃe] *m.* floor
plein [plɛ̃] full; **en — air** in the open air
pleurer [plœre] to weep
pleuvoir [plœvwa:r] § 220 to rain
plu [ply] *p. part.* **pleuvoir**
pluie [plɥi] *f.* rain
plume [plym] *f.* feather, pen
plupart [plypa:r] *f.* greater part, majority
pluriel [plyrjɛl] *m.* plural
plus [ply] more; **— de** more, no more; **le —** the more, the most; **— de** (*with numerals*) more than; **ne . . . —** no more, no longer; **d'autant — que** the more so as; **de —** additional; **n'être — que** to be no longer anything but; **ne . . . pas non —** not . . . either
plusieurs [plyzjœ:r] several, many
plutôt [plyto] rather
poche [pɔʃ] *f.* pocket
poids [pwɑ] *m.* weight
point [pwɛ̃] *m.* point; **être sur le — de** to be at the point of; **— du jour** daybreak
point [pwɛ̃] no, not; **ne . . . — de** not any, no
poire [pwa:r] *f.* pear
poirier [pwarje] *m.* pear tree
pois [pwɑ] *m.* pea
police [pɔlis] *f.* police
Pologne [pɔlɔn] *f.* Poland
pomme [pɔm] *f.* apple; **— de terre** potato
pommier [pɔmje] *m.* apple tree
pont [pɔ̃] *m.* bridge
Pont-Neuf [pɔ̃nœf] *m.* *bridge over the Seine in Paris*
porte [pɔrt] *f.* door, gate; **— à —** next door
porte-plume [pɔrt plym] *m.* penholder
porter [pɔrte] to bear, carry, take, wear, put; **se —** (**bien**) to be (well); **bien portant** in good health, well; **comment vous portez-vous?** how are you?
portière [pɔrtjɛ:r] *f.* coach door, window (*of car*)
poser [po:ze] to place, lay, set; **— une question** to ask a question
posséder [pɔsede] § 158 to possess, own
possible [pɔsibl] possible; **faire son —** to do his best
poste [pɔst] *f.* post (office)
potage [pɔta:ʒ] *m.* soup
poulet [pulɛ] *m.* chicken
poupée [pupe] *f.* doll
pour [pur] for, in order to, to; **— que** in order that; **— ainsi dire** so to speak
pourquoi [purkwa] why; **c'est —** therefore, so, hence, that is why
pourrai [pure] *1 sg. fut.* **pouvoir**
pourtant [purtɑ̃] however, still
pouvoir [puvwa:r] § 221 to be able, can, may; **il se peut** it may be; **il ne se peut rien** nothing can be; **on pourrait dire** one might say
prairie [prɛri] *f.* meadow
précieu-x [presjø] **-se** precious, valuable
précipiter: se — [səpresipite] to rush, dart, hasten

précis [presi] precise, exact; **à une heure —e** at one o'clock precisely
préférer [prefere] § 158 to prefer
premi-er [prəmje] **–ère** first, former; **marcher le —** to walk ahead
prendre [prɑ̃:dr] § 202 to take, catch, assume, seize, suppose, reckon; **— un billet** to buy a ticket (*railroad*)
préparer [prepare] to prepare; **se —** to be prepared, get ready
près [prɛ] near by; **— de** near, nearly; **à peu —** almost, nearly
présent [prezɑ̃] *m.* present; **à —** now
présenter [prezɑ̃te] to present, introduce; **se —** to present oneself
président [prezidɑ̃] *m.* president
presque [prɛsk] nearly, hardly, almost
prêt [prɛ] ready
prêter [prɛte] to lend
prêtre [prɛ:tr] *m.* priest
preuve [prœ:v] *f.* proof
prier [prije] to pray, pray to, beg, ask; **je vous en prie** I beg of you
prince [prɛ̃:s] *m.* prince, king
printemps [prɛ̃tɑ̃] *m.* spring; **au —** in spring
pris [pri] *1 sg. p. def. and p. part.* **prendre**
prise [pri:z] *f.* taking, capture
prison [prizɔ̃] *f.* prison
prix [pri] *m.* price; prize
prochain [prɔʃɛ̃] next; *m.* neighbor, fellow creature
produire [prɔdui:r] § 185 to produce
professeur [prɔfɛsœ:r] *m.* professor, teacher
profession [prɔfɛsjɔ̃] *f.* profession, calling
profiter [prɔfite] to profit, avail oneself
projet [prɔʒɛ] *m.* project, plan
promenade [prɔmnad] *f.* walk, walking, drive; **— en bateau,** a row, sail; **aller à la —** to go for a walk
promener [prɔmne] § 158 to carry about, drive about; **se — à pied** (**en voiture, en bateau, à cheval** *etc.*) to take a walk (go for a drive, go for a sail, ride, *etc.*); **se — à bicyclette** to ride a bicycle
prononcer [prɔnɔ̃:se] to pronounce
prononciation [prɔnɔ̃sjɑsjɔ̃] *f.* pronunciation
proposer [prɔpoze] to propose
propre [prɔpr] clean; own
protestant [prɔtɛstɑ̃] *m.* Protestant
Provence [prɔvɑ̃:s] *f. a province in the south of France*
proverbe [prɔvɛrb] *m.* proverb
prudence [prydɑ̃:s] *f.* prudence
prudent [prydɑ̃] prudent
Prusse [prys] *f.* Prussia (*a state in Germany*)
pu [py] *p. part.* **pouvoir**
puis [pqi] *1 sg. pres. indic.* **pouvoir**
puis [pqi] then
puits [pqi] *m.* well
punir [pyni:r] to punish
pupitre [pypitr] *m.* desk
pur [py:r] pure
put [py] *3 sg. p. def.* **pouvoir**

Q

quand [kɑ̃] when; **depuis —?** how long?
quant à [kɑ̃ta] as to, as for
quarante [karɑ̃:t] forty
quart [ka:r] *m.* quarter
quatorze [katɔrz] fourteen

quatre [katr] four
quatre-vingts [katrəvɛ̃] eighty; **quatre-vingt-dix-sept** ninety-seven
que [kə] *pron.* whom, which, that, what; **qu'est-ce qui?** what? **qu'est-ce — c'est —?** what is? **ce —** that which, what, which; **qu'est-ce qu'il y a?** what is there? **qu'as-tu?** what is the matter with you? **c'est là —** it is there that, that is where
que [kə] *conj.* that (*used as a substitute for other conjunctions like* **tandis que, lorsque, quand, si,** *etc.*); when, than, as, till, let (*with subjunctive*)
que [kə] *adv.* how, how many, how much, what (a), than; **ne . . . —** only, but; **ne . . . rien —** nothing but; **qu'elle est jolie!** how pretty she is!
quel [kɛl] **–le** what, which; who
quelconque [kɛlkɔ̃:k] whatever
quelque [kɛlkə] some, few; **— chose** something
quelquefois [kɛlkəfwa] sometimes
quelqu'un, quelques-uns [kɛlkœ̃, kɛlkəzœ̃] some one, some
question [kɛstjɔ̃] *f.* question
qui [ki] who, which, that, whom; **à —** whose; **ce —** what
quinze [kɛ̃:z] fifteen; **— jours** a fortnight
quitter [kite] to quit, leave, lay aside
quoi [kwa] what; **à — bon** what use; **en —?** of what (material)?
quoique [kwakə] although

R

raconter [rakɔ̃te] to relate, tell
raisin [rɛzɛ̃] *m.* grape(s)
raison [rɛzɔ̃] *f.* reason, sense; **avoir —** to be (in the) right
ramasser [ramase] to pick up
ramener [ramne] § 158 to bring back, bring home again
rapidement [rapidmɑ̃] rapidly, quickly
rappeler: se — [sə raple] § 158 to remember
rapporter [raporte] to bring back
rare [ra:r] rare, scanty, infrequent
rarement [rarmɑ̃] rarely, seldom, not often
recevoir [rəsəvwa:r] § 213 to receive
réciter [resite] to recite
recommencer [rəkɔmɑ̃se] § 156 to begin again, do again
reconnaître [rəkɔnɛ:tr] § 188 to recognize, acknowledge
reçut [rəsy] *3 sg. p. def.* **recevoir**
regarder [rəgarde] to look at, look
règle [rɛ:gl] *f.* rule, ruler
règne [rɛɲ] *m.* reign
régner [reɲe] § 158 to reign, rule
regret [rəgrɛ] *m.* regret
regretter [rəgrɛte] to regret
rejoindre [rəʒwɛ̃:dr] § 190 to rejoin, meet with, catch up to
relever [rəlvẽ] § 158 to heighten, raise, lift up
religieu-x [rəliʒjø] **–se** religious
religion [rəliʒjɔ̃] *f.* religion
remarquer [rəmarke] to remark, notice
remercier [rəmɛrsje] to thank
remettre [rəmɛtr] § 198 to restore, put off, put back, put on again; **se —** to recover, begin again; **remis** recovered; **se — en route** to set out again
remonter [rəmɔ̃te] to mount again, wind (*watch*)
remplir [rɑ̃pli:r] to fill
remuer [rəmɥe] to move, stir
rencontre [rɑ̃kɔ̃:tr] *f.* meeting; **aller à leur —** to go to meet them

rencontrer [rãkɔ̃tre] to meet
rendre [rã:dr] § 210 to render, give back, make; **se —** to go, proceed; surrender
rentrer [rãtre] to return, return home
renverser [rãvɛrse] to overturn, upset
repas [rəpɑ] *m.* meal
répéter [repete] § 158 to repeat
répliquer [replike] to reply
répondre [repɔ̃:dr] § 210 to answer
réponse [repɔ̃:s] *f.* reply
repos [rəpo] *m.* repose, peace, rest
reposer [rəpoze] to repose, rest; **se —** to rest
reprendre [rəprã:dr] § 202 to take again, reply
représenter [rəprezãte] to represent, stand for
république [repyblik] *f.* republic
respecter [rɛspɛkte] to respect
ressembler [rəsãble]: **— à** to resemble
restaurant [rɛstərã] *m.* restaurant
rester [rɛste] to remain, stay; **en — là** to stop there, get no further
retard [rətɑ:r] *m.* delay; **être en —** to be late
retarder [rətarde] to delay, be slow, be behind
retirer [rətire] to pull out; **se —** to retire
retour [rətu:r] *m.* return; **être de —** to have returned, be back
retourner [rəturne] to go back, return, turn up, turn over; **se —** to turn round
retraite [rətrɛt] *f.* retreat, retirement, departure
réussir [reysi:r] to succeed
rêve [rɛ:v] *m.* dream
réveiller [reveje] to waken; **se —** to wake(n) (up)
révéler [revele] § 158 to reveal
revenir [rəvni:r] § 178 to come back; **revenu** (having) returned
rêver [rɛve] to dream
revoir [rəvwa:r] § 224 to see again; **au —** good-bye
révolution [revɔlysjɔ̃] *f.* revolution
revolver [revɔlvɛ:r] *m.* revolver
ricaner [rikane] to sneer
riche [riʃ] rich
ridicule [ridikyl] *m.* ridicule; **tourner en —** to ridicule
rien [rjɛ̃] anything, nothing; **ne . . . —** not anything, nothing; **je n'en sais —** I do not know; **cela ne fait —** that doesn't matter
rire [ri:r] § 204 to laugh, smile
rire[ri:r] *m.* laughter
rivière [rivjɛ:r] *f.* river (*flowing into another larger river*)
robe [rɔb] *f.* robe, dress, frock, gown
Robert [rɔbɛ:r] *m.* Robert
rocher [rɔʃe] *m.* rock
roi [rwɑ] *m.* king
roman [rɔmã] *m.* novel
Rome [rɔm] *f.* Rome
rose [ro:z] *f.* rose
Rouen [rwã] *m. city on the Seine northwest of Paris*
rouge [ru:ʒ] red
rouge-gorge [ru:ʒgɔrʒ] *m.* robin
rouleau [rulo] *m.* roll, roller
rouler [rule] to roll
route [rut] *f.* route, way, course; **en —** on the way; **être en —** to be on the way, be off
royal [rwajal] royal
rue [ry] *f.* street
ruine [ruin] *f.* ruin
ruiner [ruine] to ruin, destroy
Russie [rysi] *f.* Russia

S

sable [sɑːbl] *m.* sand
sac [sak] *m.* sack, bag, satchel
sage [saːʒ] wise, well-behaved, good
saint [sɛ̃] sacred, holy; *m.* saint
Sainte-Chapelle [sɛ̃təʃapɛl] *f. a church in Paris*
Saint Louis [sɛ̃lwi] Louis IX (*king of France from 1226 to 1270*)
sais [se] *1 sg. pres. indic.* **savoir**
saisir [sɛziːr] to seize
saison [sɛzɔ̃] *f.* season
sait [se] *3 sg. pres. indic.* **savoir**
salade [salad] *f.* salad
sale [sal] dirty
salle [sal] *f.* hall, room, theater; — **de classe** classroom; — **à manger** dining room
salon [salɔ̃] *m.* drawing-room, parlor
saluer [salɥe] to salute, bow to, bow
Samaritain [samaritɛ̃] *m.* Samaritan (*biblical character; a merciful man*)
samedi [samdi] *m.* Saturday
sang [sɑ̃] *m.* blood
sans [sɑ̃] without, were it not for; — **que** without
santé [sɑ̃te] *f.* health
sapristi! [sapristi] my goodness!
sauter [sote] to leap, jump
sauver [sove] to save
savoir [savwaːr] § 222 to know, know how; — **le français** to know French; **aucun homme ne saurait** no man can
savon [savɔ̃] *m.* soap
scène [sɛːn] *f.* scene
science [sjɑ̃ːs] *f.* science, knowledge
se [sə] oneself, to oneself, himself, herself, *etc.*
sec, sèche [sɛk, sɛʃ] dry
second [səgɔ̃] second
seconde [səgɔ̃ːd] *f.* second
section [sɛksjɔ̃] *f.* section, paragraph
Seine [sɛːn] *f. river on which Paris is situated*
seize [sɛːz] sixteen
seizième [sɛzjɛm] sixteenth
semaine [səmɛn] *f.* week
sembler [sɑ̃ːble] to seem
sens [sɑ̃ːs] *m.* sense, direction, way
sentir [sɑ̃tiːr] § 166 to feel, smell; — **bon** to smell sweet; **se —** to feel oneself, feel
sept [sɛt] seven
septembre [sɛptɑ̃ːbr] *m.* September
septième [sɛtjɛm] seventh
serai [sərɛ] *1 sg. fut.* **être**
servi [sɛrvi] *p. part.* **servir** ready (*of meals*)
serviette [sɛrvjɛt] *f.* towel, napkin
servir [sɛrviːr] § 166 to serve, be of service, be of use; — **à quelque chose** to be of some use; **se — de** to use
seul [sœl] alone, single
seulement [sœlmɑ̃] only, but, even, merely
si [si] if, whether
si [si] so, however; — **rapide que** however swift
Sicile [sisil] *f.* Sicily (*an island and province of Italy*)
siècle [sjɛkl] *m.* century
sien [sjɛ̃] his, hers, its; **les —s** his own
siffler [sifle] to whistle, hiss, sing
sifflet [siflɛ] *m.* whistle
signe [siɲ] *m.* sign; **faire —** to beckon
signifier [siɲifje] to mean
silence [silɑ̃ːs] *m.* silence
singulier [sɛ̃gylje] *m.* singular

sire [si:r] *m.* sire, your majesty
six [sis] six
sixième [sizjɛm] sixth
sœur [sœ:r] *f.* sister
soi [swa] oneself, himself
soie [swɑ] *f.* silk
soif [swaf] *f.* thirst; **avoir —** to be thirsty
soigner [swaɲe] to care for
soin [swɛ̃] *m.* care; **avoir (prendre) —** to take care
soir [swa:r] *m.* evening; **le —** in the evening; **hier —** last evening
soirée [sware] *f.* evening
sois [swa] *1 sg. pres. subj. and 2 sg. impve.* **être**
soixante [swasɑ̃:t] sixty; **— -dix** seventy
soixante-quinze [swazɑ̃:tkɛ̃:z] seventy-five
sol [sɔl] *m.* soil, ground
soldat [sɔlda] *m.* soldier
soleil [sɔlɛ:j] *m.* sun
somme [sɔm] *f.* sum
sommeil [sɔmɛ:j] *m.* sleep
sommes [sɔm] *1 pl. pres. ind.* **être**
sommet [sɔmɛ] *m.* summit, top
son [sɔ̃] *m.* sound
son, sa, ses [sɔ̃, sa, se] his, her, its
songe [sɔ̃:ʒ] *m.* dream
songer [sɔ̃ʒe] § 156 to think
sonner [sɔne] to sound, ring, strike (*clock*)
sorte [sɔrt] *f.* sort; **de — que** so that
sortir [sɔrti:r] § 166 to come out, go out, stick out, arise; **faire —** to put out, force out
sot [so] **–te** foolish, stupid
sou [su] *m.* sou, halfpenny, cent
souffrant [sufrɑ̃] poorly, not well
soulager [sulaʒe] § 156 to relieve
soulier [sulje] *m.* (low) shoe
soupe [sup] *f.* soup
sous [su] under, in the reign of, in
souvenir [suvni:r] *m.* recollection, remembrance
souvenir: se — [səsuvni:r] § 178 to remember; **je me souviens (de), il me souvient (de)** I remember
souvent [suvɑ̃] often
soyez [swaje] *2 pl. pres. subj. and impve.* **être**
soyons [swajɔ̃] *1 pl. pres. subj. and impve.* **être**
sport [spɔ:r] *m.* sport
statue [staty] *f.* statue
Strasbourg [strazbu:r] *m.* Strasburg
stylo(graphe) [stilo(graf)] *m.* fountain pen
sud [syd] *m.* south
suis [sɥi] *1 sg. pres. indic.* **être,** *and* **suivre**
Suisse [sɥis] *f.* Switzerland
suite [sɥit] *f.* continuation; **tout de —** immediately
suivant [sɥivɑ̃] *prep.* according to, following; *adj.* following; *noun* **le** (la) **suivant** (**–e**) the next (*boy, girl*)
suivre [sɥi:vr] § 206 to follow; **— des yeux** to look after, watch
sujet [syʒɛ] *m.* subject, cause
sur [syr] on, upon, over, about
sûr [sy:r] sure, certain
surtout [syrtu] above all, especially, particularly
sus [sy] *1 sg. p. def.* **savoir**
syllabe [sila:b] *f.* syllable
Syrie [siri] *f.* Syria

T

table [tabl] *f.* table
tableau [tablo] *m.* picture, blackboard; **— noir** blackboard
tâcher [ta:ʃe] to try, endeavor
taire: se — [sə tɛ:r] § 201 to be silent, become silent

tandis que [tādi(s)kə] whilst
tant [tā] so, so many, so much; — **de fois** so often; — **que** as much as, as long as; — **mieux** so much the better; — **pis** so much the worse
tante [tā:t] *f.* aunt
tard [ta:r] late; **plus** — later (on)
tasse [ta:s] *f.* cup
tâter [ta:te] to feel
taxi(mètre) [taksi(mɛtr)] *m.* taxicab (= *meter for indicating price of 'run' of a cab*)
te [tə] thee, to thee, you, to you
tel [tɛl] –le such, like, so; **un** — such a one
tellement [tɛlmā] so, so much
temps [tā] *m.* time, weather; **avec le** —, **à** — in time; **de** — **en** — from time to time; **dans le** — **que** whilst; **en même** — at the same time; **par le** — **qu'il fait** in such weather as it is; **faire beau** — to be fine weather; **mauvais** — bad weather; **quel** — **fait-il?** what sort of weather is it?
tendresse [tādrɛs] *f.* affection
tenir [təni:r] § 177 to hold, have, hold on, hold out, keep, resist; be anxious, insist on; be contained in, find room in; **il ne tiendra qu'à vous que** it will be your own fault if; — **bon** to stand fast; **tiens! tenez!** now then! here! look! indeed! **se** — to hold oneself, stay, stand
tennis [tɛnis] *m.* tennis
tenter [tā:te] to attempt, tempt
terre [tɛ:r] *f.* earth, ground, land; **par** —, **à** — on the ground; **la Terre sainte** the Holy Land
terrible [tɛribl] terrible
tête [tɛ:t] *f.* head
texte [tɛkst] *m.* text
thé [te] *m.* tea
théâtre [tea:tr] *m.* theater
théière [tejɛ:r] *f.* teapot
Thomas [tɔmɑ] *m.* Thomas
tien [tjɛ̃] thine, yours
tiens! [tjɛ] (*1 sg. pres. indic. and 2 sg. impve. of* **tenir**) hallo! indeed! is that so!
tiers [tjɛ:r] *m.* third part
tins [tɛ̃] *1 sg. p. def.* **tenir**
tirer [tire] to draw, pull, deduce, take, shoot
toi [twa] thee, thou, you
toilette [twalɛt] *f.* toilet, dress; **faire sa** — to dress
tomber [tɔ̃be] to fall; **faire** — to knock down
ton, ta, tes [tɔ̃, ta, te] thy, your
ton [tɔ̃] *m.* tone, voice
tort [tɔ:r] *m.* wrong; **avoir** — to be (in the) wrong
tôt [to] soon; **plus** — sooner
toucher [tuʃe] to touch; — **à** to be near, approach; **n'y touchez pas** do not touch it, hands off
toujours [tuʒu:r] always, still, at all events; **disait** — kept saying; **pour** — for ever
tour [tu:r] *f.* tower
Touraine [turɛn] *f. province in the center of France, in which Tours is situated*
tourner [turne] to turn
Tours [tur] *m. city southwest of Paris, on the Loire river, the seat of a famous cathedral*
tout, toute, tous, toutes [tu, tut, tu(s), tut] all, any, every, everything; quite; — **le monde** everybody; — **le jour, toute la journée** the whole day; **tous les jours** every day; **tous** *or* **toutes (les) deux** both; **toutes les années** every year; — **à fait** altogether; — **à l'heure** a little while ago; directly; — **de suite** at once; — **ce que** all that,

whatever; — **de même** all the same; — **à coup** suddenly; **rien du** — nothing at all; **le** — the whole; **pas du** — not at all
traduction [tradyksjɔ̃] *f.* translation
traduire [tradɥiːr] § 185 to translate
train [trɛ̃] *m.* train; **en** — **de** busy at
trait [trɛ] *m.* trait, feature, action
traiter [trɛte] to treat, entertain; — **de** to call
tramway [tramwe] *m.* tramway, street car
tranquille [trɑ̃kil] quiet, calm, easy in mind, at peace; **soyez** — don't be uneasy, don't worry, be quiet
tranquillement [trɑ̃kilmɑ̃] calmly
travail [trava(ːj] *m.* work, labor
travailler [travaje] to work
travers [travɛːr] *m.* breadth; **à** — through, across; **en** — **de** across
traverser [traverse] to traverse, cross, go through; — **en courant** to run across
treize [trɛːz] thirteen
trembler [trɑ̃ble] to tremble
trente [trɑ̃ːt] thirty
très [trɛ] very, very much
trésor [trezɔːr] *m.* treasure
triomphe [triɔ̃f] *m.* triumph
triste [trist] sad
trois [trwa] three
troisième [trwazjɛm] third
tromper [trɔ̃pe] to deceive; **se** — to be mistaken
trop [trɔ] too, too much, too many
trot [tro] *m.* trot
trouver [truve] to find, think; **aller** — to go to (see, meet); **se** — to find oneself, be, feel, be situated
tu [ty] thou, you
tuer [tɥe] to kill
Tuileries [tɥilri] *f. pl.* Tuileries (*once a royal palace in Paris; now only the gardens remain*)
tulipe [tylip] *f.* tulip

U

un, une [œ̃, yn] one, a, an; **l'**— one; **l'**— (**et**) **l'autre** both; **les uns les autres** one another
utile [ytil] useful
utilité [ytilite] *f.* utility, use

V

va [va] *3 sg. pres. indic. and 2 sg. impve.* **aller**
vacances [vakɑ̃ːs] *f. pl.* holidays
vache [vaʃ] *f.* cow
vain [vɛ̃] vain; **en** — in vain
vais [vɛ] *1 sg. pres. indic.* **aller**
vaisseau [vɛso] *m.* ship
vaisselle [vɛsɛl] *f.* dishes
valet [valɛ] *m.* servant
valeur [valœːr] *f.* value
vallée [vale] *f.* valley
valoir [valwaːr] § 223 to be worth; — **mieux** to be better; — **la peine** to be worth the trouble *or* worth while
varier [varje] to vary
vas [va] *2 sg. pres. indic.* **aller**
vaudrai [vodre] *1 sg. fut.* **valoir**
vaut [vo] *3 sg. pres. indic.* **valoir**
vendre [vɑ̃ːdr] § 210 to sell
vendredi [vɑ̃ːdrədi] *m.* Friday; **Vendredi saint** Good Friday
venir [vəniːr] § 178 to come; **vint à passer** happened to go by; — **de** to have just; **on venait de lui donner** they had just given him; **il venait voir** he came to see; **lui** — **à l'esprit** to occur to him; **il vint à nous** he came to us; **viens vers moi** come to me

vent [vɑ̃] *m.* wind; **il fait du —** it is windy
verrai [vɛre] *1 sg. fut.* **voir**
verre [vɛːr] *m.* glass
vers [vɛːr] towards, to, about
Versailles [vɛrsɑːj] *m. city about twelve miles southwest of Paris. It contains the great château which was the chief residence of Louis XIV.*
verser [vɛrse] to pour (out)
vert [vɛːr] green
vertu [vɛrty] *f.* virtue
veston [vestɔ̃] *m.* sack coat
veuillez [vœje] *impve. of* **vouloir** be so good as, please
veut [vø] *3 sg. pres. ind.* **vouloir**
veux [vø] *1 sg. pres. ind.* **vouloir**
viande [vjɑ̃ːd] *f.* meat
vide [vid] empty
vie [vi] *f.* life, living
vieil [vjɛːj] *see* **vieux**
vieillard [vjɛjaːr] *m.* old man
viendrai [vjɛ̃dre] *1 sg. fut.* **venir**
viens [vjɛ̃] *1 sg. pres. ind. and 2 sg. impve.* **venir**
vieux, vieil, vieille [vjø, vjɛːj, vjɛːj] old, aged; **un vieux** an old man, old fellow
vigne [viɲ] *f.* vine(s)
vignoble [viɲɔbl] *m.* vineyard
vigoureu-x [vigurø] **-se** vigorous
vilain [vilɛ̃] ugly, nasty
village [vilaːʒ] *m.* village
ville [vil] *f.* town, city; **en —** downtown, in town
vin [vɛ̃] *m.* wine
vingt [vɛ̃] twenty (*for numerals between* **vingt** *and* **trente,** *see Lesson XXXV*)
vint [vɛ̃] *3 sg. p. def.* **venir**
vis [vi] *1 sg. p. def.* **voir**
visite [vizit] *f.* visit
visiter [vizite] to visit, see in detail, inspect
vite [vit] quick, quickly, fast
vivre [viːvr] § 211 to live; **faire —** to maintain; **vive!** long live! hurrah for!
voici [vwasi] see here, here is, here are; **nous —!** here we are!
voilà [vwala] behold, there is, there are, that is, there we are! **— que** behold, lo; **— ce que c'est** that's how things go; **en — un** that's one; **la —!** here (there) it is! **nous —!** here we are!
voir [vwaːr] § 224 to see; **faire —** to show; **se —** to be seen
voisin [vwazɛ̃] neighboring; *m.* neighbor
voiture [vwatyːr] *f.* carriage, car; **en —** in a carriage; **se promener en —** to take a drive
voix [vwa] *f.* voice
voler [vɔle] to fly
voler [vɔle] to steal, rob
voleur [vɔlœːr] *m.* thief, robber; **au —!** stop thief!
volontiers [vɔlɔ̃tje] willingly, gladly
Voltaire [vɔltɛːr] *famous French philosopher, writer and leader of social progress, b. 1694, d. 1778*
volume [vɔlym] *m.* volume
vont [vɔ̃] *3 pl. pres. indic.* **aller**
votre, vos [vɔtr, vo] your
vôtre [voːtr] yours
voudrai [vudre] *1 sg. fut.* **vouloir**
vouloir [vulwaːr] § 225 to will, wish, want; **en — à** to be angry with; **je voudrais (bien)** I should like; **— dire** to mean; **aurait voulu** would have liked
vous [vu] you, to you, yourself, yourselves
voyage [vwajaːʒ] *m.* journey, voyage; **bon —!** a pleasant journey! **compagnon de —** fellow traveler
voyager [vwajaʒe] § 156 to travel
voyageur [vwajaʒœːr] *m.* traveler

vrai [vrɛ] true, real
vraiment [vrɛmɑ̃] really
vraisemblablement [vrɛsɑ̃blablə-mɑ̃] probably
vu [vy] *p. part.* **voir**
vue [vy] *f.* sight, view

Y

y [i] there, in it, to it, at it, on it, of it; **il — a** there is, there are; **il — en a** there is (are) some
yeux [jø] *pl. of* **œil** eyes

VOCABULARY

ENGLISH–FRENCH

[h aspirate is indicated thus: 'h]

A

a, an un, *m.*, une, *f.*; — **franc** — **dozen** un franc la douzaine; — **franc** — **day** un franc par jour
abandon abandonner
abbess abbesse, *f.*
ability capacité, *f.*, talent, *m.*
able: **be** — pouvoir, savoir
about de, autour de, environ, sur; — **three o'clock** vers (les) trois heures; — **it** en; **be** — s'agir de, être sur le point de; **he has this good thing** — **him** il a cela de bon; **set** — se mettre à
above au-dessus de
abroad à l'étranger
absence absence, *f.*
absent absent
abundant abondant
accept accepter
accession accession, *f.*
accident accident, *m.*
accidental accidentel, par accident
accompany accompagner
according to selon, d'après
account: **on** — **of** à cause de; en
ache: **have head**— avoir mal à la tête; **my head** —**s** j'ai mal à la tête
acquaintance connaissance, *f.*
acquainted: **be** — **with** connaître; **become** — **with** faire connaissance avec, faire la connaissance de
acquire acquérir
across de l'autre côté de, en face de
act agir, se conduire
action action, *f.*, trait, *m.*
actor acteur, *m.*, comédien, *m.*
add ajouter
address adresser
adjective adjectif, *m.*
admire admirer
admit admettre
adorn faire l'ornement de
advance avancer
advice avis, *m.*, conseil, *m.*
advise conseiller, recommander
affair affaire, *f.*
affection affection, *f.*
afraid: **be** — (**of**) avoir peur (de), craindre; — **of** effrayé de; **be much** — avoir grand'peur, avoir bien peur
Africa Afrique, *f.*
after *prep. and adv.* après; **ten minutes** — **five** cinq heures dix (minutes)
after *conj.* après que
afternoon après-midi, *m. and f.*
afterwards ensuite, puis, après, plus tard
again encore, encore une fois, de nouveau
against contre
age âge, *m.*; **be twenty years of** — avoir vingt ans
ago il y a
ahead: **walk** — marcher le premier

aid aider, secourir
air air, *m.*
Ajaccio Ajaccio
alas! hélas!
all tout (*pl.* tous); — **that (which)** tout ce qui; **not at** — pas du tout; — **passions** toutes les passions
allow laisser, permettre
almost presque
alone seul; **let** — laisser tranquille
along par; **as they went** — chemin faisant
aloud à haute voix
already déjà
Alsace Alsace, *f.*
also aussi
although bien que, quoique
always toujours
ambassador ambassadeur, *m.*
ambition ambition, *f.*
America Amérique *f.*
American américain
amiable aimable
among, amongst parmi, entre, chez
amuse amuser; — **oneself,** s'amuser
ancestors ancêtres, *m. pl.;* aïeux, *m. pl.*
ancient ancien, antique
and et; **go** — **visit** aller visiter, aller voir
angry: — **at,** — **with** fâché de (contre); **be** —, **get** — se fâcher
animal animal, *m.*, bête, *f.*
another un autre, encore un; **not** — ne . . . pas (point) d'autre
answer *n.* réponse, *f.*
answer *v.* répondre
ant fourmi, *f.*
antechamber antichambre, *f.*
antiquity antiquité, *f.*
anxious: be — tenir à
any de + *def. art.;* de; en; aucun, quelconque, tout; **I haven't** — je n'en ai pas; **have you** —? en avez-vous? **don't give him** — ne lui en donnez pas; —**thing** (*with neg.*) rien; —**one** (*with neg.*) personne
anybody, anyone quelqu'un, on; **not . . .** — ne . . . personne, ne . . . aucun
anyone *see* **anybody**
anything quelque chose, *m.;* **not . . .** — ne . . . rien; — **good** quelque chose de bon: **not . . .** — **good** ne . . . rien de bon
anywhere: not . . . — ne . . . nulle part
apiece chacun, la pièce
appear paraître, apparaître, sembler, comparaître
appetite appétit, *m.*
applaud applaudir à
apple pomme, *f.*
apple tree pommier, *m.*
appoint nommer
approach *n.* approche, *f.*
approach *v.* approcher de, s'approcher de
approbation approbation, *f.*
approve trouver bon
April avril, *m.*
Arab Arabe, *m.*
are *see* **be; here is** (*or* **are**) voici; **there is** (*or* **are**) voilà
argument argument, *m.*
Ariosto Arioste (l')
arise s'élever, naître
arithmetic arithmétique, *f.*
arm bras, *m.*
army armée, *f.*
around autour de; **she looks** — **her** elle regarde autour d'elle; **go** — **the city** faire le tour de la ville
arouse exciter
arrange arranger
arrest arrêter
arrival arrivée, *f.*

arrive arriver
art art, *m.*
article article, *m.*, objet, *m.*; — **of dress** article de toilette
artist artiste, *m.*
as comme; aussi, si; pendant que, en; — . . . — aussi . . . que; **not** — . . . — pas aussi . . . que, pas si . . . que; **not so** . . . — pas aussi . . . que, pas si . . . que, moins . . . que; — **much money** — autant d'argent que; — **long** — tant que; — **soon** — aussitôt que; — **if** comme si; — **well** — aussi bien que; — **to** quant à
ascend monter (sur)
ashamed: **be** —, **feel** — avoir honte
ask demander, prier; — **for** demander; — **him for it** le lui demander; — **oneself** se demander
asleep endormi; **be** — être endormi, dormir; **we have been** — nous avons dormi; **fall** — s'endormir
assail assaillir
assist aider
associate s'associer (avec)
assure assurer
astonish étonner
astonishment étonnement, *m.*
at à, chez, de; — (**the house, shop, office,** *etc.*, **of**) chez; — **the doctor's** chez le docteur; — **my father's** chez mon père; — **home** chez moi, chez toi, *etc.*; — **my house** chez moi; — **our house** chez nous; — **daybreak** dès le point du jour
attach attacher
attack attaquer
attention attention, *f.*; **pay** —, **give** — faire attention
attract attirer
auburn châtain
audience assistance, *f.*, assistants, *m. pl.*
August août, *m.*
Augustus Auguste, *m.*
author auteur, *m.*
autumn automne, *m.*; **in** — en automne
avenue avenue, *f.*
avidity avidité, *f.*
avoid éviter
await attendre
awake *intr.* se réveiller
away: **go** — partir, s'en aller; **take** — ôter; **far** — loin, loin d'ici; **run** — se sauver
axe hache, *f.*

B

back dos, *m.*
back: **be** — être de retour; **give** — rendre; **come** — revenir; **go** — retourner; **bring** — ramener
bad mauvais, méchant, peu loyal
badly mal; **hurt** (**very**) — faire (beaucoup de) mal à
Bæda Bède, *m.*
bag sac, *m.*
bake cuire
ball (*for playing*) balle, *f.*; **play** — jouer à la balle
ball (*dance*) bal, *m.*
banish bannir
bank (*of stream*) bord, *m.*; **on the** — au bord
bank (*financial*) banque, *f.*; — **bill** (**note**) billet (*m.*) de banque
banker banquier, *m.*
banking house maison (*f.*) de banque
barefoot nu-pieds, les pieds nus
bareheaded découvert, la **tête nue**
bargain marché, *m.*
bask se chauffer
basket panier, *m.*
Bastille Bastille, *f.*

battle bataille, *f.*
be être; y avoir; — (*of health*) se porter, aller; — **about to** aller, être sur le point de, devoir; — **born** naître; — (*of weather*) faire; — (*of age*) avoir; — (*of time*) y avoir; — **afraid** avoir peur; **here is** (**are**) voici; **there is** (**are**) voilà, il y a; **is he finishing?** finit-il? **is he not?** *etc.* n'est-ce pas? **how are you?** comment vous portez-vous? comment allez-vous? comment ça va-t-il? comment ça va? **I am well** je me porte bien, ça va bien, *etc.*; **I am to do it** je dois le faire; **I am going to do it** je vais le faire; **it is fine** il fait beau; **is it?** vraiment? **he is ten years old** il a dix ans; **a house to — sold** une maison à vendre
bean 'haricot, *m.*; **string —s** 'haricots verts
bear *n.* ours, *m.*
bear *v.* (*of fruit trees*) donner
beard barbe, *f.*
beast animal, *m.*, bête, *f.*; (*for riding*) monture, *f.*
beat battre
beautiful beau, joli
beauty beauté, *f.*
because parce que
become devenir, se faire; — (*suit*) seoir; **what has — of her?** qu'est-elle devenue?
bed: go to — se coucher; **be in —** être au lit, être couché
bedroom chambre (*f.*) à coucher
before *prep.* devant (*of place*); avant (*of time*); avant de + *infin.*; — **the judge** par devant le juge
before *conj.* avant que
beg prier, demander, mendier; **I — your pardon** pardon
beggar mendiant, *m.*
begin commencer, se mettre à; **— again** recommencer
beginning commencement, *m.*
behave se comporter, se conduire
behead décapiter
behind derrière
believe croire; **it is believed** on croit
bell cloche, *f.*; **little —** (*spherical*) grelot; **put the — on** attacher le grelot à
belong: — to être à (de), appartenir à
below: here — ici-bas
bend courber
benefactor bienfaiteur, *m.*
beside à côté de
besides d'ailleurs, de plus
best *adj.* le meilleur
best *adv.* le mieux; **to do his —** faire son possible
better *adj.* meilleur
better *adv.* mieux; **be —, be worth more** valoir mieux; **be —** (*of health*) se porter mieux, aller mieux; **like —, prefer** aimer mieux
between entre
bicycle bicyclette *f.*; **on a —** à bicyclette
bid: — good-bye to dire adieu (au revoir) à
big grand, gros
bind up bander
bird oiseau, *m.*
birthday fête, *f.*, anniversaire (*m.*) de ma (sa) naissance
bite mordre
bitterly amèrement
black noir
blackboard tableau noir, *m.*
blacksmith forgeron, maréchal ferrant, *m.*
blade brin *m.*
blind aveugle

blond blond
blow *n.* coup, *m.;* — **with a stick** coup de bâton
blue bleu
blunt brusque
blush rougir
board bord, *m.;* **on — of** à bord de
boat bateau, *m.*, canot, *m.;* **go for a — ride** faire une promenade (se promener) en bateau (canot)
body corps, *m.*
boil bouillir
bold hardi
book livre, *m.*
born: be — naître; **he was** — il est né
Boston Boston, *m.*
both tous (les) deux, l'un et l'autre; — . . . **and** et . . . et
bother! *interj.* peste de!
bother *v.* ennuyer, embêter
bottom fond, *m.;* **at the — of** au fond de
bow: — **to** saluer
box boîte, *f.*
boy enfant, garçon, *m.;* **my** — mon enfant, *m.*
branch branche, *f.*
brave courageux, brave
bread pain, *m.*
break casser, rompre; — **out** éclater; — **one's arm** se casser le bras; — **off** casser, ôter; — **up** se dissoudre, se lever
breakfast déjeuner, *m.*
breathe respirer
brick brique, *f.;* — **house** maison (*f.*) en briques
bridge pont, *m.*
bring apporter; (*carry*) transporter; (*lead*) amener; — **back** ramener; — **down** descendre; — **up** (*rear*) élever; — **up** ramener à la surface
broad large
brother frère, *m.*
brush *n.* brosse, *f.*
brush *v.* brosser
build bâtir, construire
building édifice, *m.*, bâtiment, *m.*, monument, *m.*
bun brioche, *f.*
burn brûler
burst éclat, *m.*
bury enterrer, ensevelir
business commerce, *m.*, affaires, *f. pl.;* **on** — pour affaires; **go into** — se mettre dans les affaires, se mettre en commerce
busy occupé (de); **be — doing anything, be — at anything** être en train de faire quelque chose, être à faire quelque chose
but mais; **nothing** — ne . . . rien . . . que
butter beurre, *m.*
buy acheter
by par, de, sur, à, en; — **rubbing** en frottant; — **the way** à propos; **go** — passer; — **sight** de vue; **taller** — **an inch** plus grand d'un pouce; **six feet** — **seven** six pieds sur sept; — **my watch** à ma montre; — **what he says** à ce qu'il dit; **loved** — aimé de

C

cabbage chou, *m.*
Cædmon Cedmon
cage cage, *f.*
Cain Caïn
call appeler; faire venir; — **a meeting** convoquer une assemblée; **be** —**ed** s'appeler
camel chameau, *m.*
can pouvoir, savoir; **he** —**not** il ne peut pas, il ne sait pas; **it can't be** cela ne se peut pas; *see also* **could**

Canada Canada, *m.;* **in** *or* **to** — au Canada
cane canne, *f.*
cannon shot coup (*m.*) de canon, *m.*
capital *adj.* capital; *n.* chef-lieu, *m.*
captain capitaine, *m.*
capture prise, *f.*
car tramway, *m.*, wagon *m.*, voiture, *f.* (*both for railways*); **motor** — auto(mobile), *m. and f.*
caravan caravane, *f.*
card carte, *f.*
care: — **for** soigner; **take** — **of** avoir soin de, soigner; **take** — prendre garde, avoir soin, faire attention
careful: be — ! attention! prenez garde!
carefully soigneusement
careless négligent
carnival carnaval, *m.*
carpenter charpentier, *m.*, menuisier, *m.*
carriage voiture, *f.*
carry porter; — **off** emporter; — **the day** l'emporter
case cas, *m.;* **in** — **(that)** au cas que
cat chat, *m.*
catch attraper, prendre; — **(a) cold** s'enrhumer
cathedral cathédrale, *f.*
catholic catholique
cattle bétail, *m. s.*, bestiaux, *m. pl.*
cause *n.* cause, *f.*
cause *v.* causer; exciter; — **to** faire
cavalry cavalerie, *f.*
cease cesser; **without ceasing** sans cesse
ceiling plafond, *m.*
celebrate célébrer
celebrated célèbre
celebration fête, *f.*
cent sou, *m.*
centime centime, *m.*
century siècle, *m.*
certain certain, sûr
chair chaise, *f.*
chalk craie, *f.*
chance 'hasard, *m.*
change *n.* monnaie, *f.*
change *v.* changer (de)
chapter chapitre, *m.*
charge charge, *f.*
charitable charitable
charm charmer, enchanter
charming charmant, ravissant
charmingly à ravir
chase chasser, poursuivre
chat causer
cheap (à) bon marché, pas cher, peu coûteux; —**er** à meilleur marché, moins cher
cherry cerise, *f.*
chicken poulet, *m.*
chief chef, *m.*
child enfant, *m. and f.*
chimney cheminée, *f.*
China Chine, *f.*
chopper bûcheron, *m.*
Christian chrétien
Christopher Christophe
chum camarade, *m. and f.*
church église, *f.;* **at (to)** — à l'église
city ville, *f.;* **in the** — à la ville, en ville
city hall hôtel (*m.*) de ville
clad *see* **clothe**
claimant prétendant, *m.*
class classe, *f.*
classroom classe, *f.*
clean nettoyer
clearly clairement
clever habile, fort, intelligent
cleverly habilement
climb grimper, monter
clock (*town*) horloge, *f.*, (*in rooms*) pendule *f.*
close fermer, clore

clothe vêtir, habiller
clothes vêtements, *m. pl.*, habits, *m. pl.*
clumsy: **be so** — **as to** avoir la maladresse de; — **fellow** maladroit, *m.*
coat habit, *m.*, (*sack*) veston, *m.*
cock coq, *m.*
coffee café, *m.*
cold *adj.* froid; *n.* froid, *m.*; **be** — (*of living beings*) avoir froid; **be** (**get**) — (*of weather*) faire froid; **I have** — **hands, my hands are** — j'ai froid aux mains; **catch** (**a**) — s'enrhumer
collar (*man's*) col, *m.*; faux-col, *m.*
college collège, *m.*
colossal colossal
Columbus Colomb [kɔlɔ̃]
comb peigne, *m.*
come venir, arriver; — **again** revenir; — **back**, — **home** revenir; — **to see**, — **and see** venir voir; — **down** descendre; — **up** monter, arriver; — **in** entrer, rentrer; — **out** sortir; —! voyons! allons!
comfortable commode; **be** — faire bon, être bien
coming arrivée, *f.*
command commander
commandment commandement, *m.*; **the Ten Commandments** les dix commandements, le décalogue
commence commencer
commit commettre
companion compagnon, *m.*, compagne, *f.*, camarade, *m. and f.*; **traveling** — compagnon de voyage
company compagnie, *f.*, société, *f.*
compartment compartiment, *m.*
compassion compassion, *f.*
complain se plaindre
complete complet
complicated compliqué
compliment compliment, *m.*
comprise comprendre
comrade camarade, *m. and f.*
conceal cacher
concert concert, *m.*
conclude conclure
condemn condamner
condition condition, *f.*, état, *m.*
confess avouer
confidence confiance, *f.*
confound confondre
congratulate féliciter (de *or* sur)
conquer conquérir, vaincre
conscience conscience, *f.*
consecrate bénir
consent consentir
consider considérer, regarder
construct construire
contain contenir
continually sans cesse
continue continuer
contract contrat, *m.*
contrary: **on the** — au contraire
convenient commode, utile
cook cuisinier, *m.*, cuisinière, *f.*
cool frais; **it is** — (*of weather*) il fait frais
coolly tranquillement
copper (*coin*) sou, *m.*
copy exemplaire, *m.*, copie, *f.*
coral corail, *m.*
corkscrew tire-bouchon, *m.*
corner coin, *m.*
cost coûter
costs frais, *m. pl.*
could *past of* **can**; **we** — **have written** nous aurions pu écrire; **I** — **not do so** je ne pourrais pas le faire; **he** — **do that when he was here** il pouvait faire cela quand il était ici; **I** — je pourrais, je pouvais; **I** — **have** j'aurais pu
count compter
country pays, *m.*; (*native land*)

patrie, *f.*; (*as opposed to town*) campagne, *f.*; **in the** — à la campagne
county town chef-lieu, *m.*
couple couple, *m. and f.*
courage courage, *m.*; **take** — prendre (avoir) courage
court cour, *f.*
courtier courtisan, *m.*
cousin cousin, *m.*; cousine, *f.*
cover couvrir; —**ed with** couvert de
cow vache, *f.*
cravat cravate, *f.*
crawl se traîner
create créer
creature créature, *f.*, être, *m.*, bête, *f.*
crime crime, *m.*
criminal criminel, *m.*
critic critique, *m.*
Crœsus Crésus
crops récolte, *f.*
cross *adj.* méchant
cross *v.* traverser
crowd foule, *f.*
crown couronne, *f.*
cry pleurer, crier; — **out** crier, s'écrier
cup tasse, *f.*, coupe, *f.*
cupboard armoire, *f.*
cure guérir
curiosity curiosité, *f.*
curse maudire
custom coutume, *f.*
cut couper; **have one's hair** — se faire couper les cheveux

D

daily tous les jours, par jour
dance danser
danger danger, *m.*
dangerous dangereux
dark noir; **be** — faire noir, faire obscur
date (*time*) date, *f.*
date (*fruit*) datte, *f.*
daughter fille, *f.*
day jour, *m.*, journée, *f.*; **every** — tous les jours, chaque jour; **in those** —**s** à cette époque; **what** — **of the month is it today?** quel jour du mois sommes-nous aujourd'hui? *etc.*; **the** — **after** le lendemain (de); **the** — **after to-morrow** après-demain; **the** — **before yesterday** avant-hier; **all** — (**long**) toute la journée, tout le jour; **from** — **to** — de jour en jour; **be** — (*daylight*) faire jour
daybreak point (*m.*) du jour; **at** (**since**) — dès le point du jour
dead mort
deaf sourd
deaf-mute sourd-muet
deal: **a great** —, **a good** — beaucoup
dear cher; **not so** — pas si cher, moins cher
death mort, *f.*; **be at the point of** — être sur le point de mourir; **put to** — mettre à mort
debt dette, *f.*
deceive tromper
December décembre, *m.*
declare déclarer
defect défaut, *m.*
dejection abattement, *m.*
delay différer
delight: — **in** se plaire à
delighted enchanté, charmé
delightful charmant
deliverance délivrance, *f.*
delve bêcher, creuser
deny nier
depart s'en aller, partir
depend: — **on** dépendre de
describe décrire
deserve mériter
desire désirer, vouloir
desk pupitre, *m.*

despair désespérer
dessert dessert, *m.*
destination destination, *f.*
destroy détruire, perdre
determine déterminer, résoudre, décider, avoir l'idée
devour dévorer
dial cadran, *m.*
diameter diamètre, *m.*
did *see* do
die mourir; — **away** se mourir
difference différence, *f.*; **that makes no** — cela ne fait rien
different différent
difficult difficile
difficulty difficulté, *f.*, peine, *f.*
dig creuser, bêcher
diminish diminuer
dine dîner
dining room salle (*f.*) à manger
dinner dîner, *m.*
direct *adj.* droit
disagreeable désagréable
disappear disparaître
discover découvrir
discuss discuter
discussion discussion, *f.*
dishes vaisselle, *f.*
disobliging désobligeant
disperse se disperser, se séparer
displease déplaire (à)
dispute se disputer
distinction distinction, *f.*
distinguished distingué, célèbre
distract distraire
distrust se défier de, se méfier de
dive plonger
divide diviser; partager
do faire; — (*of health*) se porter, *etc.*; — **without** se passer de; — **you like?** aimez-vous? (*emphatic auxiliary*); **I** — **not do it** je ne le fais pas; — **not do so** ne le faites pas; **he does not speak** il ne parle pas; **he works, does he not?** il travaille, n'est-ce pas? — **not (don't) speak** ne parlez pas; **I** — **not** non, monsieur; **I did** oui, monsieur; **did he speak?** a-t-il parlé? **be done** se faire
doctor médecin, *m.*, docteur, *m.*
doctrine doctrine, *f.*
dog chien, *m.*
doll poupée, *f.*
dollar dollar, *m.*, piastre, *f.*; **a** — **a dozen** un dollar la douzaine
don't, doesn't *see* **do**
door porte, *f.*; **next** — à côté
doubt *n.* doute, *m.*; **no** — sans doute
doubt *v.* douter
down: — **stairs** en bas; **come** —, **go** — (**stairs**) descendre, aller en bas; **bring** — descendre; — **town** en ville; **bent** — courbé; **sit** — s'asseoir; **lie** — se coucher
dramatic dramatique
draw tirer; tracer; — **near** s'approcher (de)
drawing dessin, *m.*
drawing-room salon, *m.*
dream *n.* songe, *m.*, rêve, *m.*
dream *v.* rêver, songer, faire des songes
dress *n.* robe, *f.*; toilette, *f.*
dress *v.* habiller; se mettre; s'habiller; **be** —**ed** être mis
drink boire
drive *n.*: **go for a** —, **be out for a** — se promener en voiture (auto)
drive *v.* conduire, mener, mouvoir, chasser; — **away** chasser
drop laisser tomber
drown se noyer
dry sec
ducat ducat, *m.*
duke duc, *m.*
dumb muet
dupe dupe, *f.*
during pendant

duty devoir, *m.*
dwell demeurer

E

each chaque, tout
each one chacun
each other *reflex. pron. pl.* nous, vous, se; *indef.* l'un l'autre, les uns les autres
eagerly avec empressement
ear oreille, *f.*; —**ache** mal aux oreilles; — (*of wheat*) épi, *m.*
earlier plus tôt, de meilleure heure
early de bonne heure
earn gagner
earth terre, *f.*
easily facilement, aisément
easy facile
eat manger; — **grass** paître
economical (*of persons*) économe
educated instruit
education éducation, (*of persons*) instruction, *f.*; **receive a good** — faire de bonnes études
Edward Édouard
effort effort, *m.*
eight huit
eighty quatre-vingt(s)
either ou; **nor . . .** — ni . . . non plus; **he hasn't any** — il n'en a pas non plus
eldest aîné
elect élire
elephant éléphant, *m.*
eleven onze
else autre; autre chose; **not . . . anything —, nothing** — ne . . . rien autre
elsewhere autre part, ailleurs
embrasure embrasure, *f.*
emperor empereur, *m.*
employ: admit into his — admettre chez lui
empty vide
enclose clore, enclore
enclosed ci-inclus
encourage encourager
end *n.* fin, *f.*, bout, *m.*; **come to a bad** — finir mal
end *v.* finir, se terminer
enemy ennemi, *m.*
engage s'engager
England Angleterre, *f.*
English anglais; —**man** Anglais, *m.*; — (*the language*) l'anglais, anglais, *m.*
enjoy jouir de; — **oneself** s'amuser
enough assez (de); **not** — pas assez; **kind** — assez bon; **be** — **to** suffire pour
enter entrer (dans)
enterprise entreprise, *f.*
entrance entrée, *f.*
equal: be — (**to**) égaler
equivalent équivalent, *m.*
error erreur, *f.*
escape éviter, échapper, s'échapper, s'enfuir; **have a narrow** — l'échapper belle
especially surtout
estate propriété, *f.*, biens, *m. pl.*, domaine, *m.*
Europe Europe, *f.*
European européen
even même; — **if,** — **though** quand même
evening soir, *m.*, soirée, *f.*; **in the** — le soir; **last —, yesterday** — hier (au) soir
ever jamais
every tout, chaque; — **Sunday** tous les dimanches; — **other day** tous les deux jours
everybody tout le monde, *m.*
everyone chacun
everything tout, toute chose; — **that** tout ce qui (que)
everywhere partout
evil mal; —**-doing** mal faire, *m.*

exactly exactement, précisément, (*with time*) précis
examine examiner, visiter
example exemple, *m.;* **for** — par exemple
excavation excavation, *f.*, fouille, *f.*
excite exciter; émouvoir
exclaim s'écrier
excuse excuser; — **me** pardon
exercise devoir, *m.*, exercice, *m.*
exhibit exposer
expect attendre, s'attendre, compter, espérer
expense dépense, *f.*, dépens, *m. pl.*
explain expliquer
eye œil, *m.*, yeux, *pl.*

F

façade façade, *f.*
face figure, *f.*, visage, *m.;* **shut the door in one's** — fermer la porte au nez à quelqu'un
fact fait, *m.;* **in** — en effet
fail faillir; **to** — **in** manquer à, de
fairy fée, *f.;* — **story** conte de fée(s)
faithful fidèle
fall tomber; — **due** échoir; — **out** se brouiller; — **asleep** s'endormir
false faux
familiarity familiarité, *f.*
familiarly familièrement
family famille, *f.*
famous fameux, célèbre
far *adv.* loin; — **from** loin que, loin de; **be** — **from** il s'en faut de beaucoup; — **away** loin, loin d'ici; **as** — **as** jusqu'à; **how** — **is it?** combien y a-t-il?
farmer paysan, *m.*, fermier, *m.*, cultivateur, *m.*
farmhouse ferme, *f.*
farm servant valet (*m.*) de ferme
farther plus loin; — **off** plus loin; — **on** plus loin
fashion mode, *f.*
fast vite
fastidious difficile
fate destin, *m.*, sort, *m.*
father père, *m.*
favor faveur, *f.*
favorite favori, *m.*
fear *n.* crainte, *f.*, peur, *f.;* **for** — **that** de crainte que; **for** — **of** de crainte de
fear *v.* craindre, avoir peur
feast festin, *m.*, banquet, *m.*
February février, *m.*
feed nourrir
feel tâter; sentir; — **hungry** sentir la faim, avoir faim
feeling sentiment, *m.*
fell abattre
fellow garçon, *m.*, individu *m.* type, *m.;* **good** — brave homme; **my good** — mon ami; **the brave little** —**s** les petits bonshommes; **the clumsy** — le maladroit
fence clôture, *f.*
festival, festivity fête, *f.*
fetch aller chercher
few peu, peu de, quelques; **a** — quelques-uns; **but** — ne . . . guère, ne . . . que peu
fewer moins de
field champ, *m.*
fifteen quinze
fifteenth quinzième, quinze
fifth cinquième, cinq
fifty cinquante
fight combattre, se battre
fill remplir
finally enfin, à la fin; — **do** finir par faire
find trouver; — **out** découvrir; **be found** se trouver
fine beau, brave; **it is** — (**weather**) il fait beau (temps)

fine-looking beau, élégant
finger doigt, *m.*
finish finir
fire feu, *m.*; **set** — **to** mettre le feu à
first *adj.* premier; **for the** — **time** pour la première fois
first *adv.* d'abord; **at** — d'abord
fish *v.* pêcher
fishing pêche, *f.*
fit aller à; **my suit** —**s me well** mon complet me va bien
fitting convenable
five cinq
flattering flatteur
flee fuir, s'enfuir
fleet flotte, *f.*
floor plancher *m.*, (*hardwood*) parquet, *m.*
Florida Floride, *f.*
flower fleur, *f.*; **in** — en fleurs
fluently couramment
fly voler; — **away** s'envoler
foggy: **be** — faire du brouillard
folded croisé
follow suivre
following suivant; **the** — **day** le jour suivant, le lendemain
folly folie, *f.*, sottise, *f.*
fond: **be** — **of** aimer
food nourriture, *f.*
foolish fou, sot, bête
foot pied, *m.*; **on** — à pied; **tread under** — fouler aux pieds
for *prep.* pour, pendant, de, contre, par; — **a moment** un moment; — (**during**) pendant; **set out** — partir pour; — (*since*) depuis; — **a long time**, — **a week** depuis longtemps, depuis une semaine; — **me** pour moi; — **it** en; **trade** — échanger pour (contre); **I am sorry** — **it** j'en suis fâché
for *conj.* car
forbid défendre
force *n.* force, *f.*
force *v.* forcer; **I was** —**d j'ai dû**
foreign, foreigner étranger; **in** — **countries** à l'étranger
forest forêt, *f.*
forget oublier
fork fourchette, *f.*
form former
former: **the** — celui-ci, celui-là
formerly autrefois
fortnight quinzaine, *f.*, quinze jours, *m. pl.*
fortunate heureux
fortune fortune, *f.*; **good** — bonheur, *m.*; **make one's** — faire fortune
forty quarante; **about** — quarantaine, *f.*
four quatre
fourteenth quatorzième, quatorze
fourth quatrième, quatre; — **part** le quart
fox renard, *m.*
franc franc, *m.*
France France, *f.*; **in** —, **to** — en France
Frederick the Great Frédéric le Grand
free libre
freeze geler
French *adj.* français; — (*the language*) le français, français; — **man** Français, *m.*; — **teacher** professeur (*m.*) de français; — **history** histoire (*f.*) de France; — **grammar** grammaire française
Friday vendredi, *m.*
friend ami, *m.*; amie, *f.*
friendly aimable
friendship amitié, *f.*
frighten effrayer, faire peur à; **get** (**be**) —**ed** avoir peur; **be very much** —**ed** être très (bien) effrayé, avoir très (bien, **grand**') peur

frog grenouille, *f.*
from de, de dessus, à, à partir de, dans, d'après, depuis; — **day to day** de jour en jour; — **it** en; — **nature** d'après nature; **drink** — **a glass** boire dans un verre; **take** — **the table** prendre sur la table; — **me** de ma part
front: **in** — **of** devant
fruit fruit, *m.*
frying pan poêle, *f.*
fulfill accomplir
full plein
furnish fournir
furthermore d'ailleurs

G

gallery galerie, *f.*
garden jardin, *m.*
Gascon Gascon, *m.*
gate porte, *f.*
gather cueillir
gay gai
general général, *m.*
generally en général, généralement, ordinairement
generous généreux
gentleman monsieur, *m.*; **gentlemen** messieurs
George George(s)
German allemand
get prendre; avoir; obtenir; **go and** — aller chercher, aller trouver; — **up, rise** se lever; — **up on** monter sur; — (*become*) devenir; — **made, have made** faire faire; — **married** se marier; — **angry** se fâcher; — **on** avancer; — **to** arriver à; — **out** descendre; — **in** monter
ghost revenant, *m.*
girl (jeune) fille, *f.*, enfant, *f.*
give donner; — **away** donner; — **back** rendre; — **too much for** payer trop cher
glad: — **at,** — **of** content de, charmé de
gladly volontiers, avec plaisir
glass verre, *m.*
glory gloire, *f.*
glove gant, *m.*
go aller, marcher; se rendre; — **away** s'en aller, partir; — **in, into** entrer dans; — **out** sortir; — **with** accompagner, aller avec; — **by,** — **past** passer (devant); — **up(stairs)** aller en haut, monter; — **down (stairs)** aller en bas, descendre; — **and see** aller voir; — **around the city** faire le tour de la ville; — **to bed** se coucher; — **for a row, sail,** *etc.* se promener en bateau; — (**out**) **for a walk** aller se promener (à pied), aller faire une promenade (à pied); — **for a drive** se promener en voiture; — **for a ride** se promener à cheval; — **for,** — **after,** — **and get** aller chercher; — **back** (**again**) retourner; — **downtown** aller en ville; — **home** aller chez soi, rentrer; — **on** continuer (à), aller en; — **to sleep** s'endormir; — **to France** aller en France, partir pour la France; — **there!** vas-y, allez-y!
goat chèvre, *f.*
God Dieu; **gods** dieux, *m. pl.*
gold or, *m.*; *adj.* (*of gold*) d'or, en or
golden d'or
good bon, brave, sage, juste; **my** — **fellow** mon ami, *m.*; **be so** — **as to, be** — **enough to** voulez-vous bien, ayez la bonté de, veuillez
good bien, *m.*; **do** — faire du bien
good-bye adieu, au revoir
goodness bonté, *f.*

goods marchandises, *f. pl.*
gooseberry bush groseillier, *m.*
grace grâce, *f.*
grain grain, *m.*
grammar grammaire, *f.*
grandfather grand-père, *m.*, aïeul, *m.*
grandmother grand'mère, *f.*
grape(s) raisin(s), *m.*
grass herbe, *f.*
gravely gravement
great grand, gros; — **deal** beaucoup
Great Britain Grande-Bretagne, *f.*
Greek grec
green vert; — **peas** petits pois, *m. pl.*
grind moudre
ground terre, *f.*; (**up**)**on the** — à terre, par terre
grow croître; — **larger** grandir
grudge : have a — en vouloir à
guard garde, *m.*
gun fusil, *m.*

H

hair cheveux, *m. pl.*
half *adj.* demi; — **past eight** huit heures et demie; — **an hour** une demi-heure
half *n.* moitié *f.*; **by** — de la moitié
half *adv.* à demi
hand main, *f.*; **shake** —**s with** donner la main à; **on the right** — à droite; **on the left** — à gauche; — (*of a clock*) aiguille, *f.*
hang pendre
happen arriver; venir à, avoir lieu
happily heureusement
happy heureux, content
hard difficile; **work** — travailler ferme
hardly à peine
harm faire mal à
harp 'harpe, *f.*
harvest moisson, *f.*
hasten se hâter, se dépêcher; **into the presence of** accourir auprès de
hat chapeau, *m.*; **have** —(**s**) **on** être couvert(s); **have** —(**s**) **off** être découvert(s)
hate 'haïr
hatred 'haine, *f.*
hatter chapelier, *m.*
have avoir; obtenir; — (*as auxiliary*) avoir, être; **I** — **to be there** il faut que j'y sois; — **him go** faites-le partir; — (*cause to be*) faire; **I am having a house built** je fais bâtir une maison; — **done** faire faire; — **one's hair cut** se faire couper les cheveux; — **just** venir de; — **to do with** avoir affaire à; **he has spoken, has he not?** il a parlé, n'est-ce pas? — **to** être obligé de; — **on** porter
Havre le Havre
hay foin, *m.*
hazelnut noisette, *f.*
he il, lui; ce; — **who** celui qui; — **himself** lui-même
head tête, *f.*; maître, *m.*
headache : have — avoir mal à la tête
heal guérir
health santé, *f.*
hear entendre; — **from** recevoir des nouvelles de; **I** — **from him** je reçois de ses nouvelles; — **of** entendre parler de
heart cœur, *m.*
heat chaleur, *f.*
heavy lourd
Helena : St. — Sainte-Hélène
help aider, secourir
hen poule, *f.*
hence aussi, donc
Henry Henri, *m.*

her *adj.* son, sa, ses; lui . . . le (à elle)
her *pers. pron.* la, elle; **to** — lui, à elle; — **own** le sien, à elle
here ici, ci, y; — **below** ici-bas; — **is, — are** voici
hero 'héros, *m.*
heroine héroïne, *f.*
hers le sien, à elle
herself se, elle-même
hide cacher
high 'haut; — **price** grand prix, *m.*, tant
hill colline, *f.*
him le, lui; **to —, for —** lui; — **who** celui qui
himself se, soi, lui, lui-même; **to —** en lui-même; **he —** lui-même
hinder empêcher
his *adj.* son, sa, ses; lui . . . le (à lui)
his *pron.* le sien, à lui; — **own** le sien
historical historique
history histoire, *f.*
hither: — and thither çà et là
hold tenir; — **out** tendre
hole trou, *m.*
holiday jour (*m.*) de fête; **—s** vacances, *f. pl.*
holy bénit; saint
home: (at) — chez moi, chez toi, *etc.*, à la maison; **go —** aller chez moi, chez toi, *etc.*, aller à la maison, rentrer
honest honnête, loyal, probe
honesty loyauté, *f.*, probité, *f.*
honor *n.* honneur, *m.*
honor *v.* honorer
hope espérer, compter
horse cheval, *m.*
horseback: on — à cheval; **ride** — monter à cheval
horseshoe fer (*m.*) à cheval
hot chaud, brûlant; **it is** — il fait chaud
hotel hôtel, *m.*
hour heure, *f.*
house maison, *f.*; **at (to) our** — chez nous; **at whose —?** chez qui? **at Mr. B's (—)** chez Monsieur B; **in the** — à la maison, dans la maison
how comment, comme, combien; **—!** comme! que! **— much?** — **many?** combien? **— much!** — **many!** combien (de)! que de! **— long have you been here?** depuis quand êtes-vous ici? **— happy she is!** qu'elle est heureuse! **— old is he?** quel âge a-t-il? **— is he?** comment se porte-t-il? comment va-t-il? **— do you do?** comment vous portez-vous (allez-vous)?
however cependant; **— good** quelque bon que; **— that may be** quoi qu'il en soit; **— little** pour peu que
howl cri, *m.*; **give a** — pousser un cri
humble humble, petit
hundred: a (one) — cent
hunger faim, *f.*
hungry affamé; **be (feel)** — avoir faim
hunt (for) chasser, chercher
hunting chasse, *f.*
hurrah for! vive(nt)!
hurry: — up se dépêcher; **be in a** — être pressé
hurt faire mal à; — **oneself** se faire mal, se blesser
husbandman laboureur, *m.*

I

I je, moi
ice glace, *f.*
idea idée, *f.*
idle paresseux; **to be** — ne rien faire

idleness paresse, *f.*
if si
ignorant ignorant; **be — of** ignorer
ill *n.* mal, *m.*
ill *adj.* malade
ill *adv.* mal
ill fortune malheur, *m.*
illuminate illuminer
image image, *f.*
imagine s'imaginer
immediately tout de suite
impatient impatient
important important
impossible impossible
in dans, à, en, de, sur; — **it** y, là dedans; — (*after superlative*) de; — **the reign of** sous; **be** — y être, être chez soi; — **the evening** le soir; **one** — **ten** un sur dix; — **the west** à (dans) l'ouest
inch pouce, *m.*
income revenu, *m.*
increase augmenter
incur courir
indeed! vraiment!
individual individu, *m.*
influence influencer
influential influent
infrequent rare
injustice injustice, *f.*
ink encre, *f.*
inn auberge, *f.*
innkeeper aubergiste, *m.*
instead of au lieu de
institution institution, *f.*
instrument instrument, *m.*
insult dire des injures à, insulter
intelligent intelligent
intend avoir l'intention
intention intention, *f.*
inter enterrer
interest *n.* intérêt, *m.*; **take — in** prendre intérêt à, s'occuper de
interest *v.* intéresser
interesting intéressant
interview: (private) — tête-à-tête, *m.*
intimate intime
into dans, en; — **it** y, là dedans; **fall — the sea** tomber à la mer; — **his presence** auprès de lui
introduce présenter
invention invention, *f.*
invite inviter
Ireland Irlande, *f.*
iron fer, *m.*; (*adj.*) de fer
is *see* **be**; **here —, here are** voici; **here he** — le voici
island île, *f.*
it il, elle, ce; le, la; cela; **in** — y, dedans; **of** —, **for** — en; **to** — y; — **is you** c'est vous; — **is they** ce sont eux, c'est eux; **think of** — y penser; **is** —? vraiment?
Italian italien
Italy Italie, *f.*
its son, sa, ses; **en . . . le**
itself se, soi; lui-même; même

J

January janvier, *m.*
Japan Japon, *m.*
Jericho Jéricho
Jerusalem Jérusalem
John Jean
joke plaisanter
journey voyage, *m.*; **set out again on a** — se remettre en route
joyful joyeux
judge *n.* juge, *m.*; **be a good — of** se connaître à (en)
judge *v.* juger
June juin, *m.*
July juillet, *m.*
jump sauter; — **over** sauter par-dessus
Jupiter Jupiter
just *adj.* juste, précis

just *adv.* justement, donc; — look! regardez donc! **to have** — venir de, ne faire que de; — **then** à ce moment; — **as** au moment où
justice justice, *f.*

K

keep garder, tenir; — **on** aller en
kernel amande, *f.*
key clef, *f.*
kick out mettre à la porte
kill tuer, faire mourir
kilometer kilomètre, *m.* (⅝ *of a mile*)
kind *n.* espèce, *f.*, sorte, *f.*; **what — of weather is it?** quel temps fait-il?
kind *adj.* bon, aimable; — **to** bon pour; **be so — as, be — enough to** vouloir bien; **it is — of him to** c'est bon à lui de
kindness bonté, *f.*; **have the — to** vouloir bien, avoir la bonté de
king roi, *m.*
kingdom royaume, *m.*; **United Kingdom** Royaume-Uni, *m.*
kiss embrasser, baiser
kitchen cuisine, *f.*
knee genou, *m.*; **fall on one's —s** tomber à genoux
knife couteau, *m.*, canif, *m.*
knight chevalier, *m.*
knock frapper; **there is a —** on frappe
know savoir, connaître; — **how** savoir
knowledge science, *f.*, connaissances, *f. pl.*

L

labor travail, *m.*, labeur, *m.*, ouvrage, *m.*
lady dame, *f.*; **young —** (*unmarried*) jeune fille, jeune personne, demoiselle; (*married*) jeune dame; **ladies** (*in address*) mesdames, mesdemoiselles
lake lac, *m.*
lamp lampe, *f.*
lamp shade abat-jour, *m.*
land terre, *f.*
landlord aubergiste, *m.*
landscape paysage, *m.*
language langue, *f.*; — (*of animals, etc.*) langage, *m.*
large grand, gros; **grow —** grandir
last *adj.* dernier, passé; — **year** l'année dernière, l'année passée; — **evening** hier (au) soir; — **night** cette nuit; **at —** enfin, à la fin
last *v.* durer
late tard, en retard; **he is —** il est en retard; **be — for** manquer; **it is —** il est tard; **it is getting —** il se fait tard; **later on** plus tard
lately dernièrement, récemment
Latin latin
latter: the — celui-ci, ceux-ci, ce dernier
laud louer
laugh rire, ricaner; — **at** rire de, se moquer de
laughter rire, *m.*
law loi, *f.*
lawsuit procès, *m.*
lazy paresseux
lead mener, conduire
leaf feuille, *f.*
leap sauter
learn apprendre, savoir
learned: — man savant, *m.*
leathern de cuir
leave *tr.* quitter, laisser
leave *intr.* partir, sortir
left: I have none — je n'en ai plus; **none —** n'en rester plus

left gauche; **on the — (hand)** à (la) gauche
leg jambe, *f.*, patte, *f.* (*dog's*)
lend prêter
length longueur, *f.*; **at —** enfin, à la fin, à la longue
less moins; **— than two** moins de deux
lesson leçon, *f.*
lest que . . . ne, de peur que . . . ne
let laisser, permettre; **— in** laisser entrer; **— us go**; allons; **— him finish** qu'il finisse; **— him be glad** qu'il soit content
letter lettre, *f.*
lettuce laitue, *f.*
Levite lévite, *m.*
liberal libéral
liberty liberté, *f.*
library bibliothèque, *f.*
lie (*speak falsely*) mentir; — (*buried*) gésir; **here —s** ci-gît; **— down** se coucher
life vie, *f.*
light *n.* lumière, *f.*, jour, *m.*; **get —** faire jour
light *adj.*: **— auburn hair** cheveux châtain clair
like *v.* aimer; vouloir, désirer; **— better** aimer mieux; **— to** aimer (à); **I should — (very much)** j'aimerais (bien), je voudrais (bien); **I should — you to do it** je voudrais que vous le fassiez (fissiez); **I should — to have done it** j'aurais voulu le faire; **— it in** se plaire à
like *prep.* comme, en; **anything — that** quelque chose de pareil, ne . . . rien de pareil; **be — each other** se ressembler l'un à l'autre
line ligne, *f.*, lignée, *f.*
listen (to) écouter
little *adj.* petit; *adv.* peu; **a —** un peu (de); **however —** pour peu que; **a — while ago** il y a quelques moments; **— by —** peu à peu, petit à petit
live demeurer, vivre; **— in** demeurer à, dans, *etc.*, habiter; **— on** vivre de; **long —!** vive(nt)!
living vivant; **— is dear** il fait cher vivre; **not a — soul ne . . .** âme vivante
log bûche, *f.*
London Londres, *m.*
long *v.* tarder; **I — to** il me tarde de; **be — in** tarder à
long *adj. or adv.* long, longtemps; **have you been here —?** y a-t-il longtemps que vous êtes ici? **how — were you there?** combien de temps y avez-vous été? **a — time, a — while** longtemps; **how —?** depuis quand? **as — as** tant que; **I have not seen them for a — time** il y a longtemps que je ne les ai vus; **a — way off** loin
longer: no — ne . . . plus
look *tr.* regarder; **— at** regarder, parcourir, y jeter un coup d'œil; **— around** regarder autour; **look out** prendre garde; **— out of the window** regarder par la fenêtre; **— for** chercher; *intr.* avoir l'air, sembler, paraître; **get a good — at** bien voir; **— at each other** se regarder
lose perdre; **— sight of** perdre de vue
loss perte, *f.*
lot of (a) beaucoup (de)
loud(ly) *adv.* fort, haut
Louis Louis, Lewis
love *n.* amour, *m. and f.*, affection, *f.*, tendresse, *f.*; **my first —** mes premières amours (*poet.*)
love *v.* aimer

loyal loyal, honnête, fidèle
luck: **good** — fortune, *f.*

M

machine machine, *f.*
madam madame, *f. pl.* mesdames
magnificent magnifique
maid bonne, *f.*; — **of all work** bonne à tout faire
mail *v.* mettre à la poste
mail *n.*: **here's your** — voici votre courrier
majority majorité, *f.*
make faire, rendre; **be made** se faire; — **use** se servir
man homme, *m.*, monsieur, *m.*; **old** — vieillard, *m.*; (*soldier*) soldat, *m.*; **the** — **who, a** — **who** celui qui; **young men** jeunes gens
manner manière, *f.*
many: **very** —, **a great** — beaucoup (de), bien (des); **so** — tant (de); — **a** maint; **as** — autant (de); **how** —? combien (de)? — (**people**) beaucoup de personnes; — **years** bien des années
map carte, *f.*
March mars, *m.*
march marcher
mark marque, *f.*, signe, *m.*
market marché, *m.*; **to, at (the)** — au marché
marry (*give in marriage, unite in marriage*) marier; (*take in marriage*) épouser, se marier à (avec); (*be married, get married*) se marier
Marseilles Marseille, *f.*
Mary Marie
master maître, *m.*
masterpiece chef-d'œuvre, *m.*
mate compagne, *f.*
matter affaire, *f.*; **what is the** — **with you?** qu'avez-vous? **what is the** —? qu'y a-t-il? de quoi s'agit-il? **no** —, **that does not** — n'importe
maxim maxime, *f.*
May mai, *m.*
may pouvoir; **that** — **be** cela se peut; **it** — **be** il se peut; — **it please** qu'il plaise; **you** — **say what you like** vous avez beau parler; *see* **might**
me me, moi; **to** —, **for** — me, moi; **for** — pour moi; **with** — avec moi
mean vouloir dire
meat viande, *f.*
meet rencontrer; se réunir; se rencontrer
meeting assemblée, *f.*, réunion, *f.*; **call a** — convoquer une assemblée (réunion)
memorandum mémoire, *m.*
memory mémoire, *f.*
mention: **don't** — **it** il n'y a pas de quoi
merchant marchand, *m.*
Mercury Mercure
mere simple
merely seulement, rien que
merit *n.* mérite, *m.*
merit *v.* mériter
merry joyeux, gai
meter mètre, *m.*
method méthode, *f.*, façon, *f.*
Michael Angelo Michel-Ange [mikɛlɑ̃ʒ] *great Italian painter, sculptor, and architect, b. 1475, d. 1564*
Michaelmas la Saint-Michel
middle milieu, *m.*
midnight minuit, *m.*
midst milieu, *m.*; **into the** — au milieu
might *past of* **may**: **I** — **have** j'aurais pu; **you** — **have seen them** vous auriez pu les voir
mild: **be** — faire doux

mile mille, *m.*
military militaire
milk *n.* lait, *m.*
milk *v.* traire
mill moulin, *m.*
miller meunier, *m.*
mind âme, *f.*, avis, *m.*, opinion, *f.*
mine le mien; à moi; **a friend of —** un de mes amis; **— and thine** le mien et le tien
minister ministre, *m.*
minute minute, *f.*; **five —s to five** cinq heures moins cinq (minutes), quatre heures cinquante-cinq
miser avare, *m.*
misery misère, *f.*
misfortune malheur, *m.*
Miss mademoiselle, *f.*
miss manquer
mistake: make a — se tromper
mistaken: be — se tromper
modern moderne
modest modeste
moment moment, *m.*; **(at) this —** à l'instant
monarch monarque, *m.*
monastery monastère, *m.*
Monday lundi, *m.*
money argent, *m.*, monnaie, *f.*
monk moine, *m.*
month mois, *m.*; **what day of the — is it?** quel jour (*or* quel quantième) du mois est-ce (*or* sommes-nous) aujourd'hui? **in the — of May** au mois de mai
Montreal Montréal, *m.*
more plus (de), encore, davantage; **have you any — money?** avez-vous encore de l'argent? **I have no —, I have not any —** je n'en ai plus; **— money than** plus d'argent que; **I have some —** j'en ai encore; **no —** ne . . . plus; **— than twenty times** plus de vingt fois; **it is worth — than one** il vaut mieux; plus d'un
morning matin, *m.*, matinée, *f.*; **good —** bonjour; **in the —** le matin; **it is a cold —** il fait froid ce matin
morrow lendemain, *m.*
mortification mortification, *f.*
most très, bien, fort; **the —** le plus; **— people** la plupart des gens
mother mère, *f.*
motor car auto(mobile), *m. and f.*
mountain montagne, *f.*
mouth bouche, *f.*
move mouvoir, émouvoir, remuer; se remuer
Mr. M., monsieur, *m.*
much beaucoup (de), bien, très, grand'chose; **very —** beaucoup, bien; **as — as** autant que; **so —** tant, tellement; **how —?** combien (de)? **too —** trop; **as —** autant (de); **pay twice as —** payer deux fois plus cher; **give too —** payer trop cher
mud vase, *f.*, boue, *f.*
museum musée, *m.*
music musique, *f.*
must falloir, devoir; **I — go** il me faut partir, il faut que je parte; **he — have done it** il a dû le faire
my mon, ma, mes; **me** (*dat.*) . . . le; **I wash — face** je me lave la figure; **— own** le mien, à moi
myself me, moi, moi-même
mysterious mystérieux

N

name *n.* nom, *m.*
name *v.* appeler; **be —d** s'appeler; **what is the — of?** comment s'appelle?

nap somme, *m.*
Napoleon Napoléon
narrow étroit; **have a — escape** l'échapper belle
nation nation, *f.*
national national
native natif
natural naturel
nature nature, *f.*
naughty méchant
near près de; — **by** tout près; **be — falling** penser tomber
nearly près de, presque
necessary nécessaire; **be —** être nécessaire, falloir
neck cou, *m.*
need *n.* besoin, *m.*
need *v.* avoir besoin de, falloir; **what does he —?** que lui faut-il? de quoi a-t-il besoin?
needless inutile
neglect négliger
negro nègre, *m.*
neighbor voisin, *m.*, voisine, *f.*
neighboring voisin
neither ni l'un ni l'autre . . . ne; **— . . . nor** (ne . . .) ni . . . ni
never ne . . . jamais; — **can any one** on (personne) ne peut jamais
nevertheless cependant
new nouveau, neuf
newly-married couple nouveaux mariés
New Orleans la Nouvelle-Orléans
news nouvelle(s), *f.*; **what is the —?** qu'y a-t-il de nouveau? **have you — from him?** avez-vous de ses nouvelles?
newspaper journal, *m.*
New Year's Day le jour de l'an
next *adj.* prochain, premier; — **year** l'année prochaine; **the — day** le lendemain; **the very — day** dès demain, dès le lendemain; — **time** la prochaine fois; — **door** à côté; **the — one** celui à côté; — **morning** le lendemain matin
next *adv.* après, ensuite
nice joli, gentil
night nuit, *f.*; **all —** (de) toute la nuit; **last —** hier soir, cette nuit
nine neuf
nineteen dix-neuf
ninety quatre-vingt-dix
ninety-two quatre-vingt-douze
no non, ne . . . pas, aucun; — **man,** — **one** personne, aucun; — **longer,** — **more** ne . . . plus
noble noble
nobleman noble, *m.*, gentilhomme, *m.*
nobody, no one ne . . . personne; — **at all** ne . . . qui que ce soit (fût)
noise bruit, *m.*
none pas, nul; **I have —** je n'en ai pas; **there are —** il n'y en a pas; **have — left** n'en avoir plus
nonsense! allons donc!
noon midi, *m.*
nor ni, et ne . . . pas; — **I either** ni) moi non plus
Normandy Normandie, *f.*
north nord, *m.*, du nord; — **wind** bise, *f.*, vent (*m.*) du nord
North America l'Amérique (*f.*) du Nord
nose nez, *m.*
not ne . . . pas (point), non; **is he —?** n'est-ce pas? — **for me** (non) pas pour moi; — **that** non (pas) que; — **one** (ne . . .) pas un, aucun; — **at all** pas du tout; — **very long afterwards** pas longtemps après; — **much is lacking** il s'en faut de peu que . . . ne

note billet, *m.*, mot, *m.*
notebook cahier, *m.*
nothing (ne . . .) rien; **that is — to him** cela ne lui fait rien; **— good** (ne . . .) rien de bon; **— at all** rien du tout, ne . . . quoi que ce soit (fût); **do — but** ne faire que
notice apercevoir, s'apercevoir
novel roman, *m.*
November novembre, *m.*
now maintenant, à présent, déjà; tiens! **not to have —** n'avoir plus; **— and then** de temps en temps
number nombre, *m.*, numéro, *m.*, compte, *m.*
numerous nombreux
nut noix, *f.*, noisette, *f.*

O

obelisk obélisque, *m.*
obey obéir (à)
oblige obliger, forcer; **—d** a dû
obliging obligeant
observe observer, remarquer
occasion occasion, *f.*
occasionally de temps en temps
occupied occupé
occur arriver, avoir lieu; (*of ideas*) venir à qqn. à l'esprit
o'clock heure(s), *f.*; **at four —** à quatre heures
October octobre, *m.*
of de; **— it, — them** en, y
offend offenser, déplaire à
offer offrir, fournir, présenter
office bureau, *m.*
often souvent; **how —** combien de fois
oil huile, *f.*
old (*in years*) vieux, âgé; (*former*) ancien; **how — are you?** quel âge avez-vous? **be five years —** avoir cinq ans, être âgé de cinq ans; **— man** vieillard, *m.*
on sur, à, de, en; **— the right** à (la) droite; **— business** pour affaires; **— this side** de ce côté (*often omitted with time expressions, e.g.*, **— the sixth** le six)
once une fois, autrefois; **at —** tout de suite
one *num.* un, une
one *indef. pron.* on, vous (*obj.*); **— must eat** il faut manger; **no —** personne (*with* ne); **I am the — who** c'est moi qui; **the white —s** les blancs; **an iron —** un en fer; **a small —** un petit; **the — who** celui qui; **that —** celui-là; **I am — too** je le suis aussi; **— of my friends, a doctor** un docteur de mes amis; **the —s** ceux (celles)
one's son; le
oneself se, soi
only ne . . . que, seulement; **not —** non seulement; **—** (*one*) seul
open *adj.* ouvert; **wide —** grand(e) ouvert(e)
open *v.* ouvrir; s'ouvrir, éclore
opium opium, *m.*
opportune opportun
opportunity occasion, *f.*
opposite contraire; en face de
or ou; ni (*after* sans); **no . . . —** ne . . . ni . . . ni
orator orateur, *m.*
order *n.* ordre, *m.*; **in — to** pour, afin de; **in — that** pour que, afin que
order *v.* (*give orders*) ordonner, commander; (*send for*) faire venir
organize organiser
origin origine, *f.*
other autre; **—s** d'autres; **many —s** bien d'autres; **of —s** des autres, d'autrui; **people give each —** on se donne; **write to**

each — s'écrire; every — day tous les deux jours
ought devoir; he — to do it il devrait le faire; he — to have done it il aurait dû le faire
our notre, nos; at — house chez nous
ours le nôtre
ourselves nous, nous-mêmes
out: come —, go — sortir; be — être sorti; — of the window par la fenêtre
outburst éclat, *m.*
out-doors (en) dehors
outside hors de; au dehors
over sur, par, par-dessus; be all — with en être fait de; — there là-bas
overcoat par-dessus, *m.*
owe devoir
own *adj.* propre; my — le mien; of his — à lui
own *v.* posséder

P

page (*servant*) page, *m.*, (*of book*) page, *f.*
pain peine, *f.*, douleur, *f.*
paint peindre
painter peintre, *m.*
palace palais, *m.*, château, *m.*
paper papier, *m.*; journal, *m.*
pardon *n.* pardon, *m.*; I beg your — pardon
pardon *v.* pardonner; I have — ed him all je lui ai tout pardonné
parent parent, *m.*
Paris Paris, *m.*; in — à Paris; in — itself dans Paris (même)
Parisian parisien
park parc, *m.*
parliament parlement, *m.*; Chambre (*f.*) des députés; member of — député, *m.*
parlor salon, *m.*
parrot perroquet, *m.*
part *n.* partie, *f.*, part, *f.*, région, *f.*; play a — jouer un rôle; on our — de notre part
part *v.*: — with (from) se séparer de
participle participe, *m.*
partner associé, *m.*
pass, go past passer (devant, près de); — through traverser; — by on the other side passer outre
passion passion, *f.*
past *n.* passé, *m.*
past *adj.* passé; et; at half — one à une heure et demie
patience patience, *f.*
patient malade, *m. and f.*
pay, pay for payer; — too much for it le payer trop cher; — attention faire attention
payment paiement, *m.*
pea pois, *m.*; green —s petits pois
peace paix, *f.*
peach pêche, *f.*
pear poire, *f.*
pearl perle, *f.*
peasant paysan, *m.*
pebble caillou, *m.*
peel peler
peep of day point (*m.*) du jour
pen plume, *f.*
pencil crayon, *m.*
penny deux sous, *m.*
people peuple, *m.*, on, gens, *m. and f.*, monde, *m.*, personnes, *f. pl.*; few — peu de gens (monde, personnes); most — la plupart des gens; young — les jeunes (gens)
perceive apercevoir, s'apercevoir de
perfection perfection, *f.*
perhaps peut-être
peril péril, *m.*
permit permettre (à); we are permitted to il nous est permis de

persist persister
person personne, *f.*
persuade persuader
petition pétition, *f.*
phrase phrase, *f.*
physician médecin, *m.*
pick up ramasser
picnic pique-nique, *m.*
picture tableau, *m.*, peinture, *f.*; — **gallery** galerie (*f.*) de peintures
piece morceau, *m.*
pin épingle, *f.*
pipe pipe, *f.*
pitifully à faire pitié
pity *n.* pitié, *f.*; **it's a** — c'est dommage; **what a** — quel dommage; **which is a great** — (ce) qui est bien dommage
pity *v.* plaindre; **to be pitied** à plaindre
place *n.* endroit, *m.*, lieu, *m.*, place, *f.*; **take** — avoir lieu; **it is my** — **to** c'est à moi de
place *v.* mettre, placer
plain plaine, *f.*
plainly franchement
plan plan, *m.*, projet, *m.*
plant *n.* plante, *f.*
plant *v.* planter
plate assiette, *f.*
play jouer; — **at** (*games*) jouer à; — **on** (*instruments*) jouer de
pleasant agréable, aimable
please plaire à, faire plaisir à; **if you** — s'il vous plaît, veuillez; **as we** — comme il nous plaira
pleased content
pleasure plaisir, *m.*; **give** — faire plaisir
plow labourer
plum prune, *f.*
pocket poche, *f.*
poem poème, *m.*, vers, *m. pl.*
poet poète, *m.*
poetry poésie, *f.*, vers, *m. pl.*
point point, *m.*; **at the** — **of** sur le point de
Poland Pologne, *f.*
Pole Polonais, *m.*
police police, *f.*
policeman agent (de police), *m.*
polite poli
political politique
pond étang, *m.*, mare, *f.*
poor pauvre, mauvais
population population, *f.*
portion part, *f.*
portrait portrait, *m.*
position place, *f.*; **put in a** — **to** mettre à même de
possession possession, *f.*
possible possible
post, post office poste, *f.*; **put in the** — mettre à la poste
postage stamp, timbre (poste), *m.*
postman facteur, *m.*
potato pomme de terre, *f.*
poultry volaille, *f.*; — **yard** basse-cour, *f.*
pound livre, *f.*
pour verser
powerful puissant, fort
practise mettre en pratique
praise louer
pray prier, prier Dieu
precious précieux
precise précis
precisely précisément; **at two o'clock** — à deux heures précises
prefer préférer, aimer mieux
prepare préparer
prescribe prescrire, ordonner
presence présence, *f.*; **into his** — auprès de lui
present *n.* cadeau, *m.*
present *adj.* présent, actuel; **at** — à présent; **be** — **at** être présent à, assister à
present (with) *v.* présenter

preserve conserver, confire
president (monsieur) le président
pretend faire semblant de
pretended prétendu
pretty *adj.* joli
pretty *adv.* assez
prevail over l'emporter sur
prevent empêcher
price prix, *m.;* **at what —** à quel prix, (à) combien
priest prêtre, *m.*, curé, *m.*
prince prince, *m.*
principle principe, *m.*
prison prison, *f.*
private interview tête-à-tête, *m.*
probable probable
probably probablement
procession cortège, *m.*
produce produire
progress progrès, *m. pl.*
promenade promenade, *f.*
promise *n.* promesse, *f.*
promise *v.* promettre
pronounce prononcer, donner
pronunciation prononciation, *f.*
proof preuve, *f.*
property propriété, *f.*, biens, *m. pl.*
prophet prophète, *m.*
propose proposer
prosperous florissant
proud fier, orgueilleux
proudly fièrement
prove prouver, démontrer
provide with fournir à
province province, *f.*
provisions aliments, *m.*, comestibles, *m.*, vivres, *m.*, provisions (*f.*) de bouche; de quoi manger
prudence prudence, *f.*
prudent prudent
public public; **— works** les travaux (*m.*) publics; **the —** le public
punish punir
pupil élève, *m. and f.*, disciple, *m. and f.*
purchase emplette, *f.*, achat, *m.*
purpose but, *m.*, intention, *f.;* **on —** exprès; **with the —** dans le but
purse porte-monnaie, *m.*
pursue poursuivre, continuer
put mettre, attacher; **— on** (*clothing*) mettre; **— out** (*fire, etc.*) éteindre; **— out** (*of doors*) mettre à la porte; **— to death** mettre à mort

Q

quality qualité, *f.*
quantity quantité, *f.*
quarrel dispute, *f.*, querelle, *f.*
quarter quart, *m.;* **in a — of an hour** dans un quart d'heure; **a — past one** une heure et quart; **a — to one** une heure moins le (un) quart
queen reine, *f.*
question question, *f.;* **it is a —** il s'agit (de)
quickly vite
quiet tranquille
quietly tranquillement
quite tout, tout à fait

R

rabbit lapin, *m.*
railroad, railway chemin (*m.*) de fer
rain *n.* pluie, *f.*
rain *v.* pleuvoir
rainy pluvieux; **in — weather** quand il pleut, quand le temps est à la pluie
raise lever, élever, relever; **— your eyes from** lever les yeux de dessus
rapidly rapidement, vite
rare rare
rarely rarement; il est rare que

rat rat, *m.*
rather assez; plutôt
reach arriver à (chez), atteindre
read lire
reading lecture, *f.*; **amuse yourself** — vous amuser à lire
ready prêt, servi
really réellement, vraiment
reappear reparaître
rear admiral chef (*m.*) d'escadre
reason raison, *f.*
reasonable raisonnable
recall se rappeler
receive recevoir; —**d** reçut, eut; —**d a good education** fit de bonnes études
recognize reconnaître
recompense *n.* récompense, *f.*
recompense *v.* récompenser
refuge refuge, *m.*; **take** — se réfugier
regret *n.* regret, *m.*
regret *v.* regretter
regular régulier, vrai
reign *n.* règne, *m.*
reign *v.* régner
rejoice at se réjouir de
rejoin rejoindre
relate raconter
relative parent, *m.*
relic reste, *m.*
religion religion, *f.*
remain rester
remains restes, *m. pl.*
remarkable remarquable
remember se souvenir de, se rappeler, retenir; — **me to them** rappelez-moi à leur bon souvenir
render rendre
repeat répéter
reply *n.* réponse, *f.*; **make a** — répondre
reply *v.* répondre
repose repos, *m.*
represent représenter
republic république, *f.*
reputation renommée, *f.*
resemble ressembler à
resolve résoudre, décider
resort: **have** — avoir recours, *m.*
respect *n.* respect, *m.*
respect *v.* respecter
respectable respectable, honorable, honnête
respectfully respectueusement
rest (**the**) les autres
rest *v.* (se) reposer, (se) rétablir
restaurant restaurant, *m.*
restore rendre; rétablir
retain garder
retire se retirer
return *n.* retour, *m.*; **on my** — à mon retour
return *v.* revenir, retourner (*go back*); — **home** rentrer (chez soi)
reveal révéler
revolution révolution, *f.*
revolver revolver, *m.* [revɔlvɛːr]
reward *n.* récompense, *f.*
reward *v.* récompenser
ribbon ruban, *m.*
rich riche
riches richesse, *f.*
rid: **be** — **of, get** — **of** se débarrasser de
ride: **go for a** —, **be out for a** — se promener à cheval
right *n.* droit, *m.*; **be (in the)** — avoir raison; **all** —! à la bonne heure!
right *adj.* droit; bon; **on the** — **hand, to the** — à (la) droite
ring sonner
ripe mûr; **get** — mûrir
ripen mûrir
rise (up) se lever
rival rival
river fleuve, *m.*, rivière, *f.*
road route, *f.*, chemin, *m.*; **on the** — en route

roar rugir, crier
robber voleur
robin rouge-gorge, *m.*
roll *n.* rouleau, *m.*
roll *v.* rouler
room pièce, *f.*, salle, *f.*, chambre, *f.*; **in his** — dans sa chambre, chez lui
rose rose, *f.*
round rond; **to go** — faire le tour de
row: **go for a** — se promener en bateau (canot)
rub frotter, se frotter: — **out** faire partir (sortir)
ruin *n.* ruine, *f.*
ruin *v.* perdre
rumor on dit, *m.*
run (**about**) courir; — **away** se sauver; — **over** parcourir; — **them out** chasser
rush se précipiter, s'élancer, accourir
Russia Russie, *f.*
Russian russe

S

sad triste
saddle *v.* seller
safety sûreté, *f.*
sail faire voile; **go for a** — se promener en bateau
sailor marin, *m.*, matelot, *m.*
salad salade, *f.*
sale vente, *f.*; **for** — à vendre
Samaritan Samaritain, *m.*
same même
sand sable, *m.*
satisfied satisfait, content
Saturday samedi, *m.*; **on** —**s** le samedi
save sauver, conserver; (*money*) épargner, économiser
Saxon saxon
say dire; **it is said** on dit; — **no** dire que non; — **yes** dire que oui (si); — **to each other**, — **to oneself** se dire; **let us** — **no more about it** n'en parlons plus; **how old would you** — **that man is?** quel âge donneriez-vous à cet homme? — **again** redire
scarce, **scarcely** à peine; — **any** très peu de
scare effrayer, faire peur à; **be** —**d** avoir peur
scene vue *f.*
scholar savant, *m.*; (*pupil*) écolier *m.*
school école, *f.*; **at** (**to**) — à l'école
schoolboy écolier, *m.*, collégien, *m.*
schoolfellow, **schoolmate** camarade (*m.*) d'école
science science, *f.*; **man of** — savant, *m.*
scientific man savant, *m.*
Scotland Écosse, *f.*
scoundrel coquin, *m.*, scélérat, *m.*, gredin, *m.*, mauvais drôle
scratch gratter
scream crier
sculptor sculpteur [skyltœ:r], *m.*
sea mer, *f.*
seaport port (*m.*) de mer
search: **make a** — chercher
season saison, *f.*
seat banc, *m.*, place, *f.*
seated assis
second second, deuxième
see voir, regarder; — **again** revoir
seek chercher, désirer
seem sembler
seize saisir
self même, se; **enjoy one**— s'amuser
selfish égoïste
sell *v. tr.* vendre; *v. intr.* se vendre
send envoyer; — **for** envoyer chercher, faire appeler, faire venir; — **upstairs** faire monter

sense sens, *m.* [sɑ̃:s]
sensible sensé, raisonnable
sentence sentence, *f.*; (*gram.*) phrase, *f.*, locution, *f.*
September septembre, *m.*
seriously sérieusement
servant valet, *m.*, domestique, *m.* *and f.*, servante, *f.*, bonne, *f.*
service service, *m.*
set mettre; — **a high value upon** attacher une grande valeur à; — **about** se mettre à
set out partir
seven sept
seventeen dix-sept
seventy soixante-dix
seventy-five soixante-quinze
several plusieurs
severe sévère, dur
sew coudre
sewing machine machine (*f.*) à coudre
shake secouer; — **hands** se donner la main, se serrer la main
shall devoir; — **I go?** dois-je aller? irai-je? voulez-vous que j'aille? **we** — **go** nous irons; **what** — **I sing?** que voulez-vous que je chante?
shame honte, *f.*; **it is a** — c'est honteux
she elle, ce
sheep mouton, *m.*
shell coquille, *f.*
shepherd berger, *m.*
ship vaisseau, *m.*, navire, *m.*
shirt chemise, *f.*
shoe soulier, *m.*, chaussure, *f.*
shop magasin, *m.*, boutique, *f.*; **to go shopping** aller faire des emplettes
shore bord, *m.*; **on the lake** — au bord du lac
short court, petit, bref; **in** — bref; **be** — **of** manquer de
shortly bientôt
should: **you** — **do it** vous devriez le faire; **if we** — **be there** si nous y étions; **I** — **be glad if he were here** je serais content s'il était ici; **I** — **like you to do it** je voudrais que vous le fassiez; **shouldn't I?** n'est-ce pas? **he** — **have gone** il aurait dû partir
shoulder épaule, *f.*
shout crier
show *v.* montrer, faire voir; — **itself** se montrer; — **in** faire entrer; — **upstairs** faire monter
shut fermer
side côté, *m.*; **on this** — de ce côté; **on the other** — de l'autre côté
sight spectacle, *m.*, vue, *f.*; **at** — **of that** à cette vue; **lose** — **of** perdre de vue; **by** — de vue
sign signer
silent muet, silencieux; **be** (*become*) — se taire
silk soie, *f.*
silver *n.* argent, *m.*
silver *adj.* d'argent, en argent
sin péché, *m.*
since *prep.* depuis
since *conj.* depuis que, puisque, que; **it is two months** — **I saw him** il y a deux mois que je ne l'ai vu
sing chanter
single seul
sir monsieur, *m.*
sire sire, *m.*
sister sœur, *f.*
sit s'asseoir, être assis; — **down to dinner** se mettre à table
sitting assis
situated situé
six six
sixteen seize
sixty soixante
size grandeur, *f.*

skate patiner; **go skating** (aller) patiner
skill habileté, *f.*, adresse, *f.*
skin peau, *f.*
sky ciel, *m.*
slander médire (de)
slave esclave, *m. and f.*
sleep *n.* sommeil, *m.*
sleep *v.* dormir; **go to** — s'endormir; **go to —!** dormez!
sleepy: be — avoir sommeil
slip glisser, s'échapper
slippery: be — faire (être) glissant
slow lent
slowly lentement
small petit
smell sentir
smile sourire
smoke *n.* fumée, *f.*
smoke *v.* fumer
snatch arracher
snow *n.* neige, *f.*
snow *v.* neiger
so si, ainsi, par conséquent, aussi, c'est pourquoi; — **many, — much** tant (de), tellement; **not — . . . as** ne . . . pas si . . . que; **I think** — je le crois; **I am** — je le suis; — **as to** afin de, de manière à; — **that** afin que, de sorte que; — **well** si bien, tant; **will you be** — **kind as to** veuillez, voulez-vous bien; **he did** — il l'a fait, c'est ce qu'il a fait; **say** — le dire
soap savon, *m.*
so-called soi-disant, prétendu
soldier soldat, *m.*, militaire, *m.*
solve résoudre
some *adj.* du, de la, des; quelque(s); **for** — **time** pendant quelque temps; — **day** un jour
some *pron.* en; quelqu'un, quelques-uns; — **of it** en; **I have** — j'en ai
somebody, someone quelqu'un, on
something quelque chose, *m.;* — **good** quelque chose de bon; — **strange and mysterious** je ne sais quoi de mystérieux
sometimes quelquefois
son fils, *m.*
song chanson, *f.*, chant, *m.*
soon bientôt; **as** — **as** aussitôt que; **too** — trop tôt
sooner plus tôt
sore *adj.:* **have a** — **hand** avoir mal à la main
sore *adv.* fort
sorrow douleur, *f.*, chagrin, *m.*
sorry fâché, désolé; **be** — **(for)** regretter; **I am** — **for her** elle me fait pitié
sort sorte, *f.*, espèce, *f.;* **what** — **of weather?** quel temps?
soul âme, *f.*
sound son, *m.*
soup potage, *m.*
south sud, *m.*, midi, *m.*
South America Amérique (*f.*) du Sud
southern méridional
sow semer
Spain Espagne, *f.*
speak parler; **French is spoken** on parle français; **so to** — pour ainsi dire
speech discours, *m.*
spend (*time*) passer, (*money*) dépenser
spite: in — **of** malgré
splendid magnifique
spoil *intr.* se gâter
spoon cuiller, *f.*
sport jeu, *m.;* **make** — **of** se moquer de
spot endroit, *m.*, coin, *m.*
spring printemps, *m.;* **in** — au printemps
square place, *f.*
stable (*for horses*) écurie, *f.*, (*for cattle*) étable, *f.*

stair(s) escalier, *m.*; **up—s** en haut; **down—s** en bas; **go down—s** descendre
stake pieu, *m.*; **be at —** y aller de
stamp (*postage*) timbre (poste), *m.*
stand être debout, se tenir, se trouver
start (*with fear, etc.*) tressaillir; (*set out*) partir; **— off** partir
starvation faim, *f.*
starve mourir de faim
statesman homme d'État
station (*railway*) gare, *f.*
statue statue, *f.*
stay rester, s'arrêter; **— in** rester à la maison, rester chez soi
steal voler, dérober
steam vapeur, *f.*
steamboat, steamer bateau (*m.*) à vapeur, vapeur, *m.*
steam engine machine (*f.*) à vapeur
step *n.* pas, *m.*
step *v.* marcher
sterling sterling (*invar.*)
St. Helena Sainte-Hélène, *f.*
stick bâton, *m.*
stick out sortir
still encore, toujours
stir remuer, bouger
stocking bas, *m.*
stone pierre, *f.*
stoop se baisser
stop s'arrêter, cesser de
store magasin, *m.*, boutique, *f.*
stork cigogne, *f.*
storm (*thunder*) orage, *m.*, (*wind*) tempête, *f.*
story histoire, *f.*, conte, *m.*
stove poêle [pwɑːl], *m.*, fourneau, *m.*
straight droit
strange étrange
stratagem stratagème, *m.*
street rue, *f.*; **from one — to another** de rue en rue
street car(s) tramway, *m.*
strength force, *f.*
strike frapper
strip dépouiller
stroke coup, *m.*
strong fort
struggle *n.* lutte, *f.*
struggle *v.* lutter
study *n.* étude, *f.*
study *v.* étudier, apprendre
stupid sot, bête
style style, *m.*, manière, *f.*; **in (the) French —** à la française
subdue subjuguer
subject sujet, *m.*
submit se soumettre
succeed succéder à; réussir
success succès, *m.*
such tel; **— a** un tel; **— a foolish man** un homme si bête
suffer souffrir, subir
suffice suffire
sugar sucre, *m.*
suit *v.* convenir
sum somme, *f.*
summer été, *m.*; **in —** en été
sun soleil, *m.*; **the — is shining** il fait du soleil
Sunday dimanche, *m.*
sunrise lever (*m.*) du soleil
sunset coucher (*m.*) du soleil
superfluous superflu, de trop
support soutenir
sure sûr
surgeon chirurgien, *m.*, médecin, *m.*
surprise surprendre
surprised surpris, étonné
suspect soupçonner, se douter (de)
swear jurer
Swedish suédois
sweet doux; **smell —** sentir bon
swim nager
Swiss suisse
Switzerland Suisse, *f.*

T

table table, *f.*
tail queue, *f.*
tailor tailleur, *m.*
take prendre, porter, emporter, mener, conduire; — **after** tenir de; — **a walk** (aller) se promener, faire une promenade; — **up the collection** faire la quête; — **place** avoir lieu; — **advantage of** abuser de; — **care of** avoir soin de; — **interest in** s'intéresser à, s'occuper de; — **away** ôter, emporter; — **care not to** prendre garde de; — **a journey** faire un voyage; — **off** ôter, quitter; — **up** monter; — **away from** prendre à
taking prise, *f.*
talk (**about**) parler (de)
tall grand, haut
Tasso Tasse (le)
taxicab taxi(mètre), *m.*
tea thé, *m.*
teach enseigner, apprendre
teacher professeur, *m. and f.*, maître, *m.*, maîtresse, *f.*
teapot théière, *f.*
tear *n.* larme, *f.;* **with —s in her eyes** les larmes aux yeux
tear *v.* déchirer
Te Deum Te Deum, *m.*
tell raconter, dire, annoncer; (*understand*) comprendre, savoir
tempt tenter
ten dix
terrible terrible
terrify épouvanter
text texte, *m.*
than que, de (*before numerals*)
thank remercier; **no, I — you** je vous remercie
thanks remercîments, *m.;* **no, —** merci
that *dem. adj.* ce, cet, cette; ce . . . -là
that *dem. pron.* ce, cela, celui(-là); **all —** tout cela; **— is** voilà, voilà qui, c'est, celui-là est; **is — the house?** est-ce là la maison?
that *rel. pron.* qui, que, lequel; **all —** tout ce qui (que)
that *conj.* que
the le, la, les; **— richer one is** plus on est riche; **— less one has of them** moins on en a
theater théâtre, *m.*
their *adj.* leur, leurs
theirs *pron.* le leur
them les, leur, eux, elles; **of —** d'eux, en; **to —** à eux, leur, y
themselves se, eux, eux-mêmes
then alors, ensuite, puis
there là, là-bas, y; **— is (are)** voilà, il y a; **— it is** le (la) voilà; **— will be rain** il pleuvra; **— is a knock on** frappe; **— happens** il arrive; **if — ever was** s'il en fut (jamais); **— he comes!** le voilà qui vient!
thereupon là-dessus
these *adj.* ces; ces . . . -ci
these *pron.* ceux, ceux-ci; **— are** ce sont; **— books of yours** vos livres que voici
they ils, elles, on, ce; **there — are** les voilà; **it is —** ce sont eux
thief voleur, *m.*, brigand, *m*
thine le tien
thing chose, *f.*, affaire, *f.*, objet, *m.*, article, *m.;* **this good —** cela de bon
think penser, croire, songer, réfléchir (à); **what are you —ing of (about)?** à quoi pensez-vous? **one would —** on croirait; **I told him what I — of him** je lui ai dit son fait; **what do you —**

(*what is your opinion*) **of it?** qu'en pensez-vous?
third troisième, trois, tiers
thirsty: be — avoir soif, *f.*; **be very** — avoir bien soif, mourir de soif
thirteen treize
thirty trente
this *adj.* ce, ceţ, cette; ce . . . -ci
this *pron.* ce, ceci, celui(-ci); — **one** celui-ci; — **book of mine** mon livre que voici
those *adj.* ces, ces . . . -là
those *pron.* ceux(-là); **all** — tous ceux; — **who** ceux qui; — **are mine** voilà les miens
thou tu, toi
though bien que, quoique
thought pensée, *f.*
thoughtless étourdi
thousand mille, mil
threaten menacer
three trois
throne trône, *m.*
through par, à travers, au travers de
throw jeter
Thursday jeudi, *m.*
thus ainsi
thy ton, ta, tes
ticket billet, *m.*
till *prep.* jusqu'à, avant
till *conj.* jusqu'à ce que, que
time temps, *m.*, fois, *f.*, époque, *f.*, heure, *f.*, moment, *m.*; **some** — quelque temps; **in the** — **of** (*a king*) sous; **at that** — dans ce temps-là, à cette époque, à ce moment; **a long** — longtemps; **this long** — depuis si longtemps; **next** — la prochaine fois; **what** — **is it?** quelle heure est-il? **many a** — bien des fois; **have** — **to** avoir le temps de; **I have not** — je n'ai pas le temps; **be** — **to** être temps de (que); **most of the** — la plupart du temps; **at a** — **when** à une époque où; **every** — **that** toutes les fois que, chaque fois que; **he had given ten** —**s as much as the thing was worth** il avait donné (payé) dix fois plus que l'objet ne valait; **cost three** —**s as much** coûter trois fois plus cher; **have a good** — s'amuser bien
tire fatiguer, ennuyer; **be** (**get**) —**d** (**of being**) s'ennuyer
tired fatigué, ennuyé
tiresome ennuyeux
to à, chez, de, pour, en, jusqu'à, envers; **at five minutes** — **three** à trois heures moins cinq
to-day aujourd'hui
toe orteil, *m.*, doigt, *m.*; **step on one's** —**s** vous marcher sur le pied
together ensemble
to-morrow demain; **day after** — après-demain
too aussi; trop; — **much,** — **many** trop
tooth dent, *f.*
toothache mal (*m.*) aux dents
toothpick cure-dent, *m.*
top haut, *m.*
touch toucher
tour tour, *m.*
towards vers, envers
towel serviette, *f.*
tower tour, *f.*
town ville, *f.*; **in** —, **down** — en ville; **to** — à la ville
toy jouet, *m.*
trace tracer
trade changer
train train, *m.*
translate traduire
travel *n.* voyage, *m.*
travel *v.* voyager; — **over** par-

courir; —**ing companion** compagnon (*m.*) de voyage
traveler voyageur, *m.*
tread under foot fouler aux pieds
treasure trésor, *m.*
treat traiter
treatment traitement, *m.*
treaty traité, *m.*
tree arbre, *m.*
tremble trembler
trifling insignifiant
trip excursion, *f.*, promenade, *f.*
troops troupes, *f. pl.*
trouble peine, *f.*
troupe troupe, *f.*
true vrai, fidèle, réel, véritable
trunk malle, *f.*
trust *n.* confiance, *f.*
trust *v.* avoir confiance en, se fier à
truth vérité, *f.*
try tâcher, essayer; — **and save** tâcher de conserver
try on essayer
Tuesday mardi, *m.*
turn *n.* tour, *m.*; **in** — tour à tour
turn *v.* tourner; — **round** se retourner; — **out of** chasser de; — **out of doors** mettre à la porte
twelve douze; — (**o'clock**) midi, *m.*, minuit, *m.*
twenty vingt
twenty-five vingt-cinq
twenty-four vingt-quatre
twenty-nine vingt-neuf
twice deux fois
two deux; — **weeks** quinze jours

U

uncle oncle, *m.*
under sous, au-dessous de
undergo subir
understand comprendre; **I can** — **nothing of it** je n'y comprends rien
undertake entreprendre
unfortunate malheureux
unhappy malheureux
United Kingdom Royaume-Uni, *m.*
United States États-Unis, *m.*; **in the** — aux États-Unis
unknown inconnu
unless à moins que . . . ne
until jusqu'à ce que, que
up en haut; **to be** — être levé; **get** — se lever; **come** — monter; — **to** jusqu'à
upholsterer tapissier, *m.*
upon sur
upright droit
upstairs en haut
us nous (autres)
use *n.* usage, *m.*, emploi, *m.*; **make** — **of** se servir de, employer; **be of some** — être de quelque utilité; **have** — **for** avoir besoin de; **be no** — **in** avoir beau
use *v.* se servir de, employer
used accoutumé; **be** — **to** avoir coutume de; — **to** *is often expressed by the imperfect indicative*
useful utile
useless inutile; **be** — ne valoir rien; **it is** — **for you to say so** vous avez beau dire
usual usuel, accoutumé, ordinaire
utter proférer, articuler

V

vain vain; **in** — en vain; **be in** — avoir beau
valuable précieux
value valeur, *f.*; **be of** — valoir
vast vaste
vegetable légume, *m.*

verb verbe, *m.*
verbal verbal
verse vers, *m.*, (*Bible*) verset, *m.*
very très, bien, fort, beaucoup, dès; — **much** beaucoup, bien, très; **that** — **evening** le soir même
vice vice, *m.*
Victoria Victoria
victory victoire, *f.*
view vue, *f.*
vigor vigueur, *f.*
village village, *m.*
violent violent
violin violon, *m.*
virtue vertu, *f.*
virtuous vertueux
visible visible
visit visiter, faire (une) visite à, rendre visite à, aller voir
voice voix, *f.*
volley volée, *f.*
volume volume, *m.*, tome, *m.*

W

wag remuer
wages gages, *m. pl.*
wait, — **for** attendre
wake, waken éveiller, réveiller, se réveiller
Wales le pays de Galles
walk *n.* promenade, *f.;* **go for a** —, **take a** — (aller) se promener; faire une promenade (à pied)
walk *v.* marcher, se promener; — **in** entrer
walking marche, *f.*, marcher, *m.;* **be good** — faire beau (bon) marcher
wall mur, *m.*, muraille, *f.*
walnut noix, *f.;* — **tree** noyer, *m.*
wander s'égarer, s'écarter
want avoir besoin, vouloir, désirer, demander, manquer (de); **you are** —**ed** on vous demande
warm *adj.* chaud, chaleureux; **be** — (*of living beings*) avoir chaud; **be (get)** — (*of weather*) faire chaud
warm *v.* chauffer; — **your hands** vous chauffer les mains
was *see* **be; he** — **to be there** il devait y être
watch *n.* montre, *f.*
watch *v.* suivre des yeux, veiller
water *n.* eau, *f.*
water *v.* abreuver; **make his mouth** — lui faire venir l'eau à la bouche
way route, *f.*, chemin, *m.;* manière, *f.*, façon, *f.*, moyen, *m.;* **on the** — en route, chemin faisant; **by the** — à propos; **a long** — **off** bien loin; **lose one's** — s'égarer; **in that** — de cette manière-là; **in such a** — de telle sorte; **have one's** — faire à sa tête; **which** —, **the** — par où
we nous, on
weak faible
weakness faiblesse, *f.*
wear porter; mettre
weather temps, *m.;* **what kind of** — **is it?** quel temps fait-il? **it is fine** — il fait beau (temps); **the** — **is warm** il fait chaud
Wednesday mercredi, *m.*
week semaine, *f.*, huit jours, *m. pl.;* **a** — **from to-day** d'aujourd'hui en huit; **two** —**s from to-day** d'aujourd'hui en quinze; **from** — **to** — de semaine en semaine
weep pleurer
weigh peser
welcome accueillir; **be** — être le bienvenu
well *n.* puits, *m.*
well *adv.* bien, eh bien, très; **so** — si bien; **very** — très bien,

eh bien; **be — off** avoir de quoi vivre, être à son aise; **be —** se porter bien, aller bien; **do —** faire le bien; **as — as** aussi bien que

well-known bien connu

went *see* **go**

were *past tense of* **be**; **if you — to go there** si vous y alliez; **if he — to say** s'il disait; **— it only** ne fût-ce que; **— you not?** n'est-ce pas?

west ouest, *m.*

what *adj.* quel; **— o'clock** (*time*) **is it?** quelle heure est-il?

what *pron.* que, quoi, ce qui, ce que, ce à quoi, ce dont, qu'est-ce que? qu'est-ce qui? qu'est-ce que c'est que? ce que c'est que; **by — he says** à ce qu'il dit; **not to know — to do** ne savoir que faire; **— is that to him?** qu'est-ce que cela lui fait? **— is his name?** comment s'appelle-t-il?

whatever tout ce qui (que), quoi que, quel que, qui que, quelconque

wheat blé, *m.*; **— field** champ (*m.*) de blé

when quand, lorsque, que, à quelle heure; **hardly . . . —** à peine . . . que; **— you will** quand vous voudrez

whenever quand, lorsque, toutes les fois que

where où; **from —** d'où

whereas tandis que; vu que

whether si, que, soit que; **— . . . or** (soit) que . . . ou (que)

which *adj.* quel; **— ones?** lesquels (lesquelles)?

which *pron.* qui, que, lequel; **of —** dont, duquel; **at —** où, auquel; **in —** où, dans lequel; **from —** dont, duquel

while *n.*: **a long —** longtemps

while *prep.* en

while, whilst *conj.* pendant que, tandis que, tant que

whistle *n.* sifflet, *m.*

whistle *v.* siffler

white blanc

who qui, quel, lequel

whoever qui que, qui que ce soit, quiconque

whole tout; **the — evening** toute la soirée; **the — year** toute l'année; **the — world** le monde entier

whom qui, que, lequel; **of —** dont, de qui, duquel

whose à qui, de qui, dont, duquel; **at — house** chez qui

why pourquoi; **— yes** mais oui

wicked méchant

wide large; **— open** grand(e) ouvert(e)

wife femme, *f.*, épouse, *f.*

will vouloir; **he — come** il viendra; **— you come?** voulez-vous venir? **— you kindly?** voulez-vous bien?

William Guillaume

willing: be — vouloir

willingly volontiers

win remporter, gagner

wind *n.* vent, *m.*

wind *v.* remonter

window fenêtre, *f.*; **out of the —** par la fenêtre

windy: be — faire du vent

wine vin, *m.*

wing aile, *f.*

winter hiver, *m.*

wipe essuyer

wisdom sagesse, *f.*

wise sage

wish désirer, vouloir; **as you —** comme vous voudrez; **whenever you —** quand vous voudrez; **if you —** si vous voulez;

I — you were here je voudrais que vous fussiez ici
wit esprit, *m.*
with avec, chez, à, de, envers, par; **go (be) —** accompagner; **the man — the big nose** l'homme au gros nez
withdraw se retirer
within dans, au bout de
without *prep.* sans; **— . . . and (or)** sans . . . ni; **do —** se passer de
without *conj.* sans que (*with subj.*)
woman femme, *f.*
wonder s'étonner, se demander
wont: be — avoir coutume de
wood(s) bois, *m.*
woodchopper, woodman bûcheron, *m.*
word mot, *m.*, parole, *f.*; **send —** faire savoir
work *n.* travail, *m.*, ouvrage, *m.*, œuvre, *m. and f.*
work *v.* travailler; **that —s** ça marche, ça y est
world monde, *m.*, globe, *m.*
worse plus mauvais, pire, pis, plus malade; **which is —** qui pis est
worth valeur, *f.*; **be —** valoir; **feel his own —** sentir ce qu'il vaut; **— the trouble (while)** valoir la peine
worthy digne, brave
would *past tense of* **will; if you were here you — do it** si vous étiez ici vous le feriez; **he — not do it** il ne voulait pas le faire; **— you be kind enough to** veuillez, voulez-vous bien, voudriez-vous bien; **I — as soon . . . as** j'aimerais autant . . . que de; **— to God!** plût à Dieu! **would** *is also often expressed by the impf. indic.*
would-be soi-disant, prétendu
wound *n.* blessure, *f.*, plaie, *f.*
wound *v.* blesser
wrecked: be — faire naufrage
wretch misérable, *m.*
wretched misérable
write écrire; **— to each other** s'écrire
wrong mal, *m.*; **be (in the) —** avoir tort, être dans l'erreur; **do —** faire le mal; **take the — road** se tromper de chemin; *adj.* mauvais

Y

yard cour, *f.*, jardin, *m.*, (*measure*) mètre, *m.*
year année, *f.*, an, *m.*; **last —** l'année dernière, l'année passée; **in the — 1860** l'an 1860; **20 francs a —** 20 francs par an
yell crier
yes oui, si; **— you have** si, si
yesterday hier
yet encore, toujours, cependant; déjà; **not —** pas encore
yield céder
yonder là-bas; **over —** là-bas
you vous, tu, te, toi; on
young jeune, petit
your votre, vos, ton, ta, tes
yours le vôtre, le tien; à vous, à toi
yourself vous, te, toi, vous-même, toi-même
youth jeunesse, *f.*

INDEX TO PART I

A

à, denoting indirect object, § 24; **à** + **le** = **au**, § 46, § 123, 2; with infinitive, § 99, 3, 4; with names of cities and countries, § 119.

accent, acute, § 5, 1; circumflex, § 5, 3; grave, § 5, 2.

acheter, orthographic peculiarities, p. 89; future, § 93; conjugation, § 158, 2.

adjectival phrases with **de**, § 60.

adjectives, plural of, § 31, § 45; feminine of, §§ 51–52; position, 53; comparison, §§ 68–70; followed by **de** or **à** + infinitive, § 99, 2, 3, 4; *see also* demonstrative, interrogative, possessive.

adverbs, comparison, § 71; pronominal, §§ 80–81.

afin que, with subjunctive, § 106, 4.

age, idioms, § 144, 5.

agreement, grammatical, § 25; of past participle with **avoir**, § 74, with **être**, § 76, with reflexive object, § 83; of present participle, § 101; of possessive pronouns, § 122; of relative pronouns, § 131.

aller, conjugation, §§ 72–73, § 92, § 117, § 160; meaning of, p. 82, B (2).

alphabet, names of letters of, § 4.

any = **en**, § 36.

apostrophe, § 5, 6, § 19, 1; p. 19 (6).

appeler, orthographic peculiarities, p. 89; conjugation, § 158, 2.

après, before infinitive, p. 118, *b*.

articles, *see* definite, indefinite.

au = **à** + **le**; **aux** = **à** + **les**, § 46.

aucun, § 137, 4; **un autre** distinguished from **encore un**, § 137, 2.

auxiliary verbs, § 154.

avant de + infinitive, p. 170 (3).

avant que + subjunctive, § 106, 4.

avoir, conjugation, § 33, § 37, § 86, § 91, § 100, § 111, § 115, § 147, § 151; tables, § 154; forming compound tenses, §§ 63–64; **avoir besoin**, etc., § 61.

B

bien que, with subjunctive, § 106, 4.

C

capital letters, § 21.

case, § 24.

ce, cet, cette, ces, § 44.

ceci, § 127.

cedilla, § 5, 4.

ce dont, § 132, 7.

cela, § 127.

celui, § 128; **celui-ci, celui-là**, § 129; **celui qui**, § 132, 8.

cent, § 138, *note*, § 139, § 140; Appendix.

ce que, ce qui, § 132, 7.

c'est, ce sont, § 44, 2, *a*; with logical subject, §§ 96–97; distinguished from **il est**, § 97, *note*.

changer de, p. 180.

cinq, § 138, *note*.

commencer, orthographic peculiarities, § 78; p. 89; imperfect, § 89; conjugation, § 156.

comparison, of adjectives, §§ 68–70; of adverbs, § 71.

compound tenses, with **avoir**, § 63; with **être**, § 76; of reflexive verbs, § 82; tables, § 155.

conditional, mood and sentence, §§ 114–117.

conjugations, regular, § 41; tables, §§ 153–155; irregular, §§ 160–225.

connaître, conjugation, § 133, § 188.

consonants, §§ 16–17; doubled consonants, §17, 19.

content, before infinitive, p. 71.

contractions, **de**, § 35; **à**, § 46, § 123, 2.

countries, etc., with article, §§ 118–119.

D

dates, § 144; idioms, § 144, 3; Appendix.

days, of month, § 144, 2; of week, p. 110, B; time of day, § 145.

de, contraction, § 35; denoting possession, § 24; after words of quantity (**beaucoup**, etc.), § 59, 4, (**million**, etc.), § 139; denoting partitive, § 36,

§ 59; Appendix; in adjectival phrases, § 60; after superlative, § 69; with infinitive, § 99, 2, 4; before countries, § 118, 2.
definite article, § 22; plural of, § 31; with general nouns, § 57; with names of countries, etc., §§ 118–119; with superlative, § 69; with possessive force, § 84.
demi, as noun and adjective, § 145, 4; Appendix.
demonstrative adjective, § 44.
demonstrative pronoun, § 44, 2, *a*, § 97, §§ 125–129.
depuis (quand), with idiomatic present, § 67.
des = **de** + **les**, § 35.
devoir, meanings of, pp. 186–187 (3); conjugation, § 214.
diæresis, § 5, 5.
dire, conjugation, § 124, § 193.
donner, conjugation, § 42, § 56, § 85, § 90, § 100, § 104, § 110, § 111, § 114, § 146, § 150; tables, § 153, § 155.
dont, § 132, 3.
du = **de** + **le**, § 35, § 123, 2.
dû, p.p. of **devoir**, pp. 186–187.

E

elision, § 19.
elle, = *it*, § 40.
en, pronoun, § 36, 3; position of, § 36, 4, § 81, § 113; does not agree with past participle, § 74.
en, preposition, §§ 118–119; with present participle, §101; before countries, § 118, 2.
est-ce que? § 43, § 49.
être, conjugation, § 39, § 86, § 91, § 100, § 111, § 115, § 146, § 151; forming compound tenses, § 76; with reflexive verbs, § 82; tables, § 154; **être** + **à**, denoting ownership, § 123; *see also* **il est**.
eu, pronunciation in **avoir**, § 62, § 64.

F

faire, conjugation, § 50, § 88, § 91, § 109, § 117, § 149; in expressions of natural phenomena, § 98; table, 195; *see also* **il fait**.
falloir, *see* **il faut**.
finir, conjugation, § 56, § 85, § 90, § 100, § 104, § 110, § 114, § 146, § 150; tables, § 153, § 155.
first, § 144, 2.
fois, distinguished from **temps**, p. 83.
fractions, *see* numerals.
future, *see* indicative.

G

gender, § 23.
general noun, § 57.
gerund, *see* present participle with **en**.
get, translations of, p. 169, C.

H

half, § 143, § 145, 4.
huit, § 138, *note*.
hyphen, § 5, 7; *see also* interrogation, p. 29; § 38; Appendix.

I

idiomatic present indicative, § 67.
idioms, p. 180, (2); age, § 144, 5; dates, § 144, 3.
il = *it*, § 40; with impersonal verbs, § 98, § 103.
il est, distinguished from **c'est**, § 97, *note;* with expressions of time, § 98, *d*, § 145.
il fait, describing natural phenomena, § 145, 5, *note*.
il faut, impersonal, § 98, *b;* obligation, § 103, § 106, 3.
il y a, use of, § 47, + object noun, § 98, *c*.
imperative mood, § 73, §§ 110–113; tables, § 154.
imperfect, *see* indicative, subjunctive.
impersonal verbs, § 98, § 103; with subjunctive, § 106 and pp. 121–122.
indefinite article, § 26.
indefinite pronoun, § 48, §§ 136–137.
indicative mood, §§ 153–155; present, § 33, § 37, § 39, § 42, § 50, § 56, § 72; idiomatic present, § 67; imperfect, §§ 85–88; past indefinite, § 64, § 66, § 76; past definite, §§ 146–149; pluperfect, § 63, § 86; future, § 90–94; of reflexive verbs, § 82; *see also* **aller, voir, savoir**, etc.
infinitive mood, § 41, § 99; without preposition, § 99, 1; with **de**, § 99, 2; with **à**, § 99, 3; with **par**, p. 117, B (3); after **entendre**, p. 71; infinitive *or* subjunctive, pp. 121–122; past infinitive after **après**, p. 118.
interrogation, § 29, § 38; Appendix; § 39, § 43, § 49.

interrogative adjective, § 54.
interrogative pronoun, §§ 134–135.
irregular conjugation, §§ 160–225.

L

l'on, p. 87, *footnote*, p. 135, *footnote*.
le, la, les, as article, § 22; as pronoun, § 30.
lequel, relative, § 132, 5; interrogative, § 135, 6.
liaison, § 18.
logical subject, §§ 96–97.

M

manger, orthographic peculiarities, § 78; p. 89; imperfect, § 89; conjugation, § 156, 2.
même, § 137, 7.
mener, orthographic peculiarities, § 78; p. 89; conjugation, § 158.
mil, mille, in dates, § 144, and Appendix.
mille, milliard, million, § 139.
moins, comparative, § 68.
months, of the year, § 144, 4.
mood, *see* indicative, infinitive, participle, imperative, subjunctive, conditional.
multiplicatives, *see* numerals.

N

names, of countries, etc., §§ 118–119; of days, p. 110, B; of months, § 144, 4.
nasalization, § 12, 2, 4, § 13, 3, § 14, 2, § 25, 4.
natural phenomena, § 98, *a*, § 145, 5, *note*.
necessity, *see* obligation.
negation, § 28, § 36, 2, § 59, 1, § 112, § 136, 4, § 137, 4.
noun, plural of, § 31, § 45; general, § 57; partitive, § 36, § 59.
nul, § 137, 4.
numerals, cardinal, §§ 138–140, and Appendix; in dates, days and titles, § 144, 1, 2, and Appendix; ordinal, § 142; multiplicatives, § 141; fractions, § 143.

O

on, § 48, § 136; *see also* l'on.
once, § 141.
onze, § 138, *note*.
orthographic, signs, § 5; peculiarities (**commencer, manger, mener**), § 78, § 89, §§ 156–158.
où, § 132, 4.
ownership, article with parts of body, clothing, etc., § 84; **être + à**, § 123; *whose* = **à qui**, § 135, 2.

P

participle, present, §§ 100–101; gerund, § 101; past, § 62, § 63, § 74, § 76, §§ 82–83, § 155; agreement, § 74.
partir, meaning of, p. 83; conjugation, § 166.
partitive, noun and pronoun, § 36, § 59.
pas with **ne**, § 28; **pas un**, § 137, 4.
past definite, *see* indicative.
past descriptive, *see* imperfect, § 87.
past indefinite, *see* indicative.
payer, with two objects, p. 88 (8).
penser à, penser de, p. 165, *note*.
personal pronoun, object, § 30, § 77, § 79; position, § 81, § 113; disjunctive, §§ 95–96.
personne, § 136, 4.
peu, un peu, p. 75.
phonetic, symbols, § 3; transcription, pp. 12–13.
piece, distinguished from **chambre, salle**, p. 165 (9).
plural, of nouns and adjectives, § 31, § 45.
plus, comparative, § 68.
position, *see* word order.
possessive adjective, § 27, § 32.
possessive pronoun, §§121–123.
pour que, with subjunctive, § 106, 4.
pouvoir, conjugation, § 102, § 221.
prendre, special meaning, p. 79.
pronoun, in address, § 34; plural of, § 31; position of pronoun objects, § 77, § 81, § 113; *see also* demonstrative, indefinite, interrogative, personal, relative, reflexive pronouns.
pronunciation, §§ 1–19; *see also* Exercises in Pronunciation, Lessons I–XIX; of **commencer, manger, mener**, § 78; of **acheter, appeler**, p. 89; of numerals, § 138.
punctuation, § 20.

Q

quarter, § 143.
quatre-vingt(s), § 138, *note*, § 140, and Appendix.
que, conjunction, after comparatives, § 68; in

subordinate clauses, § 106.
que, pronoun, relative, § 75, § 106, 5, § 132; interrogative, § 134, § 135, 3.
quel, § 54.
quelque, p. 75.
quelque chose, § 136, 3.
quelqu'un, § 136, 2.
qu'est-ce que? § 49.
qu'est-ce qui? § 135, 4.
qui, § 75, § 132; **à qui**, § 135, 2; **de qui**, § 135, 2.
quitter, meaning of, p. 83.
quoi, relative, § 132, 6; interrogative, § 135, 5.
quoique, with subjunctive, § 106, 4.

R

reflexive pronouns, §§ 82–83.
reflexive verbs, conjugation, §§ 82–84.
regular conjugation, §§ 41–42, § 153.
relative pronouns, § 75, §§ 130–132.
ressembler à, p. 180.
result clause, § 116, 2, 3.
rien, § 136, 4.

S

savoir, conjugation, § 120, § 222.
seasons, § 144, 4.
si, in conditional sentences, § 116; elision of **i**, § 19.
some = **en**, § 36.
sounds, § 2.
stress, §7, §25, 7, §30, (1).
subjunctive mood, §§ 153–155; present, §§ 104–109; imperfect, §§ 150–152; tense sequence, § 107, § 152; subjunctive *or* infinitive, pp. 121–122.
such = **si** or **tellement**, § 137, 5.
superlative, of adjectives, § 69.
syllabication, § 6, § 25, (5).
symbols, table of, § 3.

T

tel, un tel, § 137, 5.
temperature, *see* natural phenomena.
temps, distinguished from **fois**, p. 83.
tense sequence, § 107, § 152.
tenses, formation, § 159; *see also* compound.
time, of day, § 145; **il est** with expressions of time, § 98, *d*, § 145.
titles, § 144.
tolérances, *see* Appendix.
tout, § 58, § 137, 6.

V

vendre, conjugation, § 56, § 85, § 90, § 100, § 104, § 110, § 114, § 146, § 150.
verbs, in **-cer**, **-ger**, § 78, § 89, § 156; in **-yer**, § 157; with stem-vowel **e** or **é**, § 78, § 158; principal parts, § 159; reflexive, § 82; impersonal, § 98, § 103; regular conjugations, §§ 153–155; irregular verbs, §§ 160–225; reference list of irregular verbs, § 226; *see also* conjugations, moods, tenses.
vingt, § 138, *note;* § 140; Appendix.
voici, § 30, *note.*
voilà, § 30, *note;* distinguished from **il y a**, § 47, 2.
voir, conjugation, § 124, § 224.
vouloir, meanings of, p. 187; conjugation, § 108, § 225.
vowels, §§ 9–15; vowel quantity, § 8.

W

weather, *see* natural phenomena.
what (absolute) = **ce qui**, § 132, 7.
what? = **que?** § 38, 3.
whose = **à qui**, § 135, 2.
willing and desiring, governing subjunctive, § 106, 1.
word order, auxiliary verb, § 65; after **entendre**, p. 71 (3); after **voir**, p. 81, *footnote;* pronoun objects, § 77; pronoun objects and pronominal adverbs, § 36, 4, § 81, § 113; **déjà**, **encore**, p. 99 *footnote;* position of adjectives, § 53.

Y

y, use of, § 55, § 80; p. 93, *footnote;* position, § 81, § 113.

INDEX TO PART II

A

à (prep.), of indir. obj., § 362, 2, § 451, 1; verb + **à** = Eng. tran., § 296, 2; idiomatic with verbs, § 296, 4; with names of countries, § 333, 3; denoting possession after **être,** § 377, 1; in prepositional phrases, § 432; repetition, § 434; = *concerning, of,* § 436, 2; of 'place,' 'time,' § 439, 1, § 444, 2; of ' motion towards,' § 451, 2; = *with* (characteristic), § 454, 4.

abbreviations, § 461.

about, § 436.

adjective, *see also* possessive, demonstr., interrog., indef., numeral; fem., §§ 336–337; pl., §§ 338–339; agreement, §§ 340–344; as adv., § 410, § 343, 1; nouns as adjs., § 344; advs. as adjs., § 358, *b;* comparison, §§ 345–349; position, §§ 350–353; with **à,** § 355; with **de,** § 356; with **en,** § 357; with **envers,** § 358.

adverb, list, § 408; in **-ment** from adjs., § 409; adjs. as advs., § 410; adverbial locutions, § 411; comparison, § 412; position, § 413; negatives, §§ 414–419; distinctions in use, § 420; numeral advs., § 426.

afin que, + subj., § 455, § 271, 2.

after, § 437.

agir, impers., § 252, 1, obs.

aïeul, pl., § 309.

ail, pl., § 309.

aimer, + **à,** without prep., 281, 1.

aller, + infin., § 230, 8; impers., § 252, 1, obs.; **s'en aller,** § 247; **allez, allons,** special force, § 267, *b.*

âme qui vive, âme vivante, with **ne,** § 415, 2, *c.*

à moins que, with **ne,** § 419, 1.

among, § 438.

amour, gender, § 304, 3, *b.*

and, untranslated, § 456, 2; = **ni,** 457, 2.

apposition, use of art., § 330, 4.

approuvé, § 289, *a.*

après, § 437.

après, + infin., § 282, 4.

après-midi, gender, § 304, 3, *a.*

arriver, impers., § 252, 1.

article, §§ 315–335, *see also* def. art. and indef. art.; agreement and repetition, § 318; use with nouns, §§ 319–335; omission, § 330; in apposition, § 330, 4; unclassified examples, § 331; with proper names, §§ 332–335.

at, § 439.

attendant: en — que, + subj., § 455, § 271, 1.

attendu, § 289, *a.*

au = à + le, § 317.

aucun(s), § 403, 3; use, § 406, 1; with **ne,** § 415.

aucunement, with **ne,** § 415.

au-dessous de, § 453, 2.

au-dessus de, § 448, 1.

aussi, in comparison (adj.), § 345; (adv.), § 412.

autant, § 420, 2.

automobile, § 304, 3, *c.*

autour de, § 436, 1.

autre, § 403, 3; use, § 406, 2; with **ne,** 419, 3, n.

autrement, with **ne,** § 419, 3, n.

autrui, § 403, 2; use, § 405, 1.

aux = à + les, § 317.

auxiliary verbs, use, §§ 227–229; modal auxs., § 230, 5, n.

avant, § 440, 2.

avant que, with **ne,** § 419, 1, *b;* **avant que,** + subj., § 455, § 271, 1.

avec, § 454, 1, 3.

avoir, conjugn., § 154; used to form comp. tenses, § 227, § 229; **y avoir,** § 250; **il y a** and **voilà,** § 250, 3; **avoir besoin,** etc. (without art.), § 330, 1; **avoir l'air,** agreement of adj. with, § 343, 4, *c,* denoting dimension, § 428, obs. 3; denoting age, § 430.

B

beaucoup, + de, agreement of verb, § 232, 2, *a*, *b;* with partitive, § 325, 1, *d;* replaced by **plusieurs,** § 406, 4; comparison, § 412, 2.
before, § 440.
bel, § 337, 1, (3).
bestiaux, § 308, 4, n.
bêtail, pl., § 308, 4, n.
bien, with partitive, § 325, 1, *b;* irreg. comparison, § 412, 2.
bien que, + subj., § 455, § 271, 4.
bon, comparison, § 346; + **à** or **pour,** § 355, *a*, § 358, *a*.
bouger, with **ne** alone, § 418, 4.
bout: au — de, § 437, 2.
brin, with **ne,** § 415, 2, *b*.
by, § 441; of 'dimension,' § 428, *a*.

C

ç', § 378, 2, obs.
ça, for **cela,** § 388, *e*, *f;* distinguished from **çà** and **çà !,** § 388, *f*. n.
çà, çà !, distinguished from **ça,** § 388, *f*. n.
cardinals, § 421, § 427; in dates, etc., § 427; for ordinals, § 427.
cas: au — où, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 3, *c*. n.; **au — que,** + subj., § 455, § 271, 3; **dans le — où,** + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 3, *c*, n.; **en — que,** + subj., § 455, § 271, 3.
case relations, of nouns, § 313; of conjunctive pers. prons., § 362.
ce (adj.), § 378, 1; use, § 380.
ce (pron.), § 378, 2; agreement of verb with, § 232, 3; use, §§ 383–387; + **être,** § 383, § 384; **c'est** and **il est,** § 384; + a relat., § 385; in phrases, § 386; **ce semble,** § 386, *a;* pleonastic, § 387; **ce n'est pas que** + subj., § 455.
ceci, § 378, 2; use, § 388.
cela, § 378, 2; use, § 388; replaced by **là,** § 388, *d*.
celui, § 378, 2; use, § 381.
celui-ci, § 378, 2; use, § 382.
celui-là, § 378, 2; use, § 382; replacing **celui,** § 381, *b*.
cent(s), § 421, *b*, *c*, *d*, *e*.
-cer, verbs in, § 156.
certain, § 403, 1; use, § 404, 1.
certifié, § 289, *a*.
cesser, with **ne** alone, § 418, 4.
cet, for **ce,** § 378, 1, obs.
chacun, § 403, 2; use, § 405, 2.
chaque, § 403, 1; use, § 404, 2.
chez, § 439, 2, § 451, 2, § 454, 2.
-ci, § 380.
ciel, pl., § 309.
ci-inclus, § 289, *b*.
ci-joint, § 289, *b*.
collationné, § 289, *a*.
collectives, § 423.
combien, agreement, § 232, 2, *b*.
comme, for **que** in comparison, § 345, *b*.
comparison, of adjs., §§ 345–349; of advs., § 412; irreg. (adj.), § 346; irreg. (adv.), § 412, 2; remarks, § 349; followed by **ne,** § 419, 3.
complement, predicative, § 295; prepositional, § 296; composite, § 298.
compound adjs. pl., § 343, 2; nouns, pl., § 311.
compound tenses, formation, §§ 227–229; in condl. sent., § 275, *a*.
compris (y), non —, § 289.
concerning, § 436, 2.
condition: à la — que, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 3, *c*.
conditional sentences, § 274, § 275; use of mood and tense in, § 275.
conditional, tense, § 265, in condl. sent., § 275.
conditional anterior, tense, § 266; replaced by plupf. subj., § 272, 3; by impf. indic., in 'result' clause, § 275, *c*.
conjunction, list, § 455; with indic., subj., indic. or subj., *see* list, § 455; use of certain, §§ 456–459; distinctions, § 459.
conjunctive pron., § 359 and n.; use, §§ 362–371.
couple, gender, § 304, 3, *f*.
craindre, with **ne,** § 419, 2.
crainte: de — que . . . ne, + subj., § 455, § 271, 2.

D

d'abord, § 426, *a*.
dans, § 444, 1, 3.
dates, § 421, *c*, *d*, § 427.
dative, of pers. pron., § 362, 2; ethical, § 362, n.
davantage, § 420, 3.
de, as partitive sign, §§ 323–325; agent after passive, § 240, § 441, 1; after adjs., § 356; verb + **de** = Eng. transitive, § 296, 1; idiomatic with verbs, § 296, 4; with names of countries, § 333, 2; **de** = *in*, after superl., § 347, 2; denoting 'by how much,' after superl., § 349, 2; pleonastic after interrog., § 391, n.; of 'di-

mension,' § 428, obs. 1, § 430, obs. 3; in prepositional phrases, § 432; repetition, § 434; **de** = *by* (measure), § 441, 3; **de** = *from*, § 443, 1; of 'place' (after superl.), § 444, 4; **de** = *of*, § 445, 1; **de** = *with*, § 454, 6; = *concerning*, *of*, § 436.
de ce que, constr., § 269, 4, *b*.
décider, + **à**, + **de**, § 281, 2.
défier, + **à**, + **de**, § 281, 3.
definite article, forms, § 316; contractions, § 317; agreement and repetition, § 318, § 347, *a;* with general noun, § 321; with partitive noun, § 323; in titles, § 327; for possessive adj., § 328; distributively, § 329; omission, § 330, § 333, 4; unclassified examples, § 331; with names of persons, § 332; of countries, § 333; of cities, etc., § 334; of mountains and rivers, § 335; in superlative, §§ 347–349; replacing demonstr. adj., § 380, *b;* in fractions, § 424, *b*.
délice, gender, § 304, 2, *d*.
demi, agreement, § 343, 4, *a;* in compounds, § 311, 2, *a*, § 343, 4, *a;* in fractions, § 424, *a*.
demonstrative adjective, forms, § 378, 1; agreement, § 379; repetition, § 379, *a;* use, § 380; replaced by def. art., § 380, *b*.
demonstrative pronoun, forms, § 378, 2; agreement, § 379; use, §§ 381–388.
depuis, § 443, 3; with **ne**, § 419, 6; — **que** distinguished from **puisque**, § 459, 3.
dernier, + subj., § 270, 3; + **à** + infin., § 279, 3, *a*.
des = **de** + **les**, § 317.
dès, § 443, 3.
descendre, + **à**, + dir. infin., § 281, 4.
désobéir, passive use, § 241, 1.
determinatives, position, § 353.
déterminer, + **à**, + **de**, § 281, 5.
deuxième, for **second**, § 422, *b*.
devant, § 440, 1.
devoir, + infin., § 230, 2; + **de** + infin., § 278, 6.
différents, § 403, 1; use, § 404, 3.
dire, + **de**, + dir. infin., § 281, 6.
direct, obj., § 293.
disjunctive pron., § 359 and n.; use, § 372; avoided, § 372, 6, n.
divers, § 403, 1; use, § 404, 3.
donner, conjugation, §153.
dont, § 395; use, § 398.
double, as adv., § 425, *a*.
du = **de** + **le**, § 317.
dû, agreement, § 292, 4, *b*.
dur, + **pour**, § 358, *a*.
durant, position, § 433, *b*.

E

either, *nor* —, *not* —, § 457, 3.
-eler, verbs in, § 158, 2.
elliptical tense forms, § 256.
empêcher, with **ne**, § 419.
empresser(s'), + **à**, + **de**, § 281, 7.
en (pron. adv.), § 360; use, § 367, § 372, 6, n.; agreement of past part., § 292, 3, *a;* position, § 370.
en (prep.), in gerunds, § 286, 3; with names of countries (no art.), § 333, 2; repetition, § 434; of 'place,' 'time,' § 439, 1, § 444, 2, 3; of 'material,' § 445, 2; of 'motion towards,' § 451, 2.
encore que, + subj., §455, § 271, 4.
encore un, § 406, 2, *a*.
en premier lieu, § 426, *a*.
ensuite, § 426, *a*.
entendre, + infin., constr. of obj., § 293, 2, *b*.
entendu, § 289, *a*, § 292, 4, *a*.
entre, § 438, 1, 2; **d'entre**, after superl., § 347, 2.
envers, § 451, 3.
environ, § 436, 4.
ès = **en les**, § 317, n. 2.
-esse, fem. ending, § 306.
est-ce que, use of, § 236, 4.
et (conj.), use of, § 456.
été, invar., § 239, obs.
-eter, verbs in, § 158.
ethical dative, § 362, n.
être, § 154; forming comp. tenses, § 228, § 229; forming passive, § 239; forming reflexive comp. tenses, § 242; as impers. verb, § 250, 2; + **à** + infin., § 279; + **à**, + **à** . . . **de**, + **à** . . . **à**, § 281, 8.
eu, past part., agreement, § 292, 4, *d*.
-eur, fem. of, § 337, 2, (2).
éviter, with **ne**, § 419, 1.
excepté, § 289, *a*.

F

fâché, + **contre**, § 356, *a*.
façon: **de** — **que**, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 2, *a*.

faire, + infin., § 230, 6; + **de** + infin., § 278, 6, *b;* of weather, etc., § 249, 2; + infin., constr. of obj., § 293, 2, *a;* passive force of trans. infin., § 241, 3.
fait (past part.), agreement, § 292, 4, *c.*
falloir, § 251.
fatiguer(**se**), + **à**, + **de**, § 281, 9.
feu, § 343, 4, *b.*
finir, conjugation, § 153; + **à**, + **de**, § 281, 10.
fois (**une fois**), § 425, 2.
fol, § 337, 1, (3).
for, § 442.
force, agreement, § 232, 2, *a.*
fort, + **sur**, § 357, *a.*
foudre, gender, § 304, 3, *i.*
fractions, § 424.
franc de port, § 343, 4, *a.*
from, § 443.
future, § 263; in condl. sentence, § 275; replaced by pres., § 257, 4, 5; replaced by condl., § 265, 3.
future anterior, § 264; replaced by past indef., § 259, 3.

G

garde-, in compounds, § 311, 5, *a.*
gender, of nouns, § 300; by meaning, § 303; by endings, § 302; by derivation, § 301; double, § 304; of compounds, § 305; formation of fem., § 306, §§ 336–337; of adjs., §§ 336–337.
general noun, § 321; and partitive, § 326.
gens, gender, § 304, 3, *k.*
gent, pl., § 308, 5.
gerund, § 286, 3; English, § 287, 2.
goutte, with **ne**, § 415, 2.
guère, with **ne**, § 415, *b.*

H

haïr, + **de** + infin., § 279, 6, *c.*
haut, for **hauteur**, § 428, obs. 4
homme qui vive, with **ne**, § 415, 2, *c.*
however, § 404, 5, *b* and n.
hymne, gender, § 304, 3.

I

ignorant, + **sur**, § 357, *a.*
ignorer, + negative, constr. after, § 269, 5, *d.*
il (impers.), agreement, § 232, 4, § 361, *d;* as subject of impers. verb, § 248, § 252, 2, § 253; **il y a**, § 250, 3; **il est**, § 250, 2, § 383, 1, *a, b;* **il faut**, § 251; **il s'en faut**, § 251, 5; distinguished from **ce**, § 384, 1; **il est vrai**, § 384, 1, *a;* **il semble**, § 386, *a;* **il s'en faut**, with **ne**, § 419, 5; **il y a**, with **ne**, § 419, 6.
imperative, § 267; retention of **-s** in 2 sg. before **y** or **en**, § 153, § 159, 4; in condl. sentence, § 275; replaced by fut., § 263, 4.
imperfect, (indic.), § 258; in narrative, examples of, § 261; in condl. sentence, § 275; replacing plupf. or condl. ant. in condl. sentence, § 275, *c;* (subj.), § 273, 2, *a.*
impersonal verbs, §§ 248–253; verbs used impersonally, § 252; **de** + infin. as logical subj. of, § 280, 1.
importe (**qu'**), § 232, 4, *a.*
in, § 444.
indefinite article, forms, § 315; agreement and repetition, § 318; use, § 320; omission, § 330; unclassified examples, § 331; with names of persons, § 332, 3.
indefinite adj., forms, § 403, 1–3, § 407, 1; use, § 404, § 406, § 407; position in negation, § 416.
indefinite pron., forms, § 403, 2, 3, § 407, 2; use, § 405, § 406, § 407; position in negation, § 416.
indicative mood, § 254, *see also* the various tenses; in conditions, § 275, obs.
indirect discourse, mood of, § 254, n. 1; tense of, § 258, 5.
indirect obj., § 293, 2, § 294, § 362, 2, § 451, 1.
indulgent, + **pour** or **à**, § 358, *a.*
-ine, fem. ending, § 306, 3.
infinitive mood, § 276; without prep., § 278, reference list, § 278, 6; with **à**, § 279, reference list, § 279, 6; with **de**, § 280, reference list, § 280, 6; historical, § 280, 4; distinctions, § 281; with other preps., § 282; for subordinate clause, § 283; with passive force, § 284; for Eng. *-ing*, § 285, § 287.
interjection, § 460.
interrogation, word order, § 236; indirect, § 238.
interrogative adj., forms, § 389, 1; agreement, § 390; use, § 391, § 392, 1, *b*, 2.
interrogative locutions, § 394

interrogative pron., forms, § 389, 2; agreement, § 390; use, §§ 392, 393.
into, § 444.
intransitive verbs, § 294.
inversions, rhetorical, § 237.
irregular verbs, § 156; list of, § 226; in **-er**, §§ 156–161; in **-cer**, **-ger**, § 156; in **-yer**, § 157; with stem-vowel **e** (é), § 158; in **-eler**, **-eter**, § 158; in **-ir**, §§ 162–179; in **-re**, §§ 180–211; in **-oir**, §§ 212–225; in **-andre**, **-endre**, **-erdre**, **-ondre**, **-ordre**, § 210.
-issime, superl. ending, § 348, *a*.

J

jamais, with **ne**, § 415.
je soussigné, § 372, 2, n.
jumelle, § 337, 1, (3).
jurer, + **de**, + dir. infin., § 281, 11.
jusqu'à, § 451, 4; **jusqu'à ce que**, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 1.

L

-là, § 380.
laissé, § 292, 4, *a*.
laisser, + infin., § 230, 7; + **de** + infin., § 278, 6, *c*; + **à**, + **de**, + dir. infin., § 281, 12; constr. of obj., § 293, *b*.
large, for **largeur**, § 428, obs. 4.
lasser (se), + **à**, + **de**, § 281, 13.
le (la, les), *see* def. art. and pers. pron.; predicative, § 364; pleonastic, § 365; = *one, so*, § 365, *b*.
length, *see* quantity.
lequel? § 389, 2; use, § 391.
lequel, § 395; use, § 400.
less; less and less, § 345, *d*; *the less*, § 345, *d*; *less than* (adv. of quantity), § 412, *b*.
loin que, + subj., § 455, § 271, 5.
long, for **longueur**, § 428, obs. 4.
lorsque, distinguished from **quand**, § 459, 1.
l'un, § 406, 7, (1), *a*.
l'un l'autre, § 406, 7, (2).

M

maint, § 403, 1; use, § 404.
mal, irreg. comparison, § 412, 2.
malgré que, + subj., § 455, § 271, 4.
ma mie, m'amour, § 374, n.
manière : de — que, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 2, *a*.
manquer, + **à**, + **de**, § 281, 14.
mauvais, irreg. comparison, § 346.
meilleur, § 346.
même, § 403, 3; use, § 406, 3.
mie, with **ne**, § 415, 2, *b*.
mien, etc., for **le mien**, § 377, 2.
mieux, § 412, 2.
mil, in dates, § 421, *c*.
mille, § 421, *e*.
mine, etc., translated, § 377, 1.
moi, for **me**, § 370, 3, obs.
moindre, § 346.
moins, § 412, 2; in comparison (adj.), § 345, (adv.), § 412; **moins de**, § 412, 1, *b*; **à moins que . . . ne**, + subj., § 455, § 271, 3, — + **de deux**, agreement of, § 232, 2. *c*.
mol, § 337, 1, (3).
mon, for ma, § 374, 1, obs. 1; in address, § 376, 4.
mood, see the various moods; of subordinate clause, § 254, n. 2.
more; more and more, § 345, *d*; *the more*, § 345, *d*; *more than*, (adv. of quantity), § 412, *b*.
mot, with **ne**, § 415, 2, *b*.
multiplicatives, § 425.

N

n'avoir garde, § 418, 5.
ne (n'), with **pas, point**, etc., § 415; position, § 416; omission, § 417; alone as negative, § 418; pleonastic, § 419; **ne . . . que**, position, § 416, *c*; **ne . . . ni**, position, § 416, *d*; **ne . . . que** and **seulement**, § 420, 4.
negation, §§ 414–419; *see also* **ne, non, pas**, etc.
neither . . . nor, translated, § 416, *d*, § 457, 3.
ni, use, § 233, *b*, § 457, 1; with **ne**, § 415; **ni . . . ne**, position, § 416, *d*.
n'importe, § 418, 5.
nombre, + **de**, agreement with verb, § 232, 2, *a*.
non (pas, point), § 414; **que non**, § 420, 1, *a*.
nonante, § 421, *n*.
nonobstant que, + subj., § 455, § 271, 4.
non (pas) que, + subj., § 455, § 271, 5.
nor; — either, § 457, 3.
not; — either, § 457, 3.
noun, gender, §§ 300–306, §§ 336–337; number, §§ 307–312; case relation, § 313; agreement, § 314; as adj., § 343, 3, § 344, § 352, 2, (3).
nous, for **je**, § 361, *a*; pleonastic, § 372, 5, *a*; **nous autres**, § 406, 2, *c*.

nouvel, § 337, 1, (3).
nu, agreement, § 343, 4, *a*.
nul, § 403, 3, § 337, 1, (2), *b;* use, § 406, 1; with **ne**, § 415.
nullement, with **ne**, § 415.
number of nouns, general rule, § 307; exceptions, § 308; double pl., § 309; foreign nouns, § 310; comp. nouns, § 311; pl. of proper nouns, § 312; of adjs., §§ 338–339.
numerals, cardinals, § 421; ordinals, § 422; collectives, § 423; fractions, § 424; multiplicatives, § 425; adverb, § 426; remarks on use, §§ 427–430; in dates, titles, etc., § 427; for dimension, § 428; for time of day, § 429; for age, § 430.

O

obéir, in passive, § 241, 1.
object, dir. and indir., § 293; position, § 297.
obliger, + **à**, + **de**, § 281, 15.
occuper(s'), + **à**, + **de**, § 281, 16.
octante, § 421, n.
œil, pl. of, § 309.
œuvre, gender, § 304, 3, *j*.
of, § 445; *a friend of mine*, etc., § 377, 3.
on (l'on), § 403, 2; use, § 405, 3; replacing passive, § 241, 2, *a*.
on, § 446.
once, § 425, 2.
one, = **le**, § 365, *b*.
only, translated, § 420, 4.
or, = **ni**, § 457, 2.
ordinals, § 422.
orge, gender, § 304, 3, *h*.
osé, agreement, § 292, 4.
oser, + infin., § 230, 5; with **ne** alone, § 418, 4.
others, § 405, § 406, 2, *b*.
où (rel. pron.), § 395; use, § 399, § 398, *b*.
oui, § 420, 1; **que oui**, § 420, 1, *a*.
ouï, § 289, *a*.
ouïr, + infin., constr. of obj., § 293, 2, *b*.
out of, § 447.
over, § 448.
own, translated, § 376, 3, § 377, 4.

P

pal, pl., § 309.
pâque(s), gender, § 304, 3, *g*.
par, § 441, 1, 2, § 443, 2, § 448, 2, § 449, 1, 2; agent after passive, § 240; + infin., § 282, 1; of price, § 329, 1, *a*.
par-dessus, § 448, 2.
paraître, il paraît, constr. after, § 269, 5, *b*.
pardonner, in passive, § 241, 1.
parler français, § 321, *a*.
parmi, § 438, 1.
participles, pres., § 286; Eng. forms in *-ing*, § 287; past, §§ 288–292; as adjs., position, § 352, 1, (3).
partir: **à — de**, § 443, 3.
partitive noun, §§ 322–326; partitive and general noun, § 326.
pas, with **ne**, § 415; position, § 416; without verb, § 417, *a;* without **ne** (fam.), § 415, n. 2.
passé, § 289, *a*.
passive voice, formation, § 239; agreement of past part., § 239 and obs.; agent after, § 240; limitations and substitutes, § 241; replaced by **on**, etc., § 405, 3, *a*.
past anterior, § 262.
past definite, § 260; in narrative, examples, § 261; replaced by impf., § 258, 8; in 'if' clauses, § 275, *f*.
past indefinite, § 259; in narrative, examples, § 261; subjunctive sequence after, § 273, 2, *a*.
past participle, agreement in passive, § 239 and obs.; without **aux.**, § 289; as prep., § 289, *a;* with **être**, § 290, § 244; with **avoir**, § 291; invar. after impers. **être**, § 290, *a;* remarks, § 292.
pas un, § 403, 3; use, § 406, 1; with **ne**, § 415.
payé, § 289, *a*.
pendant que, distinguished from **tandis que**, § 459, 2.
penser, + **à**, + dir. infin., § 281, 17.
perfect subj., § 273, 1, *b;* for plupf., § 273, 2, *b*.
periphrastic forms, in conjugation, § 255, § 287, 1.
personal pronouns, forms, § 359; agreement, § 361; case relations and use of conjunctives, § 362; reflexives, § 366; position of subject, §§ 235–238; position of objects, § 369; omission of obj., § 371; disjunctives, use of, § 372; in address, § 373.
personne, § 403, 2; use of, § 405, 4; with **ne**, § 415; gender, § 405, 4, n.
petit, irreg. comparison, § 346.
peu, irreg. comparison, § 412, 2; + **de**, § 232, 2, *a*, *b;* with partitive, § 325, 1, *d*.
peur: **de — que . . . ne**, + subj., § 455, § 271, 2.
peut-être que, constr.,

§ 269, 5, n.; no inversion, § 237, 3.
pire, § 346.
pis, § 412, 2.
plein, when invar., § 343, 4, *a*.
plupart, agreement of verb, § 232, 2, *a*, *b;* with partitive, § 325, 1, *c*.
pluperfect (indic.), § 262; replaced by plupf. subj., § 272, 3; replaced by impf. indic., § 275, *c;* replaced by perf. subj., § 273, 3, *c;* replacing plupf. indic. or condl. ant., § 272, 3; sequence, § 273, 2, *b;* replacing plupf. indic. in 'if' clause or 'result' clause, § 275, *b*.
plus, § 412, 2; in comparison (adj.), § 345, (adv.), § 412; — **de,** § 412, 1, *b;* with **ne,** § 415; **plus** and **davantage,** § 420, 3; — **d'un,** agreement, § 232, 2, *c*.
plusieurs, § 403, 3; use, § 406, 4.
plus tôt, with ne, § 419, 3, n.
plutôt, with **ne,** § 419, 3, n.
point, with **ne,** § 415, and n. 1; position, § 416.
possessive adj., forms, § 374, 1; agreement, § 375; repetition, § 375, *a;* use, § 376; def. art. for, § 328, § 376, 1; **en,** + def. art. for, § 367, 2, (2), § 376, 2.
possessive pron., forms, § 374, 2; agreement, § 375; use, § 377.
pour, § 442, 1, 2, 3; + infin., § 282, 2; — **que** + subj., § 455, § 271, 2; — **peu que** + subj., § 455, § 271, 4; — . . . **que,** constr., § 404, 5, n.
pourvu que, + subj., § 455, § 271, 3.
pouvoir, + infin., § 230, 3; impers., § 252, 1, obs.; with **ne** alone, § 418, 4.
predicate noun, omission of art., § 330, 3.
predicative complement, § 295, § 330, 3.
premier, in dates, etc., § 427, § 330, 4, *a;* + subj., § 270, 3; + **à** + infin., § 279, 3, *a*.
prendre garde, + **à,** + **de,** § 281, 18.
preposition, list of simple, § 431; position, § 433; locutions, § 432; repetition, § 434; idiomatic distinctions, §§ 435–454.
prepositional complement, § 296.
près: — **de,** § 436, 4; **à peu** —, § 436, 4.
present, indic., § 257; for historical past, examples, § 261; replaced by impf., § 258, 5; in condl. sentences, § 275.
present participle, § 286.
present subj., § 273.
prétendre, + **à,** + dir. infin., § 281, 19.
prier, + **à,** + **de,** § 281, 20.
primary tenses, *see* principal parts.
primo (**secundo,** etc.), § 426, *a*.
principal parts, formation of tenses from, § 159.
pronominal advs., § 360.
pronoun, §§ 359–407, *see also* personal, possessive, etc.
proper nouns, pl., § 312; use of art. with, §§ 332–335.
propre, § 376, 3.
pu, agreement, § 292, 4, *b*.
puis, § 426, *a*.
puisque, distinguished from **depuis que,** § 459, 3.

Q

qualifier de, § 330, 3, *b*.
quand, distinguished from **lorsque,** § 459, 1.
quand (même), condl. after, § 265, 6, § 275, *e;* sometimes takes subj., § 271, 4, *c;* + indic. or subj., § 271, 4, *c*, § 455.
quantité, + **de,** agreement of verb, § 232, 2.
quart, § 422, n. 1.
quatre-vingt(s), § 421, *b*.
que? § 389, 2; use, § 393.
que ! § 393, 1, *b*.
que (relat.), § 395; use, § 397; in inversions (emphatic), § 397, 2, n., § 385, *a*, n.; past part. invar. after, § 292, 5.
que (conj.), condl. after, § 265, 6; replacing other conjs., § 271, 6, § 458, 2; = *than, as,* in comparison, § 345, § 412; with **ne,** § 415; for **à moins que,** § 419, 1; + indic. or subj., § 455, § 269, § 271, 6, § 458; not omitted, § 458, 3.
quel? § 389, 1; use, § 391, § 392, 2.
quel! § 391, *a*.
quelconque, § 407; with **ne,** § 415, 2, *a*.
quel que, + subj. of **être,** § 407.
quelque, § 403, 1; use, § 404, 5; as adv., § 404, 5, *a*.
quelque . . . que, + subj., § 407.
quelqu'un, § 403, 2; use, § 405, 5.
qu'est-ce qui? § 393, 2.
question, direct, § 236; indirect, § 238.

qui? § 389, 2; use, § 392; replaced by **quel**, § 391, *b*, § 392, *b*.
qui, § 395; use, § 397; replacing **celui qui, les uns . . . les autres, ce qui**, § 397, 1, *a*, *b*; **qui que**, + subj. of **être**, § 407; **qui que ce soit**, § 407; **qui que ce soit** + **ne**, § 415, 2, *a*.
quiconque, § 407.
quint, § 422, n. 2.
quinze-vingt(s), § 421, n.
quoi? § 389, 2; use, § 393.
quoi, § 395; use, § 401; — **que . . .** + subj., § 407; — **que ce soit**, § 407; with **ne**, § 415, 2, *a*.
quoique, + subj., § 455, § 271, 4.

R

reciprocal verbs, § 243.
reflexive pers. prons., § 366.
reflexive verb, formation of comp. tenses, § 242; with reciprocal force, § 243; agreement of past part., § 244; omission of reflex. obj., § 245; comparison with Eng., § 246; replacing passive, § 241, 2, *b*.
refuser, + **à**, + **de**, § 281, 21.
relative pron., forms, § 395; agreement, § 396; use, §§ 397–402; remarks, § 402; not omitted, § 402, 1; relative clause for Eng. *-ing*, § 287, 3; indef. relat., § 407.
résoudre, + **à**, + **de**, § 281, 22.
rien, § 403, 2; use, § 405, 4; with **ne**, § 415.
rompre, conjugation, § 153.

S

sache, irreg. use, § 272, 2.
sans, + infin., § 282, 3; — **doute que**, constr., § 269, 5, n.; — **que**, + subj., § 455, § 271, 5.
savoir, + infin., § 230, 4, with **ne** alone, § 418, 4.
se, reflex. pron., § 366, 1.
sembler : il semble, constr. after, § 269, 5, *b*, 6, *c*.
s'en aller, conjugation, § 247.
s'en falloir, § 251, 5.
septante, § 421, n.
sequence, of subj. tenses, § 273.
seul, + subj., § 270, 3; + **à** + infin., § 279, 3, *a*.
seulement, § 420, 4.
should, distinctions, § 265, 1, *b*.
si, subjunctive after, § 275, *b*; replaced by **que** + subj., § 271, 6; in conditional sentence, § 274; omission, § 275, *d*; si (= *whether*) + fut. or cond., § 275, *g*; for **aussi**, § 345, *a*, § 412, *a*; + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 3, *a*; — **bien que**, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 4; — **peu que**, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 4; **si . . . (que)**, constr., § 404, 5, *n*.
si (= *yes*), **si fait**, § 420, 1; **que si**, § 420, 1, *a*.
six-vingt(s), § 421, n.
so = **le**, § 365, *b*.
soi, reflex. pron., § 366, 2.
soi-disant, § 286, 2, n. 2.
soit que . . . soit que (ou que), + subj., § 455, § 271, 4.
son for **sa**, § 374, 1, obs. 1; for indef., § 375, *b*.
sorte : de (telle) — que, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 2, *a*; **en — que**, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 2, *a*.
sous, § 453, 1.
subjunctive, in subordinate clause, §§ 268–271; in noun clause, § 269; in adjective clause, § 270; in adverbial clause, § 271; in principal clause, § 272; as imperative, § 272, 1, *a*; tense sequence, § 273.
such, § 406, 5 and n.
suffire, + **pour** + infin., § 279, 6, *a*.
superlative (adjs.), §§ 347–349, (advs.), § 412, 3; relative, § 347; absolute, § 348; remarks, § 349.
supposant : en — que, + subj., § 455, § 271, 3.
supposé, § 289, *a*; — **que**, + subj., § 455, § 271, 3.
sur = *with, about* (the person), § 436, 3; = *by* (relative dimension), § 441, 3; = *on, upon*, § 446; of 'motion above,' § 448, 2.

T

-t-, inserted in interrog., § 236, 1, *a*.
tandis que, distinguished from **pendant que**, § 459, 2.
tant, § 420, 2.
tel, § 403, 3; use, § 406, 5.
tellement . . . que, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 2, *a*.
témoin, § 344, *a*.
tenses, formation of comp., § 155, §§ 227–229; formation from principal parts, § 159; of indic., §§ 255–266; periphras-

tic Eng., § 255; elliptical Eng., § 256; in narration, §§ 258–261; tense sequence of subj., § 273.
-teur, fem. of, § 337, 2, (3).
through, § 449.
tiers, § 422, n. 1.
till, § 450.
time, how expressed, § 249, 1, § 429.
to, § 451.
toi, for **te**, § 370, 3, obs. 1.
ton, for **ta**, § 374, 1, obs.
tous (les) deux, § 406, 6.
tout, § 403, 3; use, § 406, 6; as adv. (variable), § 406, 6, *a;* with **gens**, § 304, 3, *k.*
tout . . . que, constr., § 404, 5, *b*, n.
tout-puissant, § 406, 6, *a.*
towards, § 452.
traiter de, § 330, 3, *b.*
transitive verbs, § 293, § 294, n.; in Fr. = Eng. verb + prep., § 296, 3.
travail, pl., § 309.
travers : à —, au — de, § 449, 1.
trembler, + **à**, + **de**, § 281, 23.
tu = *you, thou*, in address, § 373, 1, 2.

U

un, *see* indef. art.
un (adj. pron.), § 403, 3; use of, § 406, 7.
un (num.), § 421, *a.*
under, § 453.
underneath, § 453.
unique, + subj., § 270, 3.
until, § 450.
upon, § 446.

V

va, special force, § 267, *b.*
valoir, impers., § 252, 1, obs.
venir de + infin., § 230, 9; + **à**, + **de**, + dir. infin., § 281, 24.
verb, regular conjugations, § 153; auxiliaries, § 154; use of auxs., §§ 227–229; irreg. verbs, §§ 156–226; formation of comp. tenses, § 155, §§ 227–229; phrases, § 230; agreement with subject, §§ 231–234; position of subject, §§ 235–238; passive voice, §§ 239–241; reflexives, §§ 242–247; impersonals, §§ 248–253; moods and tenses, §§ 254–292; indicative, §§ 254–266; imperative, § 267; subjunctive, §§ 268–273; infinitive, §§ 276–285; participles, §§ 286–292; government, §§ 293–299.
vers, § 436, 4, § 451, 3.
vieil, § 337, 1, (3).
voici, position of pers. pron. obj., § 369, 2, n. 2, § 433, *a.*
voilà, distinguished from **il y a**, § 250, 3; position of pers. pron. obj., § 369, 2, n. 2, § 433, *a;* with **ne**, § 419, 6.
voir, + infin., constr. of obj., § 293, 2, *b.*
votre (vos), for politeness, § 376, 5.
vouloir, + infin., § 230, 1.
voulu, agreement, § 292, 4, *b.*
vous, agreement, § 361, *b*, § 239, obs., 2, § 244, 2, n. 2, § 340, *b;* replacing **on**, § 405, 3, *c;* — **autres**, § 406, 2, *c;* pleonastic, § 372, 5, *a;* in address, § 373.
voyons, special force, §267.
vu, § 289, *a*, § 292, 4, *a.*

W

what ? as subject, § 393, 2.
what (= *that which*), § 401.
whatever, § 407.
whose ? § 392, 2.
will, distinctions, § 263, 1.
with, § 454.
would, distinctions, § 265, 1, *b.*

Y

y, pron. adv., § 360.
y, + **avoir**, § 250.
y (pron. adv.), § 360; use, § 368, § 372, 6, n.; position, § 369, 1, *c*, n.
-yer, verbs in, § 157.

APPENDIX

The following are the deviations permitted by the decree of the French Minister of Public Instruction referred to in the Preface:

§ 29. The hyphen may be omitted.

§ 232, 2. Verb may agree with pl. complement of **de.**

§ 232, 2, *c.* **Plus d'un,** when followed by a pl. complement, may have verb in sing. or pl.

§ 232, 3. Either **est** *or* **sont** may be used before a pl. subst. or a pl. pron. in 3d pers.

§ 233, *b, c, e, f.* Verb may be either sing. or pl. in such cases.

§ 236, 1. The hyphen may be omitted.

§ 289, *a, b.* Agreement optional in either position.

§ 292, 4 and 4, *a.* Past part. may, in all such cases, be invariable.

§ 304, 1 and 3, *a.* **Enfant** and **automne,** masc. *or* fem.

§ 304, 3, *b, d.* **Amour** and **orgue** masc. in sing., and masc. *or* fem. in pl.

§ 304, 3, *e.* **Hymne,** masc. *or* fem. in all senses.

§ 304, 3, *g.* **Pâques** may be fem., either as a date or as a church festival.

§ 304, 3, *h, k.* Any adj. agreeing with **orge** or **gens** may be fem.

§ 310. Such nouns, if fully naturalized, may have pl. in **-s,** *e.g.*, **déficits, exéats.**

§ 311. All compound nouns may be written without hyphen.

§ 312. Any proper noun preceded by a pl. art. may take the pl. sign.

§ 324, 1. It is permissible to use **du, de la, des,** before adj. + noun.

§ 332, 2. A mistake in this usage is not to be counted an error.

§ 341, 1, *b.* Adj. may be masc. pl., no matter which noun is nearest.

§ 342. Phrases like **l'histoire ancienne et la moderne** may omit the second art.

§ 343, 1, *a.* **Fort** may agree like an adj.

§ 343, 2. Compound adjs., *e.g.*, **nouveau-né, court-vêtu,** etc., may be written as one word, and may form fem. and pl. by the general rule.

§ 343, 4, *a.* **Franc,** agreement optional when preceding.

§ 343, 4, *a, b.* **Nu, demi, feu,** may agree when preceding their subst.

§ 343, 4, *c.* Adj. may agree either with the subst. fem. or with **air.**

§ 348. The def. art. may agree.

§ 376, 6. The object possessed may be either sing. or pl.

§ 405, 2, *a, c.* Either **son** or **leur** may be used indifferently.

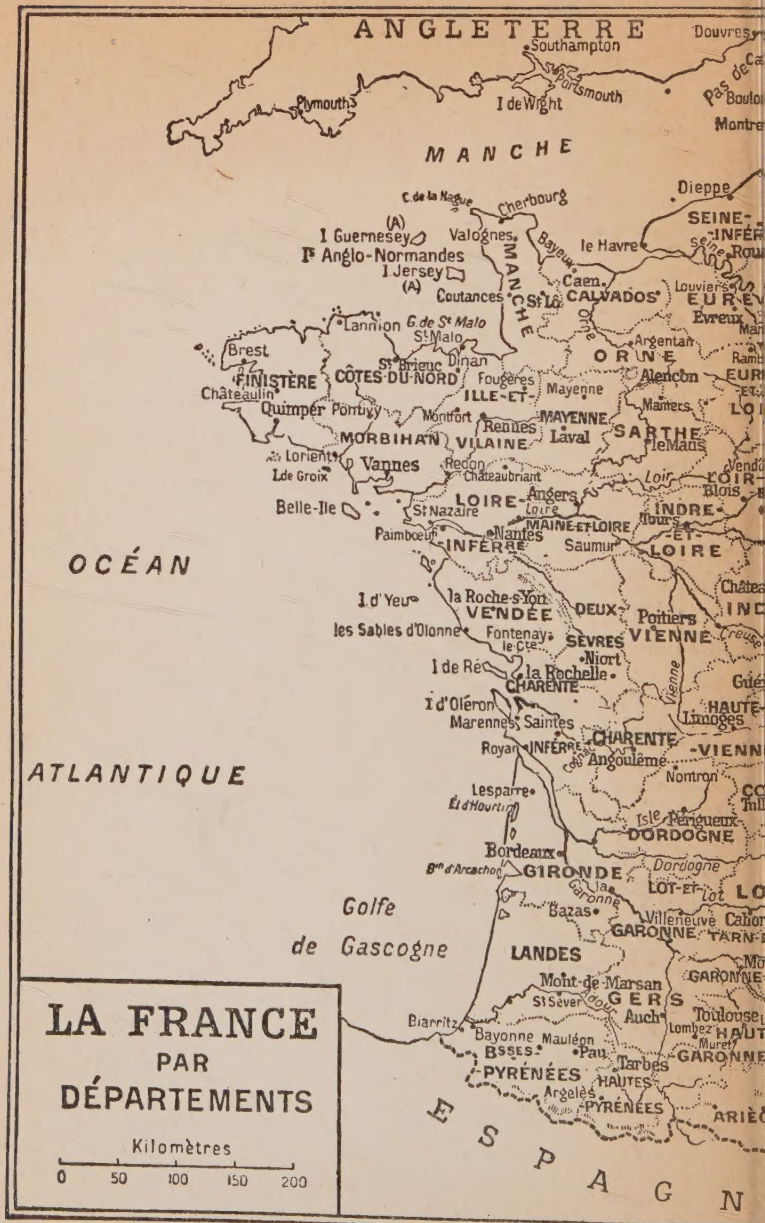
§ 406, 3 (2). Hyphen may be omitted.

§ 419, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5. **Ne** may be omitted in all such cases.

§ 421, obs. 1. The hyphen may be omitted.

§ 421, *b.* **Vingt** and **cent** may take **-s** even before another numeral.

§ 421, *c.* **Mille** *or* **mil** may be used.


ANGLETERRE
Southampton
Douvres
Portsmouth
Plymouth
I de Wight
MANCHE
C. de la Hague
Cherbourg
Dieppe
(A)
I Guernesey
Valognes
Bayeux
le Havre
Is Anglo-Normandes
I. Jersey
(A)
Caen
Coutances
St Lô
CALVADOS
Louviers
Évreux
Lannion
G. de St Malo
St Malo
Brest
Argentan
ORNE
St Brieuc
Dinan
FINISTÈRE
CÔTES-DU-NORD
Fougères
Alençon
Châteaulin
ILLE-ET-
Mayenne
Quimper
Pontivy
Montfort
Rennes
MAYENNE
Mamers
MORBIHAN
VILAINE
Laval
SARTHE
le Mans
Lorient
Vannes
Redon
Châteaubriant
I. de Groix
Loir
Blois
Belle-Ile
LOIRE-
Angers
St Nazaire
Loire
INDRE-
Tours
Paimbœuf
Nantes
MAINE-ET-LOIRE
INFÉRRE
Saumur
LOIRE
OCÉAN
I. d'Yeu
la Roche-s-Yon
VENDÉE
DEUX-
Poitiers
les Sables d'Olonne
Fontenay-le-Cte
SÈVRES
VIENNE
Niort
I de Ré
la Rochelle
CHARENTE
Vienne
I d'Oléron
Marennes
Saintes
HAUTE-
Limoges
Royan
INFÉRRE
CHARENTE
Angoulême
-VIENN
ATLANTIQUE
Nontron
Lesparre
Él d'Hourtin
Isle
Périgueux
DORDOGNE
Bordeaux
Bn d'Arcachon
GIRONDE
Dordogne
la Garonne
LOT-ET-
Lot
Golfe
de Gascogne
Bazas
Villeneuve
GARONNE
LANDES
Mont-de-Marsan
GARONNE
St Sever
GERS
Auch
Toulouse
Biarritz
Bayonne
Mauléon
Lombez
Muret
BSSES-
Pau
Tarbes
GARONNE
PYRÉNÉES
HAUTES-
Argelès
PYRÉNÉES
ESPAGN
LA FRANCE
PAR
DÉPARTEMENTS
Kilomètres
0
50
100
150
200

Bruxelles
Meuse
Rhin
BELGIQUE
Lille
Valenciennes
Cambrai
Avesnes
Vervins
Mézières
Sedan
AISNE
ARDENNES
Laon
Aisne
Compiègne
Soissons
Reims
Marne
Epernay
MARNE
Châlons-s-M.
Ch.-Thierry
SEINE-ET-MARNE
Melun
Fontainebleau
Vassy
AUBE
Troyes
Bar-s-A.
Sens
Bar-s-S.
Montargis
YONNE
Auxerre
Clamecy
NIÈVRE
Nevers
Moulins
ALLIER
Gannat
Roanne
Thiers
PUY-DE-DÔME
Issoire
Murat
HAUTE-LOIRE
Le Puy
Mende
LOZÈRE
Millau
AVEYRON
Uzès
GARD
Nîmes
Montpellier
HÉRAULT
Béziers
Narbonne
Perpignan
PYRÉNÉES-ORIENTALES
Golfe du Lion
Luxembourg
Moselle
Thionville
Metz
LORRAINE
Verdun
MEUSE
Bar-le-Duc
MEURTHE-ET-MOSELLE
Nancy
Lunéville
Strasbourg
ALSACE
St Dié
Neufchâteau
Chaumont
HAUTE-MARNE
VOSGES
Langres
Châtillon-s-Seine
HAUTE-SAÔNE
Vesoul
Belfort
Montbéliard
Rhin
Semur
CÔTE-D'OR
Dijon
Beaune
Gray
Besançon
DOUBS
Poligny
Chalons
JURA
Lons-le-Saunier
SAÔNE-ET-LOIRE
Le Creusot
Autun
Mâcon
Bourg
St Claude
Villefranche
AIN
RHÔNE
Lyon
LOIRE
St Etienne
Vienne
ISÈRE
Grenoble
Valence
DRÔME
HAUTES-ALPES
Gap
Nyons
Die
Orange
Avignon
VAUCLUSE
BASSES-ALPES
ALPES-MARITIMES
Monaco
Nice
Cannes
Draguignan
BOUCHES-DU-RHÔNE
Aix
Marseille
VAR
Toulon
Rhône
Loire
Saône
Isère
Durance
Var
ALLEMAGNE
Danube
L. de Constance
Rhin
Berne
SUISSE
L. Léman
Genève
SAVOIE
Annecy
SAVOIE
Po
ITALIE
Gênes
G. de Gênes
Bastia
Calvi
Corte
CORSE
Ajaccio
Sartène
MER MÉDITERRANÉE